

ΕΝ ΧΡΙΣΤΩΙ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΙ ΑΙΩΝΙΩΙ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΩΣ ΡΩΜΑΙΩΝ
ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΙΔΙΟΝ ΥΙΟΝ ΡΩΜΑΝΟΝ
ΤΟΝ ΘΕΟΣΤΕΦΗ ΚΑΙ ΠΟΡΦΥΡΟΓΕΝΝΗΤΟΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΑ

<Προοίμιον.>

Υἱὸς σοφὸς εὐφραίνει πατέρα, καὶ πατὴρ φιλόστοργος ἐπὶ υἱῷ
τέρπεται φρονίμῳ. Κύριος γὰρ δίδωσι νοῦν, ἡνίκα δεῖ εἰπεῖν, καὶ προστί-
θῃσιν οὓς τοῦ ἀκούειν· παρ' αὐτῷ θησαυρὸς σοφίας, καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ δίδοται
πᾶν δώρημα τέλειον· καθιστᾷ βασιλεῖς ἐπὶ θρόνου καὶ κυρίαν τοῦ 5
παντός δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς. Νῦν οὖν ἀκουσόν μου, υἰέ, καὶ τήνδε μεμαθηκώς
τὴν διδασχὴν ἔση σοφὸς παρὰ φρονίμοις, καὶ φρόνιμος παρὰ σοφοῖς
3P λογισθήσῃ· εὐλογήσουσί σε οἱ λαοί, καὶ μακαριοῦσί σε πλήθη ἐθνῶν.
Διδάχθητι, ἅ ἡρή σε πρὸ πάντων εἰδέναι, καὶ νουνεχῶς τῶν τῆς βασι-
λειᾶς οἰάκων ἀντιλαβοῦ. Περὶ τῶν ἐνεστώτων μελέτησον, καὶ περὶ τῶν 10
μελλόντων διδάχθητι, ἵνα πεῖραν μετ' εὐβουλίας ἀθροίσῃς, καὶ μεγαλε-
66B πήβολος ἔση περὶ | τὰ πράγματα. Ἴδου ἐκτίθῃμί σοι διδασκαλίαν,
ὥστε τῇ ἐκ ταύτης πείρᾳ καὶ γνώσει συνετισθέντα περὶ τὰς βελτίστας
βουλὰς καὶ {τῷ} τὸ κοινῇ συμφέρον μὴ διαμαρτάνειν· πρῶτα μὲν ποῖον
ἔθνος κατὰ τί μὲν ὠφελῆσαι δύναται Ῥωμαίους, κατὰ τί δὲ βλάψαι, 15
{καὶ ποῖον} καὶ πῶς ἕκαστον τούτων καὶ παρὰ ποίου δύναται ἔθνους
καὶ πολεμεῖσθαι καὶ ὑποτάσσεσθαι, ἔπειτα περὶ τῆς ἀπλήστου καὶ
4P ἀκορέστου αὐτῶν γνώμης, καὶ ὧν παραλόγως ἐξαίτουνται λαμβάνειν,
εἰθ' οὕτως καὶ περὶ διαφορᾶς ἐτέρων ἐθνῶν, γενεαλογίας τε <αὐτῶν>

P. 2 Υἱὸς — πατέρα: Prov. 10, 1. 2 ἐπὶ υἱῷ — 3 φρονίμῳ: cf.
Prov. 17, 21. 3 Κύριος — 4 ἀκούειν: Is. 50, 4. 4 παρ' αὐτῷ
— σοφίας: cf. Prov. 2, 6; Sir. 1, 25. 4 ἐξ αὐτοῦ — 5 τέλειον:
Iac. 1, 17. 5 καθιστᾷ — θρόνου: cf. II Paralip. 23, 20. 8 εὐλο-
γήσουσι — ἐθνῶν: cf. Psalm. 71, 17.

IN CHRIST THE ETERNAL EMPEROR EMPEROR OF THE ROMANS
TO HIS SON ROMANUS
THE EMPEROR CROWNED OF GOD AND BORN IN THE PURPLE

P r o e m.

A wise son maketh glad a father, and an affectionate father taketh delight in a prudent son. For the Lord giveth wit to speak in season, and addeth thereto an ear to hear; with Him is the treasure of wisdom, and from Him cometh every perfect gift; He setteth kings upon the throne and giveth unto them the lordship over all. Now therefore hearken unto me, my son, and being adept in this my teaching thou shalt be wise among the prudent, and be accounted prudent among the wise; the peoples shall bless thee, and the multitudes of the nations shall call thee blessed. Be instructed in what it behoves thee before all else to know, and lay hold skilfully upon the helm of the rule. Study the things that are now, and be instructed concerning the things that are to be, so that thou mayest amass experience with sound judgment, and thou shalt be most competent in thine affairs. Lo, I set a doctrine before thee, so that being sharpened thereby in experience and knowledge, thou shalt not stumble concerning the best counsels and the common good: first, in what each nation has power to advantage the Romans, and in what to hurt, and how and by what other nation each severally may be encountered in arms and subdued; then, concerning their ravenous and insatiate temper and the gifts they demand inordinately; next, concerning also the difference between other nations, *their* origins

V Tit. 1 *post* Κωνσταντίνου *add.* τοῦ *edd.* || 4 πορφυρογέννητον] *litteras* *purp.* *s. v. add.* P¹ || *post* βασιλέα *add.* νοουθεσία F².

P. 1 Προόμιον *add.* Moravesik || 8 εὐλογήσουσί F¹ *edd.*: εὐλογήσωσί P || 11/12 μεγαλεπήβολος Meursius Ba Be: μεγαλεπίβολος P || 13 συνετισθέντα Meursius Ba Be: συνετισθέντι P || 14 τῷ *secl.* Be || 16 καὶ ποῖον *secl.* Be || 19 τε F¹ Meursius Ba Be: δὲ P || αὐτῶν *add.* Moravesik ||

καὶ ἐθῶν καὶ βίου διαγωγῆς καὶ θέσεως καὶ κράσεως τῆς κατοικοιουμένης 20
 παρ' αὐτῶν γῆς καὶ περιγηγήσεως αὐτῆς καὶ σταδιασμοῦ, πρὸς τούτοις
 καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐν τινι καιρῷ μεταξὺ Ῥωμαίων καὶ διαφορῶν ἐθνῶν
 συμβεβηκότων, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτα, ὅσα ἐν τῇ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτείᾳ, ἀλλὰ καὶ
 ἐν πάσῃ τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ κατὰ τινας χρόνους ἐκαινοτομήθη. Ταῦτα
 ἐσοφισάμην κατ' ἐμαυτόν, καὶ εἶπα γνωστά σοι ποιῆσαι, τῷ ἡγαπημένῳ 25
 μου υἱῷ, ἵν' ἔχῃς εἰδέναι τὴν ἐκάστου τούτων διαφοράν, καὶ πῶς ἡ
 4^{VP} μεταχειρίζεσθαι ταῦτα καὶ οἰκιοῦσθαι ἢ πολεμεῖν | καὶ ἀντιτάσσεσθαι.
 Πτοηθήσονται γάρ σε ὡς μεγαλοφυῆ, καὶ ὡς ἀπὸ πυρὸς φεύξονται ἀπὸ
 σοῦ· φημιωθήσονται τὰ χεῖλη αὐτῶν, καὶ ὡς ὑπὸ βελῶν τοῖς σοῖς κατα-
 τρωθήσονται ῥήμασιν. Ὁφθήσῃ αὐτοῖς φοβερός, καὶ ἀπὸ προσώπου 30
 σου τρόμος λήψεται αὐτούς. Καὶ σου ὁ Παντοκράτωρ ὑπερασπιεῖ, καὶ
 συνετιεῖ σε ὁ πλάσας σε· κατευθυνεῖ σου τὰ διαβήματα, καὶ ἐδράσει
 67Be σε ἐπὶ βάσιν ἀσάλευτον. Ὁ Θρόνος σου ὡς ὁ ἥλιος ἐναντίον | αὐτοῦ,
 καὶ οἱ ὀφθαλμοὶ αὐτοῦ ἔσονται βλέποντες ἐπὶ σε, καὶ οὐδὲν οὐ μὴ ᾤψηται
 σου τῶν χαλεπῶν, καθότι αὐτός σε ἐξελέξατο καὶ ἀπὸ μήτρας ἀφώρισεν, 35
 καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ βασιλείαν ὡς ἀγαθῷ ὑπὲρ πάντας σοι ἔδωκεν, καὶ τέθεικεν
 5^{VP} ὡς σκέ|πην ἐπὶ βουνοῦ καὶ ὡς χρυσοῦν ἀνδριάντα ἐφ' ὑψηλοῦ, καὶ ὡς
 πόλιν ἐπ' ὄρους ἀνύψωσεν, ὥστε δωροφορεῖσθαι ὑπὸ ἐθνῶν καὶ προσκυ-
 νεῖσθαι ὑπὸ τῶν κατοικούντων τὴν γῆν. Ἀλλὰ σύ, Κύριε ὁ Θεός μου,
 οὐ ἡ βασιλεία αἰώνιος καὶ ἀνώλεθρος, εἴης κατευοδῶν τὸν διὰ σοῦ ἐξ 40
 ἐμοῦ γεννηθέντα, καὶ ἔστω ἡ ἐπισκοπὴ τοῦ προσώπου σου ἐπ' αὐτόν, καὶ
 τὸ οὖς σου ἐπικλινέσθω ταῖς τούτου δεήσεσιν. Σκεπασάτω αὐτόν ἡ χεὶρ
 σου, καὶ βασιλευέτω ἕνεκεν ἀληθείας, καὶ ὁδηγήσει αὐτόν ἡ δεξιὰ σου·
 κατευθυνθείησαν αἱ ὁδοὶ αὐτοῦ ἐνώπιόν σου τοῦ φυλάξασθαι τὰ δικαιώ-
 ματά σου. Πρὸ προσώπου αὐτοῦ πεσοῦνται πολέμιοι, καὶ λείξουσιν 45
 5^{VP} χοῦν οἱ ἐχθροὶ αὐτοῦ. Κατασκιασθεῖη τὸ στέλεχος τοῦ γένους | αὐτοῦ
 πολυγονίας φύλλοις, καὶ ἡ σκιὰ τοῦ καρποῦ αὐτοῦ ἐπικαλύψαι ἔρη
 βασιλεία, ὅτι διὰ σοῦ βασιλεύουσι βασιλεῖς δοξάζοντές σε εἰς τὸν αἰῶνα.

F 28 ὡς ἀπὸ — 29 ἀπὸ σοῦ: cf. Deut. 28, 7; Is. 10, 18. 31 τρόμος
 λήψεται: Is. 33, 14. 31 ὁ Παντοκράτωρ ὑπερασπιεῖ: Zach. 9, 15. 32
 κατευθυνεῖ σου τὰ διαβήματα: cf. Psalm. 39, 3; 118, 133. 32 ἐδράσει —
 33 ἀσάλευτον: cf. Sap. 4, 3. 33 Ὁ Θρόνος — αὐτοῦ: Psalm. 88,
 37. 34 οἱ ὀφθαλμοὶ — βλέποντες cf. I Paralip. 21, 3. 34 οὐδὲν — 35
 χαλεπῶν: cf. Iob 5, 19; Sap. 3, 1. 35 σε ἐξελέξατο: Deut. 14,
 2. 35 ἀπὸ μήτρας ἀφώρισεν: cf. Galat. 1, 15. 36
 τὴν αὐτοῦ — ἔδωκεν: cf. Esd. 1, 2. 36 τέθεικεν — 37 ἐφ' ὑψηλοῦ:
 cf. Psalm. 17, 34; Ezech. 40, 2. 37 ὡς πόλιν — 38 ἀνύψωσεν:
 cf. Matth. 5, 14. 38 ὥστε — ἐθνῶν: cf. Psalm. 71,
 10. 38 προσκυνεῖσθαι — 39 γῆν: cf. Psalm. 32, 14; 71, 11. 40
 κατευοδῶν: cf. Psalm. 67, 20, 41 ἔστω — ἐπ' αὐτόν: cf. Exod. 13,
 19. 42 Σκεπασάτω — 43 χεὶρ σου: cf. Exod. 33, 22; Sap. 19, 8.

P

and customs and manner of life, and the position and climate of the land they dwell in, its geographical description and measurement, and moreover concerning events which have occurred at various times between the Romans and different nations; and thereafter, what reforms have been introduced from time to time in our state, and also throughout the Roman empire. These things have I discovered of my own wisdom, and have decreed that they shall be made known unto thee, my beloved son, in order that thou mayest know the difference between each of these *nations*, and how either to treat with and conciliate them, or to make war upon and oppose. For so shall they quake before thee as one mighty in wisdom, and as from fire shall they flee from thee; their lips shall be bridled, and as darts shall thy words wound them unto death. Thou shalt appear terrible unto them, and at thy face shall trembling take hold upon them. And the Almighty shall cover thee with his shield, and thy Creator shall endue thee with understanding; He shall direct thy steps, and shall establish thee upon a sure foundation. Thy throne shall be as the sun before Him, and His eyes shall be looking towards thee, and naught of harm shall touch thee, for He hath chosen thee and set thee apart from thy mother's womb, and hath given unto thee His rule as unto one excellent above all men, and hath set thee as a refuge upon a hill and as a statue of gold upon an high place, and as a city upon a mountain hath He raised thee up, that the nations may bring to thee their gifts and thou mayest be adored of them that dwell upon the earth. But Thou, O Lord my God, whose rule abideth unharmed for ever, prosper him in his ways who through Thee was begotten of me, and may the visitation of Thy face be toward him, and Thine ear be inclined to his supplications. May Thy hand cover him, and may he rule because of truth, and may Thy right hand guide him; may his ways be made straight before Thee to keep thy statutes. May foes fall before his face, and his enemies lick the dust. May the stem of his race be shady with leaves of many offspring, and the shadow of his fruit cover the kingly mountains; for by Thee do kings rule, glorifying Thee for ever and ever.

43 βασιλευέτω — ἡ δεξιὰ σου: Psalm. 44, 5. 44 κατευθύν-
 θεισαν — 45 τὰ δικαιώματά σου: Psalm. 118, 5; cf. Psalm. 5, 9. 45
 Ἰπὸ προσώπου—πολέμοι: cf. Psalm. 71, 9; Lev. 26, 8. 45 λείψουσιν —
 46 αὐτοῦ Psalm. 71, 9; Is. 49, 23. 48 διὰ σοῦ — βασιλεύεις Prov. 8, 15.

V 20 καὶ om. V edd. || ἐθνῶν (*littera v erasa*) P⁷; ἐθνῶν P V edd. || 22 τινα V
 edd.: τισι P || 24 πάση edd. πάση V; πᾶσι P || κατα τίνας P || 31 καὶ σοῦ
 P || 35 ἀφόρησεν P || 36 αὐτοῦ Migne || τέθηκεν P || 37 σκέπην comi. Moravosik;
 σκέπων P σκοπὴν Meursius Ba Be || 38 δωροφορεῖσθαι V F edd. δωροφορεῖ-
 σθαι P δωροφορεῖσθαι F¹ || 40 ἀνάλεθρος καὶ αἰώνιος V edd. || 43 ὁδηγήσει V
 Me: ὁδηγήσῃ P ὁδηγήσῃ Meursius Ba Be

1. Περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ πρὸς πόσα συμ-
βάλλονται μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων
εἰρηνεύοντες.

Ἀκουσον τοίνυν, υἱέ, ἃ μοι δοκεῖ <δεῖν> σε μὴ ἀγνοεῖν, καὶ
68Be νοήμων γενοῦ, ἵνα κτήσῃ κυβέρνησιν. Φημί γάρ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις | ἅπασι 5
εἶναι καλὸν τῶν ὑποτεταγμένων τὴν μάθησιν, διαφερόντως δὲ σοί, τῷ
ὑπὲρ τῆς πάντων σωτηρίας ὀφείλοντι διαμεριμνᾶν καὶ τὴν κοσμικὴν
ὀλκάδα πηδαλιουχεῖν τε καὶ κυβερνᾶν. Εἰ δὲ σαφεῖ καὶ κατημαξευμένῳ
69P λόγῳ καὶ οἷον εἰκῇ ρέοντι πεζῷ καὶ ἀπλοῖκῳ πρὸς τὴν τῶν | προκειμένων
ἐχρησάμην δῆλωσιν, μηδὲν θαυμάσης, υἱέ. Οὐ γὰρ ἐπίδειξιν καλλιγρα- 10
φίας ἢ φράσεως ἡττικισμένης καὶ τὸ διηρμένον διογκούσης καὶ ὑψηλὸν
ποιῆσαι ἐσπούδασα, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον διὰ κοινῆς καὶ καθωμιλημένης ἀπαγ-
γελίας διδάξαι σοι ἔσπευσα, ἅπερ οἶομαι δεῖν σε μὴ ἀγνοεῖν, καὶ ἃ τὴν
ἐκ μακρᾶς ἐμπειρίας σύνεσίν τε καὶ φρόνησιν εὐμαρῶς σοι δύνатаι
προξενεῖν. 15

Ῥπολαμβάνω γὰρ κατὰ πολὺ συμφέρειν αἰεὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων
εἰρήνην ἐθέλειν ἔχειν μετὰ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ φιλικὰς
πρὸς αὐτοὺς ποιεῖσθαι συνθήκας τε καὶ σπονδὰς καὶ ἀποστέλλειν καθ'
ἕκαστον χρόνον ἐντεῦθεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς ἀποκρισιάριον μετὰ ξενίων ἁρμο-
69P ζόντων | καὶ πρὸς τὸ ἔθνος ἐπιτηδεῖων καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι ἐκεῖθεν 20
ὁμήρους, ἥτοι ὀψιδας καὶ ἀποκρισιάριον, οἵτινες ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ
ταύτῃ πόλει μετὰ τοῦ καθυπουργοῦντος εἰς ταῦτα συνελεύσονται, καὶ
βασιλικῶν εὐεργεσιῶν καὶ φιλοτιμιῶν τῶν ἐπαξίων πάντων τοῦ βασι-
λεύοντος ἀπολαύσουσιν.

Ὅτι γειτνιάζει τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν τῷ μέρει 25
τῆς Χερσῶνος, καὶ εἰ μὴ φιλίῳς ἔχουσι πρὸς ἡμᾶς, δύνανται κατὰ τῆς
Χερσῶνος ἐξέρχεσθαι καὶ κουρσεύειν καὶ ληΐζεσθαι αὐτὴν τε τὴν Χερ-
σῶνα καὶ τὰ λεγόμενα κλίματα.

69Be 2. Περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ τῶν Ῥῶς.

Ὅτι καὶ τοῖς Ῥῶς οἱ Πατζινακῖται γείτονες καὶ ὅμοροι καθε-
70P στήκασιν, καὶ πολλάκις, ὅταν μὴ πρὸς ἀλ[λ]ήλους εἰρηνεύουσι, πραιδεύουσι
τὴν Ῥωσίαν, καὶ ἱκανῶς αὐτὴν παραβλάπτουσι καὶ λυμαίνονται.

Ὅτι καὶ οἱ Ῥῶς διὰ σπουδῆς ἔχουσιν εἰρήνην ἔχειν μετὰ τῶν 5

F 1. 4 Ἀκουσον — ἀγνοεῖν: cf. Prov. 1, 8; De cerim., ed. Bonn. p.
456, 3—4. 5 νοήμων — κυβέρνησιν Prov. 1, 5. 8 Εἰ δὲ —

13 ἔσπευσα: cf. De cerim., ed. Bonn. p. 5, 2—4. = ed. Vogt I. p. 2, 15 — 17.

1, 2

1. Of the Pechenegs, and how many advantages accrue from their being at peace with the emperor of the Romans.

Hear now, my son, those things of which I think you *should* not be ignorant, and be wise that you may attain to government. For I maintain that while learning is a good thing for all the rest as well, who are subjects, yet it is especially so for you, who are bound to take thought for the safety of all, and to steer and guide the laden ship of the world. And if in setting out my subject I have followed the plain and beaten track of speech and, so to say, idly running and simple prose, do not wonder at that, my son. For I have not been studious to make a display of fine writing or of an Atticizing style, swollen with the sublime and lofty, but rather have been eager by means of every-day and conversational narrative to teach you those things of which I think you should not be ignorant, and which may without difficulty provide that intelligence and prudence which are the fruit of long experience.

I conceive, then, that it is always greatly to the advantage of the emperor of the Romans to be minded to keep the peace with the nation of the Pechenegs and to conclude conventions and treaties of friendship with them and to send every year to them from our side a diplomatic agent with presents befitting and suitable to that nation, and to take from their side sureties, that is, hostages and a diplomatic agent, who shall be collected together under charge of the competent minister in this city protected of God, and shall enjoy all imperial benefits and gifts suitable for the emperor to bestow.

This nation of the Pechenegs is neighbour to the district of Cherson, and if they are not friendly disposed towards us, they may make excursions and plundering raids against Cherson, and may ravage Cherson itself and the so-called Regions.

2. Of the Pechenegs and the Russians.

The Pechenegs are neighbours to and march with the Russians also, and often, when the two are not at peace with one another, raid Russia, and do her considerable harm and outrage.

The Russians also are much concerned to keep the peace with the

V 1. 4 δειν *add.* Moravesik || 6 τῷ V *edd.*: τὸ P || 11 διηρημένον V
διηρημένον Me || ὀφηλοῦ Meursius Ba Be || 12 καθομηλιμένης P || 13 σοι:
σε V *edd.* || 21 ὄψηδας P || 28 κλήματα P.
2. 2 Πατρίωναι P ||

Πατζινακιτῶν. Ἀγοράζουσι γὰρ ἐξ αὐτῶν βόας καὶ ἵππους καὶ πρόβατα, καὶ ἐκ τούτων εὐμαρέστερον διαζῶσι καὶ τρυφερώτερον, ἐπεὶ μὴδὲν τῶν προειρημένων ζώων ἐν τῇ Ῥωσίᾳ καθέστηκεν. Ἄλλ' οὐδὲ πρὸς ὑπερορίους πολέμους ἀτέρχεσθαι δύνανται ὅλως οἱ Ῥῶς, εἰ μὴ μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντες, διότι δύνανται — ἐν τῷ ἐκείνους τῶν οἰκείων 10 ὑποχωρεῖν — αὐτοὶ ἐπερχόμενοι τὰ ἐκείνων ἀφανίζειν τε καὶ λυμαίνεσθαι. Διὸ μᾶλλον αἰεὶ σπουδὴν οἱ Ῥῶς τίθενται — διὰ τε τὸ μὴ παραβλάπτεσθαι 7^{VP} παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ διὰ τὸ ἰσχυρὸν εἶναι τὸ τοιοῦτον ἔθνος — συμμαχίαν παρ' αὐτῶν λαμβάνειν καὶ ἔχειν αὐτοὺς εἰς βοήθειαν, ὥς ἂν καὶ τῆς ἔχθρας αὐτῶν ἀπαλλάττωνται καὶ τῆς βοήθειας καταπολαύουσιν. 15

Ὅτι οὐδὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ταύτην τῶν Ῥωμαίων πόλιν οἱ Ῥῶς παραγίνεσθαι δύνανται, εἰ μὴ μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντες, οὔτε πολέμου χάριν, οὔτε πραγματείας, ἐπειδὴ — ἐν τῷ μετὰ τῶν πλοίων εἰς τοὺς φραγμοὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ γίνεσθαι τοὺς Ῥῶς καὶ μὴ δύνασθαι διελθεῖν, εἰ μὴ ἐξαγάγῃσι τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰ πλοῖα αὐτῶν, καὶ 20 70Be ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων βαστάζοντες διαβάσωσιν, — ἐπιτίθενται τότε αὐτοῖς 8^{VP} οἱ τοῦ τοιοῦτου ἔθνους τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν, καὶ ῥαδίως, ἅτε πρὸς δύο πόνους ἀντέχειν μὴ δύνανται, τροποῦνται καὶ κατασφάζονται.

3. Περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Τούρκων.

Ὅτι καὶ τὸ τῶν Τούρκων γένος μεγάλως πτοεῖται καὶ δέδide τοὺς εἰρηνένους Πατζινακίτας διὰ τὸ πολλάκις ἡττηθῆναι παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ τελείως σχεδὸν παραδοθῆναι ἀφανισμῷ. Καὶ διὰ τοῦτο αἰεὶ φοβεροὶ τοῖς Τούρκοις οἱ Πατζινακῖται νομίζονται, καὶ συστέλλονται ἀπ' αὐτῶν. 5

4. Περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Ῥῶς καὶ Τούρκων.

Ὅτι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύοντος, οὔτε <οἱ> Ῥῶς πολέμου νόμῳ κατὰ τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἐπικρατείας, 8^{VP} οὔτε οἱ Τούρκοι δύνανται ἐπελθεῖν, ἀλλ' οὔτε ὑπὲρ τῆς εἰρήνης μεγάλα 5 καὶ ὑπέρογκα χρήματά τε καὶ πράγματα παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων δύνανται ἀπαιτεῖν, δεδιότες τὴν διὰ τοῦ τοιοῦτου ἔθνους παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κατ' αὐτῶν ἰσχὺν ἐν τῷ ἐκείνους κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐκστρατεῖν. Οἱ <γὰρ> Πατζινακῖται, καὶ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα φιλίᾳ συνδούμενοι καὶ παρ' ἐκείνου διὰ γραμμάτων καὶ δώρων ἀναπειθόμενοι, δύνανται ῥαδίως 10

2, 3, 4

Pechenegs. For they buy of them horned cattle and horses and sheep, whereby they live more easily and comfortably, since none of the aforesaid animals is found in Russia. Moreover, the Russians are quite unable to set out for wars beyond their borders unless they are at peace with the Pechenegs, because while they are away from their homes, these may come upon them and destroy and outrage their property. And so the Russians, both to avoid being harmed by them and because of the strength of that nation, are the more concerned always to be in alliance with them and to have them for support, so as both to be rid of their enmity and to enjoy the advantage of their assistance.

Nor can the Russians come at this imperial city of the Romans, either for war or for trade, unless they are at peace with the Pechenegs, because when the Russians come with their ships to the barrages of the river and cannot pass through unless they lift their ships off the river and carry them past by portaging them on their shoulders, then the men of this nation of the Pechenegs set upon them, and, as they cannot do two things at once, they are easily routed and cut to pieces.

3. Of the Pechenegs and Turks.

The tribe of the Turks, too, trembles greatly at and fears the said Pechenegs, because they have often been defeated by them and brought to the verge of complete annihilation. Therefore the Turks always look on the Pechenegs with dread, and are held in check by them.

4. Of the Pechenegs and Russians and Turks.

So long as the emperor of the Romans is at peace with the Pechenegs, neither Russians nor Turks can come upon the Roman dominions by force of arms, nor can they exact from the Romans large and inflated sums in money and goods as the price of peace, for they fear the strength of this nation which the emperor can turn against them while they are campaigning against the Romans. For the Pechenegs, if they are leagued in friendship with the emperor and won over by him through letters and gifts, can easily

3. 5 Πατρίναίται Be Πατρίναίται F¹ Me Ba: Πατρίνάται P || ἀπ': ὅπ' edd.

4. 4 oi add. Jenkins || 5 Τούρκοι P || 8 post τοῦτον punctum posuerunt P V Me Ba Migne || post ἐκστρατεύειν punctum posuerunt P V F Be comma posuerunt Ba Migne || 9 γὰρ add. Moravcsik: δὲ add. F¹ Be || Πατρίναίται P.

κατὰ τῆς χώρας τῶν τε Ῥῶς καὶ τῶν Τούρκων ἐπέρχεσθαι καὶ ἐξανδραποδίζεισθαι τὰ τούτων γύναια καὶ παιδάρια καὶ ληΐζεσθαι τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν.

71Be

δ. Περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ τῶν

Βουλγάρων.

“Ὅτι καὶ τοῖς Βουλγάροις φοβερώτερος ἂν εἶναι δόξειεν ὁ τῶν
 9^oP Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς, καὶ ἀνάγκην ἡσυχίας ἐπιτιθέναι τούτοις δύναται
 ἐκ τοῦ μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν εἰρηνεύειν, ἐπειδὴ καὶ πρὸς αὐτούς 5
 τοὺς Βουλγάρους οἱ εἰρημένοι Πατζινακιταὶ πλησιάζουσιν, καὶ ἡνίκα
 βουλθῶσιν, ἢ δι’ οἰκτεῖον κέρδος ἢ τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
 χάριτι εὐχερῶς δύνανται κατὰ Βουλγαρίας ἐκστρατεῦειν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ
 περιόντος πλήθους καὶ τῆς ἰσχύος αὐτῶν ὑπερνικᾶν αὐτούς καὶ ἡττᾶν.
 Διὰ τοῦτο καὶ οἱ Βούλγαροι ἀγῶνα καὶ σπουδὴν διηνεκῶς ἔχουσι τοῦ 10
 εἰρηνεύειν καὶ ὁμονοεῖν μετὰ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν. Ἐκ τοῦ γὰρ πολλάκις
 ὑπ’ αὐτῶν καταπολεμηθῆναι καὶ πραιδευθῆναι τῇ πείρᾳ ἐγνώκασιν
 9^oP καλὸν καὶ συμφέρον εἶναι τὸ εἰρηνεύειν αἰεὶ πρὸς αὐτούς.

6. Περὶ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν καὶ Χερσωνιτῶν.

“Ὅτι καὶ ἕτερος λαὸς τῶν τοιούτων Πατζινακιτῶν τῷ μέρει
 τῆς Χερσῶνος παράκεινται, οἵτινες καὶ πραγματεύονται μετὰ τῶν
 Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ ποιοῦσι τὰς δουλείας αὐτῶν τε καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς
 τε τὴν Ῥωσίαν καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ τὴν Ζιχίαν καὶ εἰς πάντα τὰ ἐκείθεν 5
 μέρη, δηλονότι λαμβάνοντες παρὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν τὸν προσυμπεφωνη-
 72Be μένον μισθὸν ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης διακονίας κατὰ τὸ | ἀνήκον τῆς δουλείας
 καὶ τοῦ κόπου αὐτῶν, οἷον βλαττία, πράνδια, χαρέρια, σημέντα, πέπεριν,
 10^oP δερμάτια ἀληθινὰ Πάρ|θικα καὶ ἕτερα εἶδη τὰ ὑπ’ αὐτῶν ἐπιζητούμενα,
 καθὼς ἂν ἕκαστος Χερσωνίτης ἕκαστον Πατζινακίτην πείσῃ συμφωνῶν 10
 ἢ πεισθῇ. Ἐλεύθεροι γὰρ ὄντες καὶ οἷον αὐτόνομοι οἱ τοιοῦτοι Πατζινακι-
 ται οὐδεμίαν δουλείαν ἄνευ μισθοῦ ποιοῦσιν ποτε.

F 6. 8 οἷον — 9 ἐπιζητούμενα cf. Eparch. bibl. IX. 6., ed. I. et P. Zepos, *Jus Graecoromanum* II. p. 382.
 9 Πάρθικα: cf. Ioannes Lydus, *De magistr.* II. 13., ed. Wuensch p. 68, 23—24.

come upon the country both of the Russians and of the Turks, and enslave their women and children and ravage their country.

5. Of the Pechenegs and the Bulgarians.

To the Bulgarians also the emperor of the Romans will appear more formidable, and can impose on them the need for tranquillity, if he is at peace with the Pechenegs, because the said Pechenegs are neighbours to these Bulgarians also, and when they wish, either for private gain or to do a favour to the emperor of the Romans, they can easily march against Bulgaria, and with their preponderating multitude and their strength overwhelm and defeat them. And so the Bulgarians also continually struggle and strive to maintain peace and harmony with the Pechenegs. For from having frequently been crushingly defeated and plundered by them, they have learned by experience the value and advantage of being always at peace with them.

6. Of the Pechenegs and Chersonites.

Yet another folk of these Pechenegs lies over against the district of Cherson; they trade with the Chersonites, and perform services for them and for the emperor in Russia and Chazaria and Zichia and all the parts beyond: that is to say, they receive from the Chersonites a prearranged remuneration in respect of this service proportionate to their labour and trouble, in the form of pieces of purple cloth, ribbons, loosely woven cloths, gold brocade, pepper, scarlet or «Parthian» leather, and other commodities which they require, according to a contract which each Chersonite may make or agree to with an individual Pecheneg. For these Pechenegs are free men and, so to say, independent, and never perform any service without remuneration.

V 5. 1 τῶν³ om. V edd. || 6 Πατριναιίται P.
 6. 1 Χερσωνίτων P || 4 Χερσωνίτων P || 6 Χερσωνίτων P || 8 χεράρια
 Meursius || σήμεντα edd. || πέπερι Ba Be || 9 post ἀληθινὰ et πάρδιχα punctum
 posuit P Πάρδιχα scr. Moravesik Παρθικά conī. Bekker Šestakov: πάρδιχα
 P edd. || 11/2 Πατριναιίται P.

7. Περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος ἀποστελλομένων
 βασιλικῶν ἐν Πατζινακίᾳ.

Ἔστιν ἡνίκα περάσῃ βασιλικὸς εἰς Χερσῶνα ἕνεκα τῆς τοιαύτης
 διακονίας, ὀφείλει εὐθύς ἀποστέλλειν εἰς Πατζινακίαν καὶ ἐπιζητεῖν
 ὄψιδας παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ διασώστας, καὶ ἐρχομένων αὐτῶν, τοὺς μὲν 5
 ὄψιδας εἰς τὸ κάστρον Χερσῶνος κρατουμένους καταλιμπάνειν, αὐτοὺς
 10^ν P δὲ μετὰ | τῶν διασωστῶν πρὸς Πατζινακίαν ἀπέρχεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἐντε-
 ταλμένα ἐπιτελεῖν. Οἱ δὲ τοιοῦτοι Πατζινακῖται ἀπληστοὶ ὄντες καὶ
 τῶν παρ' αὐτοῖς σπανίων ὀξεῖς ἐπιθυμηταὶ ἀνέδην ἐπιζητοῦσιν ξενάλια
 ἱκανά, οἱ μὲν ὄψιδες ἄλλα μὲν λόγῳ αὐτῶν καὶ ἄλλα λόγῳ τῶν αὐτῶν 10
 γυναικῶν, οἱ δὲ ἀποσῶνται τὰ μὲν ὑπὲρ τοῦ κόπου αὐτῶν, τὰ δὲ ὑπὲρ
 τοῦ κόπου τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτῶν. Εἴτα, εἰσερχομένου τοῦ βασιλικοῦ εἰς
 τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν, ζητοῦσι πρότερον τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως δῶρα, καὶ πάλιν,
 ὅτε κορέσουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους αὐτῶν, ζητοῦσι τὰ τῶν γυναικῶν αὐτῶν
 καὶ τῶν γονέων αὐτῶν. Ἄλλα καὶ ὅσοι ἐν τῷ ἀποσῶζειν αὐτὸν ὑποστρέ- 15
 73B^o | φοντα πρὸς Χερσῶνα κατέλθωσι | μετ' αὐτοῦ, ζητοῦσι παρ' αὐτοῦ
 11^ν P | βογευθῆναι διὰ τὸν κόπον αὐτῶν τε καὶ τῶν ἀλόγων αὐτῶν.

8. Περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς Θεοφυλάκτου πόλεως ἀπο-
 στελλομένων βασιλικῶν μετὰ χελανδίων διὰ τε
 τοῦ Δανουβίου καὶ Δάναπρι καὶ Δάναστρι
 ποταμοῦ ἐν Πατζινακίᾳ.

Ἔστι καὶ εἰς τὸ μέρος τῆς Βουλγαρίας καθέζεται λαὸς τῶν Πατζι- 5
 νακῖτῶν, ἐπὶ τὸ μέρος τοῦ Δάναπρι καὶ τοῦ Δάναστρι καὶ τῶν ἐτέρων
 τῶν ἐκεῖσε ὄντων ποταμῶν. Καὶ βασιλικοῦ ἀποστελλομένου ἐντεῦθεν
 μετὰ χελανδίων, δύναται καὶ χωρὶς τοῦ εἰς Χερσῶνα ἀπελθεῖν ἐνταῦθα
 11^ν P συντόμως καὶ ταχέως εὐρίσκειν τοὺς αὐτοὺς | Πατζινακίτας, οὓς καὶ
 εὐρὼν μηνύει διὰ ἀνθρώπου αὐτοῦ ὁ βασιλικός, ἐντὸς τῶν χελανδίων 10
 μένων καὶ μεθ' αὐτοῦ τὰ βασιλικά ἐπιφερόμενος καὶ φυλάττων ἐν τοῖς
 χελανδίοις πράγματα. Καὶ κατέρχονται πρὸς αὐτόν, καὶ ὅτε κατέλθωσιν,
 δίδωσι πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλικὸς ἀνθρώπους αὐτοῦ ὄψιδας, καὶ λαμβάνει
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων Πατζινακῖτῶν ἑτέρους ὄψιδας, καὶ κρατεῖ
 αὐτοὺς εἰς τὰ χελάνδια, καὶ τότε συμφωνεῖ μετ' αὐτῶν καὶ ὅτε 15

V 7. 1/2 τῶν ἀποστελλομένων βασιλικῶν ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος V edd. || 5 ὄψιδας
 P || 8 Πατζινακῖται P || 9 σπανίων P || ἀνάδην P edd. || 14 κορέσουσι
versionem Laskin secutus coní. Moravcsik: χωρήσουσι P χωρίσουσι coní.
 Kukules.

7. Of the dispatch of imperial agents from Cherson to Patzinacia.

When an imperial agent goes over to Cherson on this service, he must at once send to Patzinacia and demand of them hostages and an escort, and on their arrival he must leave the hostages under guard in the city of Cherson, and himself go off with the escort to Patzinacia and carry out his instructions. Now these Pechenegs, who are ravenous and keenly covetous of articles rare among them, are shameless in their demands for generous gifts, the hostages demanding this for themselves and that for their wives, and the escort something for their own trouble and some more for the wear and tear of their cattle. Then, when the imperial agent enters their country, they first ask for the emperor's gifts, and then again, when these have glutted the menfolk, they ask for the presents for their wives and parents. Also, all who come with him to escort him on his way back to Cherson demand payment from him for their trouble and the wear and tear of their cattle.

8. Of the dispatch of imperial agents with ships of war from the city protected of God to Patzi- nacia along the Danube and Dnieper and Dniester river.

In the region of Bulgaria also is settled a folk of the Pechenegs, toward the region of the Dnieper and the Dniester and the other rivers of those parts. And when an imperial agent is dispatched from here with ships of war, he may, without going to Cherson, shortly and swiftly find these same Pechenegs here; and when he has found them, the imperial agent sends a message to them by his man, himself remaining on board the ships of war, carrying along with him and guarding in the ships of war the imperial goods. And they come down to him, and when they come down, the imperial agent gives them hostages of his men, and himself takes other hostages of these Pechenegs, and holds them in the ships of war, and then he makes

ποιήσουσιν οἱ Πατζινακῖται πρὸς τὸν βασιλικὸν τοὺς ὄρκους κατὰ τὰ
 12^rP ζάκανα αὐτῶν, ἐπιδίδωσιν αὐτοῖς τὰς βασιλικὰς δωρεάς, καὶ ἀναλαμβάνεται φίλους ἐξ αὐτῶν, ὅσους βούλεται, καὶ ὑποστρέφει. Οὐτῶ δὲ χρή συμφωνεῖν μετ' αὐτῶν, ὥστε, ὅπου ἂν χρεωποιηθῇ αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς, ποιήσῃσι δουλείαν, εἴτε εἰς τοὺς Ῥῶς, εἴτε εἰς τοὺς Βουλγάρους, εἴτε 20
 74^{Be} καὶ εἰς τοὺς Τούρκους. Εἰσὶ γὰρ δυνατοὶ | τοῦ πάντας τούτους πολεμεῖν, καὶ πολλάκις κατ' αὐτῶν ἐλθόντες, φοβεροὶ νῦν καθεστήκασιν. Καὶ τοῦτο δῆλον καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐστίν. Τοῦ γὰρ κληρικοῦ Γαβριήλ ποτε πρὸς τοὺς Τούρκους ἀποσταλέντος ἀπὸ κελεύσεως βασιλικῆς καὶ πρὸς αὐτοὺς εἰπόντος, ὅτι· «Ὁ βασιλεὺς δηλοποιεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀπελθεῖν καὶ ἀποδιῶξαι 25
 12^rP τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἀπὸ | τοῦ τόπου αὐτῶν καὶ καθεσθῆναι ὑμᾶς (ὅμεις γὰρ καὶ πρότερον ἐκεῖσε ἐκαθέζεσθε) πρὸς τὸ εἶναι πλησίον τῆς βασιλείας μου, καὶ ὅτε θέλω, ἀποστέλλω, καὶ ἐν τάχει εὐρίσκω ὑμᾶς», πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν Τούρκων μιᾷ φωνῇ ἐξεβόησαν, ὅτι· «Ἡμεῖς μετὰ τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἑαυτοὺς οὐ βάλλομεν· οὐ γὰρ δυνάμεθα πολε- 30
 μεῖν πρὸς αὐτοὺς, ὅτι καὶ χώρα μεγάλη καὶ λαὸς πολὺς καὶ κακὰ παιδιά εἰσὶ· καὶ τοῦ λοιποῦ τὸν λόγον τοῦτον πρὸς ἡμᾶς μὴ εἰπῆς· οὐ γὰρ ἀγαπῶμεν αὐτόν.»

Ὅτι καὶ οἱ Πατζινακῖται ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ μετὰ τὸ ἔαρ διέρχονται, καὶ αἰ ἐκεῖσε καλοκαιρίζουσιν. 35

13^rP 9. Περὶ τῶν ἀπὸ Ῥωσίας ἐρχομένων ἐν Ῥῶς μετὰ τῶν μονοξύλων ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει.

Ὅτι τὰ ἀπὸ τῆς ἑξῶ Ῥωσίας μονόξυλα κατερχόμενα ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει εἰσὶ μὲν ἀπὸ τοῦ Νεμογαρδάς, ἐν ᾧ Σφενδοσθαλάρος, ὁ υἱὸς Ἰγγωρ, τοῦ ἄρχοντος Ῥωσίας, ἐκαθέζετο, εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἀπὸ τῶ 5
 κάστρον τὴν Μιλινίσκην καὶ ἀπὸ Τελιούτζαν καὶ Τζερνιγῶγαν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ Βουσεγραδέ. Ταῦτα οὖν ἅπαντα διὰ τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατέρχονται
 75^{Be} Δανάπρεως, καὶ ἐπισυνάγονται εἰς τὸ κάστρον | τὸ Κιοάβα, τὸ ἐπωνομαζόμενον Σαμβατάς. Οἱ δὲ Σκλάβοι, οἱ πακτιῶται αὐτῶν, οἱ Κριβηταιη-
 13^vP νοὶ λεγόμενοι, καὶ οἱ Λενζανῆνοι καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ | Σκλαβηναὶ εἰς τὰ ἔρη 10
 αὐτῶν κόπτουσι τὰ μονόξυλα ἐν τῷ τοῦ χειμῶνος καιρῷ, καὶ καταρτίσαντες αὐτά, τοῦ καιροῦ ἀνοιγομένου, ἡνίκα διαλυθῇ ὁ παγετός, εἰς τὰς πλησίον οὐσας λίμνας εἰσάγουσιν αὐτά. Καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἐκεῖναι εἰσβάλλουσιν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Δάναπριν, ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε οὗτοι εἰς τὸν

V 16 Πατζινακῖται P || 34 Πατζινακῖται P.

9. 1 ante Ῥωσίας *add.* τῆς *edd.* || 4 Νεμογαρδάς: Νεογαρδα (*sine acc.*) *coni.* Bayer Νεούγαρδα (*sic*) *coni.* Rački Νεβογαρδάς *coni.* Bury Obolensky Νεογαρδάς Kukulcs ||

agreement with them; and when the Pechenegs have taken their oaths to the imperial agent according to their 'zakana', he presents them with the imperial gifts, and takes from among them as many 'friends' as he sees fit, and returns. Agreement must be made with them on this condition, that wherever the emperor calls upon them, they are to serve him, whether against the Russians, or against the Bulgarians, or again against the Turks. For they are able to make war upon all these, and as they have often come against them, are now regarded by them with dread. And this is clear from what follows. For once when the cleric Gabriel was dispatched by imperial mandate to the Turks and said to them, «The emperor declares that you are to go and expel the Pechenegs from their place and settle yourselves there (for in former days you used to be settled there yourselves) so that you may be near to my imperial majesty, and when I wish, I may send and find you speedily», then all the chief men of the Turks cried aloud with one voice, «We are not putting ourselves on the track of the Pechenegs; for we cannot fight them, because their country is great and their people numerous and they are the devil's brats; and do not say this to us again; for we do not like it!»

When spring is over, the Pechenegs cross to the far side of the Dnieper river, and always pass the summer there.

9. Of the coming of the Russians in 'monoxyla' from Russia to Constantinople.

The 'monoxyla' which come down from outer Russia to Constantinople are from Novgorod, where Sviatoslav, son of Igor, prince of Russia, had his seat, and others from the city of Smolensk and from Teliutza and Chernigov and from Vyshegrad. All these come down the river Dnieper, and are collected together at the city of Kiev, also called Sambatas. Their Slav tributaries, the so-called Krivichians and the Lenzanenes and the rest of the Slavonic regions, cut the 'monoxyla' on their mountains in time of winter, and when they have prepared them, as spring approaches, and the ice melts, they bring them on to the neighbouring lakes. And since these lakes debouch into the river Dnieper, they enter thence on to this same

6 Μιλινίσκαν; <Σ>μιλινίσκαν *coni.* Rački || Τελιούτζαν: τε Λιούτζαν *coni.* Šafarik Manojlović τε Λιού<β>τζαν *coni.* Rački || Τζεργινώγαν V *edd.* Τζεργινώγαν *coni.* Rački || 8 εις (*etiam* Bandurinus): ἐπι *edd.* || 10 οἱ λοιποὶ Σκλαβίνιοι *edd.* || Σκλαβινία P || 11/2 καταρτήσαντες P *edd.* || 12 αὐτὰ *corr.* Moravcsik: αὐτῶν P *edd.* || 13 ἐκεῖνα *edd.* || 14 τὸν¹ *om.* *edd.* ||

αὐτὸν ποταμὸν εἰσέρχονται, καὶ ἀπέρχονται εἰς τὸν Κίρβα, καὶ σύρουσιν 15
εἰς τὴν ἐξάρτισιν, καὶ ἀπεμπολοῦσιν αὐτὰ εἰς τοὺς Ῥῶς. Οἱ δὲ Ῥῶς
σκαφίδια καὶ μόνα ταῦτα ἀγοράζοντες, τὰ παλαιὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα
καταλόντες, ἐξ αὐτῶν βάλλουσιν πέλλας καὶ σκαρμούς εἰς αὐτὰ καὶ

14^P λοιπὰς | χρεῖας * * * ἐξοπλίζουσιν αὐτά. Καὶ Ἰουνίου μηνὸς διὰ τοῦ
ποταμοῦ Δανάπρεως ἀποκινουῦντες, κατέρχονται εἰς τὸ Βιτετζέβη, 20
ὅπερ ἐστὶ πακτιωτικὸν κάστρον τῶν Ῥῶς, καὶ συναθροιζόμενοι ἐκεῖσε
μέχρι δύο καὶ τριῶν ἡμερῶν, ἥνικα ἂν ἅπαντα ἀποσυναχθῶσι τὰ μονό-
ξυλα, τότε ἀποκινουῦσιν, καὶ κατέρχονται διὰ τοῦ εἰρημένου Δανάπρεως
ποταμοῦ. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον φραγμὸν, τὸν ἐπονο-
μαζόμενον Ἑσσοῦπῃ, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται Ῥωσιστὶ καὶ Σκλαβηνιστὶ 'μὴ κοιμᾶ- 25
σαι'· ὃ δὲ τούτου φραγμὸς τοσοῦτόν ἐστιν στενός, ὅσον τὸ πλάτος τοῦ

14^P τζυκανιστηρίου· μέσον δὲ αὐτοῦ πέτραι εἰσὶ ριζιμαῖαι | ὕψηλαὶ νησιῶν
76^{Be} δίκην ἀποφαινόμεναι. Πρὸς αὐτάς οὖν ἐρχόμενον τὸ ὕδωρ καὶ | πλημμυ-
ροῦν κάκειθεν ἀποκρημνιζόμενον πρὸς τὸ κάτω μέρος ἤχον μέγαν καὶ
φόβον ἀποτελεῖ. Καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μέσον αὐτῶν οὐ τολμῶσιν οἱ Ῥῶς διελ- 30
θεῖν, ἀλλὰ πλησίον σκαλῶσαντες καὶ τοὺς μὲν ἀνθρώπους ἐκβαλόντες
εἰς τὴν ξηράν, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ πράγματα ἐάσαντες εἰς τὰ μονόξυλα, εἰθ'
οὕτως γυμνοὶ τοῖς ποσὶν αὐτῶν ψηλαφοῦντες * * *, ἵνα μὴ τινι λίθῳ
προσκραύσωσιν. Τοῦτο δὲ ποιοῦσιν οἱ μὲν πλώρα, οἱ δὲ μέσον, οἱ δὲ
καὶ εἰς τὴν πρύμναν μετὰ κονταρίων κοντοβευόμενοι, καὶ μετὰ τοιαύτης 35
ἀπάσης ἀκριβείας διέρχονται τὸν τοιοῦτον πρῶτον φραγμὸν διὰ τῆς

15^P γωνίας καὶ τῆς δ'αῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Ἡνίκα δὲ διέλθωσι | τὸν τοιοῦτον
φραγμὸν, πάλιν ἀπὸ τῆς ξηρᾶς ἀναλαμβανόμενοι τοὺς λοιποὺς ἀπο-
πλέουσι, καὶ κατέρχονται εἰς τὸν ἕτερον φραγμὸν, τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον
Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν Οὐλβορσί, Σκλαβηνιστὶ δὲ Ὅστροβουνιπράχ, ὅπερ ἐρμη- 40
νεύεται 'τὸ νησίον τοῦ φραγμοῦ'. Ἔστιν κάκεινος ὅμοιος τῷ πρώτῳ,
χαλεπός τε καὶ δυσδιέξοδος. Καὶ πάλιν ἐκβαλόντες τὸν λαὸν διαβιβάζουσι
τὰ μονόξυλα, καθὼς καὶ πρότερον. Ὁμοίως δὲ διέρχονται καὶ τὸν τρίτον
φραγμὸν, τὸν λεγόμενον Γελανδρί, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται Σκλαβηνιστὶ 'ἥχος
φραγμοῦ', εἰθ' οὕτως τὸν τέταρτον φραγμὸν, τὸν μέγαν, τὸν ἐπιλεγόμε- 45
νον Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν Ἀειφόρ, Σκλαβηνιστὶ δὲ Νεασήτ, διότι φωλεούουσιν
οἱ πελεκᾶνοι εἰς τὰ λιθάρια τοῦ φραγμοῦ. Ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ φραγμῷ
15^{vP} σκαλῶνουσιν ἅπαντα | εἰς τὴν γῆν ὀρθόπλωρα, καὶ ἐξέρχονται οἱ ὠρι-

V 15 τὸν: τὸ Meursius Ba Be || Κίρβα edd. || 16 ἐξάρτησιν P edd. || 18 ante
πέλλας add. καὶ edd. || 19 lac. ind. Moravcsik καὶ οὕτως addendum con. Bek-
ker || 24/5 τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ῥωσιστὶ <μὲν...>, Σκλαβηνιστὶ <δὲ> Νεσσοῦπῃ, ὃ
ἐρμηνεύεται con. Kunik *aliquid excidisse susp.* Thomsen || 25 Ἑσσοῦπῃ: Νεσσοῦπῃ
con. Bandurius Νεσσοῦπῃ con. Bayer Thunmann Safarik Kunik Gedeonov
Thomsen Hruševskyj || Σκλαβηνιστῇ P || 25/6 κοιμᾶσαι (*etiam* Cobet):

river, and come down to Kiev, and draw *the ships* along to be finished and sell them to the Russians. The Russians buy these bottoms only, furnishing them with oars and rowlocks and other tackle from their old 'monoxyla', which they dismantle; *and so* they fit them out. And in the month of June they move off down the river Dnieper and come to Vitichev, which is a tributary city of the Russians, and there they gather during two or three days; and when all the 'monoxyla' are collected together, then they set out, and come down the said Dnieper river. And first they come to the first barrage, called Essoupi, which means in Russian and Slavonic 'Do not sleep!'; the barrage itself is as narrow as the width of the Polo-ground; in the middle of it are rooted high rocks, which stand out like islands. Against these, then, comes the water and wells up and dashes down over the other side, with a mighty and terrific din. Therefore the Russians do not venture to pass between them, but put in to the bank hard by, disembarking the men on to dry land leaving the rest of the goods on board the 'monoxyla'; they then strip and, feeling with their feet to avoid striking on a rock, ***. This they do, some at the prow, some amidships, while others again, in the stern, punt with poles; and with all this careful procedure they pass this first barrage, edging round under the river-bank. When they have passed this barrage, they re-embark the others from the dry land and sail away, and come down to the second barrage, called in Russian Oulvorsí, and in Slavonic Ostrovouniprach, which means 'the Island of the Barrage'. This one is like the first, awkward and not to be passed through. Once again they disembark the men and convey the 'monoxyla' past, as on the first occasion. Similarly they pass the third barrage also, called Gelandri, which means in Slavonic 'Noise of the Barrage', and then the fourth barrage, the big one, called in Russian Aefor, and in Slavonic Neasit, because the pelicans nest in the stones of the barrage. At this barrage all put into land prow foremost,

κοιμάσαι Me Ba κοιμάσθαι Be || 27 ῥιζημαῖαι P Me Ba Cobet: ῥιζικαῖαι Du Cange Be || 29 μέγαν edd.: μέγα P || 33 *lac. ind.* διέρχονται *vel* διαβάζουσιν *excidisse coniciens* Moravcsik σύρουσιν *coni.* Kyriakides σύρουσιν αὐτά *coni.* Dujčev || 34 Τοῦτο δὲ ποιοῦσιν: ταῦτα, ὁδοποιοῦσιν *coni.* Jenkins || πλώρα *coni.* Jenkins πλώρα P: πλώραν Ba Be πῶραν Meursius || 35 κοντοβευόμενοι: κοντοβολαόμενοι *vel* κοντευόμενοι *coni.* Meursius || 36 πῶτον V edd.: α' P || 40 Οὐλβωροι: Οὐλμωροι *seu* Οὐλμοροι *coni.* Thummann Οὐλμῶρες *coni.* Zeuss || Σκλαβινιστί P || 'Οστροβουνίπραχ edd. 'Οστροβονοῦ πράχ *coni.* Zeuss || 41 ὁμοίως P || 42 χαλεπῶς P || δυσδιέξοδος P¹ V¹ edd.: δισδιέξοδος P || 44 τὸν λεγόμενον ('Ῥωσιστὶ μὲν) Γελανδ(ρ)ι, Σκλαβινιστὶ <δὲ...>, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται *coni.* Kunik *aliquid excidisse susp.* Thomsen || Γελανδρι: Γελανδri *coni.* Kunik Gedeonov || 44/5 Σκλαβινιστὶ <σβόνετς ὃ ἐστι> ἦχος φραγμοῦ *coni.* Lehrberg || 45 τέταρτον V edd.: δ' P || μέγαν edd.: μέγα P || 46 'Αειφόρ (*etiam* V¹ F Cobet): 'Αειφάρ V edd. || Νεασήτ: Νεασήτ *coni.* Thomsen || 48 *post* ἅπαντα *add.* τὰ μονόξυλα τὰ V || ὀρθόπρωρα Meursius || 48/9 ὀρισμένοι (*sine acc.*) P ||

- σμένοι ἄνδρες φυλάττειν τὴν βίγλαν μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ ἀπέρχονται, καὶ τὰς βίγλας οὗτοι διὰ τοὺς Πατζινακίτας ἀγρόπῳως φυλάττουσιν. Οἱ δὲ 50
- 77Be λοιποὶ τὰ | πράγματα, ἅπερ ἔχουσιν εἰς τὰ μονόξυλα, ἀναλαμβάνοντες, τὰ ψυχάρια μετὰ τῶν ἀλύσεων διὰ τοῦ ξηροῦ αὐτὰ διαβιβάζουσι μίλια ἕξ, ἕως ἂν διέλθωσι τὸν φραγμόν. Εἰθ' οὕτως οἱ μὲν σύροντες, οἱ δὲ καὶ εἰς τοὺς ὤμους βαστάζοντες τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα εἰς τὸ τοῦ φραγμοῦ ἐκείθεν μέρος διαβιβάζουσιν· καὶ οὕτως ρίπτοντες αὐτὰ εἰς 55 τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ τὰ πετζιμένα αὐτῶν ἐμβλησκόμενοι, εἰσέρχονται,
- 16P καὶ αὖθις ἐναποπλέουσιν. Ἀπερχόμενοι δὲ εἰς τὸν πέμπτον φραγμόν, τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ῥωσιστί μὲν Βαρουφόρος, Σκλαβηνιστί δὲ Βουλνη-πράχ, διότι μεγάλην λίμνην ἀποτελεῖ, πάλιν εἰς τὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ γωνίας τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα διαβιβάσαντες, καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὸν πρῶτον φραγμόν 60 καὶ δεύτερον, καταλαμβάνουσι τὸν ἕκτον φραγμόν, λεγόμενον μὲν Ῥωσιστί Λεάντι, Σκλαβηνιστί δὲ Βερούτζη, ὃ ἐστὶν 'βράσμα νεροῦ', καὶ διαβαίνουσι καὶ αὐτὸν ὁμοίως. Καὶ ἀπὸ τούτου ἀποπλέουσι καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἕβδομον φραγμόν, τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ῥωσιστί μὲν Στρούκου, Σκλαβηνιστί δὲ Ναπρεζή, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται 'μικρὸς φραγμός'. Καὶ διαβαί- 65 νουσιν εἰς τὸ λεγόμενον πέραμα τοῦ Κραρίου, ἐν ᾧ διαπερῶσιν ἀπὸ
- 16P Ῥωσίας οἱ Χερσωνῖται | καὶ οἱ Πατζινακίται ἐπὶ Χερσῶνα, ἔχον τὸ αὐτὸ πέραμα τὸ μὲν πλάτος, ὅσον τοῦ ἵπποδρομίου, τὸ δὲ ὕψος ἀπὸ κάτω ἕως ὅτου προκύπτουσιν ὕφαλοι, ὅσον καὶ φθάζειν σαγίτταν τοῦ τοξεύον- 70 τος ἔνθεν ἐκεῖσε. Ὅθεν καὶ εἰς τὸν τοιοῦτον τόπον κατέρχονται οἱ 70 Πατζινακίται, καὶ πολεμοῦσι τοὺς Ῥῶς. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ διελθεῖν τὸν
- 78Be τοιοῦτον τόπον τὴν νῆσον, τὴν ἐπιλεγομένην | ὃ Ἅγιος Γρηγόριος καταλαμβάνουσιν, ἐν ἣ νήσῳ καὶ τὰς θυσίας αὐτῶν ἐπιτελοῦσιν διὰ τὸ ἐκεῖσε ἱστασθαι παμμεγέθη δρυὲν, καὶ θύουσιν πετεινοὺς ζῶντας. Πηγ- 75 γνύουσιν δὲ καὶ σαγίττας γυρόθεν, ἄλλοι δὲ καὶ ψωμία καὶ κρέατα, καὶ 75 ἕξ ὧν ἔχει ἕκαστος, ὥς τὸ ἔθος αὐτῶν ἐπικρατεῖ. Ῥίπτουσι δὲ καὶ
- 17P σκαρφία περὶ τῶν πετεινῶν, εἴτε σφάζει αὐτούς, | εἴτε καὶ φαγεῖν, εἴτε καὶ ζῶντας ἔδωκεν αὐτούς. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ νησιῦ τούτου Πατζινακίτην οἱ Ῥῶς οὐ φοβοῦνται, ἕως ἂν φθάσωσιν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Σελινάν. Εἰθ' οὕτως ἀποκινοῦντες ἕξ αὐτοῦ μέχρι τεσσάρων ἡμερῶν ἀποπλέουσιν, 80 ἕως οὗ καταλάβωσιν εἰς τὴν λίμνην τοῦ ποταμοῦ στόμιον οὖσαν, ἐν ἣ ἐστὶν καὶ ἡ νῆσος τοῦ Ἁγίου Αἰθερίου. Καταλαβόντες οὖν οὗτοι τὴν τοιαύτην νῆσον, προσαναπαύουσιν ἑαυτοὺς ἐκεῖσε ἕως δύο καὶ τριῶν ἡμερῶν. Καὶ πάλιν τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα, εἰς ὅσας ἂν λῖπωνται χρεῖας, περιποιοῦνται, τὰ τε ἄρμενα καὶ τὰ κατάρτια καὶ τὰ ἀνέχνια, ἅπερ 85

and those who are deputed to keep the watch with them get out, and off they go, these men, and keep vigilant watch for the Pechenegs. The remainder, taking up the goods which they have on board the 'monoxyla', conduct the slaves in their chains past by land, six miles, until they are through the barrage. Then, partly dragging their 'monoxyla', partly portaging them on their shoulders, they convey them to the far side of the barrage; and then, putting them on the river and loading up their baggage, they embark themselves, and again sail off in them. When they come to the fifth barrage, called in Russian Varouforos, and in Slavonic Voulniprach, because it forms a large lake, they again convey their 'monoxyla' through at the edges of the river, as at the first and second barrages, and arrive at the sixth barrage, called in Russian Leanti, and in Slavonic Veroutzi, that is 'the Boiling of the Water', and this too they pass similarly. And thence they sail away to the seventh barrage, called in Russian Stroukoun, and in Slavonic Naprezi, which means 'Little Barrage'. This they pass at the so-called ford of *Vrar*, where the Chersonites cross over from Russia and the Pechenegs to Cherson; which ford is as wide as the Hippodrome, and, measured upstream from the bottom as far as the rocks break surface, a bow-shot in length. It is at this point, therefore, that the Pechenegs come down and attack the Russians. After traversing this place, they reach the island called St. Gregory, on which island they perform their sacrifices because a gigantic oak-tree stands there; and they sacrifice live cocks. Arrows, too, they peg in round about, and others bread and meat, or something of whatever each may have, as is their custom. They also throw lots regarding the cocks, whether to slaughter them, or to eat them as well, or to leave them alive. From this island onwards the Russians do not fear the Pecheneg until they reach the river Selinas. So then they start off thence and sail for four days, until they reach the lake which forms the mouth of the river, on which is the island of St. Aitherios. Arrived at this island, they rest themselves there for two or three days. And they re-equip their 'monoxyla' with such tackle as is needed, sails and masts and rudders, which they bring with them. Since this

V 51 ἀναλαβόμενοι V edd. || 57 πέμπτον edd.: ε' P || 58 Σκλαβινιστὶ P || 58/9 Βουλνιπράχ: Βολνουτὶ πράχ coni. Zeuss || 59 λίμνην: λίγην coni. Lehrberg Zeuss Thomsen Hruševskij || 61 ante δεύτερον add. εἰς τὸν V edd. || 62 Λεάντι: Λωάντι seu Λωάνδι coni. Zeuss || Σκλαβινιστὶ P || 64 ἐβδομον edd.: ζ' P || Στρούκου (etiam Cobet): Στρούβουν V edd. || 65 Σκλαβινιστὶ P || Ναστρεζή coni. Falk || 65/6 διαβαίνοντες Me Be διαβαίνονται Meursius Ba || 66 Κριαρίου coni. Vasmier Βραρίου coni. Falk || 67 Χερσωνίται P || Πατζινικάται P || 69 προκύπτουσιν ὕφαλοι coni. Jenkins: παρακύπτουσιν οἱ φίλοι P edd. || φίλοι: ὀφθαλμοί Ba || φθάνειν V edd. || 71 Πατζινικάται P || πολεμοῦσι V edd.: πολεμῶσι P || 77 εἰτε καὶ φαγεῖν εἰτε καὶ σφάζει αὐτούς V Me Ba || 78 αὐτούς (add. etiam Bandurius): om. V edd. || 79 οὐ om. Me || 82 Ἐθαιρίου P || 84 αὐτῶν: ἐαυτῶν V edd. || λήπωνται scr. Moravcsik λήπονται P: λείπωνται Be ||

ἐπιφέρονται. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ στόμιον τοῦ τοιούτου ποταμοῦ ἐστὶν ἡ τοιαύτη
 17^{VP} λίμνη, καθὼς εἴρηται, καὶ | κρατεῖ μέχρι τῆς θαλάσσης, καὶ πρὸς τὴν
 θάλασσαν κεῖται ἡ νῆσος τοῦ Ἁγίου Αἰθερίου, ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀπέρχονται
 πρὸς τὸν Δάναστριν ποταμὸν, καὶ διασωθέντες ἐκεῖσε πάλιν ἀναπαύον-
 ται. Ἡνίκα δὲ γένηται καιρὸς ἐπιτήδειος, ἀποσκαλῶσαντες ἔρχονται 90
 εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν ἐπιλεγόμενον Ἄσπρον, καὶ ὁμοίως κἀκεῖσε ἀνα-
 παυσάμενοι, πάλιν ἀποκινουῦντες ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν Σελινάν, εἰς τὸ τοῦ
 79^{Be} Σελινάν | ποταμὸν, παρατρέχουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Πατζινακίται. Καὶ ἂν
 πολλάκις ἡ θάλασσα μονόξυλον εἰς τὴν γῆν ἀπορρίψῃ, σκαλώνουσιν 95
 18^{FP} ὅλα, ἵνα τοῖς Πατζινακίταις ἀντιπαρα|ταχθῶσιν ὁμοῦ. Ἀπὸ δὲ τὸν
 Σελινάν οὐ φοβοῦνται τινα, ἀλλὰ τὴν τῆς Βουλγαρίας γῆν ἐνδυσάμενοι,
 εἰς τὸ τοῦ Δανουβίου στόμιον ἔρχονται. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανουβίου κατα-
 λαμβάνουσιν εἰς τὸν Κωνοπάν, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ Κωνοπά εἰς Κωνσταντίαν
 * * * εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν Βάρνας, καὶ ἀπὸ Βάρνας ἔρχονται εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν 100
 τὴν Διτζίναν, ἅπερ πάντα εἰσὶ γῆ τῆς Βουλγαρίας. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Διτζίνας
 εἰς τὰ τῆς Μεσημβρίας μέρη καταλαμβάνουσιν, καὶ οὕτως μέχρι τούτων
 ὁ πολυώδυνος αὐτῶν καὶ περίφορος, δυσδιέξοδός τε καὶ χαλεπὸς ἀπο-
 περαίνεται πλοῦς. Ἡ δὲ χειμέριος τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥῶς καὶ σκληρὰ διαγωγὴ
 ἐστὶν αὕτη. Ἡνίκα ὁ Νοέμβριος μὴν εἰσέλθῃ, εὐθὺς οἱ αὐτῶν ἐξέρχον- 105
 18^{VP} ται ἄρχοντες | μετὰ πάντων τῶν Ῥῶς ἀπὸ τὸν Κίαβον, καὶ ἀπέρχονται
 εἰς τὰ πολύδια, ὃ λέγεται γύρα, ἡγουν εἰς τὰς Σκλαβηνίας τῶν τε Βερβιά-
 νων καὶ τῶν Δρουγουβιτῶν καὶ Κριβιτζῶν καὶ τῶν Σεβεριῶν καὶ λοιπῶν
 Σκλάβων, οἵτινές εἰσιν πακτιῶται τῶν Ῥῶς. Δι' ὅλου δὲ τοῦ χειμῶνος
 ἐκεῖσε διατρεφόμενοι, πάλιν ἀπὸ μηνὸς Ἀπριλίου, διαλυομένου τοῦ 110
 πάγου τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, κατέρχονται πρὸς τὸν Κίαβον. Καὶ
 εἰθ' οὕτως ἀπολαμβάνονται τὰ αὐτῶν μονόξυλα, καθὼς προείρηται, καὶ
 ἐξοπλίζονται, καὶ πρὸς Ῥωμανίαν κατέρχονται.

Ὅτι οἱ Οὐζοὶ δύνανται τοῖς Πατζινακίταις πολεμεῖν.

80^{Be} 10. Περὶ τῆς Χαζαρίας, πῶς δεῖ πολεμεῖσθαι
 καὶ παρὰ τίνων.

19^{FP} Ὅτι οἱ Οὐζοὶ δύνανται πολεμεῖν τοὺς Χαζάρους, ὥς αὐτοῖς
 πλησιάζοντες, ὁμοίως καὶ ὁ ἐξουσιοκράτωρ Ἀλανίας.

V 88 Ἐθαρίου P || 89 Δάναστριν conl. Laskin; Δάναπριν P edd. || 90 καιρὸς
 Meursius Ba Be: ταρὸς P || 94 Πατζινακίται P || 95 μονόξυλα edd. ||
 99 Κωνοπά P || Κωνσταντίαν edd. || 100 lac. ind. καὶ ἀπὸ Κωνσταντίας
 excoisise coniciens Jenkins || 101 γῆς edd. || Διτζίνας P || 105/6 ἄρχοντες
 ἐξέρχονται V edd. || 108 post Κίαβον add. ποταμὸν V Me || 107 πολύδια

lake is the mouth of this river, as has been said, and carries on down to the sea, and the island of St. Aitherios lies on the sea, they come thence to the Dniester river, and having got safely there they rest again. But when the weather is propitious, they put to sea and come to the river called Aspros, and after resting there too in like manner, they again set out and come to the Selinas, to the so-called branch of the Danube river. And until they are past the river Selinas, the Pechenegs keep pace with them. And if it happens that the sea casts a 'monoxylon' on shore, they all put in to land, in order to present a united opposition to the Pechenegs. But after the Selinas they fear nobody, but, entering the territory of Bulgaria, they come to the mouth of the Danube. From the Danube they proceed to the Konopas, and from the Konopas to Constantia, and from Constantia to the river of Varna, and from Varna they come to the river Ditzina, all of which are Bulgarian territory. From the Ditzina they reach the district of Mesembria, and there at last their voyage, fraught with such travail and terror, such difficulty and danger, is at an end. The severe manner of life of these same Russians in winter-time is as follows. When the month of November begins, their chiefs together with all the Russians at once leave Kiev and go off on the 'poliudia', which means 'rounds', that is, to the Slavonic regions of the Vervians and Drugovichians and Krivichians and Severians and the rest of the Slavs who are tributaries of the Russians. There they are maintained throughout the winter, but then once more, starting from the month of April, when the ice of the Dnieper river melts, they come back to Kiev. They then pick up their 'monoxyla', as has been said above, and fit them out, and come down to Romania.

The Uzes can attack the Pechenegs.

10. Of Chazaria, how and by whom war must be made upon it.

The Uzes can attack the Chazars, for they are their neighbours, and so can the ruler of Alania.

Meursius || δ (coni. etiam Schlözer Nevolin); 2 edd. || 107 Σαλαβινίας P || 107/8 τε Βερβιάνων: Τεβερβιάνων coni. Šafarik τε Δερβιάνων coni. Marquart Šachmatov || 108 Σεβερίων V coni. Šachmatov Σευερίων P: Σεβέρων coni. Rački Σεβίρων coni. Marquart Σεφρίων edd. || 112 ἀπολαμβάνονται edd.: ἐπιλαμβάνονται P || 114 Οὔζοι P.

10. 2 παρά τινων Be || 3 Οὔζοι P || 4/5 'Αλανίας' εἶτι Ba Migne

"Οτι τὰ ἐννέα κλίματα τῆς Χαζαρίας τῇ Ἀλανίᾳ παράκεινται, 5
καὶ δύναται ὁ Ἀλανός, εἰ ἄρα καὶ βούλεται, ταῦτα πραιδεῦειν καὶ με-
γάλην βλάβην καὶ ἔνδειαν ἐντεῦθεν τοῖς Χαζάροις ποιεῖν· ἐκ γὰρ τῶν ἐννέα
τούτων κλιμάτων ἡ πᾶσα ζωὴ καὶ ἀφθονία τῆς Χαζαρίας καθέστηκεν.

11. Περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος καὶ τοῦ κάστρου Βοσπόρου.

"Οτι τοῦ ἐξουσιοκράτορος Ἀλανίας μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων μὴ εἰρη-
νεύοντος, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον προτιμωτέραν τιθεμένου τὴν φιλίαν τοῦ βασι-
19^vP λέως Ῥωμαίων, ἐὰν οἱ Χάζарοι οὐ βούλονται τὴν | πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα 5
φιλίαν καὶ εἰρήνην τηρεῖν, δύναται μεγάλως αὐτοὺς κακοῦν, τάς τε
ὁδοὺς ἐνεδρεῦν καὶ ἀφυλάκτως αὐτοῖς ἐπιτιθέμενος ἐν τῷ διέρχεσθαι
πρὸς τε τὸ Σάρκελ καὶ τὰ κλίματα καὶ τὴν Χερσῶνα. Καὶ εἰ ποιήσῃται
σπουδὴν ὁ τοιοῦτος ἐξουσιοκράτωρ τοῦ καλῶναι αὐτούς, μεγάλης καὶ
βαθείας εἰρήνης μετέχουσιν ἢ τε Χερσῶν καὶ τὰ κλίματα· φοβούμενοι 10
γὰρ οἱ Χάζарοι τὴν τῶν Ἀλανῶν ἐπίθεσιν καὶ μὴ εὐρίσκοντες ἄδειαν
μετὰ φοσσάτου ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῇ Χερσῶνι καὶ τοῖς κλίμασιν, ὥς μὴ πρὸς
ἀμφοτέρους ἐν ταύτῃ πολεμεῖν ἐξισχύοντες, εἰρηνεύειν ἀναγκασθήσονται.

81Be 20^rP 12. Περὶ τῆς μαύρης Βουλγαρίας καὶ τῆς Χαζαρίας.

"Οτι καὶ ἡ μαύρη λεγομένη Βουλγαρία δύναται τοῖς Χαζάροις
πολεμεῖν.

13. Περὶ τῶν πλησιαζόντων ἐθνῶν τοῖς Τούρκοις.

"Οτι τοῖς Τούρκοις τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔθνη παράκεινται· πρὸς μὲν τὸ
δυτικώτερον μέρος αὐτῶν ἡ Φραγγία, πρὸς δὲ τὸ βορειότερον οἱ Πατζι-
νακῖται, καὶ πρὸς τὸ μεσημβρινὸν μέρος ἡ μεγάλη Μοραβία, ἥτοι ἡ 5
χώρα τοῦ Σφενδοπλόκου, ἥτις καὶ παντελῶς ἠφανίσθη παρὰ τῶν τοιούτων
Τούρκων, καὶ παρ' αὐτῶν κατεσχέθη. Οἱ δὲ Χρωβάτοι πρὸς τὰ ὄρη
τοῖς Τούρκοις παράκεινται.

20^vP "Οτι δύναται καὶ οἱ Πατζινακῖται | τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπιτίθεσθαι
καὶ μεγάλως πραιδεῦειν καὶ παραβλάπτειν αὐτούς, καθὼς καὶ ἐν τῷ 10
περὶ Πατζινακιτῶν κεφαλαίῳ προεῖρηται.

V Ἀλανίας, ὅτι Be || 5 ἐννέα edd.: 9' P || κλίματα P || 7 ἐννέα edd.: 9' P ||
8 κλιμάτων τούτων V Me Ba κλιμάτων τούτων Be || κλημάτων P.

10, 11, 12, 13

Nine regions of Chazaria are adjacent to Alania, and the Alan can, if he be so minded, plunder these and so cause great damage and dearth among the Chazars: for from these nine regions come all the livelihood and plenty of Chazaria.

11. Of the city of Cherson and the city of Bosphorus.

If the ruler of Alania is not at peace with the Chazars, but thinks preferable the friendship of the emperor of the Romans, then, if the Chazars are not minded to preserve friendship and peace with the emperor, he, *the Alan*, may do them great hurt by ambushing their routes and setting upon them when they are off their guard, in their passage to Sarkel and the Regions and Cherson. And if this ruler will act zealously to check them, then Cherson and the Regions may enjoy great and profound peace; for the Chazars, afraid of the attack of the Alans and consequently not being free to attack Cherson and the Regions with an army, since they are not strong enough to fight both at once, will be compelled to remain at peace.

12. Of black Bulgaria and Chazaria.

The so-called black Bulgaria can also attack the Chazars.

13. Of the nations that are neighbours to the Turks.

These nations are adjacent to the Turks: on their western side Francia; on their northern the Pechenegs; and on the south side great Moravia, the country of Sphendoplokos, which has now been totally devastated by these Turks, and occupied by them. On the side of the mountains the Croats are adjacent to the Turks.

The Pechenegs too can attack the Turks, and plunder and harm them greatly, as has been said above in the chapter on the Pechenegs.

11. 2 Βοσπόρου P || 7 ἀφυλάκτοις *coni.* Kyriakides || 8 κλήματα P || ποιήσεται edd. || 10 Χερσών P || κλήματα P || 12 κλήμασιν P.

12. 1 τῆς *om.* V edd.

13. 4/5 Παρζινακίται P || 5 *post μέρος ἢ lac. ind.* Jenkins *excidiisse suspiriens* Χρωβατία ἦν δέ ποτε ὁ τόπος ἢ *vel huiusmodi aliquid* || 9 Παρζινακίται P ||

Ἐπίστησον, υἱέ, διανοίας ὄμμα τῆς σῆς λόγοις ἐμοῖς, καὶ γνῶθι, ἃ σοι ἐντέλλομαι, καὶ ἔξεις ἐν καιρῷ ὡς ἐκ πατρικῶν θησαυρῶν προφέρειν πλοῦτον φρονήσεως καὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι χύμα συνέσεως. Ἰσθι οὖν, ὅτι τοῖς βορείοις ἅπασι γένεσι φύσις ὥσπερ καθέστηκεν τὸ ἐν χρήμασι 15 λίχον καὶ ἀπληστον καὶ μηδέποτε κορεννύμενον, ὅθεν πάντα ἐπιζητεῖ καὶ πάντων ἐφίεται, καὶ οὐκ ἔχει τὰς ἐπιθυμίας ὅρῳ περιγραφομένας, ἀλλ' αἰ τοῦ πλείονος ἐπιθυμεῖ, καὶ ἀντὶ μικρᾶς ὠφελείας μεγάλα κέρδη 21P προσ|πορίζεσθαι | βούλεται. Διὸ δεῖ τὰς τούτων ἀκαίρους αἰτήσεις 82Be καὶ παρρησιαστικάς ἀξιώσεις διὰ λόγων πιθανῶν καὶ φρονίμων καὶ 20 συνετῶν ἀπολογιῶν ἀνατρέπειν καὶ ἀποκρούεσθαι, αἵτινες, ὅσον ἀπὸ τῆς πείρας ἡμεῖς καταλαβεῖν ἠδυνήθημεν, ὡς ἐν τύπῳ περιλαβεῖν, τοιαῦτα τινες ἔσονται.

Εἰ ἀξιόσωσι ποτε καὶ αἰτήσονται εἴτε Χάζαροι, εἴτε Τοῦρκοι, εἴτε καὶ Ῥῶς, ἢ ἕτερον τι ἔθνος τῶν βορείων καὶ Σκυθικῶν, οἷα πολλὰ 25 συμβαίνει, ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων ἐσθήτων ἢ στεμμάτων ἢ στολῶν ἐνεκά τινος δουλείας καὶ ὑπουργίας αὐτῶν ἀποσταλῆναι αὐτοῖς, οὕτως χρή σε ἀπολογήσασθαι, ὅτι· «Αἱ τοιαῦτα στολαὶ καὶ τὰ στέμματα, ἃ παρ' 21P ὑμῶν καμε|λαύκια ὀνομάζεται, οὔτε παρὰ ἀνθρώπων κατεσκευάσθησαν, οὔτε ἐξ ἀνθρωπίνων τεχνῶν ἐπενοήθησαν ἢ ἐξηργάσθησαν, ἀλλ' ὡς 30 ἀπὸ παλαιᾶς ἱστορίας ἐν ἀπορρήτοις λόγοις γεγραμμένον εὐρίσκομεν, ἥνικα ὁ Θεὸς βασιλέα ἐποίησεν Κωνσταντῖνον ἐκεῖνον τὸν μέγαν, τὸν πρῶτον Χριστιανὸν βασιλεύσαντα, δι' ἀγγέλου αὐτῷ τὰς τοιαύτας στολάς ἐξαπέστειλεν καὶ τὰ στέμματα, ἅπερ ὑμεῖς καμελαύκια λέγετε, καὶ διωρίσατο αὐτῷ θεῖναι ταῦτα ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἀγίᾳ ἐκκλησίᾳ, 35 ἥτις ἐπ' ὀνόματι αὐτῆς τῆς ἐνυποστάτου σοφίας Θεοῦ Ἀγία Σοφία κατονομάζεται, καὶ μὴ καθ' ἐκάστην αὐτὰ ἀμφιέννυσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅτε 22P δημοτελὲς καὶ με|γάλη τυγχάνῃ δεσποτικῇ ἑορτῇ. Διὸ δὴ Θεοῦ προσ- τάγματι ταῦτα ἀπέθετο, ἵτινα καὶ ἄνωθεν τῆς ἀγίας τραπέζης ἐν τῷ θυσιαστηρίῳ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ναοῦ ἀποκρέματα, καὶ εἰς κόσμον τῆς ἐκκλη- 40 83Be σίας καθέστηκεν. Τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ ἱμάτια καὶ σαγία βασιλικά τῆς ἱερᾶς | ταύ- της τραπέζης ἄνωθεν ἐπίκεινται ἐφαπλούμενα. Ἡνίκα δὲ καταλάβῃ τοῦ Κυρίου ἡμῶν καὶ Θεοῦ Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ ἑορτῇ, ἀναλαμβάνεται ἐκ τῶν τοιούτων στολῶν καὶ στεμμάτων τὰ πρὸς τὸν καιρὸν ἐπιτήδεια καὶ ἀρμόζοντα ὁ πατριάρχης, καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ 45 22P σε καὶ μόνον, καὶ πάλιν μετὰ τὴν χρεῖαν ἀν|τιστρέφει αὐτὰ πρὸς τὴν ἐκκλησίαν, καὶ ἀπόκεινται ἐν αὐτῇ. Ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰρα τοῦ ἀγίου καὶ

Fix, my son, your minds's eye upon my words, and learn those things which I command you, and you will be able in due season as from ancestral treasures to bring forth the wealth of wisdom, and to display the abundance of wit. Know therefore that all the tribes of the north have, as it were implanted in them by nature, a ravening greed of money, never satiated, and so they demand everything and hanker after everything and have desires that know no limit or circumscription, but are always eager for more, and desirous to acquire great profits in exchange for a small service. And so these importunate demands and brazenly submitted claims must be turned back and rebutted by plausible speeches and prudent and clever excuses, which, in so far as our experience has enabled us to arrive at them, will, to speak summarily, run more or less as follows:

Should they ever require and demand, whether they be Chazars, or Turks, or again Russians, or any other nation of the northerners and Scythians, as frequently happens, that some of the imperial vesture or diadems or state robes should be sent to them in return for some service or office performed by them, then thus you shall excuse yourself: «These robes of state and the diadems, which you call 'kamelaukia', were not fashioned by men, nor by human arts devised or elaborated, but, as we find it written in secret stories of old history, when God made emperor the former Constantine the great, who was the first Christian emperor, He sent him these robes of state by the hand of His angel, and the diadems which you call 'kamelaukia', and charged him to lay them in the great and holy church of God, which, after the name of that very wisdom which is the property of God, is called St. Sophia; and not to clothe himself in them every day, but *only* when it is a great public festival of the Lord. And so by God's command he laid them up, and they hang above the holy table in the sanctuary of this same church, and are for the ornament of the church. And the rest of the imperial vestments and cloaks lie spread out upon this holy table. And when a festival of our Lord and God Jesus Christ comes round, the patriarch takes up such of these robes of state and diadems as are suitable and appropriated to that occasion, and sends them to the emperor, and he wears them in the procession, and only in it, as the servant and minister of God, and after use returns them again to the church, and they are laid up in it. Moreover, there is a curse of the holy and great emperor Constantine en-

V 21 ἀποκρούεσθαι *corr.* Moravcsik; ἀνακρούεσθαι P *edd.* || 24 Τούρκοι P || 25 βορειῶν P || 26 ἐσθητῶν P || 28 ἀπολογίσασθαι P *edd.* || στολαί] *corrupto pergamenio litteras al s. v. iter.* P³ || 29 ὑμῶν (*etiam* Meursius): ἡμῶν V *edd.* || 30 ἐξεργάσθησαν Be || 32 βασίλεια Be: βασιλέαν P || 34 ἄπερ ὑμεῖς (*etiam* Meursius): ἀ παρ' ἡμῶν Ba Be || λέγετε V Me: λέγεται P Ba Be || 35 διορίσας P || 36 τῆς *om.* *edd.* || 43/4 ἐκ τῶν; τὰ ἐκ Me Ba τε ἐκ Be || 45 ἀποστέλλῃ P || 47 ἀντιστρέφῃ P ||

μεγάλου βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου ἐστὶν ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ ταύτῃ τραπέζῃ τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας ἐγγεγραμμένη, καθὼς αὐτῷ διὰ τοῦ ἀγγέλου ὁ 50 Θεὸς διωρίσατο, ἵνα, ἐὰν βουλευθῇ βασιλεὺς διὰ τινὰ χρεῖαν ἢ περίστασιν ἢ ἐπιθυμίαν ἄκαιρον ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπᾶραι καὶ ἢ αὐτὸς καταχρῆσασθαι ἢ ἑτέροις χαρίσασθαι, ὡς πολέμιος καὶ τῶν τοῦ Θεοῦ προσταγμάτων ἐχθρὸς, ἀναθεματίζεται καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀποκηρύττεται· εἰ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἕτερα ὅμοια καμῖν βουλευθῇ, ἵνα καὶ αὐτὰ ἢ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐκκλησία 55 ἀναλαμβάνηται, τῶν ἀρχιερέων πάντων εἰς ταῦτα παρρησιαζομένων

23^r καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου· | καὶ μὴ ἔχειν ἐξουσίαν μῆτε τὸν βασιλέα, μῆτε τὸν πατριάρχην, μῆτε ἕτερόν τινα τὰς τοιαύτας ἀναλαμβάνεσθαι στολὰς ἢ τὰ στέμματα ἀπὸ τῆς ἁγίας τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐκκλησίας. Καὶ φόβος μέγας ἐπήρηται τοῖς βουλομένοις ἀντρέπειν τι τῶν τοιούτων θεϊκῶν διατά- 60 ξων. Εἰς γὰρ τις τῶν βασιλέων, Λέων ὀνόματι, ὃς καὶ ἀπὸ Χαζαρίας γυναικᾶ ἡγάγετο, ἀβούλῳ τόλμῃ χρησάμενος ἐν τῶν τοιούτων ἀνελάβετο

84^{Be} στεμμάτων, δεσποτικῆς μὴ παρούσης | ἑορτῆς, καὶ δίχᾳ γνώμης τοῦ πατριάρχου τοῦτο περιεβάλετο. Καὶ εὐθέως ἄνθρακα ἐπὶ τοῦ μετώπου ἐκβαλὼν καὶ ταῖς ἐκ τούτου ὀδύναις κατατρυχόμενος κακιγκάκως ἀπέρ- 65

23^v ρηξεν τὸ ζῆν, | καὶ πρὸ καιροῦ τὸν θάνατον ἐπεσπάσατο. Καὶ τοῦ τοιούτου συντόμως ἐκδικηθέντος τολμήματος, ἕκτοτε τύπος ἐγένετο, ὥστε ἐν τῷ μέλλειν στέφεσθαι τὸν βασιλέα πρότερον ὁμνύειν καὶ ἀσφαλίζεσθαι, ὅτι οὐδὲν ἐναντίον τῶν προστεταγμένων καὶ ἐκ παλαιοῦ φυλαττομένων τολμήσει ποιῆσειν ἢ ἐννοήσασθαι καὶ οὕτως ὑπὸ τοῦ πατριάρχου στέ- 70 φεσθαι καὶ τὰ ἀρμόζοντα τῇ καθεστῶσῃ ἑορτῇ ἐπιτελεῖν τε καὶ διαπράττεσθαι.»

Ἦσαύτως χρή σε καὶ περὶ τοῦ ὕγρου πυρός, τοῦ διὰ τῶν σιφώνων ἐκφερομένου μεριμνᾶν τε καὶ μελετᾶν, ὡς εἴπερ ποτὲ τολμήσωσί τινες

24^r καὶ αὐτὸ ἐπιζητῆσαι, καθὼς καὶ παρ' ἡμῶν πολλάκις ἐζήτησαν, τοιού- 75 τοις αὐτοὺς ἔχεις ἀποκρούεσθαι καὶ ἀποπέμπεσθαι ῥήμασιν, ὅτι· «Καὶ αὐτὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ <Θεοῦ> δι' ἀγγέλου τῷ μεγάλῳ καὶ πρώτῳ βασιλεῖ Χριστιανῷ, ἁγίῳ Κωνσταντίνῳ ἐφανερῶθη καὶ ἐδιδάχθη. Παραγγελίας δὲ μεγάλας καὶ περὶ τούτου παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἀγγέλου ἐδέξατο, ὡς παρὰ πατέρων καὶ πάππων πιστωθέντες πληροφοροῦμεθα, ἵνα ἐν μόνοις 80 τοῖς Χριστιανοῖς καὶ τῇ ὑπ' αὐτῶν βασιλευσμένη πόλει κατασκευάζηται, ἀλλαχοῦ δὲ μηδαμῶς, μῆτε εἰς ἕτερον ἔθνος τὸ οἰονδήποτε παραπέμψηται, μῆτε διδάσκηται. Ὅθεν καὶ τοῖς μετ' αὐτὸν ὁ μέγας οὗτος βασιλεὺς

85^{Be} ἐξασφαλιζόμενος περὶ τούτου ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ τραπέζῃ τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ | ἐκκλη- 24^v σίας ἀράς ἐγγραφῆναι πεποίηκεν, ἵνα ὁ ἐκ τοῦ | τοιούτου πυρός εἰς 85

graved upon this holy table of the church of God, according as he was charged by God through the angel, that if an emperor for any use or occasion or unseasonable desire be minded to take of them and either himself misuse them or give them to others, he shall be anathematized as the foe and enemy of the commands of God, and shall be excommunicated from the church; moreover, if he himself be minded to make others like them, these too the church of God must take, with the freely expressed approval of all the archbishops and of the senate; and it shall not be in the authority either of the emperor, or of the patriarch, or of any other, to take these robes of state or the diadems from the holy church of God. And mighty dread hangs over them who are minded to transgress any of these divine ordinances. For one of the emperors, Leo by name, who also married a wife from Chazaria, out of his folly and rashness took up one of these diadems when no festival of the Lord was toward, and without the approval of the patriarch put it about his head. And straightway a carbuncle came forth upon his forehead so that in torment at the pains of it he evilly departed his evil life, and ran upon death untimely. And, this rash act being summarily avenged, thereafter a rule was made, that when he is about to be crowned the emperor must first swear and give surety that he will neither do nor conceive anything against what has been ordained and kept from ancient times, and then may he be crowned by the patriarch and perform and execute the rites appropriate to the established festival.»

Similar care and thought you must take in the matter of the liquid fire which is discharged through tubes, so that if any shall ever venture to demand this too, as they have often made demands of us also, you may rebut and dismiss them in words like these: «This too was revealed and taught by God through an angel to the great and holy Constantine, the first Christian emperor, and concerning this too he received great charges from the same angel, as we are assured by the faithful witness of our fathers and grandfathers, that it should be manufactured among the Christians only and in the city ruled by them, and nowhere else at all, nor should it be sent nor taught to any other nation whatsoever. And so, for the confirmation of this among those who should come after him, this great emperor caused curses to be inscribed on the holy table of the church of God, that he who

V 49 βασιλέως *om.* V *edd.* || 50/1 ὁ Θεὸς διὰ τοῦ ἀγγέλου V *edd.* || 51 διορίσας P || 54 ἀναθεματίζεται Meursius Ba Be || ἀποκηρύττεται Meursius Ba Be || 65 κακὴν κάκας P || 69 φυλαττομένων *edd.*: φυλαττομένοις P || 70 τομῆσιν Ba Be || 73 χρῆσαι P || 76 αὐτοῦς *edd.*: αὐτοῖς P || 77/8 ἔχεις V *edd.* || 77 ἀπὸ τοῦ *om.* *edd.* || Θεοῦ *add.* Moravosik || 77/8 Χριστιανῶν Meursius Ba Be: Χριστιανῶν P || 82 παραπέμπηται *edd.*: παραπέμπεται P ||

ἕτερον ἔθνος δοῦναι τολμήσας μήτε Χριστιανὸς ὀνομάζεται, μήτε ἀξίας
 τινὸς ἢ ἀρχῆς ἀξιουῖται· ἀλλ' εἴ τινα καὶ ἔχων τύχη, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης
 ἐκβάλλεται καὶ εἰς αἰῶνας αἰώνων ἀναθεματίζεται καὶ παραδειγματίζε-
 ται, εἴτε βασιλεὺς, εἴτε πατριάρχης, εἴτε τις ἄλλος ὁ οἰσοῦν ἄνθρωπος,
 εἴτε ἄρχων, εἴτε ἀρχόμενος τυγχάνοι ὁ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐντολὴν παραβαίνειν 90
 πειρώμενος. Καὶ προετρέψατο πάντας τοὺς ζῆλον καὶ φόβον Θεοῦ
 ἔχοντας, ὡς κοινὸν ἐχθρὸν καὶ παραβάτην τῆς μεγάλης ταύτης ἐντολῆς,
 τὸν τοιοῦτον ἐπιχειροῦντα ποιεῖν ἀναιρεῖν σπουδάζειν, καὶ ἐχθίστω
 <καὶ> χαλεπῶ παραπέμπεσθαι θανάτῳ. Συνέβη δέ ποτε, τῆς κακίας
 25^P αἰὶ χώραν εὐρισκούσης, τινὰ τῶν ἡμετέρων στρατηγῶν δῶ[ρα παρὰ 95
 τινων ἐθνικῶν πάμπυλλα εἰληφύτα μεταδοῦναι αὐτοῖς ἐκ τοῦ τοιούτου
 πυρός, καὶ μὴ ἀνεχομένου τοῦ Θεοῦ ἀνεκδίκητον καταλιπεῖν τὴν παρά-
 βασιν, ἐν τῇ μέλλειν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ ἀγίᾳ τοῦ Θεοῦ εἰσιέναι ἐκκλησίᾳ πῦρ
 ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ κατελθὼν τοῦτον κατέφαγε καὶ ἀνάλωσεν. Καὶ ἀπὸ τότε
 φόβος μέγας καὶ τρόμος ἐν ταῖς ἀπάντων ἐνετέθη ψυχαῖς, καὶ οὐκέτι 100
 οὐδεὶς τοῦ λοιποῦ, οὔτε βασιλεὺς, οὔτε ἄρχων, οὔτε ἰδιώτης, οὔτε στρα-
 τηγός, οὔτε ὁ οἰσοῦν ὅλως ἄνθρωπος κατετόλμησέ τι τοιοῦτον ἐνθυμη-
 θῆναι, μήτι γε καὶ ἔργῳ ἐπιχειρῆσαι ποιῆσαι ἢ διαπράξασθαι.»

86^{Be} 25^{vP} Ἄλλ' ἄγε δὴ μετάβηθι, καὶ πρὸς ἕτερον εἶδος αἰτήσεως παραλόγου
 καὶ ἀπρεποῦς εὐπρεπεῖς καὶ ἁρμυζοντας λόγους ἀνα|ζήτει |καὶ ἀναμάν- 105
 θανε. Εἰ γάρ ποτε ἔθνος τι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀπίστων τούτων καὶ ἀτίμων βορείων
 γενῶν αἰτήσεται συμπενθερίασαι μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων καὶ ἡ
 θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ εἰς νόμφην λαβεῖν ἢ ἐπιδοῦναι οἰκείαν θυγατέρα εἰς
 γυναῖκα χρηματίσαι βασιλέως ἢ βασιλέως υἱοῦ, χρή σε τοιοῦτοις ῥήμασι
 καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην αὐτῶν παράλογον ἀποκρούσασθαι αἵτησιν, λέγοντα, 110
 ὅτι· «Καὶ περὶ ταύτης τῆς ὑποθέσεως παραγγελία καὶ διάταξις φοβερὰ
 καὶ ἀπαραποίητος τοῦ μεγάλου καὶ ἀγίου Κωνσταντίνου ἐναπογέγραπται
 ἐν τῇ ἱερᾷ τραπέζῃ τῆς καθολικῆς τῶν Χριστιανῶν ἐκκλησίας τῆς Ἀγίας
 Σοφίας· τοῦ μηδέποτε βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων συμπενθερίασαι μετὰ ἔθνους
 28^P παρῆλ|λαγμένοις καὶ ξένοις ἔθεσι χρωμένον τῆς Ῥωμαϊκῆς καταστάσεως, 115
 μάλιστα δὲ ἁλλοπίστου καὶ ἀβαπτίστου, εἰ μὴ μετὰ μόνων τῶν Φράγγων·
 τούτους γὰρ μόνους ὑπεξείλετο ὁ μέγας ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ, Κωνσταντίνος
 ὁ ἅγιος, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν γένεσιν ἀπὸ τῶν τοιούτων ἔσχε μερῶν, ὡς
 συγγενείας καὶ ἐπιμιξίας πολλῆς τυγχανούσης Φράγγους τε καὶ Ῥωμαίους.
 Καὶ διὰ τί μετὰ τούτων μόνων προετρέψατο συνιστᾶν γαμικὰ συναλ- 120

F 98 πῦρ — 99 ἀνάλωσεν: cf. IV Reg. 1, 10—12; Apoc. 20, 9; Socrates, Hist. eccl. VII. 43. 100 φόβος — τρόμος: cf. Exod. 15, 16; Psalm. 54, 6. 104 Ἄλλ' ἄγε δὴ μετάβηθι: Homeri Od. VIII. 492.

should dare to give of this fire to another nation should neither be called a Christian, not be held worthy of any rank or office; and if he should be the holder of any such, he should be expelled therefrom and be anathematized and made an example for ever and ever, whether he were emperor, or patriarch, or any other man whatever, either ruler or subject, who should seek to transgress this commandment. And he adjured all who had the zeal and fear of God to be prompt to make away with him who attempted to do this, as a common enemy and a transgressor of this great commandment, and to dismiss him to a death most hateful *and* cruel. And it happened once, as wickedness will still find room, that one of our military governors, who had been most heavily bribed by certain foreigners, handed over some of this fire to them; and, since God could not endure to leave unavenged this transgression, as he was about to enter the holy church of God, fire came down out of heaven and devoured and consumed him utterly. And thereafter mighty dread and terror were implanted in the hearts of all men, and never since then has anyone, whether emperor, or noble, or private citizen, or military governor, or any man of any sort whatever, ventured to think of such a thing, far less to attempt to do it or bring it to pass.»

‘But come, now, turn’, and to meet another sort of demand, monstrous and unseemly, seemly and appropriate words discover and seek out. For if any nation of these infidel and dishonourable tribes of the north shall ever demand a marriage alliance with the emperor of the Romans, and either to take his daughter to wife, or to give a daughter of their own to be wife to the emperor or to the emperor’s son, this monstrous demand of theirs also you shall rebut with these words, saying: «Concerning this matter also a dread and authentic charge and ordinance of the great and holy Constantine is engraved upon the sacred table of the universal church of the Christians, St. Sophia, that never shall an emperor of the Romans ally himself in marriage with a nation of customs differing from and alien to those of the Roman order, especially with one that is infidel and unbaptized, unless it be with the Franks alone; for they alone were excepted by that great man, the holy Constantine, because he himself drew his origin from those parts; for there is much relationship and converse between Franks and Romans. And why did he order that with them alone the emperors of the Romans should

ζεται V || 88/9 παραδειγματίζεται V || 89 ὁ om. edd. || 90 παραβαίνειν V edd.: παραβαίνον P || 91 προτρέψατο edd. || 93 τοιούτου Ba Be τοῦτο Meursius || 93/4 ἐχθίστῳ <καὶ> χαλεπῷ conl. Moravcsik: ἐκτίστω χαλεπῷ P ἐκτίστω τῷ χαλεπῷ Ba Be εὐθύς τῷ χαλεπῷ Meursius ἐκτίστω καὶ χαλεπῷ Bandurius an ἐχθίστῳ vel οὐκίστῳ *omissis* τῷ χαλεπῷ? Bekker || 99 κατελθόν ἐκ τοῦ οὐρανοῦ V Me || ἀνήλωσεν V edd. || 102 ὁ om. edd. || 104 Ἄλλ’ ἄγε Be: ἀλλάγε P || 107 αἰτήσεται edd. || συμπεμθερίζαι P || 108 εἰς corr. Kyriakides: ἦ P edd. || 109 χρῆσαι P || 114 συμπεμθερίζαι P || 115 ἦθει V Me Ba || 120 τί: τοῦτο edd. || προτρέψατο Be || 120/1 συναλλαγία P ||

- λάγια τούς βασιλεῖς Ῥωμαίων· Διὰ τὴν ἀνωθεν τῶν μερῶν ἐκείνων καὶ γενῶν περιφάνειαν καὶ εὐγένειαν. Μετ' ἄλλου δέ του οἰουδήποτε ἔθνους μὴ δυναμένους τοῦτο ποιεῖν, ἀλλ' ὁ τοῦτο ποιῆσαι τολμήσας ἵνα, ὡς παραβάτης πατρικῶν εἰσηγήσεων καὶ βασιλείων θεσμῶν, ἀλλό-
 26^vP τριος κρίνοιτο τῶν Χριστιανῶν καταλόγων καὶ τῷ ἀναθέματι παραδί-125
 87Be δοίτο. Ὁ δὲ προμνημονευθεὶς Λέων ἐκεῖνος ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὁ καὶ | τὸ στέμμα, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω προεῖρηται, παρανόμως καὶ τολμηρῶς ἀπὸ τῆς ἐκκλησίας δίχα γνώμης τοῦ τότε πατριαρχοῦντος λαβὼν καὶ περιθέμενος καὶ τὴν δίκην συντόμως δοὺς ἀξίαν τῆς αὐτοῦ πονηρᾶς ἐγχειρήσεως, ἐτόλμησε καὶ τὴν τοιαύτην ἐντολὴν τοῦ ἁγίου βασιλέως ἐκείνου, ἦτις, 130 ὡς ἤδη δεδῆλωται, ἐν τῇ ἁγίᾳ τραπέζῃ ἀναγεγραμμένη καθέστηκεν, παρὰ φαῦλον θέσθαι καὶ ὡς μηδὲν λογίσασθαι, καὶ ὡς ἄπαξ ἔξω τοῦ θείου φόβου καὶ τῶν ἐντολῶν αὐτοῦ πεποιήκειν ἑαυτόν, συνεστήσατο
 27^vP καὶ μετὰ τοῦ χαγάνου Χαζαρίας | γαμικὸν συναλλάγιον, καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ εἰς γυναῖκα ἐδέξατο, καὶ μέγα ἐκ τούτου ὄνειδος καὶ τῇ 135 Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῇ καὶ ἑαυτῷ προσετρίψατο, ὡς τὰ προγονικὰ παραγγέλματα ἠκουῶσας καὶ παρ' οὐδὲν λογισάμενος· πλὴν οὐδὲ ὀρθόδοξος ἐκεῖνος Χριστιανὸς ἦν, ἀλλ' αἰρετικὸς καὶ εἰκονομάχος. Διὸ χάριν τῶν τοιοῦτων αὐτοῦ παρανόμων ἀσεβημάτων ἐν τῇ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἐκκλησίᾳ διηνεκῶς ἀποκηρύττεται καὶ ἀναθεματίζεται, ὡς καὶ τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ 140 καὶ τῆς τοῦ ἁγίου καὶ μεγάλου βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου διατάξεως παραβάτης καὶ ἀνατροπεύς. Πῶς γάρ ἐστιν τῶν ἐνδεχομένων Χριστιανούς μετὰ ἀπίστων γαμικὰς κοινωνίας ποιεῖν καὶ συμπενθεριάζειν, τοῦ
 27^vP κανόνος τοῦτο κωλύοντος καὶ τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀπάσης ἀλλότριον αὐτὸ λογιζομένης καὶ ἔξω τῆς Χριστιανικῆς καταστάσεως; Ἡ τίς τῶν ἐγκρί-145 των καὶ εὐγενῶν καὶ σοφῶν βασιλέων Ῥωμαίων κατεδέξατο;» Εἰ δὲ ἀντεῖπωσιν· «Πῶς ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς μετὰ Βουλγάρων
 88Be συνεπενθερίασεν, καὶ τὴν ἰδίαν | ἐκγόνην δέδωκεν τῷ κυρῷ Πέτρῳ τῷ Βουλγάρῳ;», δεῖ ἀπολογησασθαι, ὅτι· «Ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανός, ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἰδιώτης καὶ ἀγράμματος ἄνθρωπος ἦν, καὶ οὔτε τῶν ἀνωθεν ἐν βασιλείοις 150 τεθραμμένων, οὔτε τῶν παρηκολουθηκότων ἐξ ἀρχῆς τοῖς Ῥωμαϊκοῖς ἐθισμοῖς, οὔτε ἀπὸ γένους βασιλείου καὶ εὐγενοῦς, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
 28^vP αὐθαδέστερον καὶ ἐξουσιαστικώτερον τὰ πολλὰ κατεπράττετο, | καὶ ἐν τούτῳ οὔτε τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ἀπαγορευοῦσθ ὑπήκουσεν, οὔτε τῇ ἐντολῇ καὶ διαταγῇ τοῦ μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου κατηκολούθησεν, ἀλλ' ἐκ γνώμης 155 αὐθάδους καὶ αὐτοβούλου καὶ τῶν καλῶν ἀμαθοῦς καὶ μὴ βουλομένης

^F 142 Πῶς γάρ ἐστιν — 145 καταστάσεως: cf. can. XIV. IV. Concilii, can. LXXII. VII. Concilii, ed. Mansi VII. 364, XI. 976. — Ralles-Potles II, 251, 471. 147 Πῶς ὁ κύρις — 149 Βουλγάρῳ: cf. Georg. Mon. (cont.), ed. Bonn, p. 905, 19—907, 5; 913, 6—8; Georg. Mon. (cont.), ed. Istrin II. p. 56, 8—34; 60, 6—8; Theoph. Cont. p. 414, 1—415, 9; 422, 10—13. 150 ἰδιώτης καὶ ἀγράμματος: cf. Acta 4, 13.

intermarry? Because of the traditional fame and nobility of those lands and races. But with any other nation whatsoever it was not to be in their power to do this, and he who dared to do it was to be condemned as an alien from the ranks of the Christians and subject to the anathema, as a transgressor of ancestral laws and imperial ordinances. And that emperor Leo aforesaid, who also, as has been described above, unlawfully and rashly, without the consent of him who was then patriarch, took from the church the diadem and put it about his head and was summarily punished in full for his wicked attempt, dared to make light of and to disregard this commandment also of that holy emperor, which, as has already been made clear, is engraved on the holy table; and as he had once put himself outside the fear of God and His commandments, so also he contracted an alliance in marriage with the chagan of Chazaria, and received his daughter to be his wife, and thereby attached great shame to the empire of the Romans and to himself, because he annulled and disregarded the ancestral injunctions; yet he, however, was not even an orthodox Christian, but an heretic and a destroyer of images. And so for these his unlawful impieties he is continually excommunicated and anathematized in the church of God, as a transgressor and perverter of the ordinance of God and of the holy and great emperor Constantine. For how can it be admissible that Christians should form marriage associations and ally themselves by marriage with infidels, when the canon forbids it and the whole church regards it as alien to and outside the Christian order? Or which of the illustrious or noble or wise emperors of the Romans has admitted it? But if they reply: «How then did the lord Romanus, the emperor, ally himself in marriage with the Bulgarians, and give his grand-daughter to the lord Peter the Bulgarian?», this must be the defence: «The lord Romanus, the emperor, was a common, illiterate fellow, and not from among those who have been bred up in the palace, and have followed the Roman national customs from the beginning; nor was he of imperial and noble stock, and for this reason in most of his actions he was too arrogant and despotic, and in this instance he neither heeded the prohibition of the church, nor followed the commandment and ordinance of the great Constantine, but out of a temper arrogant and self-willed and untaught in virtue and refusing to follow what was

V 121 *post* Ῥωμαίων *signum interrogationis posuit* Moravcsik: Ῥωμαίων διὰ Be || 122 τοῦ οἴου δῆποτε *edd.*: τοιουδήποτε P || 123 δυναμένους *edd.*: δυναμένους P δύνασθαι *coni.* Kyriakides || 124 παραβάτης *edd.*: παραβάτην P || 128 πατριαρχεύοντος *edd.* || 129 ἐγγχειρίσεως P || 138 Χριστιανὸς ἦν ἐκεῖνος *edd.* || 143 συμπεμθερίῳζεν P || 144 αὐτὸ Ba Be: αὐτῷ P || 145/6 ἐκκρίτων Meursius Ba || 147 κύρης P: κύριος *edd.* || 148 συνεπεμθερίσεν P || κυρίω *edd.* || 149 κύρης P: κύριος *edd.* || 151 τετραμμένων Be: τετραμμένων P ||

ἐπεσθαι τῷ πρόποντι καὶ καλῶ, μηδὲ ταῖς πατροπαράδοτοις στοιχεῖν
 διατάξειςιν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι τετόλμηκεν, ταύτην μόνην εὐλογον δηλονότι
 προβαλλόμενος πρόφασιν, τοσοῦτον πλῆθος αἰχμαλώτων Χριστιανῶν
 διὰ τῆς τοιαύτης πράξεως ἀναρρῦεσθαι, καὶ τὸ Χριστιανούς εἶναι καὶ τοὺς 160
 Βουλγάρους <καὶ> ὁμοπίστους ἡμῶν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲ αὐτοκράτορος
 καὶ ἐνθέσμου βασιλέως θυγάτηρ ἢ ἐκδιδομένη ἐτύγχανε, ἀλλὰ τρίτου
 28^vP καὶ ἐσχάτου καὶ ἔτι ὑποχειρίου καὶ μηδεμίαν ἐξουσίαν ἐν τοῖς τῆς ἀρχῆς
 μετέχοντος πράγμασι· καὶ οὐδὲν διέφερεν τὸ τοιοῦτον τοῦ καὶ ἄλλην
 τινὰ τῶν βασιλικῶν συγγενίδων, τῶν πορρωτέρω τε καὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς βασι- 165
 λείας εὐγενείας τυγχανουσῶν, καὶ διὰ τина κοινωφελῆ δουλείαν, καὶ τοῦ
 ἐσχάτου καὶ μηδὲν σχεδὸν ἐξουσιάζοντος. Ἐπεὶ ἔξω τοῦ κανόνος καὶ τῆς
 ἐκκλησιαστικῆς παραδόσεως καὶ τῆς τοῦ μεγάλου καὶ ἁγίου βασιλέως,
 Κωνσταντίνου διαταγῆς τε καὶ ἐντολῆς τοῦτο πεποίηκεν, πολλὰ καὶ
 89^{Be} ζῶν ὠνειδίσθη ὁ προρρηθεὶς κύρις Ῥωμανός, καὶ διεβλήθη καὶ ἐμι- 170
 σήθη παρὰ τε τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ τοῦ δήμου παντὸς καὶ τῆς
 ἐκκλησίας αὐτῆς, ὥς καὶ τὸ μῖσος ἀπὸ τοῦ τέλους γενέσθαι καταφανές,
 29^rP καὶ μετὰ θάνατον | ὁμοίως ἐξουθενεῖται καὶ διαβάλλεται καὶ ὑπὸ κατα-
 γνώμην τίθεται καὶ οὗτος, ἀνάξιον πρᾶγμα καὶ ἀπρεπὲς εἰς τὴν εὐγενῆ
 πολιτείαν Ῥωμαίων καινοτομήσας.» Ἐκαστον γὰρ ἔθνος διάφορα ἔχον 175
 ἔθνη καὶ διαλλάττοντας νόμους τε καὶ θεσμούς ὀφείλει τὰ οἰκεία κρατῦ-
 νειν καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ ἔθνους τὰς πρὸς ἀνάκρασιν βίου κοινωνίας ποιεῖ-
 σθαι καὶ ἐνεργεῖν. "Ὡςπερ γὰρ ἕκαστον ζῶον μετὰ τῶν ὁμογενῶν τὰς
 μίξεις ἐργάζεται, οὕτω καὶ ἕκαστον ἔθνος οὐκ ἐξ ἁλλοφύλων καὶ ἁλλο-
 γλώσσων, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν ὁμογενῶν τε καὶ ὁμοφώνων τὰ συνοικέσια τῶν 180
 γάμων ποιεῖσθαι καθέστηκεν δίκαιον. Ἐντεῦθεν γὰρ καὶ ἡ πρὸς ἀλλή-
 29^vP λους ὁμοφροσύνη καὶ συνομιλία καὶ προσφιλὴς συνδιατριβὴ καὶ συμβί|ωσις
 περιγίνεσθαι πέφυκεν· τὰ δὲ ἀλλότρια ἔθνη καὶ διαλλάττοντα νόμιμα
 ἀπεχθεῖας μᾶλλον καὶ προσκρούσεις καὶ μίση καὶ στάσεις εἶωθεν ἀπο-
 γεννᾶν, ἅπερ οὐ φιλίας καὶ κοινωνίας, ἀλλ' ἔχθρας καὶ διαστάσεις φιλεῖ 185
 ἀπεργάζεσθαι. Καὶ ὅτι μὴ δεῖ τὰ κακῶς παρὰ τινων ἐξ ἀμαθείας ἢ
 αὐθαδείας καταπραχθέντα τοὺς ἐννόμως ἄρχειν βουλομένους μιμεῖσθαι
 τε καὶ ζηλοῦν, ἀλλὰ τῶν ἐννόμως καὶ δικαίως βεβασилευκότων τὰς
 ἀοιδίμους πράξεις ἔχειν, ὥς εἰκόνας ἀγαθὰς εἰς παράδειγμα προκειμένας
 μιμήσεως, καὶ κατ' ἐκεῖνας πειρᾶσθαι καὶ αὐτὸν ἀπευθύνειν πάντα τὰ 190
 παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐνεργούμενα, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ διὰ τὰς τοιαύτας αὐτοβούλους
 30^rP | πρά|ξεις αὐτοῦ ἐπελθὼν αὐτῷ τέλος, φημί δὴ τῷ κυρῷ Ῥωμανῷ,
 90^{Be}

V 157 στοιχεῖν Ba Be: τυχεῖν P || 158 δηλονότι edd.: δηλόθεν P ||
 162 καὶ add. Jenkins || 167 Ἐπεὶ δ' conit. Bekker || 168 καὶ² om. edd. ||

right and good, or to submit to the ordinances handed down by our forefathers, he dared to do this thing; offering, that is, this alone by way of specious excuse, that by this action so many Christian prisoners were ransomed, and that the Bulgarians too are Christians *and* of like faith with us, and that in any case she who was given in marriage was not daughter of the chief and lawful emperor, but of the third and most junior, who was still subordinate and had no share of authority in matters of government; but this was no different from *giving* any other of the ladies of the imperial family, whether more distantly or closely related to the imperial nobility, nor did it make any difference that she was given for some service to the commonweal, or was daughter of the most junior, who had no authority to speak of. And because he did this thing contrary to the canon and to ecclesiastical tradition and the ordinance and commandment of the great and holy emperor Constantine, the aforesaid lord Romanus was in his lifetime much abused, and was slandered and hated by the senatorial council and all the commons and the church herself, so that their hatred became abundantly clear in the end to which he came; and after his death he is in the same way vilified and slandered and condemned inasmuch as he too introduced an unworthy and unseemly innovation into the noble polity of the Romans.» For each nation has different customs and divergent laws and institutions, and should consolidate those things that are proper to it, and should form and develop out of the same nation the associations for the fusion of its life. For just as each animal mates with its own tribe, so it is right that each nation also should marry and cohabit not with those of other race and tongue but of the same tribe and speech. For hence arise naturally harmony of thought and intercourse among one another and friendly converse and living together; but alien customs and divergent laws are likely on the contrary to engender enmities and quarrels and hatreds and broils, which tend to beget not friendship and association but spite and division. Mark, too, that it is not for those who wish to govern lawfully to copy and emulate what has been ill done by some out of ignorance or arrogance, but rather to have the glorious deeds of those who have ruled lawfully and righteously as noble pictures set up for an example to be copied, and after their pattern to strive himself also to direct all that he does; since the end which came upon him, I mean, the lord Romanus, through these

170 ἀνειδίσθη P || κύρης P || 172 ἀπό: ἐπὶ edd. || 176/7 κρατύνειν *scr.* Moravesik κρατείνην P: κρατεῖν edd. || 177 ἀνάκρασιν *coni.* Jenkins: ἀνάκρισιν P ἀνάκρισιν edd. || 183 πέφικεν PΥ πέφικε Ba Be: πέφικεν P V πεφίληκε Meursius || ξῖθῃ edd.: ῥῖθῃ P || 185 φιλεῖ (*littera v erasa*) PΥ Ba Be: φιλεῖν P V φιλῶν Meursius || 186 ἀπεργάζεσθαι (*littera σ inserta et littera τ in ὁ correctā*) PΥ Ba Be: ἀπεργάζεται P V Me || 187 ἐνώμους Meursius Ba Be: ἐνόμοις P ἐν νόμοις *coni.* Kyriakides || 192 δὴ V δῆ P: δὲ edd. ||

ικανόν ἐστιν πρὸς σωφρονισμόν παράδειγμα τῷ βουλομένῳ τὰ κακῶς παρ' ἐκείνου πραχθέντα ζηλοῦν.

Χρεὼν δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων καὶ ταῦτά σε γινώσκειν, οὐδὲ πολυέραστε, 195 ἅτε τῆς τούτων γνώσεως μεγάλη σοὶ συμβαλέσθαι δυναμένης καὶ θαυμαστότερον ἀποδείξει. Τὰ δὲ ἐστὶν περὶ διαφορᾶς πάλιν ἐτέρων ἐθνῶν, γενεαλογίας τε αὐτῶν καὶ ἐθνῶν καὶ βίου διαγωγῆς καὶ θέσεως καὶ κράσεως τῆς παρ' αὐτῶν κατοικουμένης γῆς καὶ περιηγήσεως αὐτῆς καὶ σταδισμοῦ, καθὼς ἐξῆς πλατύτερον διηρμήνευται. 200

14. Περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τοῦ Μουχοῦμετ.

30^νP

Γενεαλογεῖται ὁ δυσσεβὴς καὶ ἀκάθαρτος Μουχοῦμετ, ὃν λέγουσιν οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ προφήτην αὐτῶν εἶναι, ἐκ φυλῆς γενικωτάτης Ἰσμαήλ, υἱοῦ Ἀβραάμ, καταγόμενος. Ζιναρὸς γάρ, ὁ τοῦ Ἰσμαήλ ἀπόγονος, πατὴρ αὐτῶν ἀναγορεύεται πάντων. Οὗτος οὖν γεννᾷ υἱοὺς δύο, Μούνδα- 5 ρον καὶ Ῥαβίαν, ὁ δὲ Μούνδαρος τίττει Κούσαρον καὶ Κάϊσον καὶ Θεμίμην καὶ Ἀσανδον καὶ ἄλλους τινὰς ἀνωνύμους, οἱ καὶ τὴν Μιδιανίτιν ἔρημον κληρωσάμενοι, ἐκτρηνοτρόφουν ἐν σκηναῖς κατοικοῦντες. Εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἐνδότεροι τούτων οὐκ ἐκ τῆς φυλῆς αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ τοῦ Ἰεκτάν, οἱ λεγόμε- 10 νοι | Ὅμηρῆται, τουτέστιν Ἀμανῖται. Ἀναδείκνυται δὲ οὕτως. Ἀπόρου ὄντος αὐτοῦ τοῦ Μουχοῦμετ καὶ ὄρφανοῦ, ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ μισθωτεύσασθαι 31^νP γυναικὶ τινὶ πλουσίᾳ καὶ συγγε|νεῖ αὐτοῦ, καλουμένῃ Χαδιγᾷ, πρὸς τὸ καμηλεύειν καὶπραγματεύεσθαι ἐν Αἰγύπτῳ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλοφύλων καὶ ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ. Εἶτα κατὰ μικρὸν παρρησιασάμενος καὶ ὑπελθὼν τῇ γυναικὶ χήρᾳ οὔσῃ, λαμβάνει αὐτὴν εἰς γυναῖκα. Καὶ δὴ ἐπιχωριάζων 15 ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ καὶ συναναστρεφόμενος Ἰουδαίοις τε καὶ Χριστιανοῖς, ἐθηρᾷτο λόγους καὶ γραφικὰς λύσεις τινὰς. Ἐχων δὲ τὸ πάθος τῆς ἐπιληψίας, ἐλυπεῖτο σφόδρα ἡ γυνὴ αὐτοῦ, ὡς περιφανῆς καὶ πλουσία καὶ τῷ τοιοῦτῳ ἀνδρὶ συναφθεῖσα, οὐ μόνον ἀπόρῳ, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐπιληπτῳ, ἣν καὶ τροπώσάμενος φάσκων, ὅτι· «Φοβεράν ὀπτασίαν ἀγγέλου θεωρῶ 20

F 14. 2 Γενεαλογεῖται — 28 Αἰθριβου: Georg. Mon. p. 697, 13—699, 10 (cf. textum codicis P); cf. Theoph. p. 333, 14—334, 19; Leo Gramm., ed. Bonn. p. 153, 4—154, 7; Theod. Melit., ed. Tafel p. 105, 24—106, 21; Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 738, 12—739, 15; Excerpta cod. Harl. 5624. (s. XV.) fol. 418^r sqq., ed. Sp. Lampros, Νέος Ἑλληνομνήμων XV. p. 359.

V 196 μεγάλας V μεγάλως edd. || 197 τάδε P || 198 γενεαλογίας edd.: γενεθλεολογίας P || ἐθνῶν V || 200 διερμηνεύσεται Meursius Ba Be.

14. 2 Γενεαλογεῖται (etiam Migne): Γενεαλογῆται edd. || Μουχοῦμετ (etiam Georg. Mon.^{BEV}): Μουχοῦμεδ Georg. Mon. || 4 Ἀβραάμ Georg. Mon. || καταγόμενος V Georg. Mon.: καταγομένου P καταγόμενον edd. || Ζιναρὸς P: Νίζαρος Meursius Georg. Mon. Theoph. || 5/6 Μούνδαρον (etiam Theoph. cod.):

his headstrong acts is a sufficient warning to restrain anyone who is minded to emulate his evil deeds.

But now, with the rest, you must know also what follows, my well-loved son, since knowledge of it may greatly advantage you and render you the object of greater admiration. That is, once again, knowledge 'of the difference between other nations, their origins and customs and manner of life, and the position and climate of the land they dwell in, and its geographical description and measurement', as they are more widely expounded hereafter.

14. Of the genealogy of Mahomet.

The blasphemous and obscene Mahomet, whom the Saracens claim for their prophet, traces his genealogy by descent from the most widespread race of Ishmael, son of Abraham. For *Nizaros*, the descendant of Ishmael, is proclaimed the father of them all. Now he begat two sons, Moundaros and Rabias, and Moundaros begat Kousaros and Kaisos and Themimes and Asandos and various others whose names are unknown, who were allotted the Madianite desert and reared their flocks, dwelling in tents. And there are others further off in the interior who are not of the same tribe, but of Iektan, the so-called Homerites, that is, Amanites. And the story is published abroad thus. This Mahomet, being destitute and an orphan, thought fit to hire himself out to a certain wealthy woman, his relative, Chadiga by name, to tend her camels and to trade for her in Egypt among the foreigners and in Palestine. Thereafter by little and little he grew more free in converse and ingratiated himself with the woman, who was a widow, and took her to wife. Now, during his visits to Palestine and intercourse with Jews and Christians he used to follow up certain of their doctrines and interpretations of scripture. But as he had the disease of epilepsy, his wife, a noble and wealthy lady, was greatly cast down at being united to this man, who was not only destitute but an epileptic into the bargain, and so he deceived her by alleging: «I behold a dreadful vision of an angel called Gabriel, and

Μούδαρον Georg. Mon. Theoph. || 6 Παβείαν P || Μούνδαρος (*etiam* Theoph. ^{codd.}): Μούδαρος Georg. Mon. Theoph. || Κούσαρον (*etiam* Georg. Mon.): Κούρασον Georg. Mon.^P Theoph. || Θεμίμην Georg. Mon. Theoph.: Θυμίμην P ^{edd.} || 7 Άσανδόν Cod. Harl. Άσαδον Georg. Mon. Theoph. || άνωμόμους Meursius Be Georg. Mon.: όμωνόμους P άγνώστους Theoph. || Μαδιανίτην P || 9 Ίεκτάν P || 10 Όμηρείται P || Άμανίται (*etiam* Theoph.): Άμμανίται Georg. Mon. || Άναδείνεται δέ ούτως *deest* in Georg. Mon. || 11 αύτου του: του προειρημένου Georg. Mon.^P Theoph. || Μουχρόμεδ Georg. Mon. || μισθοτεύσασθαι P: μισθωτεύσαι Georg. Mon. μισθοδοτήσασθαι ^{edd.} || 12 Χαδιγᾶ Georg. Mon.: Χάδιγα P Χαδίγα ^{edd.} Χαδίγαν Theoph. || 13 άλλωφύλων: όμοφύλων Georg. Mon. || 16 συνανατρεφόμενος V Me Ba || 17 λώσεις: ρήσεις Georg. Mon. ||

Γαβριὴλ ὀνόματι, καὶ μὴ ὑποφέρων αὐτοῦ τὴν θῆαν ὀλιγωρῶ καὶ πίπτω»,
 31^vP ἐπιστεύθη, | συμψευδομαρτυροῦντος αὐτῷ Ἀρειανοῦ τινος μοναχοῦ
 ψευδωνύμου δι' αἰσχροκέρδειαν. Καὶ οὕτως ἡ γυνὴ πλανηθεῖσα καὶ
 ἄλλαις γυναῖξιν ὁμοφύλαις κηρύξασα προφήτην αὐτὸν εἶναι, προῆλθεν
 τὸ ψεῦδος τῆς ἀπάτης καὶ εἰς ἄνδρα φύλαρχον τοῦνομα Βουβάχαρ. 25
 Ἡ οὖν γυνὴ θανοῦσα καὶ τοῦτον διάδοχον καὶ κληρονόμον καταλείψασα
 τῶν ἑαυτῆς, ἐγένετο περιφανὴς καὶ ἄγαν ὑπερούσιος, καὶ κατέσχευεν
 ἡ πονηρὰ πλάνη τε καὶ αἵρεσις αὐτοῦ τὰ μέρη τῆς Αἰθρίβου. Καὶ ἐδίδαξεν
 οὗτος ὁ παράφρων καὶ πεφνεακισμένος τοὺς αὐτῷ πειθομένους, ὅτι ὁ
 92Be φονεύων ἐχθρὸν | ἡ ὑπὸ ἐχθροῦ φονευόμενος εἰς τὸν παράδεισον 30
 32^rP εἰσέρχεται καὶ ἄλλα, ὅσα φλυ|αρεῖ. Προσεύχονται δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ τῆς
 Ἀφροδίτης ἄστρον, ὃ καλοῦσι Κουβάρ, καὶ ἀναφωνοῦσιν ἐν τῇ
 προσευχῇ αὐτῶν οὕτως· «Ἄλλὰ οὐὰ Κουβάρ», ὃ ἐστίν· ὁ θεὸς καὶ
 Ἀφροδίτη. Τὸν γὰρ θεὸν Ἀλλά' προσονομάζουσι, τὸ δὲ οὐὰ' ἀντὶ
 τοῦ 'καί' συνδέσμου τιθέασιν, καὶ τὸ 'Κουβάρ' καλοῦσι τὸ ἄστρον, καὶ 35
 λέγουσιν οὕτως· «Ἄλλὰ οὐὰ Κουβάρ.»

15. Περὶ τοῦ γένους τῶν Φατεμιτῶν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ Φατέμ. θυγάτηρ ἦν τοῦ Μουχούμετ, καὶ ἀπ' ἐκείνης
 γεννῶνται οἱ Φατεμίται. Οὐκ εἰσὶ δὲ οὗτοι ἐκ τοῦ Φατέμη ἀπὸ τῆς
 Λιβύης χώρας, ἀλλὰ κατοικοῦσι πρὸς τὰ βαρεύτερα μέρη τοῦ Μέκε,
 βαθυτέρα τοῦ τάφου τοῦ Μουχούμετ. Εἰσὶ δὲ ἔθνος Ἀραβικόν, πρὸς 5
 32^vP πολέμους καὶ | μάχας ἀκριβῶς ἐξησκημένον· μετὰ γὰρ τοῦ τοιοῦτου
 γένους ἐπολέμησεν ὁ Μουχούμετ, καὶ πολλὰς πόλεις καὶ χώρας ἐπόρθη-
 σεν καὶ καθυπέταξεν. Εἰσὶ γὰρ ἡνδρειωμένοι καὶ πολεμισταί, ὅτι εἰ
 εὐρεθῶσι μέχρι μιᾶς χιλιάδος εἰς φουσσᾶτον, τὸ τοιοῦτον φουσσᾶτον
 ἀήττητον καὶ ἀκαταμάχῃον γίνεται. Οὐ καβαλλικεύουσι δὲ ἵππους, 10
 ἀλλὰ καμήλους, ἐν δὲ τῷ καιρῷ τοῦ πολέμου οὐκ ἐνδύονται θώρακας,
 οὔτε κλιβάνια, ἀλλὰ περιβόλαια ῥοδωτά, καὶ ἔχουσι δόρατα μακρὰ καὶ
 ἀσπίδας ἀνδρομήκεις καὶ τόξα ξύλινα παμμεγέθη, σχεδὸν μὴ δυνάμενα
 τείνεσθαι παρ' ὀλίγων ἀνδρῶν.

f 28 Καὶ ἐδίδαξεν — 31 εἰσέρχεται: Georg. Mon. (cod. P) app. ad p. 699, 10; cf. Theoph. p. 334, 20—23. 31 Προσεύχονται — 36 Κουβάρ: cf. Georg. Mon. p. 706, 1—13; Cedr. ed. Bonn. I. p. 744, 9—21; Exc. cod. Harl. 5624. I. c. p. 362.

15. 10 Οὐ καβαλλικεύουσι — 14 ἀνδρῶν: cf. Leo, Tact. XVIII. 112—115., ed. Migne, P. G. 107. c. 972 D—973 B.

being unable to endure his sight, I faint and fall»; and he was believed because a certain Arian, who pretended to be a monk, testified falsely in his support for love of gain. The woman being in this manner imposed on and proclaiming to other women of her tribe that he was a prophet, the lying fraud reached also the ears of a head-man whose name was Boubachar. Well, the woman died and left her husband behind to succeed her and to be heir of her estate, and he became a notable and very wealthy man, and his wicked imposture and heresy took hold on the district of Ethribos. And the crazy and deluded fellow taught those who believed on him, that he who slays an enemy or is slain by an enemy enters into paradise, and all the rest of his nonsense. And they pray, moreover, to the star of Aphrodite, which they call Koubar, and in their supplication cry out: «Alla wa Koubar», that is, 'God and Aphrodite'. For they call God 'Alla', and 'wa' they use for the conjunction 'and', and they call the star 'Koubar', and so they say 'Alla wa Koubar'.

15. Of the tribe of the Fatemites.

Fatem was a daughter of Mahomet, and from her are begotten the Fatemites. But these are not from Fatemi, from the country of Libya, but dwell in the district north of Mecca, away behind the tomb of Mahomet. They are an Arab nation, carefully trained to wars and battles; for with the aid of this tribe Mahomet went to war, and took many cities and subdued many countries. For they are brave men and warriors, so that if they be found to the number of a thousand in an army, that army cannot be defeated or worsted. They ride not horses but camels, and in time of war they do not put on corselets or coats of mail but pink-coloured cloaks, and have long spears and shields as tall as a man and enormous wooden bows which few can bend, and that with difficulty.

V 22 Ἀριανοῦ P || 24 ὁμοφύλαις (*etiam* Theoph.^a): ὁμοφύλοις Be Georg. Mon. Theoph. || 25 φύλαρχον Meursius Ba Be Georg. Mon.: φύλαρχον P || Βουβάχαρ: Ἀβουβάχαρ *coni.* Thunmann || 27 ἔγαν καὶ Georg. Mon.^P || ὑπερούσιος: περιούσιος Georg. Mon. ὑπερπλούσιος *coni.* Stephanus || 28 Αἰθρήβου Be Theoph.^s Αἰθρήβου P: Ἐθρήβου Georg. Mon. Theoph. || 31 καὶ ἄλλα, ὅσα φλογαρεῖ *deest in* Georg. Mon. Theoph. || φλογαρεῖ Be: φλογαρεῖ P || 33 ὁ V edd.: οὗ P || καὶ Meursius Ba Be: ἡ P || 34 Τὸν (*littera v addita*) P² V edd.: τὸ P || Ἀλλὰ V: Ἀλλὰ (*sine acc.*) P || 34/5 ἀντὶ τοῦ καὶ συνδέσμου τιθέσθαι V edd.: ἀντὶ καὶ συνδ⁸ τιθέσθαι P *accentum supra ἀντὶ add. itemque τοῦ et μου s. v. add. P² ἀντὶ τοῦ καὶ συνδέσμου nig. iter. P².*

15. 1 *incipit cod. Mutin. gr.* 179 [= M] || 3 Φατεμεῖται P || Φατέμη edd.: Φάτεμη P || 5 τοῦ¹ *om.* edd. || 9 φροάτον P || φροάτον P || 12 ῥοδοτά edd.: ῥοδοτά P: ῥυτιδιωτά *coni.* Meursius || 14 τείνεσθαι <εἰ μὴ> *coni.* Kyriakides.

93Be 16. Ἐκ τοῦ κανόνος, οὗ ἐθεμάτισεν Στέφανος ὁ
 33P μαθηματικός περὶ τῆς τῶν Σαρακηνῶν | ἐξόδου,
 ἐν ποίῳ χρόνῳ τῆς τοῦ κόσμου συστάσεως
 ἐγένετο, καὶ τίς ὁ τὰ σκηπτρα τῆς βασιλείας
 ῥωμαίων διέπων.

5

Ἐξῆλθον οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ μηνὶ Σεπτεμβρίῳ τρίτῃ, ἰνδικτιῶνος
 δεκάτης, εἰς τὸ δωδέκατον ἔτος Ἡρακλείου, ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου
 ,ζρλ'. Τὸ δὲ θεμάτιν τῶν αὐτῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἐγένετο εἰς μῆνα Σεπτέμ-
 βριον τρίτην, ἡμέρα πέμπτη. Εἰς τοὺς αὐτοὺς χρόνους πρῶτος ἀρχηγὸς
 τῶν Ἀράβων Μουάμεθ, ὃν οἱ Ἀράβες καλοῦσι Μουχούμετ, ὁ καὶ προ- 10
 φήτης αὐτῶν χρηματίσας, ἐκράτησε δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἔτη
 ἑνέα.

17. Ἐκ τοῦ Χρονικοῦ τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους.

Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει, ἡγουν ,ζρλθ', ἀπεβίω Μουάμεθ, ὁ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν
 33P ἀρχηγὸς καὶ ψευδοπροφήτης, προχειρισάμενος ἀντ' αὐτοῦ Ἀβουβάχα-
 ρον, τὸν καὶ Βουπάκτωρα, συγγενῇ αὐτοῦ. Οἱ δὲ πεπλανημένοι Ἑβραῖοι
 ἐν ἀρχῇ τῆς παρουσίας αὐτοῦ ἐνόμισαν εἶναι τοῦτον τὸν παρ' αὐτοῖς 5
 προσδοκώμενον Χριστόν, ὡς καὶ τινες τῶν προυχόντων αὐτῶν προσ-
 ελθεῖν αὐτῷ, καὶ δεῖξασθαι τὴν αὐτοῦ θρησκείαν, καὶ καταλιπεῖν τὴν
 τοῦ θεόπτου Μωσέως. Θεωρήσαντες δὲ αὐτὸν ἐσθίοντα ἀπὸ καμήλου,
 ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν, ὃν ἐνόμισαν. Ἐδίδασκον δὲ αὐτὸν ἀθέμιτα
 94Be κατὰ τῶν Χριστιανῶν, | καὶ διτήγον σὺν αὐτῷ. Οὗτοί εἰσιν οἱ διδάξαντες 10
 αὐτὸν παραδέχεσθαι μέρη τινὰ τοῦ νόμου, τὴν τε περιτομὴν καὶ ἄλλα
 τινά, ἅπερ παραφυλάττονται οἱ Σαρακηνοί. Πρῶτος οὖν Ἀβουβάχαρ
 34P ἠκολούθησεν αὐτὸν καὶ προφήτην | ἐκήρυξεν, διὸ καὶ διάδοχον αὐτὸν
 κατέλιπεν. Ἐκράτησεν δὲ ἡ αἵρεσις αὐτοῦ τὰ μέρη τῆς Αἰθρίας, πρώην
 μὲν ἐν κρυπτῷ ἔτη δέκα, τὸ δὲ ἔσχατον διὰ πολέμου ὁμοίως ἔτη δέκα, 15

F 16. 1 Ἐκ τοῦ — 5 διέπων: cf. H. Usener, De Stephano Alexandrino, Index lect. Bonn. 1879. p. 3—16., 1879/80. p. 15—22, Notae Bullialdi ad Ducae Historiam, ed. Bonn. pp. 622—626. 6 Ἐξῆλθον — 9 πέμπτη: cf. Leo Gramm., ed. Bonn. p. 152, 20—153, 3; Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 717, 7—17; Excerpta cod. Bruxellensis II 4836. (s. XIII.) fol. 90v, ed. J. Davreux, Byzantion X. p. 99.

17. 2 Τούτῳ — 10 αὐτῷ: Theoph. p. 333, 1—13; cf. Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 738, 3—11; Exc. cod. Harl. 5624., l. c. p. 358—359. 10 Οὗτοι

— 11 περιτομὴν: cf. Georg. Mon. p. 700, 5—6; Cedr. I. p. 739, 22. 14

Ἐκράτησεν — 23 ἀδικουμένοις: Theoph. p. 334, 17—27; cf. Cedr. I. p. 739, 15—17; Exc. cod. Harl. 5624., l. c. p. 359.

16, 17

16. From the canon which Stephen the astrologer cast from the stars concerning the Exodus of the Saracens, in what year of the foundation of the world it took place, and who then held the sceptre of the empire of the Romans.

The Exodus of the Saracens took place on the third day of the month of September of the tenth indiction, in the twelfth year of Heraclius, in the year from the creation of the world 6130. And the horoscope of these same Saracens was cast in the month of September, on the third day of the month, the fifth day of the week. At this same time Mouameth was first chief of the Arabs, whom the Arabs call Mahomet, who was also their prophet, and he held rule over the Arabs nine years.

17. From the Chronicle of Theophanes,
of blessed memory.

In this year 6139, died Mouameth, chief and false prophet of the Saracens, having appointed in his stead Aboubacharos, or Boupaktor, his kinsman. And the deluded Jews at his first appearance had taken him for the Christ whom they expect, so that some of their leading men approached him and received his religion and forsook that of Moses who beheld God. But when they saw him eating camel's flesh, they realized that he was not what they had thought him. But they taught him to do nefarious crimes against the Christians and continued in his company. These are they who taught him to accept some parts of the Law, both the circumcision and other matters, which the Saracens observe. The first to come after him, then, was Aboubachar, who had proclaimed him to be a prophet and was for that reason left behind to succeed him. And his heresy prevailed in the district of Ethribos, at first in secret ten years, and at last through

V 16. 1 οὗ: δν edd. || 4/5 καὶ τίς ὁ τὰ σκῆπτρα τῆς βασιλείας Ῥωμαίων διέπων: καὶ τίς ἦν τότε ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων V edd. || 7 δωδέκατον V M edd.: ιβ' P τῷ ιβ' ἔτει (sc. Ἡρακλείου) Cedr. τῷ ... δωδεκάτῳ τοῦ Μωάμεθ χρόνῳ Leo Gramm. || 8 post ἔρλ' siglo ./. *adhuc* νῦν δέ (ἔστιν) ἔωσ' (ἰνδι-κτιῶνος) ιε', ὡς εἶναι ἀπὸ τότε) ἕως νῦν χρόνοι ψμ' *mg. add.* P², *quae omnia in textum receperunt* V M Me, *qua de causa caput hoc insititium esse suspicatus est* Meursius || 10/1 προφήτης P¹ V M edd.: προφήτην P || 11 αὐτῶν P¹ V M edd.: αὐτὸν P || δέ *om.* V edd. || 12 ἐννέα edd.: θ' P.

17. 2 ἔγγον, *ερλθ' deest in Theoph.* || Μωάμεθ Theoph. || 3 ἀντ' αὐτοῦ *deest in Theoph.* || 4 τὸν καὶ Βουπάκτωρα *deest in Theoph.* || Βουράκτωρα V edd. || 5 τοῦτον: αὐτὸν Theoph. || 7 καταλιπεῖν: ἀφήσαι Theoph. || 8 ἀπὸ καμῆλου ἐσθίοντα V edd. || 9 δέ *deest in Theoph.* || 10 διδάσκοντες edd. || 14 δέ *deest in Theoph.* || Αἰθρίβου P² V edd. Theoph.: Αἰθρίου P Ἐθρίβου Theoph. || 15 δέκα¹ edd.: ι' P || δέ *deest in Theoph.* || δέκα² edd.: ι' P ||

καὶ φανερώς ἔτη ἑνέα. Ἐδίδαζεν δὲ τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ ὑπηκόους, ὅτι ὁ ἀποκτείνας ἐχθρὸν ἢ ἀπὸ ἐχθροῦ ἀποκτεννόμενος ἀκωλύτως εἰς τὸν παράδεισον εἰσέρχεται, τὸν δὲ παράδεισον σαρκικῆς βρώσεως καὶ πόσεως καὶ μίξεως γυναικῶν ἔλεγεν, ποταμὸν δὲ οἶνου καὶ μέλιτος καὶ γάλακτος καταρρεῖν, καὶ γυναικῶν τὴν ὄρασιν ἀσύγκριτον, οὐ τῶν παρόντων, 20 ἀλλ' ἄλλων, καὶ τὴν μῆξιν πολυχρόνιον ἔφασκεν καὶ διαρκῆ τὴν ἡδονὴν καὶ ἄλλα τινὰ ἀσωτίας καὶ μωρίας ἔμπλεα, συμπαθεῖν τε ἀλλήλοις καὶ 34^vP βοηθεῖν | ἀδικουμένοις.

18. Δεύτερος ἀρχηγὸς τῶν Ἀράβων, Ἀβου-
βάχαρ, ἔτη τρία.

Οὗτος ὁ Ἀβουβάχαρ πρῶτος λαμβάνει τὴν πόλιν Γάζαν καὶ πᾶσαν αὐτῆς τὴν περίχωρον. Τελευτᾷ δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς Ἀβουβάχαρ ἀμνηρεύσας ἔτη τρία, καὶ παραλαμβάνει τὴν ἀρχὴν Οὔμαρ, καὶ κρατεῖ τῶν Ἀράβων 5 ἔτη δώδεκα.

95B^o 19. Τρίτος ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων, Οὔμαρ.

Ὁ αὐτὸς οὖν Οὔμαρ ἐπεστράτευσε κατὰ τῆς Παλαιστίνης, καὶ παρακαθίσας ἐν αὐτῇ ἐπολιόρησεν τὴν Ἱερουσαλὴμ διετῇ χρόνον, καὶ παρέλαβεν αὐτὴν δόλῳ. Σωφρόνιος γάρ, ὁ Ἱεροσολύμων ἐπίσκοπος, θείῳ κινούμενος ζήλῳ καὶ ἀγγινοῖα διαπρέπων, λόγον ἔλαβεν παρ' 5 αὐτοῦ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν τῆς πάσης Παλαιστίνης ἀσφαλέστατον, ὥστε 35^rP ἀκαθαιρέτους | μείναι τὰς ἐκκλησίας καὶ ἀπορθήτους. Τοῦτον ἰδὼν ὁ Σωφρόνιος ἔφη· «Ἐπ' ἀληθείας τοῦτό ἐστιν τὸ βδέλυγμα τῆς ἐρημώσεως, τὸ ῥηθὲν διὰ Δανιὴλ τοῦ προφήτου ἐστὸς ἐν τόπῳ ἁγίῳ.» Οὗτος τὸν ναὸν ἐζήτησεν τῶν Ἰουδαίων, ὃν ὥκοδόμησε Σολομών, πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι 10 αὐτὸν προσκυνητήριον τῆς αὐτοῦ βλασφημίας. Καὶ ἔστι ἕως τῆς σήμερον.

F 18, 1 Δεύτερος — 6 δώδεκα: cf. Theoph. p. 336, 4—8, 14—16, 28—29; 337, 13—17; Exc. cod. Harl. 5624., l. c. p. 363.

19, 2 Ὁ αὐτὸς — 11 βλασφημίας: Theoph. p. 339, 15—24; cf. Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 746, 8—15. 8 τὸ βδέλυγμα — 9 ἁγίῳ: Matth. 24, 15; cf. Dan. 9, 27; Vita Sophronii, ed. A. Papadopoulos-Kerameus, Ἀνάλεκτα

Ἱεροσολυμιτικῆς σταχυολογίας V. p. 144.

V 16 ἔτη deest in Theoph. || ἑνέα edd.: 9^r P || 17 ἀπὸ (etiam Theoph. c^oetm): ὑπὸ V edd. Theoph. || ἀποκτεννόμενος Theoph. ἀποκτενόμενος P: ἀποκτείνόμενος edd. || ἀκωλύτως deest in Theoph. || τὸν deest in Theoph. || 19 δὲ (etiam Theoph.^h): τε Theoph. || 20 καταρρεῖν deest in Theoph. || τὴν ὄρασιν ἀσύγκριτον deest in Theoph. || παρόντων (etiam Theoph. c^oetm): παρούσων

17, 18, 19

war another ten years, and openly nine years. And he taught his subjects that he who has slain an enemy or is slain by an enemy enters unhindered into paradise, and said that it is a paradise of carnal eating and drinking and lying with women, and that a river of wine and honey and milk flows down it and the women are incomparable to look upon, not such as we know here but other, and he fabled that intercourse with them is of long duration and the pleasure continuous, and other matters replete with libertinism and folly; and they are to forgive one another and aid one another when wronged.

18. The second chief of the Arabs, Aboubachar, three years.

This Aboubachar first took the city of Gaza and all the territory round about it. And the same Aboubachar died after ruling as emir three years, and Oumar succeeded to the rule and governed the Arabs twelve years.

19. The third chief of the Arabs, Oumar.

This same Oumar marched against Palestine, and laid siege in it and blockaded Jerusalem for the space of two years, and took it by guile. For Spohronius, bishop of Jerusalem, one moved with divine zeal and excellent in sagacity, received from him a most sure undertaking concerning the churches throughout Palestine, so that the churches were neither destroyed nor sacked. When Sophronius saw him, he said: «Of a truth this is the abomination of desolation spoken of by Daniel the prophet, that standeth in the holy place.» He demanded the temple of the Jews that Solomon built, to make it the place of worship of his blasphemy. And it is so to this day.

Theoph. || 21 ἐφασκεν: εἶναι Theoph. || διαρκῆ τὴν Βο Theoph.: διαρκητικὴν P || 22 ἐμπλεα V edd.: ἐμπλεω P μεσά Theoph. || τε: δὲ Theoph.

18. 2 τρία scr. Moravcsik: γ' P Ba Be || 3 Ἀβουβάχαρ (etiam Theoph.^{af}): Ἀβουβάχαρος Theoph. || 5 τρία edd.: γ' P δύο ἡμῖσι hic, sed alio loco γ' Theoph. || 5 Οὔμαρος Theoph. || 6 δώδεκα edd.: ιβ' P.

19. 1 Οὔμαρ] litteras rest. P² || 2 Οὔμαρος Theoph. || ἐπεστράτευσεν (etiam Meursius Migne Theoph.): ἀπεστράτευσεν V edd. || τῆς deest in Theoph. || 3 ἐν αὐτῇ ἐπολιόρησεν deest in Theoph. || τὴν Ἱερουσαλήμ: τὴν ἁγίαν πόλιν Theoph. || 4 καὶ deest in Theoph. || αὐτὴν δόλῳ] litteras ἡν δόλῳ rest. P² || δόλῳ: λόγῳ Theoph. || ἐπίσκοπος: ἀρχιερεὺς Theoph. || 5 θείῳ κινουμένου ζήλῳ καὶ ἀγγινοῖα διαπρέπων deest in Theoph. || 5/6 παρ' αὐτοῦ ὑπὲρ τῶν ἐκκλησιῶν τῆς deest in Theoph. || 6 ἀσφαλίστατον (etiam Theoph.^{cod.}): σφαλείας Theoph. || 6 ὥστε — 7 ἀπορθήτους deest in Theoph. || 7 ὁ deest in Theoph. || 9 ἐστὼς P ἐστὼς Theoph.^{es} || Οὐτός: Οὔμαρος Theoph. || 10 πρὸς τὸ deest in Theoph.

20. Τέταρτος Ἀράβων ἀρχηγός, Οὐθμάν.

Οὗτος λαμβάνει τὴν Ἀφρικὴν πολέμῳ, καὶ στοιχήσας φόρους μετὰ τῶν Ἀφρων ὑπέστρεψεν. Τούτου στρατηγὸς χρηματίζει Μαυίας, ὁ παραλύσας τὸν κολοσσὸν Ῥόδου καὶ πορθήσας Κύπρον τὴν νῆσον καὶ πάσας τὰς πόλεις αὐτῆς. Οὗτος παραλαμβάνει καὶ νῆσον τὴν Ἀραδον, 5
 35^P καὶ τὴν πόλιν αὐτῆς ἐνέπρησεν, | καὶ τὴν νῆσον ἀοίκητον κατέστησεν ἕως τοῦ νῦν. Οὗτος τὴν νῆσον Ῥόδον καταλαβὼν καθείλε τὸν ἐν αὐτῇ
 96^{Be} κολοσσὸν μετὰ χίλια τζ' ἔτη τῆς αὐτοῦ | ἰδρύσεως, ὃν Ἰουδαῖός τις ἔμπορος ὠνησάμενος Ἐδεσσηνός, θ' καμήλους ἐφόρτωσεν αὐτοῦ τὸν χαλκόν. Οὗτος ὁ Μαυίας ἐπεστράτευσε καὶ κατὰ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, 10
 καὶ ἐλυμήνατο τὴν τε Ἐφεσον καὶ Ἀλικαρνασσὸν καὶ Σμύρνην καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς πόλεις Ἰωνίας, ὃς καὶ γέγονεν τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγὸς πέμπτος μετὰ τὴν Οὐθμάν τελευτὴν ἔτη εἴκοσι τέσσαρα.

21. Ἐκ τοῦ Χρονικοῦ Θεοφάνους· ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου, ςροα'.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι πρὸς τῇ τελευτῇ Μαυίου, τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγῶ, 30^P εἰσῆλθον οἱ Μαρδαῖται εἰς τὸν Λιβανον, καὶ ἐκράτησαν ἀπὸ | τοῦ Μαύρου ὄρους ἕως τῆς ἁγίας πόλεως, καὶ ἐχειρώσαντο τὰς τοῦ Λιβάνου περιωπὰς· 5
 καὶ πολλοὶ δοῦλοι καὶ αὐτόχθονες πρὸς αὐτοὺς κατέφυγον, ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου χρόνου εἰς πολλὰς χιλιάδας γενέσθαι. Καὶ τοῦτο μαθὼν Μαυίας καὶ οἱ σύμβουλοι αὐτοῦ, ἐφοβήθησαν σφόδρα. Καὶ ἀποστέλλει πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Κωνσταντῖνον ζητῶν εἰρήνην. Ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τῇ προφάσει πέμπεται παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ ὀρθοδόξου, 10
 υἱοῦ τοῦ Πωγωνάτου, Ἰωάννης ὁ ἐπίκλην Πιτζηκαύδης. Τούτου δὲ καταλαβόντος ἐν Συρίᾳ, Μαυίας ἐδέξατο αὐτὸν μετὰ μεγάλης τιμῆς,

F 20. 2 Οὗτος — 3 ὑπέστρεψεν: cf. Theoph. p. 343, 17—20, 24—28. 3
 Μαυίας — 5 αὐτῆς: cf. Theoph. p. 345, 8—9; 343, 30—31; Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 755, 1—2, 8—9. 5 Οὗτος — 7 νῦν: Theoph. p. 344, 12—15; cf. Cedr. I. p. 755, 3—5. 7 Οὗτος — 10 χαλκόν: Theoph. p. 345, 8—11; cf. Cedr. I. p. 755, 8—10; Zon. XIV. 19., ed. Bonn. III. p. 219, 7—10. 10 Οὗτος — Κωνσταντινουπόλεως: cf. Theoph. p. 345, 16—18. 11 ἐλυμήνατο — 12 Ἰωνίας: cf. Theoph. p. 353, 14—16; Cedr. I. p. 764, 18—20. 12 ὃς — 13 τέσσαρα: cf. Theoph. p. 346, 20—21, 25; 355, 1—5.

21. 4 εἰσῆλθον — 16 εὐγενεῖς ν': Theoph. p. 355, 6—25; cf. Niceph., ed. de Boor p. 32, 23—33, 6; Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 765, 19—766, 6; Zon. XIV. 20., ed. Bonn. III. p. 224, 11—225, 7.

20. The fourth chief of the Arabs, Outhman.

He took Africa by war, and arranged imposts with the Africans and returned. His general was Mauias, who pulled down the colossus of Rhodes and took the island of Cyprus and all its cities. He took the island of Arados also and burnt its city, and made the island desolate to this day. When he came to the island of Rhodes, he demolished the colossus in it, one thousand and 360 years after it had been set up, and a Jewish merchant of Edessa bought it and loaded 900 camels with the bronze of it. This Mauias also made an expedition against Constantinople and ravaged Ephesus and Halicarnassus and Smyrna and the rest of the cities of Ionia, and after the death of Outhman was fifth chief of the Arabs for twenty-four years.

21. From the Chronicle of Theophanes: the year from the creation of the world 6171.

At the end of the life of Mauias, chief of the Arabs, the Mardaïtes entered the Lebanon and took possession of it from the Black mountain to the holy city, and made themselves masters of the summits of the Lebanon; and many slaves and natives ran to them for refuge, in numbers which shortly amounted to many thousands. On learning this, Mauias was greatly alarmed, and his counsellors with him. And he sent envoys to the emperor Constantine, seeking for peace. Therefore, the emperor Constantine, the orthodox, son of Pogonatus, dispatched John surnamed Pitzikaudis. And when he arrived in Syria, Mauias received him with great honour, and it

V 20. 1 ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων V edd. || 3 Μαυίας P Theoph.: Μαβίας P² V M || 6 καὶ τὴν² bis P || 7 νῆσον *deest* in Theoph. || ἐν αὐτῇ *corr.* Moravcsik: ἐαυτῇ P ἐαυτῆς V M Me Ba αὐτῆς Be ἐν αὐτῇ *deest* in Theoph. || 8 χιλία τέ: ,ατζ' Theoph. || 9 Ἐδεσινὸς P || γ *corr.* Moravcsik ἐννακασίας Ba Be Theoph.: λ P τριάκοντα χιλιάδας s. v. add. P³ V M Me || 10 Μαυίας P Theoph.: Μαβίας P² V M || 11 Σμύρνην *corr.* Moravcsik: Σμύρνης P M Σμύρναν P² V edd. || 12 πέμπτος V edd.: ε' s. v. add. P¹ in *textum recepit* M || 13 Οὐθμάν] *litteras rest.* P².

21. 3 Μαυίου P: Μαβίου P² V M || 3 *post* Ἀράβων s. v. add. πέμπτου P³ in *textum receperunt* V M edd. || 4 οἱ (*habet etiam* Cedr.): *deest* in Theoph. || Μαρδαταί P || 7 τοῦτο: ταῦτα Theoph. || Μαυίας P Theoph.: Μαβίας P² V M || 8 πρέσβεις P³ V M edd.: πρέσβης P || 9/10/Ἐπὶ ταύτῃ τῇ προφάσει *deest* in Theoph. || 10 πέμπεται: ἀπέστειλε Theoph. || 10/1 Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ ὀρθοδόξου, υἱοῦ τοῦ Πωγωνάτου *deest* in Theoph. || 11 υἱοῦ *omittendum coni.* Meursius Bandurius *secl.* Be *post* υἱοῦ *comma posuit* Migne || τοῦ om. V Me || ὁ: τὸ Theoph. || Πιτζικαυδης: Πιτζικαυδην Cedr. Πιτζικαυδην Theoph. ||

36^p καὶ συνεφωνήθη πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ἔγγραφον γενέσθαι | εἰρήνης μεθ'
 ὅρκου λόγον ἐπὶ συμφώνου ἑτησίου πάειτου, παρέχεσθαι τῷ τῶν 'Ρω-
 97^{Be} μαίων βασιλεῖ παρὰ τῶν 'Αγαρηνῶν χρυσίου | χιλιάδας τρεῖς καὶ 15
 ἄνδρας αἰχμαλώτους ὡ' καὶ ἵππους εὐγενεῖς ν'. 'Επὶ τούτου διηρέθη
 ἡ τῶν 'Αράβων ἀρχὴ εἰς μέρη δύο. Καὶ εἰς μὲν τὴν Αἰθιοπιδίαν ἐκράτησε
 τὴν ἀρχὴν ὁ 'Αλῆ, τὴν δὲ Αἰγυπτὸν καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν
 ἐκράτει ὁ Μαυίας. Καὶ οἱ μὲν τὴν Αἰθιοπιδίαν οἰκοῦντες μετὰ τῶν υἱῶν
 τοῦ 'Αλῆ ἐστράτευσαν κατὰ τοῦ Μαυίου. 'Ο δὲ Μαυίας ἀνθωπλίσατο 20
 κατ' αὐτῶν, καὶ συνῆψεν πόλεμον παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην, καὶ
 ἡττήθη τὸ μέρος 'Αλῆ, καὶ παρέλαβεν ὁ Μαυίας τὴν Αἰθιοπιδίαν καὶ
 πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν τῆς Συρίας. 'Εκράτησεν δὲ ἡ αὐτοῦ γενεὰ ἔτη πέντε. Καὶ
 37^p μετ' αὐτὸν ἐξῆλθον οἱ λεγόμενοι Μαυροφόροι ἀπὸ Περσίδος, | οἱ κρατοῦν- 25
 τες ἕως τῆς σήμερον, καὶ ἐπολέμησαν τὴν γενεάν τοῦ Μαυίου καὶ ἡφάνι-
 σαν αὐτήν. 'Εσφαζαν δὲ καὶ Μαρουάμ, τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτῶν. 'Υπελείφθη-
 σαν δὲ ὀλίγοι τοῦ Μαυίου, καὶ ἐδιώχθησαν παρὰ τῶν Μαυροφώρων
 ἕως τῆς 'Αφρικῆς μετὰ καὶ ἐνὸς ἐκγόνου τοῦ Μαυίου. 'Ο δὲ αὐτὸς ἐκ-
 γονος τοῦ Μαυίου μετ' ὀλίγων τινῶν διεπέρασεν εἰς τὴν 'Ισπανίαν ἐν
 ταῖς ἡμέραις 'Ιουστινιανοῦ τοῦ 'Ρινοτιμήτου, οὐχὶ δὲ τοῦ Πωγωνάτου. 30
 Τοῦτο δὲ παρὰ τοῖς ἡμετέροις ἱστορικοῖς οὐ γέγραπται. 'Αφ' οὗ γὰρ
 παρελήφθη ἡ μεγάλη 'Ρώμη παρὰ τῶν Γότθων, ἤρξατο ἀκρωτηριάζεσθαι
 τὰ 'Ρωμαϊκὰ πράγματα, καὶ οὐδεὶς τῶν ἱστορικῶν τῶν τῆς 'Ισπανίας
 37^v^p μερῶν ἐποίησατο μνηεῖον, οὔτε τῆς γενεᾶς | τοῦ Μαυίου. 'Εχει | δὲ τοῦ
 98^{Be} μακαρίου Θεοφάνους ἡ ἱστορία οὕτως. 'Απεβίω οὖν ὁ Μαυίας, ὁ τῶν 35
 Σαρακηνῶν ἀρχηγός, γεγονώς στρατηγός ἔτη κς', ἀμηρεύσας δὲ ἔτη
 κδ'. Καὶ ἐκράτησεν τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν 'Αράβων 'Ιζίδ, ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ἔτη ς'.
 Τούτου τελευτήσαντος, ἐταράχθησαν οἱ 'Αραβες τῆς Αἰθιοπιδίαν, καὶ
 διεγερθέντες κατέστησαν ἑαυτοῖς ἀρχηγὸν 'Αβδελαῦν, τὸν υἱὸν Ζουβέρ.
 Τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες οἱ τὴν Φοινίκην καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν 40
 κατοικοῦντες 'Αγαρηνοί, ἔρχονται πρὸς Οὐσάν, ἀμηρεῦν Παλαιστίνης, καὶ
 προβάλλονται Μαρουάμ, καὶ ἰστώνει αὐτὸν ἀρχηγόν, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς
 ἀρχῆς μῆνας θ'. Τούτου δὲ τελευτήσαντος, 'Αβιμέλεχ, ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ

F 16 'Επὶ τούτου — 23 Συρίας: cf. Theoph. p. 346, 20—347, 4;
 347, 26—28. 23 Καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν — 30 Πωγωνάτου: cf. Theoph.
 p. 403, 12—13; 424, 12—16; 425, 13—15; 426, 1—7. 35 'Απεβίω
 — 37 ἔτη ς': Theoph. p. 356, 15—17; 360, 13—17. 38 Τούτου —
 46 διάδοχον: Theoph. p. 360, 27—361, 3.

V 13 καὶ deest in Theoph. || ἀμφοτέρους: ἐκατέρους Theoph. || 14 λόγον
 V edd. Theoph.: λόγων P Theoph. || 14/15 τῷ τῶν 'Ρωμαίων βασιλεῖ:
 τῇ 'Ρωμαικῇ πολιτεῖα Theoph. || 15 χρυσίου (etiam Niceph. Cedr. Zon.):

was agreed on both sides that a convention of peace should be drawn up in writing and sworn to, on the basis of an agreed annual tribute, the Agarenes to pay to the emperor of the Romans three thousand pieces of gold and 800 prisoners and 50 thoroughbred horses. At this time the empire of the Arabs was divided in two parts. In Ethribos Ali held rule, but Mauias held Egypt and Palestine and Damascus. And the dwellers in Ethribos marched with the sons of Ali against Mauias. And Mauias armed himself against them and joined battle by the river Euphrates, and the party of Ali was defeated, and Mauias took Ethribos and all the land of Syria. And his family held rule 85 years. And after him came forth the so-called Black-robed out of Persia, who hold rule to this day, and they fought with the clan of Mauias and utterly destroyed it. And they slew Marouam also, who was its head. And few of the party of Mauias were left, and they, together with one grandson of Mauias, were pursued by the Black-robed as far as Africa. Now this same grandson of Mauias with a few followers crossed over into Spain in the days of Justinian Rhinotmetus, not of Pogonatus. But this has not been written by our historians. For from the time of the capture of old Rome by the Goths, the Roman possessions began to be lopped off, and none of the historians has made mention of the region of Spain, nor of the clan of Mauias. But the history of Theophanes, of blessed memory, has the following account: And so Mauias, chief of the Saracens, died, who had been general 26 years, and had ruled as emir 24 years. And Izid, his son, held rule over the Arabs 6 years. On his death the Arabs of Ethribos were disturbed, and they arose and set up Abdelas, son of Zouber, to be their chief. When they heard this, the Arabs who dwelt in Phoenicia and Palestine and Damascus came to Ousan, the emir of Palestine, and appointed Marouam and set him up to be chief, and he held the rule 9 months. On his death, his son Abimelech succeeded to the rule and held it 22 years and 6 months. And

χρυσού Theoph. || 16 ω': ν' Theoph. || τούτου Be: τούτω P || 19 Μαυίας P: Μαβίας P^v mg. P^v V M || 20 Μαυίου P V: Μαβίου P^v M || Μαυίας P V: Μαβίας P^v M || ἀνδοπλήσατο P || 22 Μαυίας P V: Μαβίας P^v M || 23 τῆς om. V edd. || π' P V M: ο' (littera π ex dimidia parte, e autem penitus erasa) P^v Ba Be || 24 αὐτὸν V edd.: αὐτῶν P || 25 ἐπολέμασαν P || Μαυίου P V: Μαβίου P^v M || 27 Μαυίου P V: Μαβίου P^v M || 28 Μαυίου P V: Μαβίου P^v M || 29 Μαυίου P V: Μαβίου P^v M || 34 Μαυίου P V: Μαβίου P^v M || 35 ἡ inser. P^x in textum receperunt V M Ba Be || οὖν ὁ deest in Theoph. || Μαυίας P V: Μαβίας P^v M || 36 ἀρχηγός: πρωτοσύμβουλος Theoph. || κς' (etiam Theoph.sm): κ' Theoph. || 37 Ἀράβων Ἰζίδ: post Ἀράβων mg. ἔτη, post ιζ s. v. καὶ, post ιδ s. v. ἥως λα' add. P² ἔτη ιζ' καὶ ιδ' ἥδς λα' in textum recepit M || ζ': γ' Theoph. || 38 τῆς Ba Be: τοῦ P Theoph. || Αἰθρίβου (etiam Theoph.^s): Ἐθρίβου Theoph. || 39 Ἀβδελάν P || τὸν: τινα Theoph. || 40 τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες deest in Theoph. || 40/1 οἱ τὴν Φοινίκην καὶ Παλαιστίνην καὶ Δαμασκὸν κατοικοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοί: Οἱ Φοίνικες καὶ οἱ Παλαιστίνης ἐπὶ τὴν Δαμασκὸν Theoph. || 41 Οὐσάν: Ἀσάν Theoph. || ἀμπεράν P || 42 προβάλλονται: διδουσι χεῖρας δεξιὰς τῷ Theoph. || 42/3 κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς: ἀμπερεῖ Theoph. || 43 Ἀβιμέλεχ] litteras rest. P² ||

διαδέχεται τὴν ἀρχήν, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη κβ' καὶ μῆνας ς'. Καὶ χειροῦται
 38^F τοὺς | τυράννους, καὶ ἀποκτείνει τὸν Ἀβδελᾶν, υἱὸν Ζουβέρ καὶ διὰ- 45
 δοχον. Ἐν τούτοις τελευτᾷ Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Πωγω-
 νάτου, κρατήσας τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς ἔτη ιζ'· καὶ ἐβασίλευσεν ἀντ'
 αὐτοῦ Ἰουστινιανός, ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγός, (δς) πέμπτος ἀπὸ τοῦ
 Μουάμεθ ἐκράτησεν τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν Ἀράβων, οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ γένους ἦν τοῦ 50
 Μουάμεθ, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἐτέρας φυλῆς. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐχειροτονήθη στρατηγός
 καὶ ναύαρχος παρὰ Οὐθμάν, ἀρχηγοῦ τῶν Ἀράβων, καὶ ἀπεστάλη κατὰ
 τῆς Ῥωμαίων πολιτείας μετὰ χειρὸς ἰσχυρᾶς καὶ καταφράκτων νηῶν
 99^{Be} ας'. Καὶ | εἰσῆλθεν ἕως τῆς Ῥόδου, κἀκεῖθεν ἐξοπλισάμενος ἀνῆλθεν
 38^v ἕως Κωνσταντινούπολιν, καὶ διατρίψας χρόνον | ἱκανόν, λεηλατήσας 55
 τε τὰ ἔξω τοῦ Βυζαντίου, ὑπέστρεψεν ἄπρακτος. Ἐλθὼν δὲ ἐν τῇ
 Ῥόδῳ καθεῖλεν τὸν κολοσσὸν τὸν ἐν αὐτῇ ἰστάμενον. Ἀγαλμα δὲ ἦν
 τοῦ ἡλίου χαλκοῦν, κεχρυσωμένον ἀπὸ κεφαλῆς ἕως ποδῶν, ἔχον ὕψος
 πῆχεις π' καὶ πλάτος ἀναλόγως τοῦ ὕψους, καθὼς μαρτυρεῖ τὸ ἐπίγραμμα
 τὸ πρὸς τὴν βᾶσιν τῶν ποδῶν αὐτοῦ γεγραμμένον, ἔχον οὕτως· 60

Τὸν ἐν Ῥόδῳ κολοσσὸν ὀκτάκις δέκα

Λάχης ἐποίει πηχέων, ὁ Λίνδιος.

Ἐλαβεν δὲ τὸν χαλκὸν αὐτοῦ καὶ διεπέρασεν αὐτὸν ἐν Συρίᾳ, καὶ ἔστησεν
 αὐτὸν εἰς ἀγορὰν παντὶ τῷ βουλομένῳ· ὦνῆσατο δὲ αὐτὸν Ἑβραῖος
 Ἐδεσσηνός, ἐπιφορτώσας αὐτὸν ἀπὸ θαλάσσης καμήλους ἅπ'. Τελευτῇ 65
 39^F σαντος οὖν τοῦ Οὐθμάν, διεδέξατο τὴν τῶν Ἀράβων | ἀρχὴν αὐτὸς ὁ
 Μαυίας. Ἐκράτησεν δὲ τῆς ἀγίας πόλεως καὶ τῶν τῆς Παλαιστίνης
 μερῶν, τὴν τε Δαμασκὸν καὶ Ἀντιόχειαν καὶ πάσας τὰς τῆς Αἰγύπτου
 πόλεις. Ὁ δὲ Ἀλῆμ, δς ἦν γαμβρὸς τοῦ Μουάμεθ ἐπὶ θυγατρί, καλου-
 μένη Φατιμέ, ἐκράτησεν τῆς Αἰθιόβου καὶ πάσης τῆς τραχείας Ἀραβίας. 70
 Ἐν ταύταις οὖν ταῖς ἡμέραις διηγέρθησαν πρὸς πόλεμον κατ' ἀλλήλων

F 46 Ἐν τούτοις — 48 υἱὸς αὐτοῦ: Theoph. p. 361, 15—16; cf. Cedr. I. p. 770, 22—24. 51 Καὶ πρῶτον — 54 ας': cf. Theoph. p. 343, 30—31; Cedr. I. p. 755, 1—2.

54 Καὶ εἰσῆλθεν — Ῥόδου: cf. Theoph. p. 345, 8; Cedr. I. p. 755, 8. 54 κἀκεῖθεν — 55

Κωνσταντινούπολιν: cf. Theoph. p. 345, 16—18; Cedr. I. p. 755, 17—18. 56 Ἐλθὼν — 57 ἰστάμενος: cf. Theoph. p. 345, 8—9; Cedr. I. p. 755, 8—9. 57 Ἀγαλμα — 62 Λίνδιος: cf. Cedr. I. p. 755, 10—16.

61 Τὸν ἐν — 62 Λίνδιος: cf. Simonidis epigr. 165., ed. Diehl, A. L. Gr. II². 5. p. 143; Strabo XIV. 2, 5., p. 652; Ps.—Draco, De metris, ed. Hermann p. 99. 64 ὦνῆσατο — 65 ὅπ': Theoph. p. 345, 9—11; cf. Cedr. I. p. 755, 9—10; Zon. XIV. 19., ed. Bonn. III. p. 219, 9—10.

65 Τελευτήσαντος — 69 πόλεις: cf. Theoph. p. 346, 20—25. 71 Ἐν ταύταις — 74 ἀλλήλων: cf. Theoph. p. 346, 27—347, 4; 347, 27—28.

he overcame the rebels, and slew Abdelas, son and successor of Zouber. Meanwhile, the emperor Constantine, son of Pogonatus, died, having held rule over the Romans 17 years; and his son Justinian reigned in his stead.

The chief of the Arabs *who* was fifth after Mouameth to hold rule over the Arabs was not of the family of Mouameth, but of another tribe. And first he was appointed general and admiral by Outhman, chief of the Arabs, and was sent against the state of the Romans with a strong force and 1200 decked ships. He proceeded to Rhodes, and thence, after fitting out his expedition, came up to Constantinople, and lingered a long time, and laid waste the environs of Byzantium, but returned with his purpose unachieved. When he came to Rhodes, he pulled down the colossus that stood in it. It was a brazen statue of the sun, gilded from head to foot, 80 cubits in height and broad in proportion, as witness the inscription written on the base of its feet, running like this:

The Rhodian colossus, eight times ten

Cubits in height, Laches of Lindos made.

He took the bronze of it and carried it over into Syria, and put it up for sale to any who wanted it; and a Hebrew of Edessa bought it and brought it up from the sea laden on 980 camels. On the death of Outhman, then, this Mauias succeeded to the rule of the Arabs. And he ruled over the holy city and the regions of Palestine, over Damascus and Antioch and all the cities of Egypt. But Alim, who was son-in-law of Mouameth, having married his daughter called Fatime, ruled over Ethribos and all Arabia Tracheia. Now, in these days Alim and Mauias were roused up to war against one

V 44 κρατεί ἔτη κβ' καὶ μῆνας ζ': ἀμνηρεύσας ἔτη κα' ἡμισυ Theoph. || 45 ἀποκτείνει Theoph. ἀποκτενεῖ P: ἀποκτείνει V edd. || 'Αβδελάν P || Ζουβέρ] *litteras* ζου rest. P² || 45/6 διάδοχον (*etiam* Theoph.^{celshim}) Δάδαχον Theoph. || 46 τελευτᾷ: ἀνεπάη Theoph. || 46/7 ὁ βασιλεὺς, ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Πωγωνάτου *deest* in Theoph. || 47 τῆς 'Ρωμαίων ἀρχῆς *deest* in Theoph. τὴν 'Ρωμαίων ἀρχὴν edd. || ιϛ'] *litteras* rest. P² || 47/8 ἀντ' αὐτοῦ *deest* in Theoph. || 48 'Ιουστινιανὸς V M edd.: 'Ιουστινιανὸς P || 49 post ἀρχηγός s. v. add. Μαβίας P³ in *textum receperunt* V M edd. || δς *addendum con.* Bekker || 50 ἦν s. v. add. P³ in *textum receperunt* M Ba Be || 53 καταφρόνων νηῶν: σκάφη Theoph. || 54 ,ας': ,αψ' Theoph. || 55 post βανόν s. v. add. ἦτι ζ' ἔτη P³ ἦτοι ἔτη ζ' in *textum receperunt* V edd. || 61 Τὸν ἐν 'Ρόδῳ κολοσσόν: τὸν 'Ηλίου κ. vel ὃν εἰσ-
 ρῶς κ. (*sic Robert I. c.*) *fuit in statua* Diehl || οὐτάκις (*etiam* Simonides Ps.-Draco): ἐπτάκις Strabo || 62 Δάχης: Χάρης Simonides Strabo Ps.-Draco || ὀλίγδιος P || 63 αὐτὸν *om.* edd. || post ἐν add. τῇ edd. || 64 ὀνήσατο P || 65 'Εδεσσηνός *con.* Meursius 'Εδεσσηνός Theoph. *con.* Bandurius: 'Εμνησινός P ὁ 'Εμνησινός Be || ὅπ' P ἐννακασίας καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα Ba Be: ,λπ' (*littera γ' partim erasa*) P^x V Me τριάκοντα χιλιάδας καὶ ὀγδοήκοντα *mg.* P² ἐννακασίας Theoph. || 66 Οὐθμάν] *litteras* θμάν in *ras. scr.* P³ || αὐτός *om.* edd. || 67 Μαυίας P V: Μαβίας P^y M || 69 'Αλήμ: 'Αλή Theoph. || δς ἦν] *litteras* ε ἦν in *ras. scr.* P² || post θυγατρὶ add. τῇ edd. || 70 Αἰθρίβου P² V edd.: Αἰθρίβου P ||

ὁ τε Ἀλήμ καὶ ὁ Μαυίας ἐρίζοντες περὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς, τίς αὐτῶν κυριεύσει
 100Βε π[ά]σης Συρίας. Συνήχθησαν δὲ παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην ποταμόν, καὶ συνά-
 πτουνσι πόλεμον ἰσχυρόν μετ' ἀλλήλων. Τοῦ δὲ πολέμου κρατοῦντος, καὶ
 πολλῶν ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων πιπτόντων, ἔκραξαν τὰ πλήθη τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν 75
 39*Ρ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν [δύο] μερῶν | «Τίνι τρόπῳ σφάζομεν καὶ σφαζόμεθα,
 καὶ ἀφανίζεται τὸ γένος ἡμῶν ἐκ τῆς τῶν ἀνθρώπων βιοτῆς; Ἀλλὰ
 χωρισθῆτωσαν δύο γέροντες ἐξ ἀμφοτέρων τῶν μερῶν, καὶ ὃν ἂν προ-
 κρίνωσιν, ἐχέτω τὴν ἀρχήν.» Ὁ δὲ Ἀλήμ καὶ ὁ Μαυίας ἡρέσθησαν
 ἐπὶ τῷ λόγῳ αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐκβαλόντες ἐκ τῶν χειρῶν τοὺς ἑαυτῶν δακτυ- 80
 λίους, δεδώκασιν τοῖς δυσὶ γέρονσιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ σημεῖον τῆς ἀρχῆς τῶν
 Ἀγαρηνῶν, καὶ παρέσχον τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν θέλησιν τῶν δύο
 γερόντων, τὸ πρᾶγμα ἔνορκον ποιησάμενοι καὶ τοῦτο στοιχήσαντες,
 ἵνα ὃν ἂν προκρίνωσιν οἱ γέροντες, ἐκεῖνος ἔσται κύριος καὶ ἀρχηγός
 40*Ρ πάντων τῶν Σαρακηνῶν. Καὶ εἰσελθόντων τῶν δύο γερόντων | ἀναμέσον 85
 τῆς παρεμβολῆς τοῦ πολέμου τῶν δύο μερῶν καὶ σταθέντων ἐν τῷ
 μεταχιμῷ τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἀντιπροσώπων, τοῦ μὲν Ἀλήμ ὁ γέρων
 ὑπῆρχεν κατὰ τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἔθνος εὐλαβῆς, οἷους ἐκεῖνοι λέγουσι
 καθῆς, τουτέστιν πιστοὺς καὶ ἡγιασμένους· ὁ δὲ τοῦ Μαυίου γέρων
 ἐν σχήματι μόνῳ ἦν εὐλαβῆς, τὰ δ' ἄλλα δολερὸς καὶ αὐθάδης καὶ πονηρία 90
 πάντας ὑπερβάλλων ἀνθρώπους. Εἶπεν δὲ ὁ τοῦ Μαυίου γέρων πρὸς
 101Βε τὸν γέροντα τοῦ Ἀλήμ, ὅτι· «Σὺ πρῶτος εἶπέ, ὅπερ βούλη, | ὅς εἰ τε
 φρόνιμος καὶ εὐλαβῆς καὶ μακρὰ τοὺς ἔμους χρόνους ὑπερβαλλόμενος.»
 Καὶ ἀπεκρίθη ὁ γέρων τοῦ Ἀλήμ τοῦτο, ὅτι· «Ἐξέβαλον τὸν Ἀλήμ
 40*Ρ ἐκ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ὡς ἐξήγαγον τὸν δακτύλιον αὐτοῦ ἐκ τῆς χειρὸς αὐτοῦ 95
 καὶ εἰσήγαγον εἰς τὸν ἑμὸν δάκτυλον· ἐβάλω καὶ τὸν δακτύλιον τοῦ
 Ἀλήμ ἐκ τοῦ δακτύλου μου, συνεκβαλὼν αὐτὸν καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτοῦ.»
 Καὶ ἀνταπεκρίθη ὁ τοῦ Μαυίου γέρων, ὡς ὅτι· «Εἰσήγαγον τὸν Μαυίαν
 εἰς τὴν ἀρχήν, ὥσπερ εἰσήγαγον τὸν δακτύλιον αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν δάκτυλόν
 μου· εἰσαγάγω καὶ τὸν δακτύλιον τοῦ Μαυίου εἰς τὸν δάκτυλον αὐτοῦ.» 100
 Καὶ τότε διεχωρίσθησαν ἀπ' ἀλλήλων. Παραλαμβάνει οὖν ὁ Μαυίας
 πᾶσαν τὴν ἐξουσίαν Συρίας, ἐπειδὴ ὁμωμόκεσαν ἀλλήλοις οἱ ἀμνηαῖοι
 πάντες, ὡς· «Ὁ τι ἂν εἴπωσιν οἱ γέροντες, ἵνα ἐπάμεθα εἰς τοὺς λόγους
 αὐτῶν.» Ὁ γοῦν Ἀλήμ παραλαβὼν τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ, ἀπῆλθεν εἰς τὰ μέρη
 41*Ρ Αἰθρίβου μετὰ πάσης τῆς συγγενείας αὐτοῦ, κατέκτισε τελευτᾷ 105

F 81 ὅπερ — 82 Ἀγαρηνῶν: cf. Achmet, Oneirocriticon, ed. Drexl.
 p. 212, 20.

V 72 Μαυίας P: Μαβίας P^v V M || κυριεύσει V M edd.: κυριεύση P ||
 73 Ἐφράτην P || 76 ἀμφοτέρων om. Me secl. Be || δύο secl. Moravcsik ||
 79 Ἀλεῖμ P || ἡρέσθησαν (coni. etiam Bekker): ἡρέσκησαν edd. || 80 ἐκβάλλοντες

another, disputing over the rule, which of them should be lord of all Syria. They encountered one another by the river Euphrates, and joined in fierce battle one against the other. But when the battle was at its height and many were falling on either side, the multitudes of the Agarenes of both parties cried out: «Why is this, that we slay and are slain, and our tribe perishes from among living men? But let two elders be chosen apart from both the parties, and whomsoever they prefer, let him have the rule.» Alim and Mauias were pleased at this saying of theirs, and, drawing off from their hands their rings, which are a token of rule of the Agarenes, they gave them to the two elders, and placed their authority at the disposal of the two elders, confirming the matter by an oath and settling it so that whomsoever the elders might prefer, he should be lord and chief of all the Saracens. The two elders entered into the middle of the battle array of the two parties, and took their stand face to face in the space between the armies; the elder of Alim was a man devout according to the nation of the Saracens, one such as they call 'cadi', that is, faithful and sanctified; but the elder of Mauias was devout only in appearance, but in all else deceitful and arrogant and surpassing all men in mischief. The elder of Mauias said to the elder of Alim: «Do you speak first what you will, for you are prudent and devout, and far surpassing my years.» And the elder of Alim answered thus: «I cast Alim off from the rule, as I drew his ring from his hand and drew it on to my own finger; now will I cast off the ring of Alim from my finger and therewith cast him off from his rule also.» The elder of Mauias made answer again: «I drew Mauias into the rule, as I drew his ring on to my finger; now will I draw the ring of Mauias on to his finger.» And then they parted one from the other. So Mauias took all the dominion of Syria, since all the emirs had sworn to each other, saying: «Whatever the elders say, we will be obedient to their words.» And so Alim took his army and departed to the region of Ethribos with all his kin, and there ended his life. After

edd. || 81 τοῖς *litteras ei in ras. scr.* P² || 87 ἀντιπρόσωπον *coni.* Moravcsik: ἀντιπρόσωπον P ἀντιπρόσωπου edd. || 92 ὃς εἰ τε *coni.* Moravcsik: ὅστε Ba Be ὥς τε (*litteris εἰς erasis*) P² ὥς ἔστε P V Me ὃς ε τε M ὥσει τε Meursius || 93 τοὺς ἐμοὺς χρόνους *coni.* Jenkins: τοῖς ἐμοῖς χρόνοις P edd. || 95 δακτύλιον P² V M edd.: δάκτυλον P || 96 ἐκβάλω V: ἐκβάλλω edd. ἐκβαλὼν M ἐκβαλὼν P || 97 δακτύλου Meursius Ba Be: δακτυλίου P || μου P V edd.: Μαβίου (*litteris ου in α correctis et litteris βίου s. v. additis*) P² || 99 αὐτοῦ s. v. add. P² *in textum receperunt* V M edd. || 100 εἰσαγάγω Meursius Ba Be: εἰσαγαγὼν P εἰσαγαγὼν V Me || 101 ἀπ' *litteram a in ras. scr.* P² || Μαυίας P: Μαβίας P² V M || 102 πᾶσαν *om.* edd. ||

τὸν βίον. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν θάνατον τοῦ Ἀλήμ λῆρον ἡγησάμενοι οἱ τούτου υἱοὶ τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτῶν βουλὴν, ἐπανεστήσαν κατὰ τοῦ Μαυίου, καὶ συνῆψαν πόλεμον ἰσχυρὸν μετὰ τοῦ Μαυίου, καὶ ἡττηθέντες ἔφυγον ἀπὸ προσώπου αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀποστείλας Μαυίας ἀπέκτεινεν ἅπαντας. Καὶ ἔκτοτε ἦλθε πᾶσα ἡ ἀρχὴ τῶν Ἀράβων εἰς τὸν Μαυίαν.

110

Ἰστέον δέ, ὅτι οὗτος ὁ Μαυίας ἐκγονος ἦν τοῦ Σοφιάμ. Ἐκγονος δὲ τοῦ Μαυίου ὑπῆρχεν ὁ Μάσαλμας, ὁ κατὰ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως ἐκστρατεύσας, οὗτινος καὶ δι' αἰτήσεως ἐκτίσθη τὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν 102Be| μαγίσδιον ἐν τῷ βασιλικῷ πραιτωρίῳ. Οὐκ ἦν δὲ οὗτος ἀρχηγὸς τῶν 41P Ἀράβων, ἀλλὰ Σουλεϊμάν ὑπῆρχεν ἀρχηγὸς τῶν Σαρακηνῶν, | ὁ δὲ 115 Μάσαλμας ἐν τάξει στρατηγοῦ ἐ χρημάτιζεν. Ἦλθεν δὲ Σουλεϊμάν μετὰ τοῦ στόλου αὐτοῦ κατὰ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, ὁ δὲ Μάσαλμας διὰ ξηραῖς, καὶ διεπέρασεν ἐν Λαμψάκῳ ἐπὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Θράκης, ἄγων μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ στρατιώτας χιλιάδας π'. Καὶ διὰ τῆς τοῦ Θεοῦ προνοίας ὁ τε στόλος Σουλεϊμάν, τοῦ ἀρχηγοῦ τῶν Ἀράβων καὶ ὁ πεζὸς στρατὸς 120 τοῦ Μάσαλμα ὑπέστρεψαν ἅπαντες μετ' αἰσχύνης, ἡττηθέντες καὶ καταπολεμηθέντες παρὰ τε τοῦ στόλου καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν τοῦ βασιλέως. Καὶ εἰρήνευσεν ἡ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτεία ἐπὶ μήκιστον χρόνον, στρατηγούσης καὶ περιεπούσης τῆς δεσποίνης ἡμῶν καὶ δειπαρθένου Μαρίας 42P τῆς Θεοτόκου τήνδε τὴν πόλιν, ἧς καὶ τὴν ἄχραντον καὶ ἀγίαν εἰκόνα | καὶ 125 αὐτὸς (ὁ) Σουλεϊμάν ᾗδέσθη καὶ ἐνετράπη καὶ τοῦ ἔππου κατέπεσεν.

22. Ἐκ τοῦ Χρονογράφου τοῦ μακαρίου Θεοφάνους περὶ τῶν αὐτῶν καὶ περὶ Μαυίου καὶ τῆς γενεᾶς αὐτοῦ, ὅπως διεπέρασεν ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ. Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς Ἰουστινιανὸς ὁ Ῥινό- 5
τμητος.

Αὕτη ἐστὶν ἀρχὴ τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐξεβλήθη ὑπὸ Λεοντίου, καὶ πάλιν ἀντεισῆλθεν ἐκβαλὼν τὸν Λεόντιον καὶ Ἀψίμα- 103Beρον, καὶ ἀμφοτέρους αὐτοὺς ἐν τῇ ἑπ' ἡποδρομίᾳ θριαμβεύσας καὶ ἀποκτείνας. Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει ἀποστέλλει Ἀβιμέλεχ πρὸς Ἰουστινιανὸν βεβαιῶσαι

F 106 Μετὰ — 110 Μαυίαν: cf. Theoph. p. 347, 26—27.

112 ὁ

Μάσαλμας — 113 ἐκστρατεύσας: cf. Theoph. p. 386, 25—26.

115

Σουλεϊμάν — Σαρακηνῶν: cf. Theoph. p. 386, 20—24.

116 Ἦλθεν

— 125 πόλιν: cf. Theoph. p. 395, 13—396, 23; Niceph., ed. de Boor p. 53, 10—54, 1; Zon. XV. 1., ed. Bonn. III. p. 252, 9—253, 6.

22, 6 μετὰ — 9 ἀποκτείνας: cf. Theoph. p. 361, 26—28; 374, 28—375, 13.

9 Τούτῳ — 22 νῦν: Theoph. p. 363, 1—20; cf. Cedr., ed. Bonn.

I. p. 771, 4—15.

the death of Alim, his sons, regarding their father's counsel as nonsense, rebelled against Mauias, and joined fierce battle with Mauias, and being worsted fled from before his face, and Mauias sent after and put them all to death. And thereafter the rule over all the Arabs came into the hands of Mauias.

Now, this Mauias was grandson of Sophiam. And Mauias' grandson was Masalmas, who made an expedition against Constantinople, and at whose request was built the mosque of the Saracens in the imperial praetorium. He was not chief of the Arabs; Souleiman was chief of the Saracens, and Masalmas held the rank of general. Souleiman came with his fleet against Constantinople, and Masalmas came overland, and crossed over at Lampsacus into the region of Thrace, carrying with him 80 thousand troops. And through the Providence of God both the fleet of Souleiman and the infantry army of Masalmas all retired with ignominy, being worsted and utterly overthrown by the fleet and soldiers of the emperor. And our state was at peace for many a long year, for this city was guided and guarded by Our Lady the ever-virgin Mary, the Mother of God, by whose inviolate and holy image Souleiman himself was awed and put to shame, and he fell from his horse.

22. From the Chronicle of Theophanes, of blessed memory, concerning the same events and concerning Mauias and his clan, how it crossed over into Spain. Emperor of the Romans, Justinian Rhinotmetus.

This is the beginning of his reign; and thereafter he was expelled by Leontius, and then in his turn came back again and expelled Leontius and Apsimaros, and held his triumph over them both in the hippodrome, and put them to death. In this year Abimelech sent to Justinian to ratify the

(etiam Theoph.^{cdh}): Μασαλμᾶς Theoph. || Κωνσταντινουπόλεως corr. Moravcsik: Κωνσταντινούπολιν P edd. || 114 μαγίσδιον: μασιγίδιον con. Meursius || 115 Σουλεμᾶν P || ante ἀρχηγός add. ὁ V edd. || 116 Σουλεμᾶν P || 117 Κωνσταντινουπόλεως corr. Moravcsik: Κωνσταντινούπολιν P edd. || Μάσαλμας (etiam Theoph.^{dh}): Μασαλμᾶς Theoph. || 118 desinit cod. Mutin. gr. 179 [= M] || 119 χιλιάδας π': λαὸν ἱκανὸν Theoph. || 120 Σουλεμᾶν P || τῶν τοῦ Ba Be || 121 Μασάλμα edd. || 125 τῆς Θεοτόκου per comp. s. v. add. P² in textum receperunt V edd. || ἥς litteram ς in ras. scr. P² || 126 ὁ add. V edd. || Σουλεμᾶν P || ἡδέσθη litteram ἡ in ras. scr. P².

22. 2 τῶν αὐτῶν: τῶν <Μαρδ>αῖν con. Bury || 4 Ἰουστινιανὸς con. Laskin: Ἰουστίνος P edd. || 9 post ἔχει rubro atramento mg. add. ᾿ςρη' P¹ τῷ ᾿ςρη' mg. iter. P² in textum receperunt V Me ᾿ςρη' Theoph. ||

- τὴν εἰρήνην οὕτως, ἵνα ὁ βασιλεὺς παύσῃ τὸ τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν τάγμα 10
 42^vP ἐκ τοῦ Λιβάνου καὶ διακωλύσῃ τὰς ἐπιδρομὰς αὐτῶν, καὶ Ἀβιμέλεχ
 δώσῃ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις καθ' ἐκάστην νομίσματα χίλια καὶ ἵππον εὐγενῆ
 ἓνα καὶ Αἰθίοπα δοῦλον ἓνα, καὶ ἵνα ἔχωσι κοινὰ κατὰ τὸ ἴσον τοὺς
 φόρους τῆς Κύπρου καὶ Ἀρμενίας καὶ Ἰβηρίας. Καὶ ἐπεμψεν ὁ βασι-
 λεὺς Παῦλον τὸν μαγιστριανὸν πρὸς Ἀβιμέλεχ ἀσφαλίσασθαι τὰ στοιχη- 15
 θέντα, καὶ γέγονεν ἔγγραφος ἀσφάλεια μετὰ μαρτύρων. Καὶ φιλοτιμηθεὶς
 ὁ μαγιστριανὸς ὑπέστρεψεν. Καὶ πέμψας ὁ βασιλεὺς προσελάβετο τοὺς
 Μαρδαῖτας χιλιάδας ἰβ', τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν δυναστείαν ἀκρωτηριάσας.
 Πᾶσαι γὰρ αἱ νῦν οἰκούμεναι παρὰ τῶν Ἀράβων εἰς τὰ ἄκρα πόλεις
 ἀπὸ Μομφουεστίας καὶ ἕως τετάρτης Ἀρμενίας ἀνίσχυροι καὶ ἀοίκητοι 20
 43^vP ἐτύγχανον διὰ τὴν ἐφοδὸν τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν, ὧν παρὰ σταλέντων, πάνδεινα
 κακὰ πέπονθεν ἡ Ῥωμανία ὑπὸ τῶν Ἀράβων μέχρι τοῦ νῦν. Τῷ δ'
 αὐτῷ ἔτει εἰσελθὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς Ἀρμενίαν, ἐκεῖ ἐδέξατο τοὺς ἐν τῷ
 Λιβάνῳ Μαρδαῖτας, χάλκεον τεῖχος διαλύσας. Παρέλυσε δὲ καὶ τὴν
 μετὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων παγιωθείσαν εἰρήνην, διαταράξας τοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ 25
 οἰκείου πατρὸς ἐνορδίνους γεγονότας τύπους.
 104Be "Ἐτι κρατοῦντος τοῦ Ἀβιμέλεχ, ἐπεστράτευσαν οἱ Ἀραβες
 τῇ Ἀφρικῇ καὶ ταύτην παρέλαβον, καὶ ἐκ τοῦ οἰκείου στρατοῦ ταξатиῶνα
 ἐν αὐτῇ κατέστησαν. Λεόντιος δὲ ἦν τῷ τότε χρόνῳ ἐκβαλὼν Ἰουστινια-
 νὸν τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς, καὶ ἐξορίσας αὐτὸν ἐν Χερσῶνι, τῆς βασιλείας 30
 43^vP ἐκράτησεν. Ἀψιμάρου δὲ τοῦ Τιβερίου τὸν Λεόντιον διαδεξαμένου
 τῆς βασιλείας καὶ τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα κρατήσαντος, τέθνηκεν
 Ἀβιμέλεχ, ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγός, καὶ ἐκράτησεν Οὐαλίδ, ὁ υἱὸς
 αὐτοῦ, ἔτη ἐννέα. Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ ἔτει πάλιν ὑπέστρεψεν Ἰουστινιανὸς
 εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, καὶ βραθύμως καὶ ἀμελῶς ταύτην διακυβερνῶν, τῆς 35
 Ἀφρικῆς ἐπεκράτησαν ὀλοσχερῶς οἱ Ἀγαρηνοί. Τότε ὁ τοῦ Μαυρίου
 ἐγγονος μετὰ ὀλιγοστοῦ τινος λαοῦ διεπέρασεν ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ, καὶ ἐπισυν-
 ἄξας πάντας τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ γένους αὐτοῦ, ἐκράτησεν τὴν Ἰσπανίαν μέχρι
 τῆς σήμερον, ὅθεν οἱ τὴν Ἰσπανίαν κατοικοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοὶ Μαυῖται
 κατονομάζονται. Τούτων ἀπόγονοι τυγχάνουσιν οἱ τὴν Κρήτην οἰκοῦντες 40
 44^vP Ἀγαρηνοί. "Οτε γὰρ Μιχαὴλ ὁ Τραυλὸς τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς
 ἐπεκράτησεν, καὶ ἡ τοῦ Θωμᾶ ἀνταρσία ἐγένετο μέχρι τριετοῦς χρόνου

F 22 Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ — 26 τύπους: Theoph. p. 364, 4—7; cf. Niceph., ed. de Boor p. 36, 16—17; Cedr. I. p. 771, 18—21. 27 "Ἐτι
 — 29 κατέστησαν: Theoph. p. 370, 6—8; cf. Niceph. p. 39, 12—14. 29 Λεόντιος — 31 ἐκράτησεν: cf. Theoph. p. 368, 15; 369, 26.
 31 Ἀψιμάρου — 32 κρατήσαντος: cf. Theoph. p. 371, 19. 34 Τῷ
 32 τέθνηκεν — 34 ἐννέα: cf. Theoph. p. 374, 14—15, 25. 34 Τῷ
 δ' αὐτῷ — 35 βασιλείαν: cf. Theoph. p. 374, 16, 28. 35 τῆς Ἀφρικῆς

peace on these conditions: the emperor to withdraw the Mardaite legion from the Lebanon and check their incursions, and Abimelech to give the Romans daily a thousand nomismata and one thoroughbred horse and one Ethiopian slave, and the taxes of Cyprus and Armenia and Iberia to be held commonly and in equal shares by both parties. The emperor dispatched Paul the imperial agent to Abimelech, to confirm the terms agreed upon, and a confirmation was drawn up in writing and attested. The imperial agent was presented with gifts, and returned. And the emperor sent and took in the Mardaïtes, 12 thousand of them, thereby crippling the Roman power. For all the frontier cities now inhabited by the Arabs from Mopsouestia and as far as Armenia Quarta were defenceless and uninhabited because of the incursion of the Mardaïtes, by whose drawing away Romania has suffered terrible damage at the hands of the Arabs, and suffers it still. And in the same year the emperor went to Armenia and there took in the Mardaïtes of the Lebanon, thus destroying his brazen wall. Moreover, he broke the pledge of peace with the Bulgarians, disturbing the treaty made by his own father.

It was also during the reign of Abimelech that the Arabs marched against Africa and took it, and placed in it a garrison of their troops. At that time Leontius had expelled Justinian from the rule over the Romans, and had exiled him to Cherson and had possessed himself of the empire. But after Apsimaros Tiberius had ousted Leontius from the throne and had possessed himself of the sceptre of the Romans, Abimelech, chief of the Arabs, died, and Oualid his son ruled nine years. In the same year Justinian returned once more to his throne, and during his slack and careless government the Agarenes obtained complete control of Africa. Then, the grandson of Mauias with a very few men crossed over into Spain, and, having collected together all of his tribe, gained control of Spain even to this day, and that is why the Agarenes who dwell in Spain are called Mauiates. Their descendants are the Agarenes who live in Crete. For when Michael the Lisper had got possession of the rule over the Romans, and the rebellion of Thomas broke out and lasted three years, then, while the emperor was

— 36 Ἀγαρηνοί: cf. Theoph. p. 370. 6—7.
cf. Theoph. p. 403, 12—13; 426, 4—5.
Theoph. Cont. p. 73, 13—76, 7; 474, 1—7.

36 Τότε — 39 σήμερον:
40 τούτων — 48 σήμερον: cf.

V 12 χιλία V edd. Theoph.: ,α P || 12/3 εὐγενῇ ἕνα *deest* in Theoph. || 13 Αἰθιοπα *deest* in Theoph. || ἕνα *deest* in Theoph. || 19 γὰρ αἱ νῦν Theoph. *coni.* Bekker νῦν γὰρ (*omisso* αἱ) Theoph.^{etm} γὰρ νῦν αἱ P edd. || οἰκουμέναι P || τὰ ἄλλα πόλεις Theoph. τὰς ἀκροπόλεις P edd. || 20 ἀοικητοὶ ἀοικητῆς (*litteris τε insertis*) P¹ || 22 post νῦν *aliquid excidisse susp.* Bury || 23 εἰσελθὼν: ἐλθὼν Theoph. || 26 ἐνορδίνους Theoph.: ἐνορδίνος P ἐνορδίνως V edd. || 27 Ἐτι: Ὅτι Me || 28 τῇ Ἀφρικῇ: τὴν Ἀφρικὴν Theoph. || ταξάτινα edd. || 29 ante Ἰουστινιανὸν *add.* τὸν edd. || 34 ἐνέα edd.: θ' P || 38 τῆς Ἰσπανίας edd. ||

ἐπικρατήσασα, τότε τοῦ βασιλέως ἀσχολουμένου ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβεβηκόσι
 πράγμασιν, εὐρόντες διωρίαν οἱ τὴν Ἰσπανίαν οἰκοῦντες Ἀγαρηνοί,
 στόλον ἱκανὸν ἐξαρτύσαντες καὶ ἀρξάμενοι ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς Σικελίας μερῶν 45
 πάσας τὰς Κυκλάδας νήσους ἡρήμωσαν, καὶ ἐλθόντες ἐν Κρήτῃ καὶ
 105 Βεταύτῃν εὐκαί|ρον καὶ ἀνειμένην εὐρόντες, μηδενὸς ἀνταίροντος ἢ μαχο-
 μένου, ταύτῃν παρέλαβον, καὶ διακρατοῦσιν ἕως τὴν σήμερον. Τὸν δὲ
 Οὐαλὶδ διαδέχεται Σουλεϊμάν, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη τρία. Ἐπὶ τούτου ἐπεστρά-
 τευσε Μάσαλμας, ὁ στρατηγὸς Σουλεϊμάν, μετὰ στρατοῦ διὰ Ἑιρᾶς, 50
 44^v Ρ Οὐμαρ δὲ διὰ θαλάττης, | καὶ τῇ τοῦ Θεοῦ συνεργείᾳ ἄπρακτοι μετ'
 αἰσχύνῃς ὑπέστρεψαν. Τὸν δὲ Σουλεϊμάν διαδέχεται Οὐμαρ, καὶ κρατεῖ
 τῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς ἔτη δύο. Τὸν δὲ Οὐμαρ διαδέχεται Ἀζίδ, καὶ
 κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ ἐναυτοὺς τέσσαρας. Τοῦτον δὲ διαδέχεται Ἰσάμ,
 καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐπὶ ἔτη ιβ'. Τούτου τελευτήσαντος, κρατεῖ τῆς 55
 ἀρχῆς Μαρουάμ ἔτη ἑξ. Μαρουάμ δὲ τελευτήσαντος, Ἀβδελαῖς τῆς
 τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς κύριος γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ ἔτη κα'. Τούτου τελευτή-
 σαντος, Μαδὶς ἀρχηγὸς Ἀράβων γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἔτη
 ἑννέα. Τούτου παρελθόντος, Ἀαρὼν τῆς τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῆς κύριος
 γίνεται, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἔτη κγ'.

80

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ἤγουν τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς * * * Εἰρή-
 45^v νης καὶ Κωνσταντίνου, ἔτους ἀπὸ κτί|σεως κόσμου, 53^πη'. Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ
 ἔτει Ἀαρὼν, ὁ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχηγός, τέθνηκεν εἰς τὴν ἐνδοτέραν Περσίδα,
 τὴν καλουμένην Χωρασάν, καὶ διεδέξατο τὴν ἀρχὴν Μοάμεδ, ὁ υἱὸς
 αὐτοῦ, ἀφυῆς κατὰ πάντα καὶ ἀσυνάρτητος ὑπάρχων, πρὸς δὲ Ἀβδελαῖς, 65
 106 Βεδὸ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, στασιάζας ἐκ | τῆς αὐτῆς χώρας τοῦ Χωρασάν ἅμα
 ταῖς πατρικαῖς δυνάμεσιν, ἐμφυλίου πολέμου γέγονεν αἷτιος. Κάντεῦθεν
 οἱ κατὰ τὴν Συρίαν καὶ Αἰγύπτον καὶ Λιβύην εἰς διαφόρους καταταμηθέν-
 τες ἀρχὰς τὰ τε δημόσια πράγματα καὶ ἀλλήλους κατέστρεψαν, σφαγαῖς
 καὶ ἀρπαγαῖς καὶ παντοδαύτοις ἀτοπίαις πρὸς τε ἑαυτοὺς καὶ τοὺς ὑπ' 70
 αὐτοὺς Χριστιανοὺς συγκεχυμένοι. Ἐνθα δὴ καὶ αἱ κατὰ τὴν ἀγίαν

F 48 Τὸν δὲ — 49 τρία: cf. Theoph. p. 384, 15—19; 386,
 20—24. 49 Ἐπὶ τούτου — 51 θαλάττης: cf. Theoph. p. 386,
 25—27. 52 Τὸν δὲ — 53 δύο: cf. Theoph. p. 396, 23—24; 398, 5; 401,
 13—14. 53 Τὸν δὲ — 54 τέσσαρας: cf. Theoph. p. 401, 4—8, 14; 403,
 24—25. 54 Τοῦτον — 55 ιβ': cf. Theoph. p. 402, 19; 403,
 25. 55 Τούτου — 56 ἑξ: cf. Theoph. p. 421, 7—10. 56 Μαρουάμ
 — 57 κα': cf. Theoph. p. 429, 15. 57 Τούτου — 59 ἑννέα: cf. Theoph.
 p. 448, 28; 449, 1, 4—8. 59 Τούτου — 60 κγ': cf. Theoph. p. 461,
 7, 10; 465, 27—30. 62 Τῷ δ' αὐτῷ — 76 πέντε: Theoph. p. 484, 5—19.

V 44 διωρίαν V edd. || 47 ἀνταίροντος con. Moravcsik: ἀντεροῦντος P
 ἀνταίρομένου Be || 48 τὴν: τῆς V edd. || Τὸν edd.: τοῦ P || 49 ante Σουλεϊμάν
 add. ὁ edd. || Σουλεϊμάν P Σουλεϊμάν Be || τρία edd.: γ' P || τούτου corr.

engrossed with the troubles which had arisen, the Agarenes who lived in Spain saw their chance had come, fitted out a large fleet and started out from the region of Sicily and desolated all the islands of the Cyclades, and, coming to Crete and finding it rich and carelessly guarded, since none opposed or engaged them, they took it, and hold it to this day. Oualid was succeeded by Souleiman, who ruled three years. In his time Masalmas, the general of Souleiman, made an expedition with an army overland, and Oumar by sea, and by God's aid they returned with shame, their purpose unachieved. Souleiman was succeeded by Oumar, who held the rule over the Arabs two years. Oumar was succeeded by Azid, who held the rule for four years. He was succeeded by Isam, who held rule for 19 years. On his death Marouam held the rule six years. On the death of Marouam Abdelas became master of the rule over the Arabs, and held it 21 years. On his death Madis became chief of the Arabs, and held the rule nine years. When he had passed away Aaron became master of the rule over the Arabs, and held the rule 23 years.

In this year, that is to say, when the rule over the Romans *** Irene and Constantine, the year from the creation of the world 6288. In the same year Aaron, the chief of the Arabs, died in inner Persia, that is called Chorasán, and Moamed his son succeeded to the rule, a stupid, unbalanced man in every way, against whom his brother Abdelas came in revolt out of that same country of Chorasán together with the powers that had been his father's, and brought about a civil war. And thereafter those who dwelt in Syria and Egypt and Libya were split up under different governments, and destroyed the public weal and one another, in a welter of slaughter and rapine and outrage of every sort against themselves and their Christian subjects. Then it was that the churches in the holy city of Christ our God

Moravesik: τούτω P τούτω edd. || 50 Μάσαλμας P^x mg. P^s V edd. Theoph.^{edn}: Μασαλμάς P Μασαλμάς Theoph. || Σουλεμάν P || 51 Ούμαρ P: Ούμαρος P^s mg. P^s V edd. || Θαλάττης (etiam Theoph.^{et}): θαλάσσης Theoph. || 53 Ἀράβων litteras ἀράβ in ras. scr. P⁴ || Ἀζήδ P: Ἀζὺδ Theoph.^{etm} Ἰζὺδ Theoph. || 55 ἐπὶ om. V edd. || 56 Μαρούαμ edd. || Μαρούαμ edd. || Ἀβδελάς P || τῆς: τις V Me Ba Migne || 57 Ἀράβων litteras ράβ in ras. scr. P || 58 Μαδὺς (etiam Theoph.^h): Μαδὺ Theoph. || 59 ἐννέα edd.: θ' P || τῆς: τις V Me Ba Migne || 61 ἀδ χρόνῳ rubro atramento, ῥοπή mg. add. P¹ post ἡγουν s. v. τῶ, ῥοπή iter. P² in lectione receperunt V Me || post ἀρχῆς lac. ind. Bury Laskin || 61/2 Εἰρήνης P² V edd.: Εἰρήνη P || 62 Κωνσταντίνου corr. Moravesik: Κώνσταντος P edd. || ἔτος V edd. || 64 Μουάμεδ Theoph. Μοάμεθ edd. || 65 καὶ ἀσυνάρτητος ὑπάρχων deest in Theoph. || ἀσυνάρτητος Be: ἀσυνάρτιστος P || Ἀβδελάς P || 71 Ἐνθα (etiam Theoph.^{coms}): ἔθεν Me Be Theoph. || κατὰ om. Me Be || τὴν ἀγίαν P Theoph.: τῆς ἀγίας P¹ V edd. ||

45^{VP} Χριστοῦ τοῦ Θεοῦ ἡμῶν πόλιν | ἐκκλησίου ἡρήμουνται, τὰ τε μοναστήρια τῶν δύο μεγάλων λαυρῶν, τοῦ ἐν ἁγίοις Χαρίτωνος καὶ Κυριακοῦ καὶ τοῦ ἁγίου Σάβα, καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κοινόβια τῶν ἁγίων Εὐθυμίου καὶ Θεοδοσίου. Ἐπεκράτησεν δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης ἀναρχίας ἡ κατ' ἀλλήλων καὶ 75 ἡμῶν μαιφονία ἔτη πέντε.

Ἔως ὧδε ἐκανόνισεν τοὺς χρόνους τῶν Ἀράβων ὁ ἐν ἁγίοις Θεοφάνης, ὁ τὴν μονὴν συστήσας τοῦ καλουμένου μεγάλου Ἀγροῦ, μητρόθεις τυγχάνων τοῦ μεγάλου καὶ εὐσεβοῦς καὶ χριστιανικωτάτου βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου, υἱοῦ Λέοντος, τοῦ σφωτάτου καὶ ἀγαθοῦ 80 βασιλέως, ἐγγόνου δὲ Βασιλείου, τοῦ ἐν μακαρίᾳ τῇ μνήμῃ τὰ σκῆπτρα τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας κρατήσαντος.

46^{RP} 23. Περὶ Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἰσπανίας.

107^{Be} Ἰβηρίαί δύο· ἡ μὲν πρὸς ταῖς Ἡρακλείαις στήλαις, ἀπὸ | Ἰβηρος ποταμοῦ, οὗ μέμνηται Ἀπολλόδωρος ἐν τῇ Περὶ γῆς β'. Ἐντὸς δὲ Πυρήνης Ἰβηρ τ' ἐστὶ μέγας ποταμὸς φερόμενος ἐνδοτέρω. Ταύτης δὲ πολλά φασιν ἔθνη διακρίσθαι, καθάπερ † Ἡρόδοτος † ἐν τῇ Ἰ Τῇ 5 καδ' Ἡρακλῆα γέγραφεν ἱστορίᾳ οὕτως· «Τὸ δὲ Ἰβηρικὸν γένος τοῦτο, ὅπερ φημί οἰκεῖν τὰ παράλια τοῦ διάπλου, διώρισται ὀνόμασι ἐν γένος ἐὼν κατὰ φύλα· πρῶτον μὲν οἱ ἐπὶ τοῖς ἐσχάτοις οἰκοῦντες τὰ πρὸς δυσμέων Κύνητες ὀνομάζονται (ἀπ' ἐκείνων δὲ ἤδη πρὸς βορέαν ἰόντι Γλητῆς)· μετὰ δὲ Ταρτήσιοι· μετὰ δὲ Ἐλευσίνιοι· μετὰ δὲ Μαστινοί· 10 46^{VP} | μετὰ δὲ Κελκιανοί· ἔπειτα δὲ † ἡδιορόδανος †.» Ἀρτεμίδωρος δὲ ἐν τῇ β' τῶν Γεωγραφουμένων οὕτως διακρίσθαι φησιν· «Ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν Πυρηνάων ὁρῶν ἕως τῶν κατὰ Γάδειρα τόπων ἐνδοτέρω καὶ συνωνύμως Ἰβηρία τε καὶ Ἰσπανία καλεῖται. Διήρηται δὲ ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων εἰς δύο ἐπαρχίας * * * διατείνουσα ἀπὸ τῶν Πυρηνάων ὁρῶν ἅπανα {καὶ} μέχρι 15

F 77 ὁ ἐν — 78 Ἀγροῦ: cf. Vita Theophanis, ed. de Boor p. 30, 11—12.
23. 2 Ἰβηρίαί — 44 πολυτελεστάτας: cf. Steph. Byz., ed. Meineke s. v. Ἰβηρίαί. 2 Ἰβηρίαί — 4 ἐνδοτέρω: cf. Apollodori fr. 324., ed. Jacoby F. Gr. Hist. II B. p. 119. 4 Ταύτης — 11 ἡδιορόδανος: cf. Herodori fr. 2 a., ed. Jacoby, F. Gr. Hist. I. p. 215. 11 Ἀρτεμίδωρος — 17 Λυσιτανίας: cf. Artemidori fr. 21., ed. R. Stiehle, Philologus XI. p. 203.

V 72 πόλιν Theoph.: πόλεως P edd. || 76 πέντε edd.: ε' P || 78 Θεοφάνης (litteris ης s. v. additis) P² mg. P⁸ Ba Be: Θεοφάνιος P || μεγάλου s. v. add. P² in textum receperunt V edd. || 81 post Βασιλείου s. v. τοῦ ἐκ Μακεδονίας add. P³ in textum receperunt V edd.

23. 3 Ἀπολλόδωρος Ba Be Ἀπολλόδορος per comp. P: Ἀπολλόνιος coní. Meursius || 4 Πυρήνης P || ἐστὶν Meineke Jacoby || ἐνδοτέρωθεν coní. Meineke || ταύτην Ba Berkel || 5 post δὲ add. εἰς Ba Berkel || Ἡρόδοτος

were desolated, and the monasteries of the two great Laurai, those of SS. Charito and Cyriac and of St. Sabas, and the other coenobite monasteries of SS. Euthymius and Theodosius. This anarchy, during which they murdered one another and us, lasted five years.

Up to this point the history of the Arabs is set in order chronologically by St. Theophanes, who founded the monastery of the so-called Megas Agros and was uncle on the mother's side of the great and pious and most Christian emperor Constantine, son of Leo, the most wise and virtuous emperor, and grandson of Basil, of blessed memory for his tenure of the sceptre over the empire of the Romans.

23. Of Iberia and Spain.

There are two Iberias: one, at the Pillars of Heroules, is *so called* from the river Iber, mentioned by Apollodorus in 'Concerning the Earth', II: «Within the Pyrenees is the Iber, a great river running towards the interior.» In this country are said to be many distinct nations, as *Herodorus* has written in the Xth book of his 'History Relating to Herakles': «This Iberian race, which, I say, lives on the shores of the strait, though one race, is distinguished by names according to its tribes: first, those who inhabit the western parts at the farthest verge are called Kynetes (and after them, if one travels northward, are the Gletes); then, Tartessians; then, *Elbusinians*; then, *Mastienoi*; then, Kelkianoi; and then, thereafter, the *Rhône*.» Artemidorus, in book II of the 'Geography', says that *the country* is divided thus: «The interior between the Pyrenees mountains and the district about Gadara is denominated alternatively Iberia and Spain. It has been divided by the Romans into two provinces *** the whole extending

V Me ἡ ῥόδοτος P: Ἡρόδωρος Ba Be Berkel Meineke Jacoby || 1: δεκάτη Ba Be Meineke Jacoby || Tῇ: τῶν Ba Be Meineke Jacoby || 6 ἱστορία: ἱστοριῶν coní. Meineke ἱστορῶν Jacoby || 7 οἰκέειν Meineke || διάπλου Ba Be Meineke Jacoby:: διαπλοῦ P διαροῦ V Me ὠκεανοῦ coní. Bekker || οὐνόμασι coní. Meineke || 8 οἰκέοντες Meineke || 9 Κύνιταις P || οὐνομάζονται coní. Meineke || 9 ἀπ' — 10 Γλήτες in parenthesis posuit Schulten || 9 βορέην Meineke || 10 Γλήτες P || Ἑλευσίνιοι: Ἐλβυσίνιοι Ba Be Berkel Meineke Jacoby || Μαστιννοί: Μαστινηνοί Ba Be Berkel Meineke Jacoby || 11 Κελκιανοί: Καλπιανοί Ba Be Berkel Κέλται coní. Bandurius Κελτικοί coní. Meineke || ἡδιορόδανος P Me † ηδιοροδανος Jacoby: ἡδη ὁ Ῥοδανός Be Berkel Meineke ἡδη ὁ Ῥόδανος Ba ἡδη ὁ Σαρδόνιος Unger ἡδη ὁ πορθμός Schulten || Ἀρτεμίδωρος litteras τε l rest. P² || 13 Πυρριναίων P || Γάδειρα litteras ei in ras. scr. P¹ || καὶ ἐνδοτέρω Schubart Meineke || 14 Ἰσπανία (etiam Thunmanni Meineke): Σπανία edd. || 15 post ἐπαρχίας lac. ind. Be Meineke πρώτη μὲν ἐπαρχία suppl. Ba Berkel || Πυρριναίων P || καὶ om. Ba Be Meineke Stiehle secl. Moravcsik ||

τῆς Καινῆς Καρχηδόνος καὶ τῶν τοῦ Βαίτιος πηγῶν, τῆς δὲ δευτέρας ἐπαρχίας τὰ μέχρι Γαδείρων καὶ Λουστανίας.» Λέγεται δὲ καὶ Ἰβηρίτης. Παρθένιος ἐν Λευκαδίας· «Ἰβηρίτη πλεύσει ἐν αἰγιαλῷ.» Ἡ δ' ἑτέρα 108Be Ἰβηρία | πρὸς Πέρσας ἐστίν. Τὸ ἔθνος Ἰβηρες, ὡς Πίερες, Βύζηρες. 47P Διονύσιος· | «Ἀγχοῦ στηλάων μεγαθύμων ἔθνος Ἰβήρων.» Καὶ Ἀριστο- 20 φάνης Τριφάλῃτι· «Μανθάνοντες τοὺς Ἰβηρας τοὺς Ἀριστάρχου πάλαι» καὶ «Τοὺς Ἰβηρας, οὓς χορηγεῖς μοι, βοηθῆσαι δρόμῳ.» Καὶ Ἀρτεμίδωρος ἐν δευτέρῳ Γεωγραφουμένων· «Γραμματικῇ δὲ χρῶνται τῇ τῶν Ἱταλῶν οἱ παρὰ θάλατταν οἰκοῦντες τῶν Ἰβήρων.» Καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ἰβηρος γενικῆς Ἰβηρίς τὸ θηλυκόν. «Ἑλληνίς, οὐκ Ἰβηρίς» Μένανδρος Ἀσπίδι. 25 Λέγεται καὶ Ἰβηρικὸς· «† Πρῶτος μὲν πρὸς τινος † Ἰβηρικὸς ἀρχομένοισι.» Διηρεῖτο δὲ ἡ Ἰβηρία εἰς δύο, νῦν δὲ εἰς τρεῖς, ὡς Μαρκιανὸς ἐν Περίπλῳ αὐτῆς· «Πρότερον μὲν οὖν ἡ Ἰβηρία εἰς δύο διηρεῖτο ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων, νυνὶ δὲ εἰς τρεῖς· Βαιτικὴν Σπανίαν καὶ Σπανίαν καὶ Ταρρα- 47P ρικωνησίαν.» Ἀπὸ τῆς γενικῆς Ἰβηρος εὐθεῖαν Ἀπολλώνιος, ὡς τῆς 30 φύλακος ὁ φύλακος. Ἐν τοῖς Παρωνύμοις φησίν· «Ἀπὸ γενικῶν εὐθεῖται παράγονται, † τὸ μὲν ὕδωρ † δύο συλλαβάς ὁμοίως τῇ εὐθείᾳ κατὰ τὸν τόνον παροξυνόμενον, καὶ ἡ ἐν ἀπλῷ σχήματι ἡ ἐν συνθέτῳ. Ἀπλὸν μὲν οὖν <μάρτυρ>, μάρτυρος, ὁ μάρτυς, Χάροψ, Χάροπος, ὁ Χάροπος, 109Be Χαρόποιό τ' ἄνακτος, Τροίζην, Τροίζη'νος, ὁ Τροίζηνος, υἱὸς Τροι- 35 ζήνοιο, Ἰβηρ, Ἰβηρος, ὁ Ἰβηρος, ἀφ' οὗ παρὰ Κουαδράτῳ ἐν Ῥωμαϊ-

F 18 Παρθένιος — αἰγιαλῷ: cf. Parthenii fr. 10., ed. Martini, Mythographi Graeci II. 1. suppl. p. 17; Herodianus, ed. Lentz I. p. 76, 29—30. 20 Ἀγχοῦ — Ἰβήρων: Dionys. Perieg. v. 282., ed. Müller, G. G. M. II. p. 117. 22 Ἀριστοφάνης — 22 δρόμῳ: cf. Aristoph. fr. 550., 551., ed. Kock, C. A. Fr. I. p. 531. 22 Ἀρτεμίδωρος — 24 Ἰβήρων: cf. Artemidori fr. 22., ed. B. Stiehle, Philologus XI. p. 203. 25 Ἑλληνίς — Ἀσπίδι: cf. Menandri fr. 79., ed. Kock, C. A. Fr. III. p. 25. 26 Πρῶτος — 27 ἀρχομένοισι: Dionys. Perieg. v. 69., ed. Müller, G. G. M. II. p. 108. 28 Πρότερον — 30 Ταρρακωνησίαν: Marcian. Peripl. II. 7., ed. Müller G. G. M. I. p. 544. 30 Ἀπολλώνιος — 36 Ἰβηρος: cf. Apollonii Dyscoli fr., ed. Schneider p. 47.; Herodianus, ed. Lentz I. p. 196, 22—29; II. p. 854, 1—9. 35 Χαρόποιό τ' ἄνακτος: Hom. II. II. 672. 35 υἱὸς Τροίζήνοιο: Hom. II. II. 847. 36 παρὰ Κουαδράτῳ — 38 πολεμέοντες: cf. Asinii Quadrati fr. 2., ed. Jacoby, F. Gr. Hist. II A. p. 448.

V 16 δευτέρας V edd. Meineke: β' P || 17 Γαδείρων] litteras ei in ras. scr. P¹ || Λουστανίας Ba Be Meineke || Ἰβηρίτης Ba Be Meineke: Βηρίτις P || 18 Παρθένιος Ba Be Meineke Lentz Martini: Παρθόνιος P || Λευκαδίας Ba Be Martini: Λευκαδίας P Λευκαδίξ Meineke Lentz || Ἰβήριτι P || πλεύσει ἐν Meineke Lentz Martini: πλεύσειεν P edd. πλώση ἐν conit. Bekker || δ': δὲ

from the Pyrenees mountains as far as New Carthage and the sources of the Baetis, while the second province *comprehends* the area reaching to Gadara and Lusitania.» The form 'Iberite' is also found. Parthenius in 'Leucadiae': «Thou shalt coast along the 'Iberite' shore.» The other Iberia is over toward the Persians. The ethnic term is 'Iberians', like 'Pierians', 'Byzerians'. Dionysius: «Nigh unto the Pillars the nation of great-hearted 'Iberians'.» And Aristophanes, 'Triphales': «Learning that the 'Iberians', who anciently of Aristarchus), and, «The 'Iberians', whom thou lendest me, to run to my aid.» And Artemidorus in part two of 'Geography': «Those of the 'Iberians' who live on the coast use the alphabet of the Italians.» Also, from genitive 'Iberos' is formed the feminine 'Iberis'. «A Greek woman, not an 'Iberis'», Menander, 'Aspis'. The form 'Iberic' is also found: «The first sea is the 'Iberic' at the outset.» Iberia used to be divided in two, but now in three, as Marcian says in its 'Circumnavigation': «Now of old Iberia was divided in two by the Romans, but now in three: Baetic Spain and *Lusitanian* Spain and Tarragonese Spain.» From genitive 'Iberos' Apollonius derives a nominative, as 'phylakos' from genitive 'phylakos'. In 'Paronyma' he says: «Nominatives are derived from genitives of more than two syllables which, like the derivative nominative, carry the *proparoxytone* accent, whether these are in simple or compound form. Simple are: martyr, martyros, nominative *martyros*; Charops, Charopos, nominative Charopos, 'of king Charopos'; Troezen, Troezenos, nominative Troezenos, 'son of Troezenos'; Iber, Iberos, nominative Iberos); whence in Quadratus, 'Roman Millennium',

Ba Be Epitome Steph. Byz. || 19 ἔθνος: ἔθνικὸν Meineke Epitome Steph. Byz. || 'Ιβήρης] *litteras* ἱβή rest. P² || 20 ἔθνος] *litteras* rest. P² || 'Ιβήρων] *litteras* ἱβή rest. P² || 21 Τριφάλιτι P || 23 post δευτέρῳ add. τῶν edd. Meineke || Γραμματικῇ Ba Be Meineke: γραμματικοὶ P || 24 θάλατταν P V edd. Meineke: θάλατται (*littera v ex dimidia parte erasa*) P^v || 24 Καὶ — 26/7 ἀρχομένοιαι *secl.* V || 25 Ἀσπίδη P || 26 post 'Ιβηρικὸς¹ add. Διονύσιος Ba Be Berkel Meineke || 26 Πρώτος μὲν πρὸς τινος: πόντος μὲν πρώτιστος Ba Be Berkel Meineke Dionysios || 26/7 ἀρχομένοιισοι P || 27 ἡ 'Ιβηρία Meineke: 'Ιβηρία Ba Be ἡ 'Ιβηρίς P || post εἰς¹ add. ἐπαρχίας Berkel Meineke || τρεῖς Meineke γ' P: τρία V edd. || 28 post δύο add. ἐπαρχίας Meineke || 28/9 διήρητο ὑπὸ 'Ρωμαίων εἰς ἐπαρχίας δύο Marcianus || 28 διήρητο Meineke || 29 τρεῖς Meineke Marcianus γ' P: τρία edd. || 29/30 εἰς 'Ισπανίαν Βαυτικὴν καὶ εἰς 'Ισπανίαν Λουσιτανίαν καὶ 'Ισπανίαν Ταρρακωνησίαν Marcianus || 29 Βαυτικὴν Meineke || Σπανίαν¹ om. Be Meineke || καὶ¹ om. V Me Be Meineke || Σπανίαν² om. V Me Λουσιτανίαν Be Salmasius Meineke || 30 Ἀπὸ — 38 φησὶ *secl.* V || 30 εὐθεῖα Meineke || post εὐθεῖαν add. παράγει Ba Berkel || 30/1 ὡς τῆς φύλακος ὁ φύλακος, Ἀπολλάνιος Bastius Meineke || 30 τῆς² (*etiā* Meineke): τοῦ Ba Be || 32 τὸ μὲν ὕδωρ: τῶν μὲν ὑπὲρ Meineke Apollonius τὸ μὲν 'Ιβηρ Ba Berkel || μὲν *delendum* *conī.* Meineke || 33 παροξυνόμενον: προπαροξυνόμεναι Meineke Apollonius || ἀπλοῦν Meineke Apollonius || 34 μάρτυρ add. Ba Be Meineke || μάρτυρ μάρτυρος ὁ μάρτυρος Apollonius || ὁ μάρτυρ: ὁ μάρτυρος edd. Meineke || 35 Χαρόποις τ' ἀνακτος Ba Be Meineke Apollonius: χαροποῖσιν ἀνακτος P || Τρύζειν Τρύζηνος ὁ Τρύζηνος P || 35/6 Τρυζήνοιο P ||

κῆς χιλιάδος (ε') ἔστιν Ἰβήροισιν οὕτως· «Καὶ τοι Λίγυσι θ' ἅμα καὶ Ἰβήροισι πολεμέοντες.» Τὸ αὐτὸ καὶ Ἀβρων ἐν Παρωνόμοις φησί.
 48P Καὶ αὐτὸς Ἰβηρος τραγοπώγων» ἐν Μαλθακοῖς εἴρηται Κρατίνου. Λέγονται οἱ Ἰβηρες ὕδροποτεῖν, ὡς Ἀθήναιος ἐν Δειπνοσοφιστῶν β' 40 οὕτως· «Φύλαρχος μὲν ἐν τῇ ζ' καὶ τοὺς Ἰβηράς φησι ὕδροποτεῖν πάντας, καίτοι πλουσιωτάτους πάντων ἀνθρώπων τυγχάνοντας (κέκτηνται γὰρ καὶ ἄργυρον καὶ χρυσὸν πλεῖστον), μονοσιτεῖν τε αὐτοὺς ἀεὶ λέγει διὰ μικρολογίαν, ἐσθῆτάς τε φορεῖν πολυτελεστάτας.»

24. Περὶ Ἰσπανίας.

Πόθεν εἴρηται Ἰσπανία; Ἀπὸ Ἰσπάνου γίγαντος οὕτω καλουμένου. Ἰσπανίαι δύο τῆς Ἰταλίας ἐπαρχίαι· ἡ μὲν μεγάλη, ἡ δὲ μικρά. Ταύτης ἐμνήσθη Χάραξ ἐν ἰ' Χρονικῶν· «Ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ τῇ μικρᾷ τῇ
 48P ἔξω Λουσιτανῶν πάλιν ἀποστάντων, ἐπέμψθη ὑπὸ Ρω[μαίων] στρατηγὸς ἐπ' αὐτοὺς Κύντος.» Ὁ αὐτὸς ὁμοῦ περὶ τῶν δύο· «Κύντος ὁ τῶν Ρωμαίων πολέμαρχος ἐν ἀμφοτέραις ταῖς Ἰσπανίαις. Ἡσώμενος δὲ ὑπὸ Οὐριιάθου σπονδὰς πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐποίησατο.» Ταύτην κεκληῖσθαι
 110Be φησιν Ἰβηρίαν ἐν Ἑλληνικῶν γ'· «Τὴν δὲ Ἰσπανίαν Ἑλληνες τὰ | πρῶτα Ἰβηρίαν ἐκάλουν, οὕτω ξύμπαντος τοῦ ἔθνους τὴν προσηγορίαν μεμαθη- 10 κότες, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ μέρους τῆς γῆς, ὃ ἔστιν πρὸς ποταμὸν Ἰβηρα, καὶ ἀπ' ἐκείνου ὀνομάζεται, τὴν πᾶσαν οὕτω καλοῦντες» Ὑστερον δὲ φασιν αὐτὴν μετακεκληῖσθαι Πανωνίαν.

25. Ἐκ τῆς ἱστορίας τοῦ ὀσίου Θεοφάνους τῆς Σιγριανῆς.

Τούτῳ τῷ ἔτει Οὐαλεντινιανὸς οὐ μόνον Βρεττανίαν καὶ Γαλίαν
 49P καὶ Ἰσπανίαν | ἀνασώσασθαι οὐκ ἴσχυσεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἐσπέριον Λιβύην,

F 38 Τὸ αὐτὸ — φησί: cf. Habronis fr., ed. R. Berndt, Berl. Phil. Wochenschrift XXXV. p. 1454; Herodianus, ed. Lentz I. p. 196, 29; II. p. 854, 9. 39 αὐτὸς — Κρατίνου: cf. Cratini fr. 101., ed. Kock, C. A. Fr. I. p. 46; Herodianus, ed. Lentz I. p. 196, 22—23; II. p. 854, 1—3.

40 Λέγονται — 44 πολυτελεστάτας: Athen. Dipnosoph. II. 44 b., ed. Kaibel I. p. 102, 15—19.

24, 2 Πόθεν — 13 Πανωνίαν: cf. Steph. Byz., ed. Meineke s. v. Ἰσπανίαι. 4 Χάραξ — 8 ἐποίησατο: cf. Characis fr. 26., 27., ed. Jacoby, F. Gr. Hist. II A. p. 488.

9 ἐν Ἑλληνικῶν — 13 Πανωνίαν: cf. Characis fr. 3., ed. Jacoby. F. Gr. Hist. II A. p. 483.

25, 3 Τούτῳ — 55 βασιλεύσας: Theoph. p. 93, 31—95, 25; cf. Procop., De bello Vand. I. 2—4., ed. Haury I. p. 320, 18—322, 4; 311, 5—313, 1; 317, 9—20; 322, 4—326, 4.

23, 24, 25

V, occurs the *dative plural* 'Iberoisi', thus: «Though warring at once with the Ligurians and 'Iberoisi'» Habro says the same in 'Paronyma'. And «the goat-bearded 'Iberos' himself» is found in the 'Effeminales' of Cratinus. The Iberians are said to drink water, as Athenaeus says in 'Deipnosophists', II: «Phylarchus in book VII says that all the Iberians too drink water, though they are the wealthiest of mankind (for they possess very great quantities of silver and gold), and he says that they never eat but once in the day out of their parsimony, and wear the most magnificent clothes.»

24. Of Spain.

Whence is the name Spain? From Hispanus, a giant so called. The Spains are two provinces of Italy: one is large, the other small. The country is referred to by Charax in 'Chronicles', X: «In Little, or Outer, Spain the Lusitanians again revolted, and the Romans sent against them their general Quintus». And, of the two *provinces* together, the same *author writes*: «Quintus, the Roman commander-in-chief in both the Spains. He was defeated by Viriathus and made a truce with him.» He says the country is called Iberia, in 'Greek History', III: «Spain the Greeks originally called Iberia, not yet having learnt the title of the whole nation but calling it all after that part of the country which is near the river Iber and derives its name therefrom.» Afterwards, they say, the name was changed to *Spain*.

25. From the history of the holy Theophanes of Sigriane.

In this year Valentinian was not merely too weak to recover Britain and Gaul and Spain, but also lost western Libya as well, the so-called land

V 37 ε' *add.* Ba Be Meineke Jacoby || εστιν Jacoby: εστιν P *edd.* Meineke || Καί τοι Λίγυσι θ' ἄμα Ba Be Meineke Jacoby καὶ τολίοισι τ' ἄμα (*sine acc.*) P || 38 Ἀβρων P || 39 αὐτός: αὐτός Meineke || 40 Ἀθηναίος P || δειπνω σοφιστῶν P || 41 Φίλαρχος P *edd.* || 41/2 φησὶ δὲ καὶ <ἐν τῇ ζ'> τοὺς Ἰβήρας πάντας ὑδροποτεῖν καὶ τοὶ πλουσιωτάτους ἀνθρώπων ὄντας Athenaeus || 42 κέκτηνται — 43 πλείστον *deest apud Athenaeum in parenthesi posuit Moravcsik* || 43 καὶ *om.* *edd.* Meineke || 44 τε (*etiam* Athenaeus^{CE}): δὲ Athenaeus.

24. 2/3 καλουμένου: λεγομένου Meineke || 5 ἐπέμφθη *edd.*: ἐπέμφη P || 7 Ἰσπανίαις <ἡγωνίσαστο> *coni.* Jacoby || 8 Οὐριάθου Meineke Jacoby: Οὐριάθου P *edd.* || 11 Ἰβηρα Müller Jacoby: Ἰβηρίαν V *edd.* Ἰβηρία P <Ἰβηρα> Ἰβηρίαν Meineke || 11/2 Ἰβηρίαν ἀπ' ἐκείνου ὀνόμαζον καὶ τὴν πᾶσαν *coni.* Meineke || 12 ὀνομάζεται Müller Jacoby: ὀνομάζονται P Meineke || 13 Πανωνίαν (*etiam* Epitome Steph. Byz.): Πανωνίαν Jacoby Πανίαν Ba Be Meineke Σπανίαν *coni.* Kyriakides Ἰσπανίαν *coni.* Dujčev.

25. 3 Οὐαλεντινιανός P² *mg.* P⁸ *edd.* Theoph.: Οὐαλεντιανός P || 4

τὴν τῶν Ἀφρων καλουμένην χώραν προσαπώλεσε τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. Δύο 5
στρατηγοὶ ἦσαν, Ἀέτιος καὶ Βονιφάτιος, οὓς Θεοδοσίος κατὰ αἵτησιν
Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ εἰς Ῥώμην ἀπέστειλεν. Βονιφάτιος δὲ τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς
ἐσπερίου Λιβύης λαβὼν, φθονήσας Ἀέτιος διαβολὴν ποιεῖται κατ'
αὐτοῦ, ὡς ἀνταρσίαν μελετῶντος καὶ τῆς Λιβύης κρατῆσαι σπεύδοντος.
Καὶ ταῦτα μὲν πρὸς Πλακιδίαν ἔλεγε, τὴν τοῦ Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ μητέρα. 10
Γράφει δὲ καὶ Βονιφατίῳ, ὅτι· «Ἐὰν μεταπεμφθῇς, παραγενέσθαι μὴ
θελήσης» διεβλήθης γάρ, καὶ δόλω σε οἱ βασιλεῖς βούλονται χειρώσα-
49^p σθαι.» Ταῦτα δεξάμενος Βονιφάτιος [καὶ ὡς γνησίῳ φίλῳ Ἀετίῳ πιστεύ-
σας, μεταπεμφθεὶς οὐ παρεγένετο. Τότε οἱ βασιλεῖς ὡς εὐνοοῦντα τὸν
111Be | Ἀέτιον ἀπεδέξαντο. Ἦσαν δὲ τῷ τότε Γότθοι καὶ ἔθνη πολλά τε καὶ 15
μέγιστα μέχρι τοῦ Δανουβίου ἐν τοῖς ὑπερβορείοις τόποις κατακτισμένα.
Τούτων δὲ ἀξιολογώτερά εἰσι Γότθοι, Ἰσίογιοι, Γήπαιδες καὶ Οὐανδή-
λοι, ἐν ὀνόμασι μόνον καὶ οὐδενὶ ἑτέρῳ διαλλάττοντες, μῖξ διαλέκτῳ
κεκρημένοι· πάντες δὲ τῆς Ἀρείου ὑπάρχουσι κακοπιστίας. Οὗτοι ἐπ'
Ἀρκαδίου καὶ Ὀνωρίου τὸν Δανούβιον διαβάντες, ἐν τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων 20
γῇ κατακίσθησαν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν Γήπαιδες, ἐξ ὧν ὕστερον διηρέθησαν
50^p Λογγίβαρδοι καὶ Ἀβαρεις, τὰ περὶ Σιγγιδῶνα καὶ Σέρμιον χωρία
ῥήκυσαν. Οἱ δὲ Ἰσίογιοι μετὰ Ἀλάρικον τὴν Ῥώμην πορθήσαντες,
εἰς Γαλλίας ἐχώρησαν καὶ τῶν ἐκεῖ ἐκράτησαν. Γότθοι δὲ Παννονίαν
ἔχοντες πρῶτον, ἔπειτα ἰθ' ἔτει τῆς βασιλείας Θεοδοσίου τοῦ νέου, 25
ἐπιτρέψαντος, τὰ τῆς Θράκης χωρία ῥήκυσαν, καὶ ἐπὶ νη' χρόνους ἐν τῇ
Θράκῃ διατρίψαντες, Θεοδερίχου ἡγεμονεύοντος αὐτῶν πατρικίου καὶ
ὑπάτου, Ζήνωνος αὐτοῖς ἐπιτρέψαντος, τῆς ἐσπερίου βασιλείας ἐκράτη-
σαν. Οἱ δὲ Οὐανδήλοι Ἀλανοὺς ἐταιρισάμενοι καὶ Γερμανοὺς, τοὺς
νῦν καλουμένους Φράγγους, διαβάντες τὸν Ἰνῶνι ποταμόν, ἡγούμενον 30
50^p ἔχοντες Γογίδισκλον, καταῤῃκισαν ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ, πρώτη οὖσα χώρα τῆς
112Be Εὐρώπης ἀπὸ | τοῦ ἐσπερίου Ὠκεανοῦ. Βονιφάτιος δὲ φοβηθεὶς τοὺς
τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖς, περάσας ἀπὸ Λιβύης, εἰς Ἰσπανίαν πρὸς τοὺς

V Ἰσχυσεν (etiam Theoph.): Ἰσχυεν edd. || 5 προσαπώλεσε P || 7 Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ edd. Theoph.: Οὐαλεντιανὸς P Οὐαλεντινιανὸς P² || Βονιφάτιος P: Βονιφατίου Ba Be Theoph. || 8 λαβὼν (etiam Theoph.^b): λαβόντος Ba Be Theoph. || ante Ἀέτιος add. ὁ Ba Be Theoph. || 10 Οὐαλεντινιανοῦ P² edd.: Οὐαλεντιανῶ P || 11 καὶ deest in Theoph. || μεταπεμφθῇς Be Theoph.: παραπεμφθῇς Ba παραπεμφθεὶς P || 14 εὐνοοῦντα Theoph.: εὐνοῦντα P εὐνούνστατον (accentu mutato, littera σ inserta et s. v. τὸν addito) P² εὐνούνστατον V edd. || 15 τῷ deest in Theoph. || Γότθοι καὶ (etiam Theoph.^{edd.}): Γοτθικά Theoph. || 16 μέχρι: πέραν Theoph. || 17 Ἰσίογιοι mg. add. P¹: om. V edd. Ἰσι mg. iter. P² || Γήπεδες P || 20 Δανούβιον P V: Δάνουβιον P^x Theoph.^s Δανούβιον Theoph. Δανούβιον edd. || 22 Ἀβαρεις (etiam Theoph.): Ἀβάρεις edd. || Σιγγιδῶνα P || Σέρμιον Theoph.: Σερμίον P Σερμίω Theoph.^{sh} Σερμείω

of the Africans; it happened like this. There were two generals, Aëtius and Boniface, whom Theodosius had sent to Rome at the request of Valentinian. Boniface was given the command over western Libya, and Aëtius out of jealousy slanderously accused him of meditating rebellion and working to seize Libya. This he communicated to Placidia, the mother of Valentinian. But he wrote also to Boniface, saying: «If you are sent for, do not come, for you have been slanderously accused, and the emperor and empress are trying to get you into their hands by a trick.» This message Boniface received and, trusting in Aëtius as in a true friend, did not go when he was sent for. Then the emperor and empress accepted Aëtius as a loyal servant. At that time the Goths and many very large nations were settled in the regions of the far north down as far as the Danube. Of these the most notable are the Goths, Visigoths, Gepedes and Vandals, who differ from one another in name only and in nothing else, and speak one and the same tongue; and all are of the misbelief of Arius. These in the time of Arcadius and Honorius crossed the Danube and settled in the territory of the Romans. The Gepedes, from whom were later divided off the Lombards and Avars, lived in the territories about Singidunum and Sirmium. The Visigoths, under Alaric, after taking Rome, went off to the Gallic provinces and possessed themselves of those regions. The Goths first held Pannonia, but afterwards were permitted by Theodosius the younger, in the 19th year of his reign, to dwell in the territories of Thrace, and after remaining 58 years in Thrace they obtained permission of Zeno to possess themselves of the western kingdom, with their leader the patrician and consul Theodoric. The Vandals, joining up with the Alans and Germans, who are now called Franks, crossed the river *Rhine*, and, under the leadership of Gogidiscus, settled in Spain, the first country of Europe from the side of the western Ocean. Now, Boniface, fearing the emperor and empress of the Romans, crossed over from

Theoph.^{cefm} Σερμεῖον Ba Be || 23 Ἡαίγοθοι P || Ἀλάριχον P V Me Theoph.: Ἀλαρίχου (*littera v ex diuiniā parte erasa accentuque correcto*) P^v Meursius Ba Be || 24 Πανωνίαν P edd.: Πανονίαν Theoph. || 25 ἔχοντες: ἔσχον Theoph. || *post* ἔπειτα *add.* τῷ Theoph.: *om.* Theoph.^{efm} || ἔτη P || 27 διατρέψαντες Meursius Ba Be Theoph.: διατρέψαντος P || 28 αὐτοῖς Ba Be Theoph.: αὐτὰρ P || ἐπιτρέψαντος F Ba Be Theoph.: ἐπιστρέψαντος P || *post* ἐσπερίου *add.* Αιβύης edd.: *deest in* Theoph. || 29 Οὐανδῆλοι P V: Οὐανδῆλοι P^v *mg.* P^s || 30 Νῖνον (*etiam* Theoph.^{beg}) Νεῖνον Theoph.^{efm} νῖνος *mg.* P^s: Πῆνον Ba Be Theoph. || 31 Γογίδισκλον (*litteris γι in ras. scriptis*) P^s V edd. Γοδιτσκλον Theoph. || 33 εἰς (*habet etiam* Theoph.) *s. v. add.* P^s *in textum receperunt* V edd. ||

Οὐανδήλους ἦλθεν, καὶ εὐρών τὸν μὲν Γογίδισκλον τελευτήσαντα, τοὺς
 δὲ ἐκείνου παῖδας, Γότθαρὸν τε καὶ Γηζέριχον τὴν ἀρχὴν διέποντας, 35
 τοὺτους προτρεψάμενος τὴν ἐσπέριον Λιβύην εἰς τρία μέρη διελεῖν
 ὑπέσχετο, ἐφ' ᾧ ἕκαστον τοῦ τρίτου μέρους ἀρχεῖν σὺν αὐτῷ, κοινῇ δὲ
 ἀμύνεσθαι τὸν οἰονδήποτε πολέμιον. Ἐπὶ ταύταις ταῖς ὁμολογίαις
 Οὐανδήλοι τὸν πορθμὸν διαβάντες, τὴν Λιβύην κατώκησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ
 51^P Ὠκεανοῦ μέχρι Τριπόλεως τῆς κατὰ Κυρήνην. Οἱ δὲ Ἰσί|γοτθοὶ ἀνα- 40
 στάντες ἀπὸ Γαλλίας, ἐκράτησαν καὶ τὴν Ἰσπανίαν. Τινὲς δὲ τῆς συγκλή-
 του Ῥωμαίων, φίλοι Βονιφατίου, τὴν Ἀετίου ψευδοκατηγορίαν ἀνήγγει-
 λαν τῇ Πλακιδίᾳ, ἐμφανῇ ποιήσαντες καὶ τὴν πρὸς Βονιφάτιον Ἀετίου
 ἐπιστολὴν, τοῦ Βονιφατίου ταύτην αὐτοῖς ἀποστείλαντος. Ἡ δὲ Πλακι-
 δία ἐκπλαγεῖσα τὸν μὲν Ἀέτιον οὐδὲν ἡδίκησεν, Βονιφατίῳ δὲ λόγον 45
 προτρεπτικὸν μεθ' ὅρκων ἀπέστειλεν. Τοῦ δὲ Γοτθαρίου τελευτήσαντος,
 Γηζέριχος τῶν Οὐανδήλων γέγονεν αὐτοκράτωρ. Βονιφάτιος δὲ τὸν
 λόγον δεξάμενος τῶν Οὐανδήλων κατεστράτευσεν, στρατοῦ μεγάλου
 51^P ἐλθόντος αὐτῷ ἀπὸ τε Ῥώμης καὶ τοῦ Βυ|ζαντίου, στρατηγούντος
 Ἀσπαρος. Πολέμου δὲ κροτηθέντος πρὸς Γηζέριχον, ἡττήθη ὁ τῶν 50
 113^{Be} Ῥωμαίων στρατός. Καὶ οὕτω | Βονιφάτιος μετὰ Ἀσπαρος εἰς Ῥώμην
 ἐλθὼν, τὴν ὑποψίαν διέλυσεν, ἀποδείξας τὴν ἀλήθειαν. Ἡ δὲ Ἀφρικὴ
 ὑπὸ Οὐανδήλοις γέγονεν. Τότε καὶ Μαρκιανὸς στρατιώτης ὢν καὶ δου-
 λεύων Ἀσπαρα ζῶν συνελήφθη ὑπὸ Γηζεριχοῦ, ὁ μετὰ ταῦτα βασι-
 λεύσας. 55

Ἰστέον, ὅτι τρεῖς ἀμερμουμνεῖς εἰσιν ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ Συρίᾳ, ἡγουν
 (ἐν) τῇ τῶν Ἀράβων ἀρχῇ, ὧν ὁ μὲν πρῶτος καθέζεται ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ,
 ἔστιν δὲ ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Μουάμεθ γενεᾶς, ἥτοι τοῦ Μουχούμετ· ὁ δὲ δεύτερος
 52^P καθέζεται ἐν Ἀφρικῇ, καὶ ἔστι ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀλῆμ γενεᾶς καὶ Φα|τιμέ,
 τῆς θυγατρὸς Μουάμεθ, ἥτοι τοῦ Μουχούμετ, ἐξ οὗ καὶ Φατεμῖται 60
 ὀνομάζονται· ὁ δὲ τρίτος καθέζεται ἐν Ἰσπανίᾳ, ἔστιν δὲ ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς
 τοῦ Μαυίου.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι κατ' ἀρχὰς ἐν τῷ κατακυριεῦσαι τοὺς Σαρακηνοὺς
 πάσης τῆς Συρίας ἐκαθέσθη ἀμερμουμνῆς εἰς τὸ Βαγδάδ. Ἐδέσποζεν δὲ
 πάσης τῆς Περσίας καὶ τῆς Ἀφρικῆς καὶ τῆς Αἰγύπτου καὶ τῆς εὐδαί- 65
 μονος Ἀραβίας. Καὶ εἶχεν ἀμνηραδίας μεγάλας, ἥτοι στρατηγίδας ταύ-
 τας· πρώτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Περσίαν, ἡγουν τὸ Χωρασάν, δευτέραν
 ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Ἀφρικὴν, τρίτην ἀμνηραδίαν τὴν Αἰγύπτου, τετάρτην

¶ 34 Γογίδισκλον: Γοδυ|σικλον Theoph. || 35 Γότθαρν: Γότθαριν Theoph.^o
 Γόνθαριν Theoph. || Γηζέριχον (etiam Theoph.^o): Γιζέριχον Theoph. ||
 36 τρία edd. Theoph.: γ' P || 39 Οὐανδήλοι edd. Theoph.: Οὐάνδηλοι P ||
 40 Κυρήνην Ba Be Theoph.: Κυρίνης P || 42 ante Ἀετίου add. τοῦ edd.:
 deest in Theoph. || 46 μεθόρκον P || Γοτθαρίου (etiam Theoph.^o): Γονθαρίου

Libya into Spain and came to the Vandals, and finding that Gogidiscus was dead and that his sons Gottharus and Gezerichus held the rule, he incited them by a promise to divide western Libya in three parts, so that each of them, with himself, should rule over a third part, but should unite to repel any enemy whoever he might be. These terms being agreed upon, the Vandals crossed the strait and settled in Libya, from the Ocean as far as Tripolis by Cyrene. The Visigoths, advancing from Gaul, took possession of Spain also. Now, some Roman senators who were friends to Boniface exposed to Placidia the falsity of Aëtius' accusation, and showed her also the letter of Aëtius to Boniface, which Boniface had sent them. Placidia, much amazed, forbore to injure Aëtius, but dispatched to Boniface a message recalling him to his duty, together with promises on oath. Now, on the death of Gottharius Gezerichus had become sole chief of the Vandals. Boniface, then, on receipt of the message, marched against the Vandals, with a large force which had come to him from Rome and Byzantium under the command of Aspar. Battle was joined with Gezerichus and the army of the Romans was defeated. So Boniface, accompanied by Aspar, came to Rome and dispelled suspicion by exposing the truth. But Africa fell beneath the Vandals. It was then that Marcian, the future emperor, who was a soldier in the service of Aspar, was taken alive by Gezerichus.

There are three commanders of the faithful in the whole of Syria, that is, in the empire of the Arabs, the first of whom has his seat at Bagdad and is of the family of Mouameth, or Mahomet; the second has his seat in Africa, and is of the family of Alim and Fatime, daughter of Mouameth, or Mahomet, whence the Fatemites are so called; the third has his seat in Spain, and he is of the family of Mauias.

Originally, when the Saracens made themselves masters over all Syria, the commander of the faithful had his seat at Bagdad. He was absolute ruler over Persia and Africa and Egypt and Arabia Felix. He had beneath him mighty emirates, or military provinces, as follows: first, the emirate of Persia, or Chorasán; second, the emirate of Africa; third, the emirate

Theoph. || 47 Γηζέριχος (*etiam* Theoph.^o): Γιζέριχος Theoph. || δέ: οὖν Theoph. || 50 Γηζέριχον (*etiam* Theoph.^o): Γιζέριχον Theoph. || 52 Ἀφρικὴ P^x V *mg.* P^s: Ἀφρικῇ P || 54 Ἀσπαρά: τὸν Ἀσπαρά Theoph.^{vetm} Ἀσπαρον P τῷ Ἀσπαρι Ba Be Theoph. || Γηζέριχου F *edd.* Theoph.^o: Γιζέριχου Theoph. Γεζέριχου P || 56 ἀμπερμουνεῖς Meursius: ἀμπερουμεῖς P *edd.* || 57 ἐν *add.* *edd.* || Βαγδάδ (*littera* β *in ras. scripta*) P^y Ba Be: Γαγδάδ P *mg.* P^s || 58 δεύτερος *scr.* Moravesik: β' P Ba Be || 60 Φατεμίται V: Φατιμίται Be Φατουμίται P || 61 τρίτος V *edd.*: γ' P || 63 *post* ὅτι *add.* ἐν τῷ *edd.* || κατακυριεῦσαι: κυριεῦσαι V *edd.* || 64 Συρίας] *litteras* ὑπλάς *rest.* P^s || ἀμπερμουνεῖς P: ἀμπερμυνηῖς Be || εἰς (*litteris restitutis*) P^s: ἐν Be || τὸ *scr.* Moravesik: τῷ (*litteris restitutis*) P^s τῷ Ba Be || Βαγδάδ] *litteras rest.* P^s || 67 Χωρασάν *scr.* Moravesik: Χωρασσάν *mg.* P^s Χωροσσάν P Χωροσάν Be || δευτέραν *edd.*: β' P ||

- 52^vP ἀμηνραδιαν τὴν Φιλιστήμ, ἦτοι | τὸ ῥάμβλε, πέμπτην ἀμηνραδιαν τὴν
 Δαμασκόν, ἕκτην ἀμηνραδιαν τὸ Χέμφ, ἦτοι τὸ Ἑμεσα, ἐβδόμην ἀμη- 70
 114^{Be} ραδιαν τὸ Χάλεπ, ὀγδόην ἀμηνραδιαν τὴν Ἀν|τιόχειαν, ἐνάτην ἀμηνρα-
 διαν τὸ Χαράν, δεκάτην ἀμηνραδιαν τὸ Ἑμετ, ἐνδεκάτην ἀμηνραδιαν
 τὴν Ἑσιβή, δωδεκάτην ἀμηνραδιαν τὸ Μούσελ, τρισκαιδεκάτην ἀμηνραδιαν
 τὸ Τικριτ. Τῆς δὲ Ἀφρικῆς ἀποσπασθείσης ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ
 ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ ἐξουσίας καὶ ἰδιοκρατησάσης καὶ ἀμηνρᾶν ἴδιον ἀναγορευ- 75
 σάσης, γέγονεν, καθὼς καὶ προὔπηρχεν, πρώτη ἀμηνραδιά ἡ Περσία,
 δευτέρα ἡ Αἴγυπτος καὶ καθεξῆς αἱ λοιπαί, καθὼς προεῖρηται. Ἀρτίως
 δὲ πάλιν τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ τοῦ ἐν τῷ Βαγδάδ ἀδυνατήσαντος, γέγονεν
 53^P ἰδιόρρυθμος | ὁ τῆς Περσίας ἀμηνρᾶς, ἤγουν τοῦ Χωρασάν· καὶ ἀπεκάλε-
 σεν ἑαυτὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν, φορῶν καὶ τὸ κουράν διὰ πινακιδίων εἰς τὸν 80
 τράχηλον αὐτοῦ δίκην μανιακίου. Λέγει δὲ ἑαυτὸν εἶναι (ἐκ) τῆς γενεᾶς
 τοῦ Ἀλήμ. Ὁ δὲ ἀμηνρᾶς τῆς εὐδαίμονος Ἀραβίας ὑπῆρχεν αἰὶ καὶ
 πάντοτε ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἀμηνρᾶ Αἰγύπτου. Γέγονεν δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς
 ἰδιόρρυθμος, καὶ ἀπεκάλεσεν καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν· λέγει δὲ
 καὶ αὐτὸς ἑαυτὸν εἶναι ἐκ τῆς τοῦ Ἀλήμ γενεᾶς. 85

26. Ἡ γενεαλογία τοῦ περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς Οὐγῶνος.

- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ ῥῆξ Ἰταλίας, ὁ μέγας Λωθάριος, ὁ πάππος τοῦ
 53^vP περιβλέπτου ῥηγὸς Οὐγῶνος, ἀπὸ | τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ μεγάλου Καρούλου
 κατήγετο, περὶ οὗ πολὺς ἔπαινος, ἐγκώμιά τε καὶ διηγήματα καὶ περὶ
 115^{Be} πολέμους ἀνδραγαθήματα. Οὗτος οὖν ὁ Κάρουλος | ἦν μονοκράτωρ 5
 πάντων τῶν ῥηγάτων, ἐβασίλευσε δὲ εἰς τὴν μεγάλην Φραγγίαν. Ἐν δὲ
 ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτοῦ οὐδεὶς τῶν ὑπολοίπων ῥηγῶν ἐτόλμησε ῥῆγα ἑαυτὸν
 καλέσαι, ἀλλὰ πάντες ὑπῆρχον ὑπόσπονδοι αὐτοῦ, ὅστις χρήματα ἱκανὰ
 καὶ πλοῦτον ἄφθονον ἐν Παλαιστίνῃ ἀποστείλας, ἐδείματο μοναστήρια
 πάμπολλα. Ὁ τοίνυν Λωθάριος οὗτος ἀναλαβόμενος τὰ ἑαυτοῦ στρατεύ- 10
 54^vP ματα, κατὰ ῥώμης ἐκστρατεύσας, ἀπὸ πολέμου | ταύτην ἐκράτησεν,
 καὶ ἐστέφθη παρὰ τοῦ τότε πάπα. Καὶ ἡνίκα ὑπέστρεφεν εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 ἐξουσίαν, ἤγουν εἰς Πάπιν, κατήντησεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον Πλαζέντα,
 τὸ ὃν ἀπὸ τριάκοντα μιλίων τῆς Παπίας. Κάκεῖσε μὲν οὗτος τελευτᾷ,
 ἔτεκεν δὲ υἱόν, ὀνόματι Ἀδέλβερτον, ὃς ἔγνημεν γυναῖκα τὴν μεγάλην 15
 Βέρταν, καὶ ἐξ αὐτῆς τὸν προρρηθέντα ῥῆγα, τὸν Οὐγῶνα ἔτεκεν. Μετὰ
 δὲ τὸ τελευτῆσαι τὸν μέγαν Λωθάριον Λοδόικος, ὁ ἴδιος τοῦ Λοδοίκου,

V 69 Φιλιστήμ V edd. || πέμπτην edd.: ε' P || 70 ἕκτην V edd.: ζ' P ||
 Ἑμεσα P edd. || ἐβδόμην edd.: ζ' P || 71 ὀγδόην edd.: η' P || ἐνάτην
 Be: θ' P || 72 δεκάτην edd.: ι' P || ἐνδεκάτην edd.: ια' P || 73 δωδεκάτην edd.:
 ιβ' P || τρισκαιδεκάτην Moravcsik: ιγ' P τρισεκάτην edd. || 75 ante ἐν adden-

of Egypt; fourth, the emirate of Philistiem, or Rambleh; fifth, the emirate of Damascus; sixth, the emirate of Homs, or Emesa; seventh, the emirate of Aleppo; eighth, the emirate of Antioch; ninth, the emirate of Harrañ; tenth, the emirate of Emet; eleventh, the emirate of Esibe; twelfth, the emirate of Mosul; thirteenth, the emirate of Tikrit. But after Africa was torn away from the dominion of the commander of the faithful at Bagdad and had become self-governing and had proclaimed an emir of its own, then Persia was the first emirate, as it had been before, and Egypt became the second, and the rest thereafter in the order given above. But now, again, owing to the impotence of the commander of the faithful at Bagdad, the emir of Persia, or Chorasán, has become independent; and he has usurped the style of commander of the faithful, wearing the koran on tablets about his neck like a necklace. And he says he is *from* the family of Alim. Moreover the emir of Arabia Felix used always invariably to be beneath the dominion of the emir of Egypt. But he too has become independent, and he too has usurped the style of commander of the faithful; and he too says he is of the family of Alim.

26. The genealogy of the illustrious king Hugh.

The elder Lothair, king of Italy, grandfather of the illustrious king Hugh, was by descent of the family of the elder Charles, a man much celebrated in song and story and author of heroic deeds in war. This Charles was sole ruler over all the kingdoms, and reigned as emperor in great Francia. And in his days none of the other kings dared call himself a king, but all were his vassals; and he sent much money and abundant treasure to Palestine and built a very large number of monasteries. Well, this Lothair took his forces and marched against Rome and assaulted and got possession of it, and was crowned by the pope of that time. And when he was on his way back to his domain, that is, to Papia, he got as far as the city of Piacenza, thirty miles distant from Papia, and there he died; he begat a son called Adalbert, who took to wife the elder Bertha, and begat on her the aforesaid king Hugh. Now, after the death of the elder Lothair, Lewis, kinsman

dum τοῦ *coni.* Bekker || ἀμηνρὰν P || 75/6 ἀναγορευσάσης Meursius Ba Be: ἀναγορευσασα P || 76 πρώτη edd.: α' P || 77 δευτέρα edd.: β' P || 79 ἀμηνρὰς P || τοῦ Be: τὸ P || Χορασάν edd. || 80 ἀμερμουνην P || 81 ἐαυτὸν *coni.* Moravcsik: αὐτὸν F edd. αὐτὸν P || ἐκ add. Moravcsik: ἀπὸ add. edd. || 82 ἀμηνρὰς P || 83 ἀμηνρὰ P || 84 ἀμερμουνην P.

26. 1 ῥηγῶς P || 2 ῥιγῶς P || 3 ῥιγῶς P || Καρούλλου P || 5 ὁ *om.* edd. || Κάρουλλος P || 6 ῥηγῶτων P || 7 ῥιγῶν P || ῥίγα P || 9 ἐν: ἐμ P || 13 Πατίαν edd. || 16 ῥίγα P || 17 μέγαν edd.: μέγα P || Λοδοίκου: Λωθαρίου *coni.* Ohnsorge ||

- ἀπὸ τῆς μεγάλης Φραγγίας ἐλθὼν, ἐκράτησεν τὴν Πάπϊαν. Καὶ ἦν μὲν
 54^vP ἄστεπτος. Ὑστερον δὲ ἦλθεν εἰς Βερῶναν, εἰς τὸ κάστρον, τὸ ὄν | ἀπὸ ρκ' 20
 μιλίων τῆς Παπίας, καὶ ἐλθόντος αὐτοῦ ἐκεῖσε, ἐπανεστήσαν αὐτῷ οἱ 20
 τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου, καὶ κρατήσαντες ἐτύφλωσαν. Καὶ τότε ἐκράτησεν
 Βεριγγέριος, ὁ πάππος τοῦ νυνὶ Βεριγγέρη, καὶ εἰσελθὼν ἐν Ῥώμῃ
 ἐστέφθη. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐδηλοποίησεν λαὸς πολὺς τῷ Ῥοδούλφῳ
 εἰς Βεργώνϊαν ὄντι, λέγοντες, ὅτι· «Ἐλθὲ ἐνταῦθα, καὶ παραδίδομέν σοι
 116^{Be} τὸ ρηγᾶτον καὶ ἀποκτενοῦμεν τὸν Βεριγγέ|ριον.» Ὁ δὲ ἦλθεν ἀπὸ 25
 Βεργώνϊαν πρὸς τὰ μέρη τῆς Παπίας, καὶ ὁ μὲν ἡμῖς λαὸς ἦν μετὰ
 τοῦ Βεριγγέρη, ὁ δὲ λοιπὸς μετὰ τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου. Καὶ πολεμήσαντες,
 ἐνίκησεν ὁ Βεριγγέρης τὸν πρῶτον πόλεμον, καὶ πάλιν πολεμήσαντες,
 55^rP ἐνίκη|σεν ὁ Ῥοδούλφος. Καὶ ἔφυγεν ὁ λαὸς τοῦ Βεριγγέρη, καὶ μόνος
 καταλειφθεὶς ὁ Βεριγγέρης ἐποίησεν ἑαυτὸν ὡς τεθνεῶτα, καὶ ἔπεσεν 30
 μέσον τῶν τεθνεώτων, σκεπάσας αὐτὸν μετὰ τῆς δόρκας αὐτοῦ, τὸν
 δὲ πόδα αὐτοῦ εἶχεν ἔξω. Ἐλθὼν δὲ εἰς ἐκ τῶν στρατιωτῶν τοῦ Ῥο-
 δούλφου, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ μετὰ μεναύλου εἰς τὸν πόδα, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸ σύνολον
 οὐκ ἔσαλευθῆ· τοῦ δὲ μὴ σαλευθέντος, ἀφίησεν αὐτὸν ὡς δῆθεν νεκρὸν
 ὄντα. Ἦγνέει δὲ ὁ τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου λαός, ὅτι ὁ Βεριγγέρης ἐστίν. Καὶ 35
 παύσαντος τοῦ πολέμου, ἡγέρθη ὁ Βεριγγέρης καὶ ἦλθεν εἰς τὸ παλά-
 τιον αὐτοῦ μόνος, καὶ πάλιν ἐκράτησεν τῆς βασιλείας, καὶ ἐπολέμησεν
 55^vP τὸν Ῥοδούλφον καὶ ἐνίκησεν αὐτόν. Μετὰ δὲ | τοῦτο συνεβιβάσθησαν
 εἰς ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἐμερίσθησαν τὴν χώραν εἰς δύο· καὶ ὁ μὲν εἰς ἀνελά-
 βετο τὸ ἐν μέρος τῆς χώρας, ὁ δὲ ἕτερος τὸ ἕτερον. Ἦν δὲ ὁ Ῥοδούλφος 40
 ὑπὸ τὴν βουλὴν καὶ ἐξουσίαν τοῦ Βεριγγέρη. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἦλθον
 ἀπὸ Βεργώνϊαν τρεῖς μαρκήσιοι πρὸς Πάπϊαν τοῦ ἐκδιῶξαι τοὺς κρατοῦν-
 τας καὶ κρατῆσαι αὐτοί· ἦσαν δὲ οὗτοι· Οὐγὼν ὁ Ταλιαφέρνου καὶ
 Βόζος καὶ Οὐγὼν, ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Βόζου, ὁ προρρηθεὶς εὐγενέστατος
 117^{Be} ῥήξ. Ἦλθεν δὲ μετὰ λαοῦ ἱκανοῦ. Καὶ | μαθὼν ὁ Βεριγγέρης ἡτοιμάσθη, 45
 καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς συνάντησιν αὐτοῦ πρὸς πόλεμον, καὶ παρακαθίσας
 ἔστενοχώρησεν αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ λιμοῦ, καὶ ὥρισεν τὸν λαὸν αὐτοῦ τοῦ
 56^rP μὴ φονεύειν | τινὰ, ἀλλ' ὅπου ἂν κρατήσωσιν τινα ἐξ αὐτῶν, κόπτωσιν
 τὴν ρίνα αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ δύο ὠτία καὶ ἀπολύωσιν, ὃ δὴ καὶ ἐποιοῦν. Θεασά-
 μενοι οὖν τοῦτο αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι τρεῖς κεφαλαί, ἄραντες ἀνυπόδετοι 50
 τὰ θεῖα εὐαγγέλια εἰς τὰς χεῖρας αὐτῶν, ἦλθον πρὸς τὸν Βεριγγέρη,
 αἰτούμενοι συγχώρησιν καὶ ἡμύοντες τοῦ μηκέτι ἐλθεῖν ἐνθάδε μέχρι
 τέλους ζωῆς αὐτοῦ, καὶ τότε εἶπεν αὐτοὺς ἀπελθεῖν εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν.

V 18 Παπϊαν F edd. || 22 Βεριγγέρι V edd. || 25 ρηγᾶτον P || 26 Παπίας V edd.: Πάπιας P || ἡμῖς Be: ἡμῖς P || 27 Βεριγγέρι Be || Ῥοδούλφου edd.: Ῥοδύλφου P || πολεμίσαντες P || 28 Βεριγγέρις Be || πρῶτον V edd.: α' P ||

of Lewis, came from great Francia and took possession of Papia. He was not crowned. And afterwards he came to Verona, a city 120 miles from Papia, and on his arrival there the folk of that same city rose up against him and seized and blinded him. Then the rule was seized by Berengar, grandfather of the present Berengar, and he entered Rome and was crowned. After this, a large body of the folk made a declaration to Rodolf, who was in Burgundy, saying: «Come here, and we will give the kingdom over to you and will kill Berengar.» So he came from Burgundy to the region of Papia, and one half of the folk sided with Berengar, and the rest with Rodolf. They fought and Berengar was victorious in the first battle, and they fought again and Rodolf gained the victory. And the army of Berengar fled, and Berengar, left alone by himself, made as though he were dead, and fell down among the dead and covered himself with his shield, but left his leg protruding. One of Rodolf's soldiers came up and stabbed him in the leg with a spear, but he never stirred a muscle; and when he did not stir, he let him alone, supposing him in truth to be a corpse. And the army of Rodolf did not know that he was Berengar. When the battle was over, Berengar got up and came to his palace alone, and again got possession of his throne and fought with Rodolf and gained the victory over him. Thereafter they came to terms with one another and divided the country in two; and one of them took one part of the country, and the other the other. But Rodolf was subject to the counsel and authority of Berengar. After this, again, three marquises came from Burgundy to Papia with intent to expel its possessors and possess it themselves; they were Hugh Tagliaferro, and Boso, and Boso's brother Hugh, the most noble king aforesaid. And he came with a large army. When Berengar heard of it, he made ready and advanced to meet him in battle, and began to blockade and to reduce them by hunger, and gave orders to his army not to kill any, but if they should take any of them prisoner, to cut off his nose and his two ears and let him go; and so they did. When they saw this, the three chiefs aforesaid took the holy gospels in their hands and came barefoot to Berengar and begged his pardon and swore that they would never more come there so long as he should live; and then he let them depart to their

πολεμίσαντες P || 29 'Ροδοῦλφος V edd.: 'Ρουδοῦλφος P || Βεριγγέρι Be || 30 Βεριγγέρις Be || 31 αὐτὸν V edd.: αὐτὸν P || δόρκας *scr.* Moravosik: δορκᾶς P δορκᾶς edd. || αὐτοῦ (*etiam* Bandurius): αὐτοῦ edd. || 32 αὐτοῦ edd. || 32/3 'Ροδοῦλφου P⁹: 'Ροδοῦλφου P V || 34 ἀπίησιν V edd. || 35 'Ροδοῦλφου P⁹: 'Ροδοῦλφου P V || Βεριγγέρις Be || 36 Βεριγγέρις Be || 37 ἐπολέμισεν P || 41 Βεριγγέρι Be || 42 Βεργώνια edd. || μαρκήσιοι Meursius || Παπῖαν F edd. || 44 Βόζας *mg.* P*: Βόζον P Βόζων V edd. || Οὐγων V edd. Οὐγον P || 45 ῥέξ P || Βεριγγέρις Be || 47 ὄρισεν P || τοῦ *om.* edd. || 49 ῥίνα Be: ῥίναν P || ἀπολύωσιν edd.: ἀπολύουσιν P || 51 Βεριγγέριν P ||

Ὑστερον δὲ τοῦ Βεριγγέρη ἀπελθόντος εἰς Βερῶναν, ἀπέκτεινεν αὐτὸν
 Φαλαμβέρτος, ὁ σύντεκνος αὐτοῦ, καὶ τότε ἐκράτησεν ὅλον τὸ ῥηγᾶτον 55
 56^vP ὁ Ῥοδοῦλφος. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο ἐμήνυσεν ὁ λαὸς τῆς χώρας ὅλης | εἰς
 Βεργώνιαν τῷ Οὐγῶνι, τῷ προρρηθέντι ῥηγί, λέγοντες, ὅτι· «Ἐλθέ,
 καὶ παραδίδομέν σοι τὴν χώραν.» Καὶ ἐλθόντος αὐτοῦ, ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν
 ὁ λαός, καὶ ἀπήγαγον εἰς τὸ παλάτιον, καὶ ἀπεκατέστησεν αὐτὸν ῥῆγα.
 Τὸν δὲ Ῥοδοῦλφον εἶπον, ὅτι· «Ἀπελθε μετὰ τοῦ πλούτου σου, θέλῃς, 60
 εἰς τὴν χώραν σου, θέλῃς, ἄλλαχοῦ.» Ὁ δὲ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς Βεργώνιαν, εἰς
 τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, καὶ κατεῖχεν ἐκεῖσε λαὸν ἱκανόν. Καὶ τελευτήσαντος
 αὐτοῦ, ἀπῆλθεν Οὐγῶν, ὁ προρρηθεὶς ῥήξ, εἰς Βεργώνιαν, καὶ τὴν γυ-
 ναῖκα τοῦ Ῥοδούλφου, ἥτις καὶ Βέρτα ὠνομάζετο, ἔλαβεν εἰς γυναῖκα.
 118^{Be} Τὴν δὲ θυγατέρα αὐτῆς, ὀνόματι Ἀδέλεσαν, δέ|δωκεν Λωθαρίῳ, τῷ 65
 57^rP υἱῷ αὐ|τοῦ, τῷ νυνὶ ὄντι Ἰταλίας ῥηγί. Ἡ δὲ ἀνελθοῦσα ἐν Κωνσταντι-
 νουπόλει καὶ συναφθεῖσα Ῥωμανῷ τῷ πορφυρογεννήτῳ, υἱῷ Κωνσταντί-
 νου, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, ἦτοι ἡ θυγάτηρ τοῦ αὐτοῦ περιβλέπτου
 ῥηγὸς Οὐγῶνος, ἡ ὠνομάζετο Βέρτα κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα τῆς μάμμης αὐτῆς,
 ἥγουν τῆς μεγάλης Βέρτας, ἥτις μετὰ θάνατον τοῦ Ἀδελβέρτου, ἀνδρὸς 70
 αὐτῆς, ἐβασίλευσεν ἔτη * * *, μετωνομάσθη δὲ Εὐδοκία κατὰ τὸ ὄνομα
 τῆς τε μάμμης καὶ ἀδελφῆς Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη.

27. Περὶ τοῦ θέματος Λαγουβαρδίας καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ πριγκιπάτων καὶ ἀρχοντιῶν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐν τοῖς παλαιοῖς χρόνοις κατεκρατεῖτο ἡ πᾶσα ἐξουσία
 57^vP Ἰταλίας, ἡ τε Νεά|πολις καὶ Κάπυα καὶ ἡ Βενεβενδός, τό τε Σαλερινὸν 5
 καὶ ἡ Ἀμάλη καὶ Γαῖτῃ καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Λαγουβαρδία παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων,
 δηλονότι βασιλευομένης τῆς Ῥώμης. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ ἀνελθεῖν τὸ βασιλεῖον
 ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει διεμερίσθησαν ταῦτα πάντα εἰς ἀρχὰς δύο, ἐξ
 οὗ καὶ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλεύοντος ἐν Κωνσταντινουπόλει ἀπεστέλλοντο
 πατρίκιοι δύο· καὶ ὁ μὲν εἰς πατρίκιος ἐκράτει τὴν Σικελίαν καὶ τὴν
 Καλαβρίαν καὶ τὴν Νεάπολιν καὶ Ἀμάλην, ὁ δὲ ἕτερος πατρίκιος 10
 ἐκαθέζετο εἰς Βενεβενδόν, καὶ ἐκράτει τὴν Πάπτιαν καὶ τὴν Κάπυαν καὶ
 58^rP τὰ λοιπὰ πάντα. Καὶ ἐτέλουν κατ' ἕτος τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ νενομισμένα | τῷ

F 66 ἼΙ δὲ — 72 δεσπότη: cf. Georg. Mon. (cont.), ed. Bonn. p. 917,
 11—18; Georg. Mon. (cont.), ed. Istrin II. p. 62, 15—21; Theoph. Cont.,
 ed. Bonn. p. 431, 11—19.

V 54 Βεριγγέρι Be || Βερῶναν P || 55 Φαλαμβέρτος V mg. P^a Φαλάμπερτος
 edd. || ῥηγᾶτον P || 56 ὁ¹ om. edd. || 57 Βεργώνιαν edd. || ῥηγί P || 58 ἐπῆρεν P:
 ἐπῆρον Be ἐπῆραν Migne || 59 ἀπεκατέστησαν Be || ῥίγα P || 61 Βεργώνιαν P:

own country. But afterwards, when Berengar had gone to Verona, he was slain by Flambert, whose child he had held at the font, and then Rodolf became possessed of the whole kingdom. And after that the folk of the whole country sent a message to Burgundy, to the aforesaid king Hugh, saying: «Come, and we will give the country over to you.» And when he came, the folk raised him up, and brought him away to the palace and made him king again. But to Rodolf they said: «Depart with your treasure, either to your country or elsewhere, as you will.» So he went off to Burgundy, to his country, and there ruled over a large folk. And when he died, the aforesaid king Hugh went off to Burgundy and took to wife the widow of Rodolf, who was also called Bertha. And her daughter, Adelesa by name, he gave to Lothair his son, who is now king of Italy. Now, she who came up to Constantinople and was joined in marriage to Romanus, the son born in the purple of Constantine, the Christ-loving sovereign, was the daughter of the same illustrious king Hugh, and she was called Bertha after the name of her grandmother, I mean the elder Bertha, who after the death of Adalbert her husband reigned *ten* years; but she, *the young Bertha*, changed her name to Eudocia, after that of the grandmother and sister of Constantine, the Christ-loving sovereign.

27. Of the province of Lombardy and of the principalities and governorships therein.

In ancient times the whole domain of Italy, both Naples and Capua and Beneventum, Salerno and Amalfi and Gaëta and all of Lombardy, was in the possession of the Romans, I mean, when Rome was the imperial capital. But after the seat of empire was removed to Constantinople, all these territories were divided into two governments, and therefore two patricians used to be dispatched by the emperor in Constantinople; one patrician would govern Sicily and Calabria and Naples and Amalfi, and the other, with his seat at Beneventum, would govern Papia and Capua and all the rest. They used to remit annually to the emperor the sums due to the treasury.

Βεργωνίαν edd. || 63 ρίξ P || Βεργωνίαν edd. || 64 'Ροδοῦλφου P V 'Ροδοῦλφου P V || ὀνομάζετο P || 65 θυγατέρα edd.: θυγατέραν P || 66 ρίγι P || 68 ἦτοι: ἦτον *coni.* Bekker ἦτο *coni.* Jenkins εἴτουν *coni.* Kukules || 69 ρίγος P || ὀνομάζετο P || 70 ἦγουν *om.* V edd. || 71 *post* ἔτη *lac.* 4 *litt. ind.* P *lac ind.* edd. αὐτῆς *** ἐβασίλευσεν ἔτη <πέντε> *vel* αὐτῆς ἐβασίλευσεν ἔτη <δέκα> *coni.* Jenkins || μετονομάσθη P || 72 μάμης P.

27. 1 Λογουβαρδίας edd. || 2 πριγκιπάτων P || 4 *ante* Ἰταλίας *add.* τῆς edd. || Κάπυα *scr.* Moravcsik: Καπὺα P Καπὺή V edd. || Σαλερινὸν Be: Σαλερῆνον P || 5 Γαίτη Ba Be: Γαίτη P Γαίτη *sive* Γαίτη Meursius || Λογουβαρδία edd. || 6 βασιλευμένων Me Ba || 10 Καλαυρίαν P || 'Αμάλφην Be: 'Αμαλφῆν P || 11 Παπίαν edd. ||

119Be δημοσίῳ. Αὐται δὲ πᾶσαι αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι χῶραι κατὰ|κοῦντο παρὰ
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων. Ἐν δὲ τοῖς καιροῖς Εἰρήνης τῆς βασιλίδος ἀποσταλεῖς
 ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς ἐκράτει τὴν Βενεβενδὸν καὶ τὴν Πάπιαν· καὶ Ζαχα- 15
 ρίας, ὁ πάπας Ἀθηναῖος, ἐκράτει τὴν Ῥώμην. Συνέβη δὲ πολέμους
 γενέσθαι εἰς τὰ τῆς Παπίας μέρη, καὶ ἐξωδίασεν ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς
 εἰς τὸν στρατὸν τὰ εἰσκομιζόμενα πάντα τῷ δημοσίῳ, καὶ οὐκ ἀπεστάλη
 ἢ κατὰ τύπον εἰσκομιδῇ παρ' αὐτοῦ. Ὁ δὲ Ναρσῆς ἀντεμήνυσεν, ὅτι·
 «Ἀπὸ τῶν αὐτόθι μᾶλλον ἐλπίζω ἀποσταλῆναί μοι χρήματα, ἐπειδὴ 20
 58P πᾶσαν τὴν ἀπὸ τῶν ὧδε εἰσκομιζομένην εἰσκο|μιδὴν εἰς τοὺς ἀνακυψάντας
 πολέμους κατηγάλωσα, καὶ μᾶλλον ὑμεῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ὧδε ἐπιζητεῖτε εἰσκομι-
 δάς.» Ταῦτα ἀκούσασα ἡ βασίλισσα Εἰρήνη καὶ ὀργισθεῖσα, ἀπέστειλεν
 αὐτῷ ἄτρακτον καὶ ἡλακάτην, γράψασα πρὸς αὐτόν, ὅτι· «Λάβε ταῦτα,
 ἂ καὶ ἀρμόξει σοι· νήθειν σε γὰρ μᾶλλον ἐκρίναμεν δίκαιον, ἢ μετὰ 25
 ὅπλων ὡς ἄνδρα διεκδικεῖν καὶ διευθύνειν καὶ ὑπερπολεμεῖν Ῥωμαίων.»
 Ταῦτα ἀκούσας ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς ἀντέγραψε πρὸς τὴν βασιλίδαν, ὅτι·
 «Ἐπεὶ οὕτως παρ' ὑμῖν ἐνομίσθην νήθειν καὶ κλῶθειν, καθάπερ γυνή,
 59P κλῶσαι ἔχω νήματα μετὰ τῆς ἀτράκτου καὶ ἡλακάτης, ἵνα, μέχρις ἂν |ζῶ-
 σιν οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι, μὴ δυνηθῶσιν ἐξυφᾶναι ταῦτα.» Οἱ δὲ Λαγούβαρδοι τῷ 30
 τότε καιρῷ κατέφκουν εἰς Παννονίαν, ἔνθα ἀρτίως οἰκοῦσιν οἱ Τοῦρκοι.
 Καὶ ἀποστείλας ὁ πατρίκιος Ναρσῆς πρὸς αὐτοὺς ὁπώρας παντοίας,
 120Ba ἐδηλοποίησεν αὐτοῖς, ὅτι· «Δεῦτε ἐνταῦθα καὶ θεάσασθε | γῆν ῥέουσαν
 κατὰ τὸ εἰρημένον μέλι καὶ γάλα, ἥς, ὡς οἶμαι, ὁ Θεὸς κρείττονα οὐκ
 ἔχει· καὶ εἰ ἔστιν ὑμῖν ἀρεστόν, κατοικήσατε ἐν αὐτῇ, ὅπως εἰς αἰῶνας 35
 αἰῶνων μακαρίζητέ με». Ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσαντες οἱ Λαγούβαρδοι καὶ
 πεισθέντες, ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰς φανιλίας αὐτῶν, ἤλθον εἰς Βενεβενδόν.
 59P Οἱ δὲ τοῦ κάστρου Βενεβενδοῦ οὐκ εἶσαν αὐτοὺς | ἔνδον τοῦ κάστρου
 εἰσελθεῖν, φηκσαν δὲ ἔξωθεν τοῦ κάστρου πλησίον τοῦ τείχους εἰς τὸν
 ποταμόν, οἰκοδομήσαντες ἐκεῖσε κάστρον μικρόν, ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὀνομάζεται 40
 Τζιβιτανόβα, τουτέστιν νεόκαστρον, ὃ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον συνίσταται.
 Εἰσῆρχοντο δὲ καὶ ἔνδοθεν τοῦ κάστρου καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ, καὶ διὰ
 μηχανῆς κυριεύσαντες τοὺς οἰκήτορας τοῦ κάστρου Βενεβενδοῦ, ἀνεῖλον
 πάντας καὶ κατέσχον τὸ κάστρον. Ἐσωθεν γάρ τῶν ῥάβδων αὐτῶν
 σπαθία βασιλίσσοντες καὶ ἐν τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ ὑπότροπον ποιήσαντες ἐπὶ τὸ 45
 αὐτὸ μάχην, πάντας, ὡς εἰρηται, ἀπέκτειναν. Καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐκστρατεύσαν-

F 33 γῆν — 34 γάλα: Exod. 3, 8; Lev. 20, 24; Num. 13, 28; Deut. 6, 3 etc.; cf. Theoph. cont. p. 74, 21—22.

V 13 κατὰκοῦντο Ba Be: κατουκοῦντο P || 15 Ναρσῆς edd.: Νάρσης P || Πάπιαν scr. Moravcsik: Παπίαν P edd. || 17 ἐξωδίασεν P || 19 ποτ παρ' αὐτοῦ lac. ind. Kyriakides || 20 μοι ἀποσταλῆναι edd. || 22 ἐπιζητεῖτε: ζητεῖτε F Be ||

All these countries aforesaid used to be inhabited by the Romans. But in the time of the empress Irene the patrician Narses was sent out and was governing Beneventum and Papia; and pope Zacharias, the Athenian, was governing Rome. It happened that fighting had been going on in the region of Papia, and the patrician Narses had expended on the army the tribute collected for the treasury, and the regular revenue was not remitted by him. Narses sent back a reply, saying: «I expect, rather, that money should be sent to me from your side, since I have exhausted all the revenues incoming from here upon the fighting that has broken out; but, on the contrary, it is you who are demanding revenues from here.» When the empress Irene heard this she was angry and sent him a spindle and distaff, and wrote to him: «Take these, your proper instruments; for we have judged it fit that you should spin, rather than that as a man at arms you should defend and guide and do battle for the Romans.» On hearing this the patrician Narses wrote in reply to the empress: «Since I am thus judged by you fit to spin and twist like a woman, I will twist you hanks with spindle and distaff such as the Romans shall never be able to unravel so long as they endure». Now, at that time the Lombards were dwelling in Pannonia, where now the Turks live. And the patrician Narses sent to them fruits of all kinds and made them this declaration: «Come hither and behold a land flowing with honey and milk, as the saying is, which, I think, God has none to surpass; and if it please you, settle in it, that you may call me blessed for the ages of ages.» The Lombards heard and obeyed and took their families and came to Beneventum. The inhabitants of the city of Beneventum did not allow them to come inside the city, and they settled outside the city, near the wall and by the river, where they built a small city, which for that reason is called Civita Nova, that is, New City, and it stands to this day. But they began to come inside the city also and into the church, and having by a stratagem gained the upper hand of the inhabitants of the city of Beneventum, they made away with them all and took possession of the city. For they carried swords inside their staves, and in the church they wheeled round and attacked all together and, as has been said, killed everyone. And thereafter they marched out and sub-

28 ἐνομισθην Be: ἐνομισθη P || 30 ταῦτα P^a V edd.: ταῦτα P || Λογουβάρδοι edd. || 31 κατόικουν edd.: κατοίκουν P || Πανωνίαν P || Πανωνίαν V edd. || Τούρκοι P || 34 ἤς ὥς (*littera ῆ in ras. scripta et o in ω correctā*) P¹ V edd.: ὡς (?) P || 35 ὑμῖν F Ba Be: ἡμῖν P || 35/6 αἰῶνα αἰῶνος V edd. || 36 μακαρίζετε conl. Bekker: μακαρίζεται P μακαρίζετε F Ba Be || Λογουβάρδοι edd. || 40 οὖ V edd.: ο[3] P || 41 Τζιτανόβα: Τζιτανόβα V Τζιτά νόβα F Me || 43 κυριεύσαντες V edd.: κυριεύσαντες P || 44 κατέσχον Ba Be: κατέχουν P || ante τῶν add. διὰ edd. || 45 ὑπὸ τρόπον P || ποιήσαντες V edd.: ποίησαντες P || 46 ἔκτοτε V edd.: ἔκτοτε P ||

- 60^P τες πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν ἐκείνην ὑπέταξαν τοῦ τε θέματος Λαγού|βαρδίας
καὶ Καλαβρίας καὶ ἕως Παπίας ἀνευ τῆς Ὑδρεντοῦ καὶ Καλλιπόλεως
καὶ τοῦ Ῥουσιάνου καὶ τῆς Νεαπόλεως καὶ τῆς Γαίτης καὶ Συρεντοῦ
καὶ Ἀμάλφης. Πρῶτον δὲ κάστρον ὑπῆρχεν ἀρχαῖον καὶ μέγα ἡ Κάπυα, 50
δεύτερον ἡ Νεάπολις, τρίτον ἡ Βενεβενδός, τέταρτον ἡ Γαίτη, πέμπτον
ἡ Ἀμάλφη. Τὸ δὲ Σαλερινὸν ὠκίσθη ἐπὶ τοῦ Σικάρδου, ὅτε διεμέρισαν
οἱ Λαγούβαρδοι τὰ πριγκιπᾶτα. Εἰσὶ δὲ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον, ἥτις ἐστὶν
121^{Be} Ἰνδικτιῶν ζ', ἔτη ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ,συνζ', ἀφ' | οὗ ἐμερίσθη ἡ Λαγου-
βαρδία, ἔτη σ'. Ὑπῆρχον δὲ ἀδελφοὶ δύο, ὁ Σίκων καὶ ὁ Σικάρδος. Καὶ 55
ὁ μὲν Σίκων ἐκράτησε τὴν Βενεβενδὸν καὶ τὰ μέρη τῆς Βάρεως καὶ τῆς
60^P Σιπενδοῦ, ὁ δὲ Σικάρδος τὸ Σαλερινὸν καὶ τὴν Κάπυαν καὶ τὰ μέρη
τῆς Καλαβρίας. Ἡ δὲ Νεάπολις ἦν ἀρχαῖον πραιτώριον τῶν κατερχομέ-
νων πατρικίων, καὶ ὁ κρατῶν τὴν Νεάπολιν κατεῖχεν καὶ τὴν Σικελίαν,
καὶ ἡνίκα κατέλαβεν ὁ πατρίκιος ἐν Νεαπόλει, ἀπῆρχετο ὁ δοῦξ Νεαπό- 60
λεως ἐν Σικελίᾳ. Ἡ δὲ Κάπυα ἦν πόλις ὑπερμεγέθης, καὶ ἐάλω ὑπὸ
τῶν Οὐανδήλων, ἥτοι τῶν Ἀφρικῶν, καὶ κατέλυσαν αὐτήν. Ἐρημοκά-
στρου δὲ οὐσης, ὥκουν ἐν αὐτῇ οἱ Λαγούβαρδοι. Καὶ πάλιν τῶν Ἀφρικῶν
ἐπερχομένων κατ' αὐτῶν, ὠκοδόμησεν ὁ ἐπίσκοπος Λανδοῦλφος κάστρον
61^P εἰς τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐπωνόμασεν αὐτὸ | Κάπυαν νέαν, 65
τὴν καὶ νῦν οὖσαν. Ἀφ' οὗ δὲ ἐκτίσθη ἡ αὐτὴ Κάπυα, εἰσὶν ἔτη ογ' .
Ἡ δὲ Νεάπολις καὶ ἡ Ἀμάλφη καὶ ἡ Συρεντὸς ὑπῆρχον αἰεὶ ὑπὸ τὸν
βασιλείᾳ Ῥωμαίων.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι μαστρομίλης ἐρμηνεύεται τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ
'κατεπάνω τοῦ στρατοῦ'.

70

Ἰστέον, ὅτι πρὸ τοῦ περᾶσαι τοὺς Βενετίκους καὶ οἰκῆσαι εἰς τὰ
νήσια, εἰς ἃ νῦν οἰκοῦσιν, ἐκαλοῦντο Ἐνετικοί, καὶ κατέκουν εἰς τὴν
ξηρὰν εἰς αὐτὰ τὰ κάστρα· κάστρον Κόγκορδα, κάστρον Ἰουστινιάννα,
κάστρον τοῦ Νούνου καὶ ἕτερα πλεῖστα κάστρα.

- 122^{Be} Ἰστέον, ὅτι περασάντων τῶν νῦν καλουμένων Βενετίκων, πρῶτον 75
61^P δὲ Ἐνετικῶν, ἔκτισαν ἐν πρώτοις κάστρον ὀχυρόν, ἐν ᾧ καὶ σή|μερον
καθέζεται ὁ δοῦξ Βενετίας, ἔχον κυκλόθεν θάλασσαν ὥσει μιλίων ἑξ,
εἰς ἣν καὶ εἰσέρχονται ποταμοὶ κζ'. Ὑπάρχουσι δὲ καὶ νῆσοι κατὰ
ἀνατολὰς τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου. Ἐκτισαν δὲ καὶ ἐν ταῖς αὐταῖς νήσοις οἱ
νῦν Βενετικοὶ καλούμενοι κάστρα· κάστρον Κογράδον, ἐν ᾧ καὶ μητρό- 80

F 69 Ἰστέον — 70 στρατοῦ: cf. De cerim., ed. Bonn. scholion ad p.
690, 23.

γ 47 Λογουβαρδίας edd. || 51 δεύτερον Moravesik: β' P δευτέρα edd. || τρίτον
Moravesik: γ' P τρίτη edd. || τέταρτον Moravesik: δ' P τετάρτη edd. ||

dued all that land, both the province of Lombardy and Calabria and as far as Papia, except for Otranto and Gallipoli and Rossano and Naples and Gaëta and Sorrento and Amalfi. The first city, ancient and mighty, was Capua, the second, Naples, the third, Beneventum, the fourth, Gaëta, the fifth, Amalfi. Salerno was settled in the time of Sicardus, when the Lombards divided the principalities. From the division of Lombardy until to-day, the 7th indiction, the year 6457 from the creation of the world, it is 200 years. There were two brothers, Sicon and Sicardus. Sicon governed Beneventum and the districts of Bari and Sipontum, and Sicardus governed Salerno and Capua and the district of Calabria. Naples was anciently the praetorium of the patricians who came out, and the governor of Naples had Sicily beneath him as well, and when the patrician arrived in Naples, the duke of Naples would go off to Sicily. Capua was a very large city indeed, and was captured by the Vandals, or Africans, who demolished it. When it was lying a deserted city, the Lombards settled in it. When the Africans came against them once more, bishop Landulf built a city at the bridge over the river and called it New Capua, and it still survives. From the foundation of this Capua, it is 73 years. Naples and Amalfi and Sorrento have always been subject to the emperor of the Romans.

'Mastromilis' means in the Roman tongue captain-general of the army.

Before the Venetians crossed over and settled in the islands in which they live now, they were called Enetikoi, and used to dwell on the mainland in these cities: the city of Concordia, the city of Justiniana, the city of Nonum and very many other cities.

When those who are now called Venetians, but were originally called Enetikoi, crossed over, they began by constructing a strongly fortified city, in which the doge of Venice still has his seat to-day, a city surrounded by some six miles of sea, into which 27 rivers also debouch. There are other islands also to the east of this same city. And upon these same islands also they who are now called Venetians built cities: the city of Cogradon, in

Γαῖτή Ba Be: Γαίτης P || πέμπτον Moravcsik: ε' P πέμπτη edd. || 53 Λογούβαρδοι edd. || πριγκηπάτα P || 54 ζ': ἐβδόμη edd. || 54/5 Λογούβαρδια edd. || 55 σ': ρ' coní. Bury || 61 Καπὸν mg. V² || 62 Ἀφρικών P || 63 οἱ om. edd. || Λογούβαρδοι edd. || 63/4 τῶν Ἀφρικῶν ἐπερχομένων Meursius Ba Be: τὴν Ἀφρικὴν ἐπερχομένην (*ultima littera η in ras. scripta*) P¹ V || 65 ἐπονόμασεν P || 65/6 Κάπουαν νέαν τὴν coní. Be: Κάπουαν νέαν coní. Bandurius Καπαντὴν P Καπάντην F mg. V² || 67 Ἀμαλφὴ mg. V² || 69 μαστρομήλης P || 72 Ἑνετικοί Meursius Ba Be: Αἰτῖται P || 73 αὐτά: ταῦτα coní. Bekker || Κόνκορδα P Κονκόρδια mg. V² || 76 Ἑνετικῶν Meursius Ba Be: Αἰτικίων P || ἔκτισαν Meursius Ba Be: ἔκτησεν P || ἐν¹: ἐμ P || 77 κυκλώθεν P: κύκλωθεν edd. || 78 εἰς ἦν] *litteras ε et η in ras. scr.* P¹ || 79 κάστρον om. edd. || 80 Βενετικοί P || Κογράδον (*etiam V*): Γράδον V² mg. V² κ' (= κάστρον) Γράδον coní. Skok || 80/1 μητρόπολις: ἀκρόπολις coní. Meursius ||

πολις ἔστιν μεγάλη καὶ πολλὰ λείψανα ἁγίων ἐν ταύτῃ ἀπόκεινται· κάστρον Ῥιβαλενσῆς, κάστρον Λουλιανόν, κάστρον Ῥαφανον, κάστρον Ῥωμανινά, κάστρον Λικεντζία, κάστρον Πίνετα, ὅπερ λέγεται Στρόβιλος, κάστρον Βινιόλα, κάστρον Βδες, ἐν ᾧ ὑπάρχει ναὸς τοῦ ἁγίου ἀποστόλου Πέτρου, κάστρον Ῥηλιτουάλβα, κάστρον Λιτουμαγκέρσης, 85
62^F | κάστρον Βρόνιον, κάστρον Μαδαῦκον, κάστρον Ῥβόλα, κάστρον Πριστή-
ναι, κάστρον Κλουγία, κάστρον Βροῦνδον, κάστρον Φοσαῶν, κάστρον
Λαυριτῶν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι εἰσὶ καὶ ἕτεραι νῆσοι ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ χώρᾳ Βενετίας.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ ἐν τῇ στερεᾷ εἰς τὸ μέρος τῆς Ἰταλίας ὑπάρχουσι 90
κάστρα τῶν Βενετικῶν, ἅτινά εἰσιν ταῦτα· κάστρον Κάπρε, κάστρον
Νεόκαστρον, κάστρον Φινές, κάστρον Αἰκυλον, κάστρον Ἀειμάνας,
ἐμπόριον μέγα τὸ Τορτζελῶν, κάστρον Μουράν, κάστρον Ῥίβαλτον,
ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται 'τόπος ὑψηλότατος', ἐν ᾧ καθέζεται ὁ δούξ Βενετίας,
κάστρον Καβερτζέντζης. 95

Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ ἐμπόρια εἰσὶ καὶ καστέλλια.

123Be 28. Διήγησις, πῶς κατ' ἐξέστην ἡ νῦν καλουμένη
Βενετία.

62^VP Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ Βενετία τὸ μὲν παλαιὸν ἦν τόπος ἔρημός τις ἀοίκη-
τος καὶ βαλτώδης. Οἱ δὲ νῦν καλούμενοι Βενέτικοι ὑπῆρχον Φράγγοι 5
ἀπὸ Ἀκουιλεγίας καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐτέρων τόπων τῆς Φραγγίας, καὶ κατῴ-
κουν εἰς τὴν ξηρὰν ἀντικρὺ τῆς Βενετίας. Τοῦ δὲ Ἀττίλα, τοῦ βασιλέως
τῶν Ἀβάρων, ἐλθόντος καὶ πάσας τὰς Φραγγίας καταληψαμένου καὶ
ἀφανίσαντος, ἤρξαντο φεύγειν μὲν πάντες οἱ Φράγγοι ἀπὸ Ἀκουιλεγίας
καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐτέρων τῆς Φραγγίας κάστρων, ἔρχεσθαι δὲ πρὸς τὰς
ἀοικήτους νήσους τῆς Βενετίας καὶ ποιεῖν ἐκεῖσε καλύβια διὰ τὸν τοῦ 10
βασιλέως Ἀττίλα φόβον. Αὐτοῦ οὖν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀττίλα ληισαμένου
63^FP πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν τῆς ξηρᾶς καὶ μέχρι Ῥώμης καὶ Καλαβρίας ἐλθόντος
καὶ τὴν Βενετίαν μακρόθεν καταλιπόντος, ἄδειαν εὐρόντες οἱ προσπεφευ-
γότες ἐν ταῖς νήσοις τῆς Βενετίας καὶ οἷον τὴν δειλίαν ἀποσεισάμενοι,
ἅπαντες ἐβουλεύσαντο τοῦ κατοικῆσαι ἐκεῖσε, ὅπερ καὶ ἐποίησαν, 15
κατοικῆσαντες ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς σήμερον. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ ἀναχωρῆσαι τὸν
Ἀττίλαν, μετὰ χρόνους πολλοὺς παρεγένετο πάλιν Πιπίνος ὁ ῥήξ, ὃς
ἤρχε τότε τῆς τε Παπίας καὶ ἐτέρων ῥηγμάτων. Εἶχεν γὰρ οὗτος ὁ Πιπίνος

V 82 Ῥιβαλενσῆς V edd. Ῥιβαλένσης mg. V² || 83 Ῥωμανινά mg. P^s ||
Λικεντζία mg. V² || 85 Ῥηλιτουάλβα edd. || Λιτουμαγκέρσης P mg. P^s:
Λιτουμαγκέρσης edd. || 86 Μαδαῦκος mg. P^s Μαδοῦκον mg. V² || 86/7 Πριστήνα

which is a great metropolitan church with many relics of saints laid up in it; the city of Rivalensis, the city of Lulianon, the city of Apsanon, the city of Romatina, the city of Licenzia, the city of Pinetai, which is called Strobilos, the city of Biniola, the city of Boes, in which is a church of the holy apostle Peter, the city of Ilitoualpa, the city of Litoumangersis, the city of Bronion, the city of Madaucon, the city of Ebola, the city of Pristinai, the city of Clugia, the city of Brundon, the city of Phosaon, the city of Lauriton.

There are other islands also in the same country of Venice.

On the mainland, also, in the land of Italy, there are cities of the Venetians, as follows: the city of Capre, the city of Neokastron, the city of Phines, the city of Aikylon, the city of Aeimanas, the great trading station of Torcello, the city of Mouran, the city of Rivalto, which means 'highest point', where the doge of Venice has his seat; the city of Caverzenzis.

There are also trading stations and forts.

28. Story of the settlement of what is now called Venice.

Of old, Venice was a desert place, uninhabited and swampy. Those who are now called Venetians were Franks from Aquileia and from the other places in Francia, and they used to dwell on the mainland opposite Venice. But when Attila, the king of the Avars, came and utterly devastated and depopulated all the parts of Francia, all the Franks from Aquileia and from the other cities of Francia began to take to flight, and to go to the uninhabited islands of Venice and to built huts there, out of their dread of king Attila. Now when this king Attila had devastated all the country of the mainland and had advanced as far as Rome and Calabria and had left Venice far behind, those who had fled for refuge to the islands of Venice, having obtained a breathing-space and, as it were, shaken off their faintness of heart, took counsel jointly to settle there, which they did, and have been settled there till this day. But again, many years after the withdrawal of Attila, king Pippin arrived, who at that time was ruling over

edd. || 87 Βροῦδον V Βρουνδουλον (*sine acc.*) *mg.* V² || 88 Λαύριτον *mg.* V² || 89 καὶ εἰσιν edd. || αὐτῇ *corr.* Moravesik: αὐτῶν P edd. || Βενετίζον. Kukules || 92 Ἀκουλον *mg.* P² || 93 ἐμπορίον P || τὸ *om.* edd. || Ῥίβαλτον *mg.* V²: Ῥιβαντόν P V Ῥίβαντον Ba Be || 96 ἐμπορία P.

28. 5 Ἀκουηλεγίας P || 6 ἀντικρὺ edd. || Ἀτῶα P || 8 Ἀκουηλεγίας P || 10 ἀουκῆτους V edd.: ἀόικους P || 11 Ἀτῶα P || Ἀτῶα P || 14 ἀποσεισάμενοι *litteras ei in ras. scr.* P¹ || 17 Ἀτῶα P || πάλιν παρῳργένητο edd. ||

ἀδελφοὺς τρεῖς, οἵτινες ἤρχον πασῶν τῶν Φραγγιῶν καὶ Σκλαβηνιῶν.
 124Be Τοῦ δὲ ῥηγὸς | Πιπίνου ἐλθόντος κατὰ τῶν Βενετίκων μετὰ δυνάμεως 20
 63vP | καὶ λαοῦ πολλοῦ, παρεκάθισεν διὰ τῆς ξηρᾶς ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ περάματος
 τῶν νήσων τῆς Βενετίας εἰς τόπον λεγόμενον Ἀειβόλας. Οἱ οὖν Βενέτικοι
 ἰδόντες τὸν ῥῆγα Πιπῖνον μετὰ τῆς ἑαυτοῦ δυνάμεως κατ' αὐτῶν ἐπερχό-
 μενον καὶ μέλλοντα μετὰ τῶν ἱππῶν ἀποπλεῦσαι πρὸς τὴν νῆσον τοῦ
 Μαδαμαύκου (ἔστιν γὰρ αὕτη ἡ νῆσος πλησίον τῆς ξηρᾶς), βαλόντες 25
 κερατάρια, ἅπαν τὸ πέραμα ἐναπέφραξαν. Εἰς ἀμνηχανίαν οὖν ἐλθὼν ὁ
 τοῦ ῥηγὸς Πιπίνου λαὸς (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἦν δυνατὸν αὐτοὺς ἀλλαχοῦ περᾶσαι),
 παρεκάθισαν αὐτοῖς διὰ τῆς ξηρᾶς μῆνας ἕξ, πολεμοῦντες καθ' ἑκάστην
 64vP ἡμέραν μετ' αὐτῶν. Καὶ | οἱ μὲν Βενέτικοι εἰσῆρχοντο εἰς τὰ πλοῖα
 αὐτῶν, καὶ ἴσταντο ὀπισθεν τῶν παρ' αὐτῶν ῥιφέντων κεραταρίων, 30
 ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ Πιπῖνος ἴστατο μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ. Καὶ οἱ
 μὲν Βενέτικοι μετὰ τοξείας καὶ ῥιπταρίων ἐπολέμουν, μὴ ἑῶντες αὐτοὺς
 πρὸς τὴν νῆσον διαπερᾶσαι. Ἀπορήσας οὖν ὁ ῥῆξ Πιπῖνος, εἶπεν πρὸς
 τοὺς Βενετίκους, ὅτι· «Ἐπὶ τὴν ἐμὴν χεῖρα καὶ πρόνοιαν γίνεσθε, ἐπειδὴ
 ἀπὸ τῆς ἐμῆς χώρας καὶ ἐξουσίας ἐστέ». Οἱ δὲ Βενέτικοι ἀντέλεγον 35
 αὐτῷ, ὅτι· «Ἡμεῖς δοῦλοι θέλομεν εἶναι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων καὶ
 οὐχὶ σοῦ.» Ἐπὶ πολὺ δὲ βιασθέντες οἱ Βενέτικοι ἀπὸ τῆς γεγонуίας
 64vP ὀχλήσεως πρὸς αὐτοὺς, | ἐποιήσαντο εἰρηνικὰς σπονδὰς πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα
 Πιπῖνον τοῦ παρέχειν αὐτῷ πλεῖστα πάκτα. Ἐκτοτε δὲ καθ' ἑκαστον
 125Be χρόνον ἡλαττοῦτο τὸ πάκτον, ὅπερ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον δια|σώζεται. 40
 Τελοῦσι γὰρ οἱ Βενέτικοι τῷ κατέχοντι τὸ ῥηγᾶτον Ἰταλίας, ἦτοι Παπίας,
 διβάρια ἀσήμεν λίτρας λς' καθ' ἑκαστον χρόνον. Καὶ τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ
 ἔπαυσεν ὁ μεταξὺ Φράγγων καὶ Βενετίκων πόλεμος. Ὅτε δὲ ἤρξατο
 ἀποφεύγειν ὁ λαὸς πρὸς Βενετίαν καὶ ἀποσυνάγεσθαι, ὥστε πολλοὺς
 γίνεσθαι, ἀνηγόρευσαν ἑαυτοὺς δοῦκα τὸν εὐγενεῖα τῶν ἄλλων διαφέροντα. 45
 Ἐγεγόνει δὲ ὁ πρῶτος δούξ ἐν αὐτοῖς, πρὶν ἢ ἐλθεῖν κατ' αὐτῶν ὁ ῥῆξ
 65vP Πιπῖνος. Ἦν δὲ τῷ τότε καιρῷ τὸ δουκᾶτον εἰς τόπον λεγόμενον Τζιβιτά-
 νουβα, ὅπερ ἐρμηνεύεται 'νεόκαστρον'. Διὰ δὲ τὸ εἶναι τὸ προειρημένον
 νησίον πλησίον τῆς ξηρᾶς κοινῇ βουλῇ μετέθηκαν τὸ δουκᾶτον εἰς ἕτερον
 νησίον, ἐν ᾧ καὶ νῦν ἔστιν σήμερον, διὰ τὸ εἶναι μῆκαθεν τῆς ξηρᾶς, 50
 ὅσον βλέπει τις ἄνδρα ἱππῶ ἐφεζόμενον.

V ρίξ P || 19 Φραγγιῶν P V edd.: Φραγγῶν (*littera i erasa*) Py || Σκλαβινίων
 P || 20 ῥιγὸς P || δυνάμεως V edd.: δυνάμεω[ς] P || 22 νησιῶν P ||
 Ἀειβόλας mg. V^a || 23 ῥίγα P || 27 ῥιγὸς P || 33 ρίξ P || 36 θέλομεν V edd.:

Papia and other kingdoms. For this Pippin had three brothers, and they were ruling over all the Frank and Slavonic regions. Now when king Pippin came against the Venetians with power and a large army, he blockaded them along the mainland, on the far side of the crossing between it and the islands of Venice, at a place called Aeibolas. Well, when the Venetians saw king Pippin coming against them with his power and preparing to take ship with the horses to the island of Madamaucun (for this is an island near the mainland), they laid down spars and fenced off the whole crossing. The army of king Pippin, being brought to a stand (for it was not possible for them to cross at any other point), blockaded them along the mainland six months, fighting with them daily. The Venetians would man their ships and take up position behind the spars they had laid down, and king Pippin would take up position with his army along the shore. The Venetians assailed them with arrows and javelins, and stopped them from crossing over to the island. So then king Pippin, at a loss, said to the Venetians: «You are beneath my hand and my providence, since you are of my country and domain.» But the Venetians answered him: «We want to be servants of the emperor of the Romans, and not of you.» When, however, they had for long been straitened by the trouble that had come upon them, the Venetians made a treaty of peace with king Pippin, agreeing to pay him a very considerable tribute. But since that time the tribute has gone on diminishing year by year, though it is paid even to this day. For the Venetians pay to him who rules over the kingdom of Italy, that is, Papia, a twopenny fee of 36 pounds of uncoined silver annually. So ended the war between Franks and Venetians. When the folk began to flee away to Venice and to collect there in numbers, they proclaimed as their doge him who surpassed the rest in nobility. The first doge among them had been appointed before king Pippin came against them. At that time the doge's residence was at a place called Civitanova, which means 'new city'. But because this island aforesaid is close to the mainland, by common consent they moved the doge's residence to another island, where it now is at this present, because it is at a distance from the mainland, as far off as one may see a man on horseback.

θέλωμεν P || 37 σοῦ Be: σοί P || 38 ῥήγα P || 40 ἡλάττωτο edd. || 41 ῥιγάτον P || Παπίας (*sine acc.*) P || 42 ἀσίμιν P edd. || 43 Φραγγῶν P || 45 ἑαυτοῖς V edd. || 46 ῥίξ P || 47 δουκάτον P || 47/8 Τζιβιτᾶ νόββα V Τζιβιτὰ νόβα Ba Be || 49 δουκάτον] *litteras duc in ras. scr.* P¹ || 50 μηκόθεν edd.

29. Περὶ τῆς Δελματίας καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ
παρὰ κειμένων ἐθνῶν.

Ὅτι Διοκλητιανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς πάντῃ τῆς χώρας Δελματίας ἡράσθη, διὸ καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Ῥώμης λαὸν ἀγαγὼν μετὰ τὰς φαμίλιας αὐτῶν, ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τῆς Δελματίας χώρᾳ τούτους κατεσκήνωσεν, οἱ καὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι 5
προσηγορεύθησαν διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετοικισθῆναι, καὶ ταύτην μέχρι 65^oP τῆς σήμερον | τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἐναποφέρονται. Οὗτος οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς 126Be Διοκλητιανὸς καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ἀσπαλάθου κάστρον ὠκοδόμησεν, καὶ | ἐν αὐτῷ παλάτια ἐδεύματο λόγου καὶ γραφῆς ἀπάσης ἐπέκεινα, ὧν καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον τῆς παλαιᾶς εὐδαιμονίας λείψανα φέρονται, ἅν ὁ πολὺς 10 χρόνος αὐτὰ κατηνάλωσεν. Ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ κάστρον Διόκληια, τὸ νῦν παρὰ τῶν Διοκλητιανῶν κατεχόμενον, ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ὠκοδόμησεν, ὅθεν καὶ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν Ἰοκλητιανοί καλεῖσθαι οἱ τῆς χώρας ἐκείνης ἐναπειλήφασιν. Ἡ δὲ καὶ τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥωμάνων διακράτησις 66^oP ἦν μέχρι τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ, οἱ καὶ ποτε θελήσαντες τὸν ποταμὸν 15 διαπερᾶσαι καὶ καταμαθεῖν, τίνες κατοικοῦσιν ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ, διαπεράσαντες εὗρον ἔθνη Σκλαβήνικα ἄοπλα ὄντα, ἅτινα καὶ Ἀβαροι ἐκαλοῦντο. Καὶ οὔτε οὗτοι ἤλπιζον ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ κατοικεῖν τινας, οὔτε ἐκεῖνοι ἐνθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Διὰ οὖν τὸ ἀόπλους εὑρεῖν αὐτοὺς τοὺς Ἀβάρους οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον ἀπαρασκευάστους 20 καταπολεμήσαντες, ἀνελάβοντο πραῖδαν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν καὶ ἀνεχώρησαν. Καὶ ἔκτοτε ποιήσαντες ἀλλάγια δύο οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἀπὸ πάσχα ἕως πάσχα τὸν λαὸν αὐτῶν ἐνήλλασσον, ὥστε τῷ μεγάλῳ καὶ ἀγίῳ σαββάτῳ 66^oP ἀλλήλοις συναντᾶν, | τοὺς μὲν ἀποστρεφόμενους ἀπὸ τοῦ παραμονίμου, τοὺς δὲ εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην δουλείαν ἀπερχομένους. Καὶ γὰρ πλησίον τῆς 25 θαλάσσης ὑπὸ τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον κάστρον ἔστιν, τὸ ἐπιλεγόμενον Σαλῶνα, μέγεθος ἔχον τὸ ἡμισυ Κωνσταντινουπόλεως, ἐν ᾧ πάντες οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι 127Be συνήγοντο καὶ καθωπλιζόντο καὶ | προσοπικίνουν ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε, καὶ πρὸς τὴν κλεισοῦραν ἀπῆρχοντο, τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου ὑπάρχουσαν μίλια τέσσαρα, ἥτις καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν καλεῖται Κλεῖσα διὰ τὸ συγκλείειν 30 τοὺς διερχομένους ἐκεῖθεν. Καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἀπῆρχοντο πρὸς τὸν 67^oP ποταμόν. Τὸ οὖν τοιοῦτον ἀλλάγιον ἐπὶ πολλοὺς χρόνους γινόμενον, οἱ ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Σκλάβοι, οἱ καὶ Ἀβαροι καλούμενοι, καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἐσκόπησαν λέγοντες, ὅτι· «Οὔτοι οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι, ἐπεὶ ἐπέρασαν καὶ εὗρον πραῖδαν, ἀπὸ τοῦ νῦν καθ' ἡμῶν οὐ μὴ παύσονται διαπερῶντες, 35 καὶ διὰ τοῦτο μηχανησόμεθα κατ' αὐτῶν.» Οὕτως οὖν οἱ Σκλάβοι, οἱ <καὶ> Ἀβαροι, βουλευσάμενοι, καὶ διαπερασάντων ποτὲ τῶν Ῥωμάνων,

29. Of Dalmatia and of the adjacent nations in it.

The emperor Diocletian was much enamoured of the country of Dalmatia, and so he brought folk with their families from Rome and settled them in this same country of Dalmatia, and they were called 'Romani' from their having been removed from Rome, and this title attaches to them until this day. Now this emperor Diocletian founded the city of Spalato and built therein a palace beyond the power of any tongue or pen to describe, and remains of its ancient luxury are still preserved to-day, though the long lapse of time has played havoc with them. Moreover, the city of Diocleia, now occupied by the Diocletians, was built by the same emperor Diocletian, for which reason those of that country have come to be called by the name of 'Diocletians'. The territory possessed by these Romani used to extend as far as the river Danube, and once on a time, being minded to cross the river and discover who dwelt beyond the river, they crossed it and came upon unarmed Slavonic nations, who were also called Avars. The former had not expected that any dwelt beyond the river, nor the latter that any dwelt on the hither side. And so, finding these Avars unarmed and unprepared for war, the Romani overcame them and took booty and prisoners and returned. And from that time the Romani formed two alternating garrisons, serving from Easter to Easter, and used to change their men about so that on Great and Holy Saturday they who were coming back from the station and they who were going out to that service would meet one another. For near the sea, beneath that same city, lies a city called Salona, which is half as large as Constantinople, and here all the Romani would muster and be equipped and thence start out and come to the frontier pass, which is four miles from this same city, and is called Kleisa to this day, from its closing in those who pass that way. And from there they would advance to the river. This exchange of garrisons went on for a number of years and the Slavs on the far side of the river, who were also called Avars, thought it over among themselves, and said: «These Romani, now that they have crossed over and found booty, will in future not cease coming over against us, and so we will devise a plan against them.» And so, therefore, the Slavs, or Avars, took counsel, and on one occasion when the Romani had crossed over, they laid ambushes

F edd.: πλάτεια P παλάτεια P¹ V || 13/4 ἐκείνης χώρας edd. || 17 Σκλαβίνα P: Σκλαβινικά edd. || 20 Ῥωμάνοι P || *post* ἀπαρσκεινάστους *add.* καὶ V edd. || 21 καταπολεμήσαντες P || 22 Ῥωμάνοι P || 26 κάστρον ² om. Be || 27 Ῥωμάνοι P || 28 καθοπλήζοντο P || 29 κλησοῦραν P || 30 τέσσαρα edd.: 8' P || 32 πολλούς *corr.* Moravcsik πολλὸς P: πολλοῖς V edd. || χρόνους *corr.* Moravcsik: χρόνοις P edd. || γινόμενον χρόνοις V edd. || 34 Ῥωμάνοι P || 35 μὴ om. edd. || 36 μηχανησώμεθα Migne || 37 καὶ *add.* Bury || 37 διαπερασάντων — 38 ἐγκρόμματα:

ποιήσαντες οὗτοι ἐγκρύμματα καὶ πολεμήσαντες, ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς. Καὶ ἀναλαβόμενοι τὰ τε ὅπλα αὐτῶν καὶ τὰ φλάμμουλα καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πολεμικὰ σημεῖα, διαπεράσαντες οἱ προειρημένοι Σκλάβοι τὸν ποταμόν, ἦλθον 40
 67^vP εἰς τὴν | κλεισοῦραν, οὗς καὶ ἰδόντες οἱ ἐκεῖσε ὄντες Ῥωμᾶνοι, θεασάμενοι δὲ τὰ φλάμμουλα καὶ τὴν ἐξόπλισιν τῶν ὁμοφύλων αὐτῶν, τοὺς αὐτῶν ὁμοφύλους εἶναι νομίσαντες, ἡνίκα κατέλαβον οἱ Σκλάβοι οἱ προρηθέντες εἰς τὴν κλεισοῦραν, παρεχώρησαν αὐτοῖς διελθεῖν. Διελθόντων δέ, εὐθύς τοὺς Ῥωμάνους οὗτοι ἐξήλασαν, καὶ τὴν Σαλῶνα, τὸ προειρημέ- 45
 128Be ὕψηλότερα μέρη | κατοικοῦντας, ἠφάνισαν καὶ τοὺς τόπους αὐτῶν κατεκράτησαν. Οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι εἰς τὰ τῆς παραλίας κάστρα διεσώθη-
 68^fP |σαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν κρατοῦσιν αὐτά, ἅτινά εἰσιν τὰ Δεκάτερα, τὸ 50
 Ῥαοῦσιν, τὸ Ἀσπάλαθον, τὸ Τετραγγούριν, τὰ Διάδωρα, ἡ Ἀρβη, ἡ Βέκλα καὶ τὰ Ὁψαρα, ὧντινων καὶ οἰκήτορες μέχρι τοῦ νῦν Ῥωμᾶνοι κολοῦνται.

Ὅτι ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας Ἡρακλείου, τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων, καθ' ὃν μέλλει τρόπον ῥηθῆσθαι ἐν τῇ περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων καὶ Σέρβλων 55
 συγγραφῇ, πᾶσα ἡ Δελματία καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν ἔθνη, ὅσον Χρωβάτοι, Σέρβλοι, Ζαχλοῦμοι, Τερβουნიῶται, Καναλῖται, Διοκλητιανοὶ καὶ Ἀρεντανοί, οἱ καὶ Παγανοὶ προσαγορευόμενοι, * * *. Τῆς δὲ τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας διὰ τὴν τῶν τότε κρατούντων νωθρότητα καὶ ἀφέλειαν εἰς τὸ
 68^vP μὴδὲν πα[ρ]άπαν μικροῦ δεῖν ἐναπονευσάσης, καὶ μάλιστα δὲ ἐπὶ Μιχαὴλ 60
 τοῦ ἐξ Ἀμορίου, τοῦ Τραυλοῦ, οἱ τὰ τῆς Δελματίας κάστρα οἰκοῦντες γεγόνασιν αὐτοκέφαλοι, μῆτε τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, μῆτε ἐτέρῳ τινὶ ὑποκείμενοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖσε ἔθνη, οἳ τε Χρωβάτοι καὶ Σέρβλοι καὶ Ζαχλοῦμοι καὶ Τερβουნიῶται τε καὶ Καναλῖται καὶ Διοκλητιανοὶ καὶ οἱ Παγανοί, τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλείας ἀφηνιάσαντες γεγόνασιν 65
 ἰδιόρρυθμοι καὶ αὐτοκέφαλοι, τινὲς μὴ ὑποκείμενοι. Ἀρχοντας δέ, ὥς φασι, ταῦτα τὰ ἔθνη μὴ ἔχειν, πλὴν ζουπάνους γέροντας, καθὼς καὶ αἱ
 129Be λοιπαὶ Σκλαβηνίαι ἔχουσι τύπον. Ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ | πλείονες τῶν τοιούτων
 69^fP Σκλάβων οὐδὲ ἐβάπτίζοντο, ἀλλὰ μέχρι πολλοῦ ἔμμενον ἀβάπτιστοι.

F 56 πᾶσα — 69 ἀβάπτιστοι: cf. Theoph. Cont. p. 288, 18—289, 2; Cedr., ed. Bonn. II. p. 218, 22—219, 3.

V διαπεράσαντες ποτὲ οἱ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐποίησαν οὗτοι ἐγκρύμμα (ἐγκρύμα V) V Me || 39 φλάμμουλα P || 41 κλεισοῦραν P || Ῥωμᾶνοι P || 42 φλάμμουλα P || ἐξόπλισιν P || 43 αὐτῶν: αὐτῶν *coni.* Bury || 44 κλεισοῦραν P || διελθόντες V *edd.* || 47 Ῥωμάνους V² *edd.*: Κομάνους P V¹ F || *post* εἰς² *add.* τὰ *edd.* || 49 Ῥωμᾶνοι P || 50 τὰ Δεκάτερα *coni.* Moravcsik: τάδε κάστρα P Ba Be τὰ ἰ' κάστρα F || 51 Ῥαοῦσιν P || Τετραγγούρην P || 52 *ante* Ῥωμᾶνοι *add.*

and attacked and defeated them. The aforesaid Slavs took the *Roman* arms and standards and the rest of their military insignia and crossed the river and came to the frontier pass, and when the *Romani* who were there saw them and beheld the standards and accoutrements of their own men they thought they were their own men, and so, when the aforesaid Slavs reached the pass, they let them through. Once through, they instantly expelled the *Romani* and took possession of the aforesaid city of *Salona*. There they settled and thereafter began gradually to make plundering raids and destroyed the *Romani* who dwelt in the plains and on the higher ground and took possession of their lands. The remnant of the *Romani* escaped to the cities of the coast and possess them still, namely, *Decatera*, *Ragusa*, *Spalato*, *Tetrangourin*, *Diadora*, *Arbe*, *Vekla* and *Opsara*, the inhabitants of which are called *Romani* to this day.

Since the reign of *Heraclius*, emperor of the *Romans*, as will be related in the narrative concerning the *Croats* and *Serbs*, the whole of *Dalmatia* and the nations about it, such as *Croats*, *Serbs*, *Zachlumi*, *Terbouniotes*, *Kanalites*, *Diocletians* and *Arentani*, who are also called *Pagani* ***. But when the *Roman* empire, through the sloth and inexperience of those who then governed it and especially in the time of *Michael* from *Amorion*, the *Lisper*, had declined to the verge of total extinction, the inhabitants of the cities of *Dalmatia* became independent, subject neither to the emperor of the *Romans* nor to anybody else, and, what is more, the nations of those parts, the *Croats* and *Serbs* and *Zachlumites*, *Terbuniotes* and *Kanalites* and *Diocletians* and the *Pagani*, shook off the reins of the empire of the *Romans* and became self-governing and independent, subject to none. Princes, as they say, these nations had none, but only 'zupans', elders, as is the rule in the other Slavonic regions. Moreover, the majority of these Slavs were not even baptized, and remained unbaptized for long enough. But

οἱ edd. || 'Ρωμαῖοι P || 55 καὶ δὲ — 56 συγγραφῇ *exprimat* Radki || 55 περὶ *om.* V edd. || 56 *post* συγγραφῇ *inserenda* ὑπῆρκα τοῖς 'Ρωμαίοις ἐγένετο *coni.* Tomašić || Δαλματίας Theoph. Cont. || Κρωβάτοι Theoph. Cont. || Χρωβάτων Cedr. || 57 Ζαχλοῦμοι P || Ζαχλουμοὶ Theoph. Cont. || Καναλεῖται P || Διοκλειττιανοὶ P || 57/8 'Αρεντανοὶ: 'Ρεντανοὶ Theoph. Cont. || 58 οἱ καὶ Παγανοὶ *coni.* Bury: καὶ οἱ Παγανοὶ Meursius Ba Be καὶ 'Υπαγανοὶ P || οἱ καὶ Παγανοὶ προσαγορευόμενοι *deest in* Theoph. Cont. || *post* προσαγορευόμενοι *lac. ind.* δουλικῶς εἰσιν ὑποτεταγμένοι τῷ βασιλεῖ 'Ρωμαίων *excidisse coniciens* Grot *lac. ind.* δουλικῶς ἦσαν τῷ βασιλεῖ 'Ρωμαίων ὑποτεταγμένοι *vel talia excidisse coniciens* Bury || 59 ἀφελείαν P || 60 ἐναποκνευσάσης *coni.* Bury || 61 Δελματίας P || 63 Κρωβάτοι Theoph. Cont. || Χρωβάτων Cedr. || 64 Ζαχλοῦμοι καὶ Be: Ζαχλουμείται P || Ζαχλουμοὶ Theoph. Cont. || τε (*habet etiam* Theoph. Cont.): *om.* edd. || Καναλεῖται P || Διοκλειττιανοὶ P || 65 Παγανοὶ Be: Παγάνοι P || ἀφηνιάσαντες (*littera a erasa, spiritu addito primaque littera i in η correcta*) P⁹ *mg.* P⁹ Meursius Ba Be Theoph. Cont.: σαφινιάσαντες P || σαφηνιάσαντες V || 66 ἰδιόρρυθμοι καὶ αὐτοκέφαλοι: αὐτόνομοι τε καὶ αὐτοδέσποτοι Theoph. Cont. || 67 ἔχει edd. *εἶχεν coni.* Gedeonov || 68 Σκλαβινία P: Σκλαβίνια edd. || καὶ *om.* edd. ||

Ἐπὶ δὲ Βασιλείου, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου βασιλέως, ἀπέστειλαν ἀποκρισιάρχους, 70
 ἐξαιτούμενοι καὶ παρακαλοῦντες αὐτὸν τοὺς ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀβαπτίστους
 βαπτισθῆναι καὶ εἶναι, ὡς τὸ ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ὑποτεταγμένους τῇ βασιλείᾳ
 τῶν Ῥωμαίων, ὧντινων εἰσακούσας ὁ μακάριος ἐκεῖνος καὶ αἰδιδίμος
 βασιλεὺς, ἐξαπέστειλεν βασιλικὸν μετὰ καὶ ἱερέων, καὶ ἐβάπτισεν αὐτοὺς
 πάντας τοὺς τῶν προρρηθέντων ἐθνῶν ἀβαπτίστους τυγχάνοντας, καὶ 75
 μετὰ τὸ βαπτίσει αὐτοὺς τότε προεβάλετο εἰς αὐτοὺς ἄρχοντας, οὓς
 ἐκεῖνοι ἤθελον καὶ προέκριναν, ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς, ἧς ἐκεῖνοι ἡγάπων καὶ
 69*P ἔσπεργον. Καὶ ἔκτοτε | μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν γενεῶν γίνονται
 ἄρχοντες εἰς αὐτοὺς, καὶ οὐκ ἐξ ἐτέρας. Οἱ δὲ Παγανοί, οἱ καὶ τῇ Ῥω-
 μαίων διαλέκτῳ Ἀρεντανοὶ καλούμενοι, εἰς δυσβάτους τόπους καὶ 80
 κρημνῶδεις κατελείφθησαν ἀβάπτιστοι. Καὶ γὰρ Παγανοὶ κατὰ τὴν
 τῶν Σκλάβων γλῶσσαν 'ἀβάπτιστοι' ἐρμηνεύεται. Μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο καὶ
 αὐτοὶ ἀποστείλαντες εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν αἰδιδίμον βασιλέα, ἐξητήσαντο βαπτισθῆ-
 ναι καὶ αὐτοί, καὶ ἀποστείλας ἐβάπτισεν καὶ αὐτοὺς. Ἐπεὶ δέ, ὡς προέ-
 φημεν, ὅτι διὰ τὴν τῶν κρατούντων νωθρότητα καὶ ἀφέλειαν εἰς κατόπιν 85
 τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἦλθον πράγματα, καὶ οἱ τὰ τῆς Δελματίας κάστρα
 70*P οἰκοῦντες γεγόνασιν αὐτοκέφαλοι, μήτε τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, μήτε
 130Be ἄλλῳ τινὶ ὑποκείμενοι. Μετὰ δὲ χρόνον τινὰ ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Βασι-
 λείου, τοῦ αἰδιδίμου καὶ ἀειμνήστου βασιλέως, ἐλθόντων Σαρακηνῶν
 ἀπὸ Ἀφρικῆς, τοῦ τε Σολδανοῦ καὶ τοῦ Σάβα καὶ τοῦ Καλφουῆς, μετὰ 90
 караβίων λς', κατέλαβον ἐν Δελματίᾳ, καὶ ἐπόρθησαν τὸ κάστρον τὰ
 Βούτοβα καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὴν Ῥώσσαν καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὰ Δεκάτερα, τὸ
 κάτω. Καὶ ἦλθον καὶ εἰς τὸ κάστρον Ῥαουσίου, καὶ παρεκάθισαν αὐτῷ
 μῆνας δεκαπέντε. Τότε βιασθέντες οἱ Ῥαουσαῖοι ἐδηλοποίησαν Βασι-
 λείῳ, τῷ ἀειμνήστῳ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, λέγοντες αὐτῷ οὕτως· «Ἐλέησον 95
 70*P ἡμᾶς, καὶ μὴ ἐάσης ἀπολέσθαι παρὰ τῶν ἀρνητῶν τοῦ Χριστοῦ.» Ὁ δὲ
 βασιλεὺς σπλαγχνισθεὶς ἀπέστειλεν τὸν πατρικιον Νικήτα, δρουγγάριον
 τοῦ πλωτμου, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην Ὡρούφας, μετὰ χελανδίων ἑκατὸν. Οἱ δὲ
 Σαρακηνοὶ μαθόντες τὴν μετὰ τοῦ στόλου ἀφίξιν τοῦ πατρικίου δρουγγα-

F 70 Ἐπὶ δὲ — 79 ἐτέρας: cf. Theoph. Cont. 291, 1—292, 13; Cedr. II. p. 220, 9—15; Zon. XVI. 9., ed. Bonn. III. p. 425, 9—426, 2. 82 Μετὰ δὲ — 84 αὐτούς: cf. Leo, Tact. XVIII. 101., ed. Migne, P. G. 107. c. 969 A—B. 88 Μετὰ δὲ — 116 Ῥωμαίων: cf. Theoph. Cont. p. 289, 2—290, 23; 292, 14—294, 2; De Them. p. 61, 11—62, 18 (= ed. Pertusi 97, 18—98, 42); Cedr., ed. Bonn. II. p. 219, 4—220, 8; 220, 15—221, 7; Zon. XVI. 9., ed. Bonn. III. p. 425, 1—9.

V 70 ἀποκρισιάρχους: πρέσβεις Theoph. Cont. || 72 ὡς τὸ: ὥστε edd. || 73 εἰσακούσας: ἐπακούσας Theoph. Cont. || 76 βαπτίσει: βαπτισθῆναι V edd. || 77 προέκρινον V edd. || τῆς om. edd. || 81 κρημνῶδεις <κατοικοῦντες> conl. Kyriakides || ante Παγανοὶ addendum τὸ conl. Bury || 82 ἐρμηνεύεται (etiam Bury): ἐρμηνεύονται Ba Be || 83 εἰς bis P || 85 ὅτι om. V edd. || εἰς <μηδὲν>

in the time of Basil, the Christ-loving emperor, they sent diplomatic agents, begging and praying him that those of them who were unbaptized might receive baptism and that they might be, as they had originally been, subject to the empire of the Romans; and that glorious emperor, of blessed memory, gave ear to them and sent out an imperial agent and priests with him and baptized all of them that were unbaptized of the aforesaid nations, and after baptizing them he then appointed for them princes whom they themselves approved and chose, from the family which they themselves loved and favoured. And from that day to this their princes come from these same families, and from no other. But the Pagani, who are called Arentani in the Roman tongue, were left unbaptized, in an inaccessible and precipitous part of the country. For 'Pagani' means 'unbaptized' in the Slavonic tongue. But later, they too sent to the same glorious emperor and begged that they too might be baptized, and he sent and baptized them too. And since, as we said above, owing to the sloth and inexperience of those in power things had gone the wrong way for the Romans, the inhabitants of the cities of Dalmatia also had become independent, subject neither to the emperor of the Romans nor to anybody else. But after some time, in the reign of Basil the glorious and ever-memorable emperor, Saracens from Africa, Soldan and Saba and Kalphus, came with 36 ships and reached Dalmatia and took the city of Butova and the city of Rossa and the lower city of Decatera. And they came also to the city of Ragusa and blockaded it fifteen months. Then in their strait the Ragusans made a declaration to Basil, the ever-memorable emperor of the Romans, saying this to him: «Have pity on us and do not allow us to be destroyed by them that deny Christ.» The emperor was moved with compassion and sent the patrician Nicetas, admiral of the fleet, surnamed Ooryphas, with one hundred ships of war. When the Saracens learnt of the arrival of the patrician admiral of the fleet with

κατόπιν *coni.* Kyriakides || 88/9: ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Βασιλείου: ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαὴλ τοῦ υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου De Them. || 89/90 Σαρακηνῶν ἀπὸ Ἀφρικῆς: οἱ ἀπὸ Καρχηδόνας Ἀγαρηνοὶ Theoph. Cont. || 90 Σολδανού: Σολδανόν De Them. Σολδάνον Theoph. Cont. || Σάβα (*littera μ partim erasa*) P^x V edd. Σάβαν Cedr.: Σάμα P Σάμβαν Theoph. Cont. || Καλφούς De Them. Καλφούς Theoph. Cont.: Κλαφούς P Κλαφούς V edd. || 91 καραβίων: κομπορίων De Them. πλοίων πολεμικῶν Theoph. Cont. || Δελματίας: Δαλματίας De Them. Theoph. Cont. || 91/2 τὰ Βούτοβα Ba Be τὴν Βούτοβαν De Them.: τὰ Βούγοβα P Βούγοβα *ing.* P⁷ ἡ Βούτομα Theoph. Cont. || 92 Ῥῶσαν De Them. Ῥῶσα Theoph. Cont. || 92/3 τὰ Δεκάτερα, τὸ κάτω: τὰ κάτω Δεκάτερα De Them. Theoph. Cont.^v τὰ κάτω Δεκάτορα Theoph. Cont. || 93 κάστρον: μητρόπολιν De Them. Theoph. Cont. || παρεκάθισαν: ἐπολιόρουν De Them. Theoph. Cont. || 94 δεκαπέντε Be: ιε' P ἐπὶ χρόνον... ἱκανόν De Them. Theoph. Cont. || Ῥαουσαίον P || 97 σπλαγχνισθεὶς P || Νικήτα: Νικήταν Theoph. Cont. || 98 τὸ ἐπίκλην: κατ' ἐπωνυμίαν Theoph. Cont. || Ὀορύφας Be Theoph. Cont.: Ὀορόφας P || χελαυδίων: νεῶν Theoph. Cont. || ἑκατόν edd. Theoph. Cont.: ρ' P De Them. || 99 Σαρακηνοὶ:

ρίου τοῦ πλωτῖμου, ἔφυγον καταλιπόντες τὸ κάστρον Ῥαουσίου, καὶ 100
 ἀντεπέρασαν ἐν Λαγουβαρδία, καὶ πολιορκήσαντες τὸ κάστρον Βάρεως,
 τοῦτο ἐπόρθησαν. Τότε ὁ Σολδανὸς κτίσας ἐκεῖσε παλάτια, κατεκράτησεν
 τὴν πᾶσαν Λαγουβαρδίαν μέχρι Ῥώμης ἑτη τεσσαράκοντα. Ὁ οὖν
 βασιλεὺς διὰ τὴν αἰτίαν ταύτην ἀπέστειλεν πρὸς τε τὸν Λοδοῖχον, τὸν
 71P ῤῃγα Φραγγίας καὶ τὸν πάπα Ῥώμης, ἵνα συνεπαμύνηται τῷ πα|ρα 105
 τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι στρατῷ. Οἱ δὲ ὑπεῖξαντες τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως
 αἰτήσῃ, ὃ τε ῤῃξ καὶ ὁ πάπας, ἦλθον ἀμφοτέροι μετὰ δυνάμεως πολλῆς,
 131Be καὶ ἐνωθέν|τες τῷ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντι στρατῷ ἅμα τῷ
 Χρωβάτῳ καὶ Σέρβλῳ καὶ Ζαχλούμῳ καὶ Τερβουινιώταις καὶ Καναλίταις
 καὶ Ῥαουσαίοις μετὰ πάντων τῶν ἀπὸ τῆς Δελματίας κάστρον (οὗτοι 110
 γὰρ πάντες βασιλικῇ κελεύσει παρῆσαν), καὶ περασάντων ἐν Λαγου-
 βαρδία, παρεκάθισαν τὸ κάστρον Βάρεως καὶ ἐπόρθησαν αὐτό.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι τοὺς Χρωβάτους καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς Σκλαβάρχοντας
 71P οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Ῥαουσίου οἰκήτορες μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων αὐτῶν καρα|βίων
 διεπέρασαν ἐν Λαγουβαρδία. Καὶ τὸ μὲν κάστρον Βάρεως καὶ τὴν χώραν 115
 καὶ τὴν αἰχμαλωσίαν πᾶσαν ἀνελάβετο ὁ βασιλεὺς τῶν Ῥωμαίων, τὸν
 δὲ Σολδανὸν καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς Σαρακηνούς ἀνελάβετο Λοδοῖχος, ὁ ῤῃξ
 Φραγγίας, καὶ ἀπήγαγεν αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ κάστρῳ Καπύης καὶ ἐν τῷ κάστρῳ
 Βενεβενδοῦ. Καὶ οὐδεὶς αὐτὸν εἶδεν γελῶντα. Εἶπεν δὲ ὁ ῤῃξ, ὅτι· «Εἰ
 τίς μοι τὸν Σολδανὸν μετὰ ἀληθείας ἀναγγεῖλῃ ἢ ὑποδείξῃ γελῶντα, 120
 δώσω αὐτῷ χρήματα πολλὰ.» Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο εἶδέν τις αὐτὸν γελῶντα,
 καὶ τῷ ῤῃγί Λοδοῖχῳ ἀπήγγειλεν. Ὁ δὲ προσκαλεσάμενος τὸν Σολδανὸν
 72P ἤρώτησεν αὐτόν, ποίῳ τρόπῳ ἐγέλασεν. Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· «Ἀμαξάν εἶδον | καὶ
 τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ τροχοὺς κυλιομένους, καὶ τούτου χάριν ἐγέλασα, ὅτι καὶ
 ἐγὼ ποτε κεφαλὴ ἐγενόμην, καὶ ἄρτίως εἰμὶ ὑποκάτω πάντων, καὶ πάλιν 125
 δύναται ὁ Θεὸς ὑψῶσαί με.» Καὶ ἀπὸ τότε προσεκαλεῖτο αὐτὸν ὁ Λοδοῖχος

F 116 τὸν δὲ — 216 εὐεργεσίαν: cf. Theoph. Cont. p. 294, 3—297, 23; Cedr., ed. Bonn. II. p. 221, 8—225, 8; Zon. XVI. 9., ed. Bonn. III. p. 426, 2—429, 6; (Ps.—) Symeon, ed. Bonn. p. 695, 3—697, 2. 123
 Ῥαμαξάν — 126 ὑψῶσαί με: cf. Menandri fr. 3., Exo. de leg., ed. de Boor p. 177, 12—34; Theoph. Simoc., ed. de Boor p. 243, 10—244, 17; Theoph. p. 273, 14—27; Basilus, Pataen., ed. Migne, P. G. 107. c. XL D. Cf. V. Grecu, *Byzantinoslavica* 13 (1952—3). p. 259.

Υ ἐξ Ῥαφρικῆς Σαρακηνοί Theoph. Cont. Ῥαφροι De Them. || 101 ἀντεπέρασαν: ἀνεπέρασαν De Them. διαπεράσαντες Theoph. Cont. || Λαγουβαρδία edd. Λαγουβαρδία Theoph. Cont. De Them.^c || Βάρεως: Βάρης De Them. || 102 ἐπόρθησαν: ἐξεπόρθησαν Theoph. Cont. || 103 τὴν om. edd. || τὴν πᾶσαν (etiam

his squadron, they quitted the city of Ragusa and took to flight and crossed over into Lombardy and laid siege to the city of Bari and took it. Then Soldan built a palace there and was for forty years master of all Lombardy as far as Rome. On this account, therefore, the emperor sent to Lewis, king of Francia, and to the pope of Rome, asking their cooperation with the army which he, the emperor, had sent. The king and the pope acceded to the emperor's request, and both of them came with a large force and joined up with the army sent by the emperor and with the Croat and Serb and Zachlumian chiefs and the Terbouniotes and Kanalites and the men of Ragusa and all the cities of Dalmatia (for all these were present by imperial mandate); and they crossed over into Lombardy, and laid siege to the city of Bari and took it.

The Croats and the other chiefs of the Slavs were carried over into Lombardy by the inhabitants of the city of Ragusa in their own vessels. The city of Bari and the country and all the prisoners were taken by the emperor of the Romans, but Soldan and the rest of the Saracens were taken by Lewis, the king of Francia, who carried them off to the city of Capua and the city of Beneventum. And no one saw *Soldan* laughing. And the king said: «If anybody truly reports to me or shows me Soldan laughing, I will give him much money.» Later, someone saw him laughing and reported it to king Lewis. He summoned Soldan and asked him, how he had come to laugh? And he said: «I saw a cart and the wheels on it turning round and therefore I laughed because I too was once at the top and am now lowest of all, but God may raise me up again.» And thereafter Lewis would summon

De Them.): πᾶσαν τὴν Theoph. Cont. || Λογουβαρδίαν edd. Λαγοβαρδίαν Theoph. Cont. Λογγιβαρδίαν De Them. || ἐτη τεσσαράκοντα *deest in* Theoph. Cont. De Them. || τεσσαράκοντα V edd.: σαράκοντα P τέσσαρα *coni.* Kyriakides || 104 Λοδῶχον P Λοδοτχον Theoph. Cont. Λοδοῦχον De Them. Δολῶιχον Theoph. Cont.^V || 105 ῥῆγα Meursius Ba Be Theoph. Cont. De Them.: δοῦκα P || πάπα (*etiam* De Them.): πάπαν Theoph. Cont. || συνεπαμύνεται Me Ba συνεπαμύναι De Them. συνεπικουρῆσαι Theoph. Cont. || 107 αἰτήσαι: ἐντεῦξαι De Them. || ῥίξ P || 108 ἄμα τῷ — 110 κάστρων: τὰς ὀλίγας πρόσθεν μνημονευθείσας χώρας τῶν Σκλαβηγῶν Theoph. Cont. *deest in* De Them. || 108/9 τοῖς Χρωβάτοις καὶ Σέρβλοις καὶ Ζαχλουμοῖς *coni.* Bury || 109 καὶ¹: τῷ edd. || Τερβουνιώτες P || Καναλιταῖς P || 110 'Ραουσαιῖς Moravesik: 'Ραουσιῖς P edd. || 111/2 Λογουβαρδίαν edd. || 112 παρεκάθισαν *coni.* Bekker παρεκάθησαν P: ἐκάθησαν edd. ἐκάθισαν Migne || Βάρεως: Βάρης De Them. || 114 'Ραουσιου V edd.: 'Ραουσαίου P || οὐκ ἤτορες V edd.: οἰκηταὶ P || 115 Λογουβαρδίαν edd. || 116 τῶν *om.* edd. || 117 Σολδανόν edd. De Them.: Σολδάνον P Theoph. Cont. || Λοδῶχος Be Λοδοτχος Bury Λοδοῦχος De Them.: Δολοῖχος P Δοδοῦχος De Them.^C || ῥίξ P || 119 ῥίξ P || 120 Σολδάνον Theoph. Cont. || 121 αὐτὸν V¹ edd.: αὐτῷ P V || 122 ῥίγι P || Λοδοτχω Be: Δολοῖχω P || 125 ἐγενόμην: ἤμην V edd. || 126 Λοδῶχος Be: Δολοῖχος P ||

- 132Be εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν αὐτοῦ, καὶ συν|ήσθιεν αὐτῷ. Οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες τῆς Καπύης καὶ Βενεβενδοῦ ἤρχοντο πρὸς τὸν Σολδανὸν ἐρωτῶντες αὐτὸν περὶ ἱατρειῶν καὶ θεραπειᾶς ἀλόγων καὶ λοιπῶν ὑποθέσεων, ὡς γέροντα καὶ πεπειραμένον. Ὁ δὲ Σολδανὸς πανοῦργος ὢν καὶ σχολιὸς εἶπεν πρὸς 130 αὐτούς, ὅτι· «Πρᾶγμα θέλω εἰπεῖν πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ δέδοικα τοῦ μὴ παρ' 72P ὑμῶν καταδήλον γενέσθαι πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα, καὶ ἀπολέσω τὴν | ἐμαυτοῦ ζωὴν.» Οἱ δὲ ὤμωσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ θαρρήσας εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτούς, ὅτι· «Ὁ ῥῆξ ἐξορίσαι θέλει πάντας ὑμᾶς ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ Φραγγίᾳ, καὶ ἐὰν ἀπιστήτε, ἐκδέξασθε μικρόν, ἀγῶ πληροφορῶ ὑμᾶς.» Καὶ ἀπελθὼν εἶπεν πρὸς 135 τὸν Λοδοῖχον, ὅτι· «Οἱ ἄρχοντες τοῦ τόπου τούτου κακοὶ εἰσιν, καὶ σὺ οὐ δύνασαι κυριεῦσαι τὴν χώραν ταύτην, ἐὰν μὴ ἀφανίσῃς τοὺς δυνατοὺς, τοὺς ἀντιπίπτοντάς σε· ἀλλὰ δέσμευσον τοὺς πρώτους τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ ἀπόστειλον αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν χώραν σου, καὶ τότε, ὡς θέλεις, οἱ λοιποὶ ὑποταγήσονται σοι.» Καὶ ὅτε παρέπεισεν αὐτόν, ἵνα πληρώσῃ τὴν βουλήν 140 αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὥρισεν γενέσθαι ἀλύσεις σιδηρᾶς εἰς τὸ ἐξορίσαι αὐτούς, 73P ἀπῆλθεν ὁ Σολδανὸς καὶ | εἶπεν πρὸς τοὺς ἄρχοντας, ὅτι· «Ἀκμήν οὐ πιστεύετε, ὅτι ὁ ῥῆξ ἐξορίστους ὑμᾶς ποιεῖ, καὶ παντελῶς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων γίνεται τὸ μνημόσυνον ὑμῶν; Ὅμως εἰ θέλετε τελείως πληροφορηθῆναι, ἀπελθόντες θεάσασθε, τί ἄρα ἐργάζονται πάντες οἱ χαλκεῖς τῇ προστάξει 145 133Be τοῦ ῥήγος. | Καὶ εἰ οὐχ εὗρητε αὐτοὺς ἐργαζομένους τὰς ἀλύσεις καὶ τὰ δεσμά, γινώσκετε, ὅτι πάντα τὰ παρ' ἐμοῦ λαλούμενα ὑμῖν ἐστὶν ψευδῆ· εἰ δὲ ἀληθεύω, φροντίσατε τὴν σωτηρίαν ὑμῶν καὶ ἐμὲ εὐεργετήσατε, τὸν τὰ χρηστὰ καὶ σωτήρια ὑμῖν βουλευσάμενον.» Οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες πεισθέν- 150 τες τῷ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ λόγῳ, θεασάμενοι δὲ καὶ τὰς ἀλύσεις καὶ τὰ δεσμά, 73vP τελείαν πληροφορίαν ἔλαβον, καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐμελέτων | τὴν ἀπώλειαν τοῦ ῥήγος Λοδοῖχου. Ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ ταῦτα πάντα ἀγνοῶν ἐξῆλθε πρὸς τὸ κυνηγῆσαι. Ὑποστρέψαντος δέ, οἱ τούτου ἄρχοντες ἐκράτησαν τὸ κάστρον, μὴ ἐάσαντες αὐτὸν εἰσελθεῖν. Ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ Λοδοῖχος τὴν τῶν ἀρχόντων ἐνστα- σιν θεασάμενος, εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψεν. Οἱ δὲ ἄρχοντες εἶπον 155 πρὸς τὸν Σολδανόν· «Τί ἄρα θέλεις ἡμᾶς ποιῆσαι σοι περὶ τῆς γενομένης εἰς ἡμᾶς παρὰ σοῦ σωτηρίας;» Ὁ δὲ ἡτήσατο ἐν τῇ ἰδίᾳ χώρᾳ ἀπολῦσαι αὐτόν, καὶ τούτου γενομένου, ἀπῆλθεν ἐν Ἀφρικῇ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν αὐτοῦ χώραν. Μὴ ἐπιλαθόμενος δὲ τῆς ἀρχαίας αὐτοῦ κακίας ἐστρατοπέδευσεν, καὶ ἦλθεν μετὰ δυνάμειος ἐν Καπύῃ καὶ ἐν Βενεβενδῷ πρὸς τὸ πολιορκῆ- 160 74Pσαι | καὶ ὑποτάξαι αὐτούς. Οἱ δὲ τὰ ταιαῦτα κάστρα κρατοῦντες ἀπέ- στειλαν πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα Λοδοῖχον ἐν Φραγγίᾳ, ἵνα ἐλθὼν συνε- παμύνηται αὐτοῖς κατὰ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ καὶ τῶν Ἀφρικῶν. Ὁ δὲ ῥῆξ

F 143 καὶ παντελῶς — 144 μνημόσυνον ἡμῶν: cf. Psalm, 9, 7; 108, 15; Job 9, 2.

V 127 αὐτοῦ Migne || 128 αὐτόν V¹ edd.: αὐτῷ P V || 130 Σολδανὸς V Ba Be: Σουλ- δανὸς P || σχολιὸς: δόλων Φοινικικῶν οὐκ ἀμέτοχος Theoph. Cont. δόλιος Cedr. ||

him to his table and would eat with him. And the nobles of Capua and Beneventum used to go to Soldan and ask him questions about the treatment and care of cattle and other matters, because of his age and experience. And Soldan, who was cunning and crooked, said to them: «I would like to say a thing to you, but I fear to be betrayed by you to the king and I shall lose my life.» But they swore to him, and he took heart and said to them: «The king is minded to banish all of you to great Francia, and if you disbelieve it, wait a little, and I will satisfy you.» And he went off and said to Lewis: «The nobles of this place are evil, and you cannot be master of this country unless you destroy the powerful men who oppose you; but do you bind the first men of the city and send them off to your country, and then the rest will be submissive to you, as you desire.» When he had won him to carrying out his advice, and *the king* had instructed that chains of iron should be made for their banishment, Soldan went off and said to the nobles: «Do you still not believe that the king is sending you into banishment, and that all remembrance of you will vanish from among men? Yet, if you will be perfectly satisfied, go and see what all the smiths are making by order of the king. And if you do not find them making the chains and fetters, know that all I have told you is lies; but if I speak truth, look to your safety and reward me for my valuable and salutary advice to you.» The nobles obeyed the word of Soldan, and when they had seen the chains and fetters, they were completely satisfied, and thereafter began to devise the destruction of king Lewis. The king, in ignorance of all this, went out hunting. But when he came back, his nobles had taken possession of the city and did not allow him to enter. King Lewis, seeing himself thus opposed by the nobles, went back to his own country. The nobles said to Soldan: «What, then, would you have us do for you, in return for the salvation wrought for us by you?» And he requested them to dismiss him to his own country, which they did, and he went off to Africa, to his own country. But, mindful of his ancient malice, he made an expedition and came with a force to Capua and to Beneventum, to lay siege to and subdue them. The rulers of these cities sent envoys to king Lewis in Francia, asking him to come and help them fight against Soldan and the Africans. But king Lewis, when he heard of it, having learnt

132 ῥῆγα Meursius Ba Be: δοῦκα P || 133 δμωσαν P || ῥίξ P || 134 θέλει V edd.: θέλη P || 136 Λοδόχρον Be: Δολόχρον P || τόπου om. V Me || τούτου conl. Moravcsik: τού P om. edd. || 139 θέλεις Be: θέλης P || 140 σοι V edd.; σε P || πληρώση edd.: πληρώσει P || 141 ἔρησεν P || 142 Σολδάνος Theoph. Cont. || 143 ῥίξ P || 149 σωτηρία P || 150 Σολδανού V Ba Be: Σουλδανού P || 152 ῥιγός P || Λοδοήχου P || ῥίξ P || 154 ῥίξ P || Λοδόχρος P || 155 ὑπέστρεψεν: ἀνθυπενώστησε Theoph. Cont. || 156 Σολδάνος Theoph. Cont. || θέλεις V edd.: θέλης P || ἡμᾶς V edd.: ὑμῖν P || 158 ἐν Ἀφρικῇ: κατὰ Καρχηδόνά Theoph. Cont. || 162 ῥέγα P || Λοδόχρον P || 163 ῥίξ P ||

Λοδοῖχος ταῦτα μαθὼν καί, ὥνπερ ἐποίησεν τρόπον ὁ Σολδανός, πείσας
καὶ τοὺς ἄρχοντας, ὅτι· «Δεσμίους μέλλει ὑμᾶς ὁ ῥήξ ἐν Φραγγίᾳ ἐξορί-165
134Be σαι», ἀντεδήλωσεν αὐτοῖς, ὅτι· | «Καὶ ἅπερ ἐποίησα πρότερον εἰς ὑμᾶς,
μεταμέλημαι, ὅτι ἔσσωσα ὑμᾶς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐχθρῶν ὑμῶν, καὶ ἀνταπεδώ-
κατέ μοι πονηρὰ ἀντὶ ἀγαθῶν, καὶ καθὼς ἐδιώχθην παρ' ὑμῶν, ἀρτίως
χαίρω ἐπὶ τῇ ἀπωλείᾳ ὑμῶν.» Τότε ἀπορήσαντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ῥήγος Λοδοῖχου,
74P ἀπέστειλαν πρέσβεις πρὸς | τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων τοῦ δοῦναι αὐτοῖς170
βοήθειαν καὶ λυτρώσασθαι τοῦ τοιοῦτου κινδύνου. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς
ὑπέσχετο βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς. Τοῦ δὲ ἀποκρισιarioῦ ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως
ὑποστρέψαντος καὶ ἀγαθὰς ἀγγελίας τοῖς πέμψασιν αὐτὸν ἀποκομίζον-
τας περὶ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως συμμαχίας, μήπω τούτου ἀποσωθέντος ἐν
τῷ κάστρῳ, ἐκρατήθη παρὰ τῶν βιγλῶν τοῦ Σολδανοῦ. Προεγνώκει175
γὰρ ὁ Σολδανός τὴν γεγνουῖαν ἀποστολὴν πρὸς ἱεσίαν τοῦ βασιλέως
Ῥωμαίων, καὶ ἐπύκτευσεν τοῦ τὸν ἀποκρισιarioῦ αὐτῶν κρατῆσαι,
75P ὅπερ καὶ γέγονεν. Κρατηθέντος δὲ αὐτοῦ, ἔμαθεν τὴν ἀποτελεσθεῖ[σαν
παρ' αὐτοῦ δουλείαν, καὶ ὅτι δι' ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν καταλαμβάνει ἡ τοῦ
βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων βοήθεια. Ὁ δὲ Σολδανός εἶπεν τῷ αὐτῷ ἀποκρισιarioῦ,180
ὅτι· «Εἰ ποιήσεις, ὅπερ σοι εἶπω, ἐλευθερίας καὶ δωρεῶν μεγίστων
ἀξιωθήσῃ· εἰ δὲ μή, πονηρῷ θανάτῳ τὴν ζωὴν ἀπολέσεις.» Τοῦ δὲ
ὑποσχομένου ἐκπληρῶσαι τὰ κελευόμενα αὐτῷ, εἶπεν ὁ Σολδανός πρὸς
αὐτόν, ὅτι· «Κελεύω στήναι σε πλησίον τοῦ τείχους καὶ προσκαλέσασθαι
τοὺς ἀποστειλαντάς σε καὶ εἰπεῖν πρὸς αὐτούς· "Εγὼ μὲν τὴν δουλείαν,185
135Be ἦν ὥφειλον ποιῆ[σαι, πεποίηκα, καὶ τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων περὶ ὑμῶν
75P ἔδυσώπησα· πλὴν οὖν γινώσκετε, ὅτι | εἰς κενὸν ἐγένετο ἡ ὁδός μου, καὶ
ὁ βασιλεὺς πάμφαυλον ἔθετο τὴν παρ' ὑμῶν γεγνουῖαν ἱεσίαν, καὶ ἀπὸ
τοῦ βασιλέως μὴ ἐλπίζετε βοήθειαν'.» Τοῦ δὲ ὑποσχομένου ταῦτα μετὰ
χαρᾶς ἐκπληρῶσαι, ἤγαγον αὐτὸν πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ ἐν οὐδενί190
θέμενος τὰ παρὰ τοῦ Σολδανοῦ ῥηθέντα πάντα, μήτε τὰς ἀπειλὰς αὐτοῦ
φοβηθεὶς, μήτε ταῖς ὑποσχέσεσιν αὐτοῦ πεισθεὶς, ἀλλὰ τὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ
φόβον ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτοῦ θέμενος, διελογίσατο ἐν ἑαυτῷ, ὅτι· «Συμφέρων
ἐστὶν ἐμὲ μόνον ἀποθανεῖν καὶ μὴ τοσαύτας ψυχὰς διὰ λόγου παγιδεῦσαι
καὶ προδοῦναι εἰς θάνατον.» Καὶ δὴ πλησίον τοῦ τείχους αὐτοῦ γενομένου195
76P καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἄρχον[τας προσκαλεσαμένου, εἶπεν πρὸς τοὺς ἐξουσιάζον-
τας τοῦ τοιοῦτου κάστρου· «Εγὼ μὲν, κύριοί μου, τὴν διακονίαν μου
ἐξεπλήρωσα, καὶ τὰ παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων δηλωθέντα ὑμῖν
ἀπαγγελῶ, πλὴν ὀρκίζω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ Θεοῦ καὶ εἰς τὴν σωτηρίαν
παντὸς τοῦ κάστρου καὶ αὐτῶν τῶν ψυχῶν ὑμῶν, ἵνα ἀντὶ ἐμοῦ εὐεργετή-200

F 167 ἀνταπεδώκατε — 168 ἀγαθῶν: cf. I Reg. 25, 21; Prov. 17, 13.

V 164 Λοδοῖχος] *litteras* lo in ras. scr. P¹ || 167 μεταμέλημαι Ba Be ||
168 ἐδιώχθην Meursius Ba Be: ἐδιώχθη P || 169 Λοδοῖχου P || 172 ἀπο-

how Soldan had acted in persuading the nobles that, «the king purposes to send you in chains to banishment in Francia», declared in answer to them: «I repent my former conduct towards you, when I saved you from your enemies, and you returned me evil for good; and as I was cast out by you, now I rejoice at your destruction.» Then, having failed with king Lewis, they sent envoys to the emperor of the Romans, asking that he should give them aid and deliver them out of this danger. The emperor promised to aid them. But when the diplomatic agent had left Constantinople on his homeward way, bringing back to them who had sent him fair tidings of the alliance with the emperor, he was still short of the city when he was captured by the scouts of Soldan. For Soldan had obtained previous intelligence of the sending of a mission of supplication to the emperor of the Romans and had made efforts to capture their diplomatic agent, which he did. From his captive he learnt of the service he had performed, and that in a few days the succours of the emperor of the Romans would arrive. So Soldan said to this same diplomatic agent: «If you do what I tell you, you shall be awarded freedom and very great gifts; but if not, you shall lose your life and your death shall be cruel.» The man promised to carry out his orders, and Soldan said to him: «I order you to stand close to the wall and to summon those who sent you and say to them: 'For my part, I have carried out the service laid upon me, and have importuned the emperor of the Romans on your behalf; however, know that my journey was vain, and that the emperor has altogether spurned the supplication you made, and do not expect succour from the emperor'.» When he had promised to perform this gladly, they conducted him close to the city, where, disregarding all that Soldan had said, neither fearing his threats nor seduced by his promises, but setting the fear of God in his heart, he communed thus with himself: «It is expedient that I alone should die, and not by my word entrap and betray so many souls to their death.» So, when he was near the wall and had summoned the nobles, he thus addressed those who were in authority over that city: «I, my lords, have discharged my office and will announce to you what was declared by the emperor of the Romans; but I adjure you by the Son of God and the salvation of all the city and of your very souls, to reward, instead of me, my children

κρισταρίου: τῆς ἀγγελίας διάκονος Theoph. Cont. πρεσβευτῆς Oedr. || 177 τοῦ τὸν V Me Be: τοῦτον P || 180 βοήθεια V edd.: β[ο]ήθεια P || αὐτῷ V edd.: α[ὐ]-τὸ P || 181 ποιήσεις F edd.: ποιήσης P || δωρεῶν V edd.: δ[ω]ρεῶν P || 182 ἀπολέσεις F edd.: ἀπολ[έ]σης P ἀπολέσης V || 183 ἐκκληρώσαι V edd.: ἐκπλ[η]ρώσαι P || εἶπεν V edd.: ε[ἶ]πεν P || 184 ὅτι V edd.: ὅτ[ι] P || τεῖχους V edd.: τεῖχ[ους] P || 185 ἀποστειδαντάς V edd.: ἀποστ[ε]ιδαντάς P || αὐτούς V edd.: αὐτοῦ[ς] P || 186 ὥφαιλον V edd.: ὄφειλα[ν] P || 187 ὅτι V edd.: ὅτ[ι] P || κενὸν F Meursius Ba Be: κανὸν P || 188 παμφαῦλον Migne: παμφαῦλον P edd. παρὰ φαῦλον cons. Bekker || ἔθετο: ἔθηκε edd. || 193 αὐτοῦ edd. || 196/7 ἐξουσιάσαντας edd. || 199 ὑμᾶς V edd. Theoph. Cont.: ὑμῖν P ||

σητε τὰ τέκνα μου καὶ τὴν ἐλπίζουσιν ἀπολαβεῖν με σύμβιον μου· ὥς γὰρ ποιήσητε μετὰ αὐτῶν, παρὰ τοῦ δικαίου καὶ μισθοποδοῦ ἀγαθοῦ Θεοῦ, μέλλοντος κρῖναι ζῶντας καὶ νεκρούς, τὸν μισθὸν ἀπολήψεσθε.»

- 76^{VP} Καὶ ταῦτα εἰπὼν παρεθάρρυνεν αὐτοὺς λέγων· «Εγὼ μὲν ἀπὸ | τοῦ
136Be | Σολδανοῦ ἀπολοῦμαι καὶ περὶ τὴν ζωὴν κινδυνεύω, ὑμεῖς δὲ στήτε205
ἐδραῖοι καὶ μὴ δειλاندρήσητε, ἀλλ' ὑπομείνατε μικρὸν, καὶ εἰς ὀλίγον
ἡμερῶν φθάσει ἡ ἀποσταλεῖσα ὑμῖν σωτηρία παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥω-
μαίων». Ταῦτα δὲ αὐτοῦ εἰπόντος, οἱ κατέχοντες αὐτὸν οἰκεῖοι τοῦ
Σολδανοῦ παρὰ προσδοκίαν τὰ παρ' αὐτοῦ λαληθέντα ἀκούσαντες,
ἔβρουζαν ἐπ' αὐτὸν τοὺς ὀδόντας, καὶ εἰς τοῦ ἐτέρου προέτρεχον, τίς ἄρα210
τῆς σφαγῆς αὐτοῦ γέγονεν αὐτουργός. Τοῦ δὲ παρ' αὐτῶν ἀναιρεθέν-
τος, πτοηθεὶς ὁ Σολδανὸς τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως κατερχομένην δυναστείαν,
ὑπέστρεψεν εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν. Καὶ ἔκτοτε καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν καὶ οἱ
77^{VP} τῆς Καπύης | καὶ οἱ τῆς Βενεβενδοῦ εἰσὶν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
εἰς τελείαν δούλωσιν καὶ ὑποπαγῇν διὰ τὴν εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένην μεγάλην215
ταύτην εὐεργεσίαν.

- “Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ῥαουσίου οὐ καλεῖται Ῥαούσι τῇ Ῥωμαίων
διαλέκτῳ, ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἐπάνω τῶν κρημνῶν ἴσεται, λέγεται Ῥωμαῖστί 'ὁ
κρημνὸς λαῦ'· ἐκλήθησαν δὲ ἐκ τούτου Λαυσαῖοι, ἡγουν 'οἱ καθεζόμενοι
εἰς τὸν κρημνόν'. Ἡ δὲ κοινὴ συνήθεια, ἡ πολλάκις μεταφθείρουσα220
τὰ ὀνόματα τῇ ἐναλλαγῇ τῶν γραμμάτων, μεταβαλοῦσα τὴν κλήσιν
Ῥαουσαίους τούτους ἐκάλεσεν. Οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Ῥαουσαῖοι τὸ παλαιὸν
ἐκράτουν τὸ κάστρον τὸ ἐπιλεγόμενον Πίταυρα, καὶ ἐπειδὴ, ἥνικα τὰ
77^{VP} λοιπὰ ἐκρατήθησαν | κάστρα παρὰ τῶν Σκλάβων τῶν ἔντων | ἐν τῷ θέ-
137Be ματι, ἐκρατήθη καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ225
ἡχμαλωτίσθησαν, οἱ δὲ δυνηθέντες ἐκφυγεῖν καὶ διασωθῆναι εἰς τοὺς
ὑποκρήμνους τόπους κατέφυγον, ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶν ἀρτίως τὸ κάστρον, οἰκοδο-
μήσαντες αὐτὸ πρότερον μικρὸν, καὶ πάλιν μετὰ ταῦτα μεῖζον, καὶ
μετὰ τοῦτο πάλιν τὸ τεῖχος αὐτοῦ αὐξήσαντες μέχρι † δ' ἔχειν † τὸ
κάστρον διὰ τὸ πλατύνεσθαι αὐτοὺς κατ' ὀλίγον καὶ πληθύνεσθαι. Ἐκ230
δὲ τῶν μετοικησάντων εἰς τὸ Ῥαούσιον εἰσὶν οὗτοι· Γρηγόριος, Ἀρσά-
φιος, Βικτωρίνος, Βιτάλιος, Βαλεντίνος, ὁ ἀρχιδιάκων, Βαλεντίνος, ὁ
πατὴρ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Στεφάνου. Ἀφ' οὗ δὲ ἀπὸ Σαλῶνα μετόκη-
78^{VP} σαν εἰς τὸ Ῥαούσιον, εἰσὶν ἔτη φ' μέχρι τῆς σήμερον, ἥτις ἰνδικτιῶν ζ'
ἔτους ζυνζ'. Ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ κεῖται ὁ ἅγιος Παγκράτιος ἐν τῷ235
ναῷ τοῦ ἁγίου Στεφάνου, τῷ ὄντι μέσον τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου.

† 203 μέλλοντος — νεκρούς: II Timoth. 4, 1. 203 τὸν μισθὸν ἀπολή-
ψεσθε: cf. II Ioh. 8. 210 ἔβρουζαν — ὀδόντας: cf. Acta 7, 54.

and her who is hoping to receive me back, my wife; for as you deal with them, so shall your reward be from God, the just and righteous rewarder, who shall judge the quick and the dead.» When he had so spoken, he fortified them with these words: «For my part I shall be destroyed by Soldan and the threat of death is upon me; but do you stand fast and be not faint-hearted, but endure a little while, and in a few days shall arrive the salvation which has been sent to you by the emperor of the Romans». When he had so spoken, the servants of Soldan who had charge of him, hearing his unexpected message, gnashed with their teeth upon him, and each outran the other to be the author of his murder. But after he was made away by them, Soldan, dreading the powers of the emperor that were coming upon him, withdrew to his own country. And from that time until this day the men of Capua and the men of Beneventum have been under the authority of the Romans in perfect servitude and subjection, for that great benefit which was done to them.

The city of Ragusa is not called Ragusa in the tongue of the Romans but, because it stands on cliffs, it is called in Roman speech 'the cliff, lau'; whence they are called 'Lausaioi', i. e. 'those who have their seat on the cliff'. But vulgar usage, which frequently corrupts names by altering their letters, has changed the denomination and called them Rausaioi. These same Rausaioi used of old to possess the city that is called Pitaura; and since, when the other cities were captured by the Slavs that were in the province, this city too was captured, and some were slaughtered and others taken prisoner, those who were able to escape and reach safety settled in the almost precipitous spot where the city now is; they built it small to begin with, and afterwards enlarged it, and later still extended its wall until the city reached *its present size*, owing to their gradual spreading out and increase in population. Among those who migrated to Ragusa are: Gregory, Arsaphius, Victorinus, Vitalius, Valentine the archdeacon, Valentine the father of Stephen the protospatharius. From their migration from Salona to Ragusa, it is 500 years till this day, which is the 7th indiction, the year 6457. In this same city lies St. Pancratius, in the church of St. Stephen, which is in the middle of this same city.

206 ὀλίγων Ba Be: ὀλίγων P || 207 φθάσει edd. ἔρχεται Theoph. Cont. || 208 οικεῖται: ὑπηρεῖται Theoph. Cont. || 211 αὐτοῦ σφαγῆς edd. || γέγονεν: γένειεν V edd. || 212 κατερχομένην: ἐρχομένην edd. || 217 'Ραούση P || 218 *post* λέγεται *add.* δὲ Be || 219 λαοῦ: λαοῦ Migne || δὲ *om.* Be || 222 'Ραουσαῖοι P || 223 Πίταυρα: Ἐπίδαυρον *coni.* Bandurius || 226 δὲ *secl.* Jenkins || 229 δ' ἔχουν: δ' ἔχει Me δ' ἔχειν Ba Be <τοῦ> ὧδ' ἔχειν *coni.* Bekker τοῦ ἔχειν <τὸ μέγεθος δ' ἀρίτως ἔχει> *coni.* Bury || 232 Βικτωρήνος P || Βαλεντίνος² Bandurius Be: Βαλεντίνος P *mg.* P || 233/4 μετοίκησαν P || 234 τὸ *om.* edd. || φ': τ' *coni.* Mikoezi Šišić χ' *coni.* Labuda || Ἰνδικτιῶνος edd. || ζ': ἐβδόμης edd. || 235 τῷ αὐτῷ V edd.: τὸ αὐτὸ P ||

Ἔστι τοῦ Ἀσπαλάθου κάστρον, ὅπερ παλάτιον μικρόν ἐρμηνεύεται, ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς τοῦτο ἐκτίσεν· εἶχεν δὲ αὐτὸ ὡς ἴδιον οἶκον, καὶ αὐλὴν οἰκοδομήσας ἐνδοθεν καὶ παλάτια, ἐξ ὧν τὰ πλείονα κατελύθησαν. Σώζεται δὲ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ὀλίγα, ἐξ ὧν ἐστὶν τὸ ἐπισκοπεῖον τοῦ κάστρου καὶ ὁ ναὸς τοῦ ἁγίου Δόμνου, ἐν ᾧ κατὰκειται ὁ αὐτὸς ἅγιος Δόμνος, ὅπερ ἦν κοιτῶν τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ. Ὑποκάτω δὲ αὐτοῦ ὑπάρχουσιν εἰληματικαὶ καμάραι, αἵτινες | ὑπῆρχον | φυλακαί, ἐν αἷς τοὺς παρ' αὐτοῦ βασανιζομένους ἁγίους ἐναπέκλειεν ἀπηνῶς. Ἀπόκειται δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ κάστρῳ καὶ ὁ ἅγιος Ἀναστάσιος. 245

78^{vP}138^{Be}79^{vP}

Ἔστι τὸ τεῖχος τοῦ τοιοῦτου κάστρου οὔτε ἀπὸ βησσάλων ἐστὶν ἐκτισμένον, οὔτε ἀπὸ ἐγχερήγου, ἀλλ' ἀπὸ λίθων τετραπεδικῶν, ἐχόντων εἰς μῆκος ἀνὰ ὀργυῖας μίᾳς, πολλάκις καὶ ἀνὰ δύο, καὶ τὸ πλάτος ἀνὰ ὀργυῖας μίᾳς, οἵτινες εἰσιν συνηρμοσμένοι καὶ συνδεδεμένοι εἰς ἀλλήλους μετὰ σιδήρων ἐν μολύβδῳ ἐγχυλιασμένων. Ἰστανται δὲ εἰς τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον καὶ κίονες πυκνοί, ἔχοντες ἐπάνω κοσμήτας, ἐν οἷς ἐμελλεν ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς εἰληματικὰς ἐγεῖραι καμάρας, καὶ σκεπάσαι τὸ κάστρον ὅλον, καὶ ποιῆσαι τὰ παλάτια αὐτοῦ καὶ πάντα τὰ οἰκήματα τοῦ κάστρου ἐπάνω τῶν εἰλημάτων ἐκείνων διώροφα καὶ τριώροφα, ὥστε καὶ ὀλίγον ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ κάστρου ἐσκέπασεν. Τοῦ δὲ τοιοῦτου κάστρου τὸ τεῖχος οὔτε περίπατον ἔχει, οὔτε προμαχῶνας, ἀλλὰ τοίχους μόνους ὑψηλοὺς καὶ τοξικὰς φωταγωγούς. 255

Ἔστι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Τετραγγούριν νησίον ἐστὶν μικρόν ἐν τῇ θαλάσῃ, ἔχον καὶ τράχηλον ἕως τῆς γῆς στενώτατον δίκην γεφυρίου, ἐν ᾧ διέρχονται οἱ κατοικοῦντες εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον. Τετραγγούριν δὲ καλεῖται διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸ μικρόν δίκην ἄγγουρίου. Ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ ἀπόκειται ὁ ἅγιος μάρτυς Λαυρέντιος, ὁ ἀρχιδιάκων. 260

139^{Be}79^{vP}

Ἔστι τὸ κάστρον τῶν Δεκατέρων ἐρμηνεύεται τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ ἔσπε|νόμενον καὶ πεπινγμένον, διότι εἰσέρχεται ἡ θάλασσα ὥσπερ γλῶσσα ἐσπενωμένη μέχρι τῶν ἰε' <ῆ> καὶ κ' μιλίων, καὶ εἰς τὸ τῆς θαλάσσης συμπλήρωμά ἐστὶν τὸ κάστρον. Ἐχει δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον κύκλῳ αὐτοῦ ὄρη ὑψηλά, ὥστε μόνῳ τῷ καλοκαιρίῳ βλέπειν τὸν ἥλιον διὰ τὸ μεσουρανεῖν, τῷ δὲ χειμῶνι οὐδαμῶς. Ἐν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ κεῖται ὁ ἅγιος Τρύφων ἀκέραιος πᾶσαν νόσον ἰώμενος, μάλιστα τοὺς ὑπὸ πνευμάτων ἀκαθάρτων τυραννουμένους· ὁ δὲ ναὸς αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν εἰληματικός. 270

Ἔστι τὸ κάστρον τῶν Διαδώρων καλεῖται τῇ Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ ἰὰμ ἔρα, ὅπερ ἐρμηνεύεται ἀπάρτι ἦτον· δηλονότι ὅτε ἡ Ῥώμη ἐκτίσθη,

The city of Spalato, which means 'little palace', was founded by the emperor Diocletian; he made it his own dwelling-place, and built within it a court and a palace, most part of which has been destroyed. But a few things remain to this day, e. g. the episcopal residence of the city and the church of St. Domnus, in which lies St. Domnus himself, and which was the resting-place of the same emperor Diocletian. Beneath it are arching vaults, which used to be prisons, in which he cruelly confined the saints whom he tormented. St. Anastasius also lies in this city.

The defence-wall of this city is constructed neither of bricks nor of concrete, but of ashlar blocks, one and often two fathoms in length by a fathom across, and these are fitted and joined to one another by iron cramps puddled into molten lead. In this city also stand close rows of columns, with entablatures above, on which this same emperor Diocletian proposed to erect arching vaults and to cover over the city throughout, and to build his palace and all the living-quarters of the city on the top of those vaults, to a height of two and three stories, so that they covered little *ground-space* in the same city. The defence-wall of this city has neither rampart nor bulwarks, but only lofty walls and arrow-slits.

The city of Tetrangourin is a little island in the sea, with a very narrow neck reaching to the land like a bridge, along which the inhabitants pass to the same city; and it is called Tetrangourin because it is *long-shaped* like a cucumber. In this same city lies the holy martyr Lawrence the archdeacon.

The city of Decatera means in the language of the Romans 'contracted and strangled', because the sea enters like a contracted tongue for 15 or 20 miles, and the city is on this marine appendix. This city has high mountains in a circle about it, so that the sun can be seen only in summer, because it is then in mid-heaven, and in winter it cannot be seen at all. In the same city lies St. Tryphon entire, who heals every disease, especially those who are tormented by unclean spirits; his church is domed.

The city of Diadora is called in the language of the Romans 'iam era', which means, 'it was already': that is to say, when Rome was founded,

246 βισάλων P || 247 ἐγχωρήγου P: ἐγχωρόγου *con.* Kukules || τετραπεδίων: τετραπέδων *con.* Laskin || 248 ὀργῦας P || μᾶς: α' V edd. || 249 ὀργῦας P || 250 μολῖδω P || ἐγχυλιασμένων edd.: ἐγχυλιασμένα P || *post* δὲ *add.* καὶ edd. || 251 κομίτας P || 252 εἰληματικὰς Meursius Ba Be || 254 εἰλημάτων V edd. || διόροφα P || 255 τριόροφα P || καὶ: μὴ edd. || ὀλίγων edd.: ὀλίγων P || 258 Τετραγγούριν: τε Τραγγούριον *con.* Safarik Τραγγούριον *mg.* P¹ Τράγουρις *mg.* V² || μικρόν ἐστι νησίον V edd. || 261 μικρόν: μακρόν *con.* Jenkins || τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ V edd.: τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον P || 262 μάρτυρ edd. || 263 Δεκατέρων: Κάτερα *mg.* V³ || 264 πεπληγμένον *con.* Jenkins: πεπληγμένον P edd. || 265 ιε': δεκαπέντε edd. || ἢ *addendum* *con.* Bury || κ': εἰκοσι edd. || 267 κύκλον V edd. || 268 τῷ αὐτῷ V edd.: τὸ αὐτὸ P || 269 ὀκταίριος *corr.* Kukules Kyriakides: ὀκταίριος Meursius Ba Be: ἀκαιρέως P || 271 ἡλιματικῶς P: εἰληματικὸς V edd. || 272 'Ρωμαίων V edd.: ῥῶ' P || 273 ἰάμ' ἔρα V Me ἡμερὰ P: ἰάμ' ἔρατ Meursius Ba Be ||

80^rP προεκτισμένον ἦν τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον· ἔστιν δὲ τὸ κά|στρον μέγα.
 'Η δὲ κοινὴ συνήθεια καλεῖ αὐτὸ Διάδωρα. 'Εν δὲ τῷ αὐτῷ κάστρῳ²⁷⁵
 κεῖται ἐν σαρκὶ ἡ ἁγία 'Αναστασία, ἡ παρθένος, θυγάτηρ γεγонуῖα
 Εὐσταθίου τοῦ κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκείνον βασιλεύσαντος, καὶ ὁ ἅγιος
 Χρυσόγονος μοναχὸς καὶ μάρτυς καὶ ἡ ἁγία ἄλυσις αὐτοῦ. 'Ο δὲ ναὸς
 τῆς ἁγίας 'Αναστασίας ἐστὶν δρομικός, ὁμοιος <τῷ> τῶν Χαλκοπρατειῶν
 ναῶ, μετὰ κιόνων πρασίνων καὶ λευκῶν, ὅλος εἰκονισμένος ἐξ ὕλογραφίας²⁸⁰
 ἀρχαίας· ὁ δὲ πάτος αὐτοῦ ἐστὶν ἀπὸ συγκοπῆς θαυμαστῆς. Ἔστιν
 δὲ καὶ ἕτερος ναὸς πλησίον αὐτοῦ εἰληματικός, ἡ 'Αγία Τριάς, καὶ
 140Be ἐπάνω τοῦ ναοῦ αὐ|τοῦ πάλιν ἕτερος ναὸς δίκην κατηχουμένων, καὶ
 80^vP αὐτὸς εἰληματικός, εἰς δν | καὶ ἀνέρχονται διὰ κοχλίου.

"Οτι εἰσὶν νησία ὑπὸ τὴν ἐπικράτειαν τῆς Δελματίας μέχρι Bene-285
 βενδοῦ πυκνά καὶ πάμπολλα, ὥστε μηδέποτε φοβεῖσθαι ἐκεῖσε κλύδωνα
 τὰ πλοῖα. Ἐξ αὐτῶν τῶν νησιῶν ἐστὶν τὸ κάστρον ἡ Βέκλα, καὶ εἰς
 ἕτερον νησίον ἡ "Αρβη, καὶ εἰς ἕτερον νησίον τὰ "Οψαρα, καὶ εἰς ἕτερον
 νησίον τὸ Λουμβρικάτον, ἅτινα κατοικοῦνται μέχρι τοῦ νῦν. Τὰ δὲ
 λοιπὰ εἰσὶν ἀοίκητα, ἔχοντα ἐρημόκαστρα, ὧν τὰ ὀνόματά εἰσιν οὕτως²⁹⁰
 Καταυτρεβενώ, Πιζούχ, Σελβώ, Σκερδά, 'Αλωήπ, Σκηρδάκισσα, Πυρό-
 τιμα, Μελετᾶ, 'Εστιουνήζ καὶ ἕτερα πάμπολλα, ὧν τὰ ὀνόματα οὐ νοοῦν-
 81^rP ται. Τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ κάστρα, τὰ ὄντα εἰς τὴν ξηρὰν τοῦ θέματος | καὶ κρατη-
 θέντα παρὰ τῶν εἰρημένων Σκλάβων, ἀοίκητα καὶ ἔρημα ἴστανται,
 μηδεὶς κατοικοῦντος ἐν αὐτοῖς. 295

30. Διήγησις περὶ τοῦ θέματος Δελματίας.

Εἰ πᾶσιν ἡ γνώσις καλόν, καὶ ἡμεῖς ἄρα τῶν πραγμάτων τὴν
 γνώσιν καταλαμβάνοντες οὐ πόρρω τούτου γινόμεθα. "Οθεν καὶ πᾶσι
 φανεράν ποιοῦμεν τῶν μεθ' ἡμᾶς πῇ μὲν τούτων τὴν δῆλωσιν, πῇ δὲ
 ἐτέρων ἀξιολόγων τινῶν, ἵνα καὶ διπλοῦν ἐπακολουθῇ τὸ καλόν. 5
 141Be Τοῖς οὖν καὶ τῆς Δελματίας | τὴν παράληψιν ζητοῦσιν, ὅπως
 ἐλήφθη παρὰ τῶν Σκλαβικῶν ἐθνῶν, ἐντεῦθεν ἔστιν μαθεῖν, ἀλλὰ πρότε-
 ρον τὴν θέσιν αὐτῆς διηγητέον. Ἐκ παλαιοῦ τοίνυν ἡ Δελματία τὴν

F 30. 2 πᾶσιν — καλόν: cf. Prov. 1, 7; cf. De Cer. (ed. Bonn) 456, 4—5.

V 275 τῷ αὐτῷ V edd.: τὸ αὐτὸ P || 277 post Εὐσταθίου *aliquid excidisse con.* Bury || 279 <τῷ> τῶν con. Bekker: τῶν P: τῷ V edd. || Χαλκοπρατίων P || 280 ὕλογραφίας: στυλογραφίας con. Meursius || 282 εἰληματικῶς P: εἰλημα-
 τικός edd. || 284 εἰληματικῶς P: εἰληματικός V edd. || κοχλίου con. Kukulles: κοχλείας P κοχλείας V edd. || 285 "Οτι V edd.: ["Οτι P || 286 κλύδωνα ἐκεῖσε edd. || 288 τὰ: ἡ edd. || 289 Λουμβρικάτον *mg.* V^a ||

this city had already been founded before it; it is a big city. Vulgar usage gives it the name Diadora. In the same city lies in the flesh St. Anastasia, the virgin, daughter of Eustathius, who was on the throne at that time; and St. Chrysogonus, monk and martyr, and his holy chain. The church of St. Anastasia is a basilica like the church of the Chalcopratia, with green and white columns, and all decorated with encaustic pictures in the antique style; its floor is of wonderful mosaic. Near it is another church, a domed one, Holy Trinity, and above this church again is another church, like a triforium, domed also, into which they mount by a spiral staircase.

Under the control of Dalmatia is a close-set and very numerous archipelago, extending as far as Beneventum, so that ships never fear to be overwhelmed in those parts. One of these islands is the city of Vekla, and on another island Arbe, and on another island Opsara, and on another island Lumbricatōn, and these are still inhabited. The rest are uninhabited and have upon them deserted cities, of which the names are as follows: Katautrebēno, Pizouch, Selbo, Skerda, Aloëp, Skirdakissa, Pyrotima, Meleta, Estiounez, and very many others of which the names are not intelligible. The remaining cities, on the mainland of the province, which were captured by the said Slavs, now stand uninhabited and deserted, and nobody lives in them.

30. Story of the province of Dalmatia.

If knowledge be a good thing for all, then we too are approaching it by arriving at the knowledge of events. For this reason we are giving, for the benefit of all who come after us, a plain account both of these matters and of certain others worthy of attention, so that the resulting good may be twofold.

They, then, who are inquiring into the taking of Dalmatia also, how it was taken by the nations of the Slavs, may learn of it from what follows; but first of all its geographical position must be told. In olden times, there-

290 ἔχοντα V edd.: ἔχων[τα] P || 291 Καταυτρεβενῶ P Καταυγρεβενῶ seu Καταυγρεβενῶ conī. Skok || Πιζύχ edd. Γιζύχ conī. Rački || Σελβῶ P || Σκιρδάκισσα V edd. Σκιρδᾶ Κίσσα conī. Šafarik || 292 Μελετά V edd. || Ἑστιουνήζ: Σεστρουνήζ (= Σεστρουνήσιον seu Σεστρου-νησίον?) conī. Rački Grot Ἑστρουνήζ conī. Skok.

30. 3 γινόμεθα (conī. etiam Bekker Bury): γινώμεθα V edd. || 4 φανεράν Be: φανερά P || 5 τινῶν ἀξιολόγων edd. || καὶ om. V edd. || ἐπανακολουθῇ edd. || 7 Σκλαβι(ν)ικῶν Migne || 8 ante τοίνυν add. μὲν edd. ||

81^vP ἀρχὴν μὲν εἶχεν | ἀπὸ τῶν συνόρων Δυρραχίου, ἤγουν ἀπὸ Ἀντιβάρεως, καὶ παρετείνετο μὲν μέχρι τῶν τῆς Ἰστροίας ὁρῶν, ἐπλατύνετο δὲ μέχρι τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ. Ἦν δὲ ἅπανα ἡ τοιαύτη περίχωρος ὑπὸ τὴν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχήν, καὶ ἐνδοξότερον τῶν ἄλλων ἐσπερίων θεμάτων τὸ τοιοῦτον θέμα ἐτύγχανε, πλὴν παρελήφθη παρὰ τῶν Σκλαβικῶν ἐθνῶν τρόπῳ τοιῷδε. Κάστρον ἐστὶν πλησίον Ἀσπαλάθου, ὃ Σαλῶνα λέγεται, ἔργον Διοκλητιανοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀλλ' ἡ μὲν Ἀσπάλαθος καὶ αὕτη παρὰ 15 Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐκτίσθη, καὶ τὰ αὐτοῦ βασιλικά ἐκεῖσε ἐτύγχανον, εἰς 82^vP δὲ Σαλῶνα κατέκουν οἱ τε μεγιστᾶνες αὐτοῦ καὶ τῶν ὅχλων ἱκανοί. Ὑπῆρχε δὲ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον κεφαλὴ πάσης τῆς Δελματίας. Ἡθροίζοντο οὖν ἀνὰ πᾶν ἔτος ἐκ τῶν λοιπῶν κάστρων Δελματίας στρατιῶται ἐφιπποί, καὶ ἀπεστέλλοντο ἀπὸ Σαλῶνος μέχρι τῶν χιλιῶν, καὶ ἐφύλαττον 20 εἰς τὸν Δανούβιον ποταμὸν ἕνεκεν τῶν Ἀβάρων. Οἱ γὰρ Ἀβάρεις ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Δανουβίου ποταμοῦ τὰς διατριβάς ἐποιοῦντο, ἐνθα ἀρτίως εἰσὶν οἱ Τοῦρκοι νομάδα βίον ζῶντες. Ἀπερχόμενοι δὲ οἱ Δελματίας κατ' ἔτος ἔβλεπον πολλάκις ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὰ τε κτήνη καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώ- 142Be πους. Ἐδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς κατὰ τινα χρόνον διαπερᾶσαι | καὶ ἐρευνῆσαι, 25 82^vP τίνες εἰσὶν οἱ ἐκεῖσε τὴν δίαίταν ἔχοντες. Πε|ράσαντες οὖν εὗρον τὰς γυναῖκας τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ τὰ παῖδια μόνα, τοὺς ἀνδρας δὲ καὶ τὴν ἀκμάζουσιν ἡλικίαν ἐν ταξιδίῳ. Ἀφ' οὗ οὖν ἐπιπέσαντες ἡχημαλῶτευσαν αὐτούς, καὶ ὑπέστρεψαν ἀταλαιπώρως, ἀποκομίσαντες τὴν τοιαύτην πρᾶϊδαν εἰς Σαλῶνα. Ὡς οὖν ὑπέστρεψαν οἱ Ἀβάρεις ἐκ τοῦ ταξιδίου 30 καὶ τὸ γενόμενον, ἀφ' ὧν ἔπαθον, ἔμαθον, ἐταράχθησαν μὲν, ἡγνῶν δέ, ὁπόθεν αὐτοῖς ἡ τοιαύτη πληγὴ προσεγένετο. Ἐδοξεν οὖν παραφυλάξαι αὐτοῖς τὸν καιρὸν καὶ μαθεῖν τὸ πᾶν ἐξ αὐτοῦ. Ἐπεὶ οὖν κατὰ τὸ σύνθηες αὐθις οἱ ταξεῶται ἀπεστάλησαν ἀπὸ Σαλῶνος, ἦσαν δὲ οὐκ ἐκεῖνοι, 35 83^vP ἀλλ' ἕτεροι, ταῦτα ἐκείνοις | καὶ οὗτοι κατὰ βουλὰς ἔθεντο. Διεπέρασαν 30 οὖν κατ' αὐτῶν, ἐντυχόντες δὲ αὐτοῖς συνηγμένοι οὐμοῦ, οὐχ, ὥς τὸ πρότερον, ἐσχορπισμένοις, οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν οὐκ ἐποίησαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ πάντων δεινότατα ἔπαθον. Οἱ μὲν γὰρ αὐτῶν ἐσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ ἐχειρώθησαν ζῶντες, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἐκείνων τῶν χειρῶν ἐξέφυγεν. Ἐξετάσαντες δὲ αὐτούς, τίνες τε καὶ ὅθεν εἰσὶν, καὶ ἀναμαθόντες, ὅτι ἐξ αὐτῶν ἔπαθον 40 τὴν εἰρημένην πληγὴν, ἐτι δὲ καὶ περὶ τῆς ποιότητος τοῦ τόπου αὐτῶν ἐρευνήσαντες, καὶ ὅσον ἐξ ἀκοῆς ἀρεσθέντες, ἐκράτησαν τοὺς ζῶντας δεσμίους, καὶ ἐνεδύσαντο τὰ ἱμάτια αὐτῶν, καθὰ ἐκεῖνοι, καὶ δὴ τοὺς

V¹⁰ Ἰστροίας P^x V¹ edd.: Ἰστροίας P V || 13 Σκλαβικῶν V edd. || 14 Σαλῶνα edd.: Σάλωνε P || 16 τοῦ om. V edd. || 17 Σαλῶνα (coni. etiam Bury): Σαλῶνα Ba Be || κατέκουν V edd.: κατοίκουν P || τε om. edd. || μεγιστᾶνες P || ἱκανοί P || 19 ante Δελματίας add. τῆς V edd. || 20 post ἀπὸ add.

fore, Dalmatia used to start at the confines of Dyrrachium, or Antibari, and used to extend as far as the mountains of Istria, and spread out as far as the river Danube. All this area was under the rule of the Romans, and this province was the most illustrious of all the provinces of the west; however, it was taken by the nations of the Slavs in the following manner. Near Spalato is a city called Salona, built by the emperor Diocletian; Spalato itself was also built by Diocletian, and his palace was there, but at Salona dwelt his nobles and large numbers of the common folk. This city was the head of all Dalmatia. Now, every year a force of cavalry from the other cities of Dalmatia used to collect at, and be despatched from Salona, to the number of a thousand, and they would keep guard on the river Danube, on account of the Avars. For the Avars had their haunts on the far side of the river Danube, where now are the Turks, and led a nomad life. The men of Dalmatia who went there every year would often see the beasts and men on the far side of the river. On one occasion, therefore, they decided to cross over and investigate who they were that had their abode there. So they crossed, and found only the women and children of the Avars, the men and youths being on a military expedition. Falling suddenly upon them, therefore, they made them prisoner, and returned unmolested, carrying off this booty to Salona. Now when the Avars came back from their military expedition and learnt from their losses what had happened, they were confounded, but know not from what quarter this blow had come upon them. They therefore decided to bide their time and in this way to discover the whole. And so, when according to custom the garrison was once more dispatched from Salona, not the same men as before but others, they too decided to do what their predecessors had done. So they crossed over against them, but finding them massed together, not scattered abroad as on the previous occasion, not merely did they achieve nothing but actually suffered the most frightful reverse. For some of them were slain, and the remainder taken alive, and not one escaped the hand of the enemy. The latter examined them as to who they were and whence they came, and having learnt that it was from them that they had suffered the blow aforesaid, and having moreover found out by enquiry the nature of their homeland and taken a fancy to it as far as they might from hearsay, they held the survivors captive and dressed themselves up in their clothes, just as the others *had worn them*, and then, mounting the horses and *taking*

την Me add. τῆς Ba Be || Σαλῶνα V Me || χιλίων V edd.: ,α P ||
 21 Δανουβίου edd. || ἔνεκα edd. || ᾿Αβαρες V Me Ba: ᾿Αβάρεις Be Migne
 ᾿Αβαρης P^x ᾿Αβάρης P ᾿Αβαροι mg. P^a || 23 Τούρκοι P || 28 ἐπιπέσοντες
 edd. || 30 ᾿Αβαρες edd. ᾿Αβάρεις Migne || 32/3 αὐτοῖς παραφυλάξαι edd. ||
 35 ταῦτα Be: ταῦτα P || ἐκείνοις edd.: ἐκείνοι P || 37 οὐκ escl. Be Bury ||
 38 αὐτῶν V edd.: αὐτοῖς P || 40 τε om. edd. || 42 ἀρεσθέντες: ἐρασθέντες
 V edd. ||

- 83^vP | ἵππους ἀναβάντες, <λαβόντες> ἐπὶ χειρας τὰ τε φλάμμουλα καὶ τὰ
 143Be λοιπὰ σημεῖα, ἃ ἐπεφέρνηντο μετ' αὐτῶν, | ἀπῆραν πάντες φροσαστικῶς 45
 καὶ κατὰ τῆς Σαλῶνος ὥρμησαν. Ὡς οὖν καὶ τὸν καιρὸν ἔμαθον ζητήσαν-
 τες, καθ' ὃν οἱ ταξεύονται ἐκ τοῦ Δανουβίου ὑπέστρεφον (ἦν δὲ τὸ μέγα
 καὶ ἅγιον σάββατον), ἦλθον καὶ κατὰ τὴν αὐτὴν ἡμέραν. Καὶ τὸ μὲν
 πληθὺς, ὅτε δήπου πλησίον ἐγένοντο, τοῦ φροσάτου ἀπεκρύβη, μέχρι
 δὲ τῶν χιλίων, ὅστινες τοὺς τε ἵππους καὶ τὰς στολὰς εἰς ἀπάτην ἐκέκτηντο 50
 τῶν Δελματινῶν, ἐξήλασαν. Ἀναγνωρίσαντες δὲ οἱ τοῦ κάστρου τὰ τε
 σημεῖα καὶ τὴν ἀμφίασιν αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν, ὥς ἔθους ὄντος
 84^P αὐτοῖς | τοῦ ὑποστρέφειν ἐν αὐτῇ, ἤνοιξαν τὰς πόρτας, καὶ ὑπεδέξαντο
 αὐτοὺς μετὰ περιχαρείας. Ἐκεῖνοι δὲ ἅμα τῷ εἰσελθεῖν τὰς τε πόρτας
 ἐκράτησαν, καὶ δῆλῃν διὰ σημείου τὴν πράξιν τῷ φροσάτῳ πεπονηκότες, 55
 συνεισδραμεῖν καὶ συνεισελθεῖν παρεσκεύασαν. Κατέσφαξαν οὖν πάντας
 τοὺς τῆς πόλεως, καὶ ἕκτοτε κατεκράτησαν πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν Δελματίας,
 καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν αὐτῇ. Μόνα δὲ τὰ πρὸς θάλασσαν πολίχνια οὐ
 συνέδωκαν αὐτοῖς, ἀλλὰ κατεῖχοντο παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων διὰ τὸ εἶναι
 τὸν πόρον τῆς ζωῆς αὐτῶν ἐκ τῆς θαλάσσης. Ἰδόντες οὖν οἱ Ἀβαρεῖς 60
 καλλίστην οὖσαν τὴν τοιαύτην γῆν, κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν αὐτῇ. Οἱ δὲ Χρω-
 84^vP βάτοι κα|τῷκουν τηνικαῦτα ἐκεῖθεν Βαγιβαρείας, ἐνθα εἰσὶν ἀρτίως
 οἱ Βελοχρωβάτοι. Μία δὲ γενεὰ διαχωρισθεῖσα ἐξ αὐτῶν, ἡγουν ἀδελφοὶ
 πέντε, ὁ τε Κλουκᾶς καὶ ὁ Λόβελος καὶ ὁ Κοσέντζης καὶ ὁ Μουχλῶ καὶ
 144Be ὁ Χρωβάτος καὶ ἀδελφοὶ δύο, ἡ Τουγά καὶ ἡ Βουγά, μετὰ | τοῦ λαοῦ 65
 αὐτῶν ἦλθον εἰς Δελματίαν, καὶ εὗρον τοὺς Ἀβαρεῖς κατέχοντας τὴν
 τοιαύτην γῆν. Ἐπὶ τινες οὖν χρόνους πολεμοῦντες ἀλλήλους, ὑπερίσχυσαν
 οἱ Χρωβάτοι, καὶ τοὺς μὲν τῶν Ἀβάρων κατέσφαξαν, τοὺς δὲ λοιποὺς
 ὑποταγῆναι κατηνάγκασαν. Ἐκτοτε οὖν κατεκρατήθη ἡ τοιαύτη χώρα
 παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων, καὶ εἰσὶν ἀκμὴν ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ ἐκ {τοὺς} τῶν Ἀβ- 70
 85^vP ρων, καὶ γινώσκονται Ἀβαρεῖς | ὄντες. Οἱ δὲ λοιποὶ Χρωβάτοι ἔμειναν
 πρὸς Φραγγίαν, καὶ λέγονται ἀρτίως Βελοχρωβάτοι, ἡγουν ἄσπροι
 Χρωβάτοι, ἔχοντες ἴδιον ἄρχοντα· ὑπόκεινται δὲ Ὡτω, τῷ μεγάλῳ
 ῥηγὶ Φραγγίας, τῆς καὶ Σαξίας, καὶ ἀβάπτιστοι τυγχάνουσιν, συμπενθε-
 ρίας μετὰ τοὺς Τούρκους καὶ ἀγάπας ἔχοντες. Ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν Χρωβάτων, τῶν 75
 ἐλθόντων ἐν Δελματίᾳ, διεχωρίσθη μέρος τι, καὶ ἐκράτησεν τὸ Ἰλλυρικὸν
 καὶ τὴν Παννονίαν· εἶχον δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ ἄρχοντα αὐτεξούσιον, διαπεμπόμε-
 νον καὶ μόνον πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα Χρωβατίας κατὰ φιλίαν. Μέχρι δὲ
 χρόνων τινῶν ὑπετάσσοντο καὶ οἱ ἐν Δελματίᾳ ὄντες Χρωβάτοι τοῖς Φράγ-

V 44 λαβόντες *add.* Moravesik *coni.* Bekker || φλάμμουλα P || 45 φροσαστικῶς
 P || 46 ἔρμισαν P || 50 χιλίων *edd.*: ,α P || 51 Δελματινῶν *edd.*: Δαλματινῶν
 P || 54 τῷ *scr.* Moravesik: τὸ P τοῦ V *edd.* || 55 τῷ φροσάτῳ V *edd.*:

in their hands the standards and the rest of the insignia which *the others* had brought with them, they all started off in military array and made for Salona. And since they had learnt by enquiry also the time at which the garrison was wont to return from the Danube (which was the Great and Holy Saturday), they themselves arrived on that same day. When they got near, the bulk of the army was placed in concealment, but up to a thousand of them, those who, to play the trick, had acquired the horses and uniforms of the Dalmatians, rode out in front. Those in the city, recognizing their insignia and dress, and also the day, for upon this day it was customary for them to return, opened the gates and received them with delight. But they, as soon as they were inside, seized the gates and, signaling their exploit to the army, gave it the cue to run in and enter with them. And so they put to the sword all in the city and thereafter made themselves masters of all the country of Dalmatia and settled down in it. Only the townships on the coast held out against them, and continued to be in the hands of the Romans, because they obtained their livelihood from the sea. The Avars, then, seeing this land to be most fair, settled down in it. But the Croats at that time were dwelling beyond Bavaria, where the Belocroats are now. From them split off a family of five brothers, Kloukas and Lobelos and Kosentzis and Mouchlo and Chrobatos, and two sisters, Touga and Bouga, who came with their folk to Dalmatia and found the Avars in possession of that land. After they had fought one another for some years, the Croats prevailed and killed some of the Avars and the remainder they compelled to be subject to them. And so from that time this land was possessed by the Croats, and there are still in Croatia some who are of Avar descent and are recognized as Avars. The rest of the Croats stayed over against Francia, and are now called Belocroats, that is, white Croats, and have their own prince; they are subject to Otto, the great king of Francia, or Saxony, and are unbaptized, and intermarry and are friendly with the Turks. From the Croats who came to Dalmatia a part split off and possessed themselves of Illyricum and Pannonia; they too had an independent prince, who used to maintain friendly contact, though through envoys only, with the prince of Croatia. For a number of years the Croats of Dalmatia also

τὸ φοσεάτο P || 60 Ἄβαρεις V Me Ba: Ἄβαρης P Ἀβάρεις Be Migne || 62 κατοίκουν edd.: κατοικούν P || Βαγβαρείας: Βαβιγαρείας *coni.* Pavié || 63 Βελοχρωβάτοι edd.: Βελαχρωβάτοι P || μά P || 64 πέντε V edd.: ε' P || Κλουκάς P || Μουχλῶ P || 65 Χρωβάτος (*coni. etiam* Bury): Χρώβατος edd. || δύο V edd.: β' P || Τουγά P: Τοῦγα V edd. || Βούγα edd. || 66 Ἀβάρεις Be || 67 ἀλλήλοις V edd. || 68 κατέσφαξαν *litteras* κατ *in ras. ser.* P² || 70 ἐκ: <πινες> ἐκ *coni.* Bury || τοὺς *secl.* Migne Bury: τοῦτων *coni.* Dujčev Kyriakides || 71 Ἀβάρεις Be || 73 *ante* ἴδιον *add.* τὸν edd. || 74 ῥιγί P || τῆς: τε *coni.* Bandurius || 74/5 συμπεθερίας P || 75 τῶν¹ *om.* V edd. || 77 Παννονίαν Ba Be: Παπνονίαν P mg. P⁸ || 78 καὶ μόνον *om.* Be ||

- 85^vP γοις, καθὼς καὶ πρότερον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ αὐτῶν· τοσοῦτον δὲ ἐσκληρύνοντο 80
οἱ Φράγγοι πρὸς αὐτούς, ὅτι τὰ ὑπομάσθια τῶν Χρωβάτων φονεύοντες
προσέριπτον αὐτὰ σκύλαξιν. Μὴ δυνάμενοι δὲ οἱ Χρωβάτοι ταῦτα
παρὰ τῶν Φράγγων ὑφίστασθαι, διέστησαν ἀπ' αὐτῶν, φονεύσαντες
καὶ οὓς εἶχον ἄρχοντας ἐξ αὐτῶν. Ὅθεν ἐστράτευσαν κατ' αὐτῶν
ἀπὸ Φραγγίας φοσσᾶτον μέγα, καὶ ἐπὶ ἑπτὰ χρόνους πολεμήσαντες 85
145Be ἀλλήλοις, ὅφρ' καὶ μόγις ὑπερῖσχυσαν οἱ Χρωβάτοι, καὶ ἀνείλυνον τοὺς
Φράγγους πάντας καὶ τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν Κοτζιλιν καλούμενον. Ἐκτοτε
δὲ μέιναντες αὐτοδέσποτοι καὶ αὐτόνομοι, ἐξητήσαντο τὸ ἅγιον βάπτισμα
παρὰ τοῦ Ῥώμης, καὶ ἀπεστάλησαν ἐπίσκοποι, καὶ ἐβάπτισαν αὐτοὺς
86^vP ἐπὶ Πορίνου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος αὐτῶν. | Διμερίσθη οὖν ἡ χώρα αὐτῶν εἰς 90
ζουπανίας ἰα', ἧγουν ἡ Χλεβιανὰ, ἡ Τζέντζηνα, τὰ Ἕμοτα, ἡ Πλέβα,
ἡ Πεσέντα, ἡ Παραθαλασσία, ἡ Βρεβέρη, ἡ Νόνα, ἡ Τνήνα, ἡ Σίδραγα,
ἡ Νίνα· καὶ ὁ βοάνος αὐτῶν κρατεῖ τὴν Κρίβασαν, τὴν Λίτζαν καὶ τὴν
Γουτζησκά. Καὶ ἡ μὲν εἰρημένη Χρωβατία, ἀλλὰ καὶ αἱ λοιπαὶ Σκλαβη-
νίαι διάκεινται οὕτως· ἡ δὲ Διόκλεια πλησιάζει πρὸς τὰ καστέλλια τοῦ 95
Δυρραχίου, ἧγουν πρὸς τὸν Ἐλισσὸν καὶ πρὸς τὸ Ἐλκύνιον καὶ τὴν
Ἀντίβαριν, καὶ ἔρχεται μέχρι τῶν Δεκατέρων, πρὸς τὰ ὀρεινὰ δὲ πλησιάζει
τῇ Σερβλίᾳ. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ κάστρου τῶν Δεκατέρων ἄρχεται ἡ ἄρχοντία
88^vP Τερβουνίας, καὶ παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ Ῥαουσίου, πρὸς δὲ | τὰ ὀρεινὰ
αὐτῆς πλησιάζει τῇ Σερβλίᾳ. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Ῥαουσίου ἄρχεται ἡ ἄρχοντία 100
τῶν Ζαχλούμων, καὶ παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ Ὀροντίου ποταμοῦ,
καὶ πρὸς μὲν τὴν παραθαλασσίαν πλησιάζει τοῖς Παγανοῖς, πρὸς δὲ
τὰ ὀρεινὰ εἰς ἄρκτον μὲν πλησιάζει τοῖς Χρωβάτοις, εἰς κεφαλὴν δὲ τῇ
Σερβλίᾳ. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Ὀροντίου ποταμοῦ ἄρχεται ἡ Παγανία, καὶ
παρεκτείνεται μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ τῆς Ζεντίνας, τρεῖς ἔχουσα ζουπανίας, 105
146Be τὴν Ῥάστωτζαν καὶ τὸν Μοκρὸν καὶ τοῦ Δαλέν. | Καὶ αἱ μὲν δύο ζου-
πανίαι, ἧγουν ἡ Ῥάστωτζα καὶ ἡ τοῦ Μοκροῦ, πρόσκεινται τῇ θαλάσῃ,
αἷτινες καὶ σαγήνας ἔχουσιν· ἡ δὲ τοῦ Δαλενοῦ μήκοθεν ἐστὶν τῆς
87^vP θαλάσσης, | καὶ ἐκ τῆς ἐργασίας ζῶσι τῆς γῆς. Πλησιάζουσιν δὲ αὐτοῖς
νῆσοι τέσσαρες, τὰ Μέλετα, τὰ Κούρκουρα, ἡ Βράτζα καὶ ὁ Φάρος, 110
κάλλισται καὶ εὐφορώταται, ἐρημόκαστρα ἔχουσαι καὶ ἐλαιῶνας πολλούς·
οἰκοῦσι δὲ ἐν αὐταῖς, καὶ ἔχουσι τὰ κτήνη αὐτῶν, καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν ζῶσιν.
Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς Ζεντίνας τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄρχεται ἡ χώρα Χρωβατίας, καὶ
παρεκτείνεται πρὸς μὲν τὴν παραθαλασσίαν μέχρι τῶν συνόρων Ἰστρίας,
ἧγουν τοῦ κάστρου Ἀλβούνου, πρὸς δὲ τὰ ὀρεινὰ καὶ ὑπέρεκτεται μέχρι 115

V 85 φοσσᾶτον P || ἑπτὰ V edd.: ζ' P || πολεμήσαντες P || 87 αὐτῶν
V edd.: αὐτῶν P || Κοτζιλιν: Κοδλιν *conit*. Rađki Grot || 88 καὶ *om.* Be ||
89 *post* τοῦ *add.* πάπα Bury || 90 Πορίνου: Βορίνου *conit*. Rađki || ἄρχοντος
V edd.: ἀρχοστος P || 91 Τζέντζηνα edd. Τζέντζηνα *conit*. Šišić || 92 Βρεβέρα

were subject to the Franks, as they had formerly been in their own country; but the Franks treated them with such brutality that they used to murder Croat infants at the breast and cast them to the dogs. The Croats, unable to endure such treatment from the Franks, revolted from them, and slew those of them whom they had for princes. On this, a large army from Francia marched against them, and after they had fought one another for seven years, at last the Croats managed to prevail and destroyed all the Franks with their leader, who was called Kotzilis. From that time they remained independent and autonomous, and they requested the holy baptism from the bishop of Rome, and bishops were sent who baptized them in the time of Porinos their prince. Their country was divided into 11 'zupanias', viz., Chlebiana, Tzenzina, Imota, Pleba, Pesenta, Parathalassia, Breberi, Nona, Tnina, Sidraga, Nina; and their ban possesses Kribasa, Litza and Goutziska. Now, the said Croatia and the rest of the Slavonic regions are situated thus: Diocleia is neighbour to the forts of Dyrrachium, I mean, to Elissus and to Helcynium and Antibari, and comes up as far as Decatera, and on the side of the mountain country it is neighbour to Serbia. From the city of Decatera begins the domain of Terbounia and stretches along as far as Ragusa, and on the side of its mountain country it is neighbour to Serbia. From Ragusa begins the domain of the Zachlumi and stretches along as far as the river Orontius; and on the side of the coast it is neighbour to the Pagani, but on the side of the mountain country it is neighbour to the Croats on the north and to Serbia at the front. From the river Orontius begins Paganian and stretches along as far as the river Zentina; it has three 'zupanias', Rhastotza and Mokros and that of Dalen. Two of these 'zupanias', viz., Rhastotza and that of Mokros, lie on the sea, and possess galleys; but that of Dalenos lies distant from the sea, and they live by agriculture. Neighbour to them are four islands, Meleta, Kourkoura, Bratza and Pharos, most fair and fertile, with deserted cities upon them and many olive-yards; on these they dwell and keep their flocks, from which they live. From the river Zentina begins the country of Croatia and stretches along, on the side of the coast as far as the frontiers of Istria, that is, to the city of Alburnum, and on the side of the mountain country it encroaches some way upon

edd. || 93 Νίνα: Σμίνα *coni.* Rački || Κρίβασαν: Κρίβαναν *coni.* Rački Κρίβαβαν *coni.* Šišić Skok || 94 Γουτζισκά (*etiam* Bandurici Bury): Γουτζικᾶ edd. || 94/5 αἱ λοιπαὶ Σκλαβινίαι *coni.* Bury οἱ λοιποὶ Σκλαβίνοι Ba Be || Σκλαβινίαι P || 95 Διόκληρα P Ba Be || 96 Ἐλισσάν Be || τὸ: τὸν edd. || Ἐλκύνον P || 97 Ἀντιβάρην V edd.: Ἀντιβάρην P || 98 Σερβλεία P || 103 μὲν πλησιάζει — 105 ἔχουσα *ordinem versuum permulavit* Be || 103/4 τῇ Σερβλίᾳ edd.: τὴν Σερβλίαν P || 106 τὸν: τὸ V edd. || τοῦ: τὸ edd. || Δαλέν: Δαλμὲν *coni.* Novaković Rački || 107 Ῥάστωτζα (*littera a² erasa*) P^v Be: Ῥάστωτζα P V || Μόκρου edd.: Μόκρου P || 108 αἵτινες edd.: οἷτινες P || σαγίνας P || μηκέθεν Be || 109 ζῶσι *litteram ζ in ras. scr.* P¹ || 110 τέσσαρες edd.: δ' P || Βράτζα: Βράτζω V Βάρτζω edd. || 111 ἐλαῶνας *coni.* Bury: ἐλῶνας P ἐλῶνας edd. ἀμπελῶνας *coni.* Dujčev Kyriakides: || 113 ἀντὶ Χρωβατίας *add.* τῆς V edd. ||

τινὸς τῷ θέματι Ἰστροφίας, πλησιάζει δὲ πρὸς τὴν Τζέντινα καὶ τὴν Χλέ-
 βενα τῇ χώρᾳ Σερβλίας. Ἡ γὰρ χώρα Σερβλίας εἰς κεφαλὴν μὲν ἐστίν
 87^vP πασῶν τῶν λοιπῶν χωρῶν, πρὸς | ἄρκτον δὲ πλησιάζει τῇ Χρωβατίᾳ,
 πρὸς μεσημβρίαν δὲ τῇ Βουλγαρίᾳ. Ἀφ' οὗ δὲ κατεσκήνωσαν οἱ εἰρημέ-
 νοι Σκλάβοι, κατεκράτησαν πᾶσαν τὴν περίχωρον Δελματίας· ἡργάζοντο120
 δὲ τὰ κάστρα τῶν Ῥωμάνων τὰς νήσους, καὶ ἔχουν ἐξ αὐτῶν ὑπὸ δὲ
 τῶν Παγανῶν καθ' ἐκάστην ἐπαιχμαλωτιζόμενοι καὶ ἀφανιζόμενοι
 κατέλιπον τὰς τοιαύτας νήσους, βουλόμενοι εἰς τὴν ἡπειρον ἐργάζεσθαι.
 Ἐκωλύοντο δὲ παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων· οὐπω γὰρ ἐτέλουν αὐτοὺς φόρους,
 ἀλλὰ πάντα, ἅπερ ἀρτίως παρέχουσι τοῖς Σκλάβοις, τῷ στρατηγῷ125
 ταῦτα παρεῖχον. Ἀδυνάτως δὲ ἔχοντες τοῦ ζῆν προσῆλθον Βασιλεῖρ,
 147^{Be} 88^rP τῷ | αἰοιδίμῳ βα|σιλεῖ, ἀναδιδάξαντες τὰ εἰρημένα πάντα. Ὁ οὖν αἰοιδίμος
 ἐκεῖνος βασιλεὺς Βασίλειος προετρέψατο πάντα τὰ διδόμενα τῷ στρα-
 τηγῷ δίδοσθαι παρ' αὐτῶν τοῖς Σκλάβοις καὶ εἰρηνικῶς ζῆν μετ' αὐτῶν
 καὶ βραχὺ τι δίδοσθαι τῷ στρατηγῷ, ἵνα μόνον δείκνυται ἢ πρὸς τοὺς130
 βασιλεῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ πρὸς τὸν στρατηγὸν αὐτῶν ὑποταγῇ καὶ
 δούλωσις. Καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐγένοντο πάντα τὰ τοιαῦτα κάστρα ὑπόφορα
 τῶν Σκλάβων, καὶ τελοῦσιν αὐτοῖς πάκτα, τὸ μὲν κάστρον ἢ Ἀσπάλαθος
 νομίσματα σ', τὸ κάστρον τὸ Τετραγγούριν νομίσματα ρ', τὸ κάστρον
 τὰ Διάδωρα νομίσματα ρί', τὸ κάστρον τὰ Ὀψαρα νομίσματα ρ', τὸ135
 κάστρον ἢ Ἀρβή <νομίσματα> ρ', τὸ κάστρον ἢ Βέκλα <νομίσματα>
 88^vP ρ', ὡς ὁμοῦ νομίσματα ψί' | ἐκτὸς οἴνου καὶ ἐτέρων διαφόρων εἰδῶν
 ταῦτα γὰρ πλείονά εἰσιν ὑπὲρ τὰ νομίσματα. Τὸ δὲ κάστρον τὸ Ῥαούσιον
 μέσον τῶν δύο χωρῶν πρόσκειται, τῶν τε Ζαχλούμων καὶ τῆς Τερβου-
 νίας· ἔχουσι δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἀμπελώνας αὐτῶν εἰς ἀμφοτέρας τὰς χώρας,140
 καὶ τελοῦσι πρὸς μὲν τὸν ἄρχοντα τῶν Ζαχλούμων νομίσματα λς', πρὸς
 δὲ τὸν ἄρχοντα Τερβουνίας νομίσματα λς'.

31. Περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

148^{Be} Ὅτι οἱ Χρωβάτοι, οἱ εἰς τὰ τῆς Δελματίας νῦν κατοικοῦντες | μέρη,
 ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Χρωβάτων, τῶν καὶ ἄσπρων ἐπονυμαζομένων,
 κατάγονται, οἵτινες Τουρκίας μὲν ἐκεῖθεν, Φραγγίας δὲ πλησίον κατοί- 5
 89^rP κοῦσι, καὶ | συνοροῦσι Σκλάβοις, τοῖς ἀβαπτίστοις Σέρβοις. Τὸ δὲ
 Χρωβάτοι τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἐρμηνεύεται, τουτέστιν 'οἱ
 πολλὴν χώραν κατέχοντες'. Οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα τῶν

V 120 ἐργάζοντο edd. || 121 Ῥωμαίων edd. || 122 ἐπαιχμαλωτιζόμενοι P || 124
 αὐτοὺς: αὐτοῖς edd. || 129 αὐτῶν¹ edd.: αὐτῶ P || 130 δίδοσθαι P ||
 133 ἢ Be: ὁ P || 135 νομίσματα¹ om. edd.: „ P || νομίσματα² om. edd.: „ P ||

the province of Istria, and at Tzentina and Chlebena becomes neighbour to the country of Serbia. For the country of Serbia is at the front of all the rest of the countries, but on the north is neighbour to Croatia, and on the south to Bulgaria. Now, after the said Slavs had settled down, they took possession of all the surrounding territory of Dalmatia; but the cities of the Romani took to cultivating the islands and living off them; since, however, they were daily enslaved and destroyed by the Pagani, they deserted these islands and resolved to cultivate the mainland. But they were stopped by the Croats; for they were not yet tributary to the Croats, and used to pay to the military governor all that they now pay to the Slavs. Finding it impossible to live, they approached the glorious emperor Basil and told him all the above. And so that glorious emperor Basil ordered that all that was then paid to the military governor they should pay to the Slavs, and live at peace with them, and that some slight payment should be made to the military governor, as a simple token of submission and servitude to the emperors of the Romans and their military governor. And from that time all these cities became tributary to the Slavs, and they pay them fixed sums: the city of Spalato, 200 nomismata; the city of Tetrangourin, 100 nomismata; the city of Diadora, 110 nomismata; the city of Opsara, 100 nomismata; the city of Arbe, 100 nomismata; the city of Vekla, 100 nomismata; so that the total amounts to 710 nomismata, exclusive of wine and various other commodities, which are in excess of the payments in cash. The city of Ragusa is situated between the two countries of the Zachlumi and of Terbounia; they have their vineyards in both countries, and pay to the prince of the Zachlumi 36 nomismata, and to the prince of Terbounia 36 nomismata.

31. Of the Croats and of the country they now dwell in.

The Croats who now live in the region of Dalmatia are descended from the unbaptized Croats, also called 'white', who live beyond Turkey and next to Francia, and have for Slav neighbours the unbaptized Serbs. 'Croats' in the Slav tongue means 'those who occupy much territory'. These same Croats arrived to claim the protection of the emperor of the Romans Heraclius

136 νομισματα¹ add. Moravesik || νομισματα² add. Moravesik || 137 νομισματα Bandurius Be: .. P || 141 νομισματα Be: .. P.

31. 3 τῆς om. edd. || 4 τῶν καὶ conl. Marquart Bury: καὶ τῶν P edd. || 8 ante πολλὴν add. τὴν edd. ||

Ῥωμαίων, Ἡράκλειον πρόσφυγες παρεγένοντο πρὸ τοῦ τοὺς Σέρβλους
 προσφυγεῖν εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν βασιλέα, Ἡράκλειον κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν, ὃν οἱ 10
 Ἀβάρεις πολεμήσαντες, ἀπ' ἐκεῖσε τοὺς Ῥωμᾶνους ἐναπεδίωξαν, οὓς
 ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἀγαγὼν ἐκεῖσε κατεσκήνωσεν,
 διὸ καὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐκλήθησαν διὰ τὸ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετοίκους αὐτοὺς γενέσθαι
 ἐν ταῖς τοιαύταις χώραις, ἤγουν τῆς νῦν καλουμένης Χρωατίας καὶ
 89^{vP} Σερβλίας. Παρὰ | δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων ἐκδιωχθέντες οἱ αὐτοὶ Ῥωμᾶνοι ἐν 15
 ταῖς ἡμέραις τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων, Ἡρακλείου, αἱ τούτων
 ἔρημοι καθεστήκασιν χώραι. Προστάζει οὖν τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου
 οἱ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι καταπολεμήσαντες καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε τοὺς Ἀβάρους
 ἐκδιώξαντες, Ἡρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως κελεύσει ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τῶν Ἀβάρων
 χώρᾳ, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν, κατεσκήνωσαν. Εἶχον δὲ οἱ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι τῷ 20
 τότε καιρῷ ἄρχοντα τὸν πατέρα τοῦ Ποργᾶ. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Ἡράκλειος
 ἀποστείλας καὶ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἀγαγὼν ἱερεῖς καὶ ἐξ αὐτῶν ποιήσας
 149^{Be} ἀρχιεπίσκοπον καὶ ἐπίσκοπον καὶ πρεσβυτέρους | καὶ διακόνους, τοὺς
 90^{rP} | Χρωβάτους ἐβάπτισεν· εἶχον δὲ τῷ τότε καιρῷ οἱ τοιοῦτοι Χρωβάτοι
 ἄρχοντα τὸν Ποργᾶ. 25

Ὅτι ἡ τοιαύτη χώρα, εἰς ἣν οἱ Χρωβάτοι κατεσκήνώθησαν, ἐξ
 ἀρχῆς ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων, ἐξ οὗ καὶ
 παλάτια καὶ ἵπποδρόμια τοῦ βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐν τῇ <τῶν> αὐτῶν
 Χρωβάτων χώρα μέχρι τῆς νῦν περισώζονται εἰς τὸ κάστρον Σαλώνας
 πλησίον τοῦ κάστρου Ἀσπαλάθου. 30

Ὅτι οὗτοι οἱ βαπτισμένοι Χρωβάτοι ἔξωθεν τῆς ἰδίας αὐτῶν
 χώρας πολεμεῖν ἄλλοτρίας οὐ βούλονται· χρησμὸν γάρ τινα καὶ ὀρισμὸν
 ἔλαβον παρὰ τοῦ πάπα Ῥώμης, τοῦ ἐπὶ Ἡρακλείου, τοῦ βασιλέως
 90^{vP} Ῥωμαίων, ἀποστείλαντος | ἱερεῖς καὶ τούτους βαπτίσαντος. Καὶ γὰρ
 οὗτοι οἱ Χρωβάτοι μετὰ τὸ αὐτοὺς βαπτισθῆναι συνθήκας καὶ ἰδιόχειρα 35
 ἐποίησαντο καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἅγιον Πέτρον, τὸν ἀπόστολον ὄρκους βεβαίους
 καὶ ἀσφαλεῖς, ἵνα μηδέποτε εἰς ἄλλοτρίαν χώραν ἀπέλθωσιν καὶ πολε-
 μήσωσιν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον εἰρηνεύειν μετὰ πάντων τῶν βουλομένων, λαβόν-
 τες καὶ παρὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πάπα Ῥώμης εὐχὴν τοιάνδε, ὥς εἴ τινες ἄλλοι
 ἐθνικοὶ κατὰ τῆς τῶν αὐτῶν Χρωβάτων χώρας ἐπέλθωσιν καὶ πόλεμον 40
 ἐπενέγκωσιν, ἵνα τῶν Χρωβάτων ὁ Θεὸς προπολεμεῖ καὶ προῖσταται,
 καὶ νίκας αὐτοῖς Πέτρος ὁ τοῦ Χριστοῦ μαθητῆς προξενεῖ. Μετὰ δὲ
 91^{rP} χρόνους πολλοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις Τερπημέρῃ τοῦ | ἄρχοντος, τοῦ πατρὸς
 150^{Be} τοῦ ἄρχοντος Κρασημέρῃ, ἐλθὼν ἀπὸ Φραγγίας, τῆς μεταξὺ Χρωατίας
 καὶ Βενετίας, ἀνὴρ τις τῶν πάντων μὲν εὐλαβῶν, Μαρτῖνος ὀνόματι, σχῆμα 45
 δὲ κοσμικὸν περιβεβλημένος, ὃν καὶ λέγουσιν οἱ αὐτοὶ Χρωβάτοι θαυ-

before the Serbs claimed the protection of the same emperor Heraclius, at that time when the Avars had fought and expelled from those parts the Romani whom the emperor Diocletian had brought from Rome and settled there, and who were therefore called 'Romani' from their having been translated from Rome to those countries, I mean, to those now called Croatia and Serbia. These same Romani having been expelled by the Avars in the days of this same emperor of the Romans Heraclius, their countries were made desolate. And so, by command of the emperor Heraclius these same Croats defeated and expelled the Avars from those parts, and by mandate of Heraclius the emperor they settled down in that same country of the Avars, where they now dwell. These same Croats had at that time for prince the father of Porgas. The emperor Heraclius sent and brought priests from Rome, and made of them an archbishop and a bishop and elders and deacons, and baptized the Croats; and at that time these Croats had Porgas for their prince.

This country in which the Croats settled themselves was originally under the dominion of the emperor of the Romans, and hence in the country of these same Croats the palace and hippodromes of the emperor Diocletian are still preserved, at the city of Salona, near the city of Spalato.

These baptized Croats will not fight foreign countries outside the borders of their own; for they received a kind of oracular response and injunction from the pope of Rome who in the time of Heraclius, emperor of the Romans, sent priests and baptized them. For after their baptism the Croats made a covenant, confirmed with their own hands and by oaths sure and binding in the name of St. Peter the apostle, that never would they go upon a foreign country and make war on it, but rather would live at peace with all who were willing to do so; and they received from the same pope of Rome a benediction to this effect, that if any other foreigners should come against the country of these same Croats and bring war upon it, then might God fight for the Croats and protect them, and Peter the disciple of Christ give them victories. And many years after, in the days of prince Terpimer, father of prince Krasimer, there came from Francia that lies between Croatia and Venice a man called Martin, of the utmost piety though clad in the garb of a layman, whom these same Croats

V 9 τοὺς Σέρβλους edd.: τοῖς Σέρβλοις P || 11 Ἀβάρεις Be || πολεμίσαντες P || 13 Ῥωμάνοι P || 15 Ῥωμάνοι P || 18 καταπολεμίσαντες P || 21 Ποργά P: Βοργά seu Βορκά coní. Rački || 23 ἐπισκόπους coní. Bury || 26 ἡ in ras. scr. P¹ || 28 τῶν add. edd. || 29 Σαλῶνας P: Σαλῶνος F || 31 Ὅτι οὗτοι — 57 Βενετίας interpolationem posterioris aetatis esse coní. Laskin || 31 Χρωβατοὶ (sine acc.) P || 32 ἄλλοτρίαις M^a ἄλλοτρίοις Ba Be || ὀρισμένον Ba Be: ὀρισμένον P || 33 ante Ἡρακλείου add. τοῦ edd. || 37/8 πολεμίσαντων P edd. || προπολεμεῖ coní. Dujčev Kukules Kyriakides: πρὸς πολεμεῖ P προσπολεμεῖ V edd. || 42 προξενεῖ litteras ei in ras. scr. P¹ || 45 εὐλαβῶν: εὐσεβῶν coní. Meursius ||

ματὰ ἱκανὰ ποιῆσαι· ἀσθενὴς δὲ ὢν ὁ τοιοῦτος εὐλαβὴς ἀνὴρ καὶ τοὺς πόδας ἡκρωτηριασμένος, ὥστε ὑπὸ τεσσάρων βαστάζεσθαι καὶ περιφέρεισθαι, ὅπου δ' ἂν καὶ βούλεται, τὴν τοιαύτην τοῦ ἀγιωτάτου πάπα ἐντολὴν τοῖς αὐτοῖς Χρωβάτοις διατηρεῖν μέχρι τέλους ζωῆς αὐτῶν 50 ἐπεθέσπισεν, ἐπευξάμενος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς αὐτοῖς τὴν ὁμοίαν τοῦ πάπα εὐχὴν. Διὰ τοῦτο οὔτε αἱ σαγῆναι τῶν τοιούτων Χρωβάτων, οὔτε αἱ 91^vP κον|δοῦραι οὐδέποτε κατὰ τινος πρὸς πόλεμον ἀπέρχονται, εἰ μὴ ἄρα τις κατ' αὐτῶν ἐπέλθοι. Πλὴν διὰ τῶν τοιούτων πλοίων ἀπέρχονται οἱ βουλούμενοι τῶν Χρωβάτων διωκεῖν ἐμπόρια, ἀπὸ κάστρον εἰς κάστρον 55 περιερχόμενοι τὴν τε Παγανίαν καὶ τὸν κόλπον τῆς Δελματίας καὶ μέχρι Βενετίας.

“Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων Χρωβατίας ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἡγουν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας Ἑρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως, δουλικῶς ἐστὶν ὑποτεταγμένος τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ οὐδέποτε τῷ ἄρχοντι Βουλγαρίας καθυπετάγη. Ἄλλ’ 60 οὐδὲ Βούλγαρος ἀπῆλθεν πρὸς πόλεμον κατὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων, εἰ μὴ Μιχαήλ, ὁ ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας, ὁ Βορίσης, ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολεμήσας 92^rP αὐτοῖς | καὶ μηδὲν ἀνύσαι δυνηθεὶς εἰρήνευσε μετ’ αὐτῶν, ξενιάσας τοὺς Χρωβάτους καὶ ξενιασθεὶς παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων. Ἄλλ’ οὐδὲ πώ- 151Bο ποτε οἱ Χρω|βάτοι οὗτοι τοῖς Βουλγάροις πάκτον δεδώκασιν, εἰ μὴ 65 πολλάκις ἀμφοτέροι ξενία τινα πρὸς ἀλλήλους παρέσχον φιλοφρονήσεως ἕνεκα.

“Ὅτι (ἐν) τῇ βαπτισμένη Χρωβατία εἰσὶν κάστρα οἰκούμενα· ἡ Νῶνα, τὸ Βελέγραδον, τὸ Βελίτζιν, τὸ Σκόρδονα, τὸ Χλεβένα, τὸ Στόλ- 70 πον, τὸ Τενήν, τὸ Κόρι, τὸ Κλαβόκα.

“Ὅτι ἡ βαπτισμένη Χρωβατία ἐκβάλλει καβαλλαρικὸν ἕως τῶν ξ’ χιλιάδων, πεζικὸν δὲ ἕως χιλιάδων ρ’ καὶ σαγῆνας μέχρι τῶν π’ καὶ κονδοῦρας μέχρι τῶν ρ’. Καὶ αἱ μὲν σαγῆναι ἔχουσιν ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν μ’, 92^vP αἱ | δὲ κονδοῦραι ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν κ’, αἱ δὲ μικρότεραι κονδοῦραι ἀνὰ ἀνδρῶν ι’.

“Ὅτι τὴν πολλὴν ταύτην δύναμιν καὶ τὸ τοῦ λαοῦ πλήθος εἶχεν 75 ἡ Χρωβατία μέχρι τοῦ ἄρχοντος Κρασημέρη. Κάκεινου μὲν τελευτήσαντος, τοῦ δὲ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ, Μιροσθλάβου ἄρξαντος ἔτη τέσσαρα καὶ ὑπὸ τοῦ Πριβουνία βοεάνου ἀναιρεθέντος, καὶ διχονοιῶν καὶ πολλῶν διχοστασιῶν εἰς τὴν χώραν γενομένων, ἡλάττωται καὶ τὸ καβαλλαρικὸν καὶ τὸ πεζικὸν καὶ αἱ σαγῆναι καὶ αἱ κονδοῦραι τῆς ἐξουσίας τῶν Χρωβά- 80 των. Ἀρτίως δὲ ἔχει σαγῆνας λ’, κονδοῦρας μεγάλας καὶ μικράς * * * καὶ καβαλλαρικὸν * * * καὶ πεζικὸν * * *.

V 47 εὐλαβής: εὐσεβής *conit*. Meursius || 48 post τεσσάρων *add.* καὶ V *edd.* || 49 βούληται *edd.* || 50 διατηρεῖν] *litteram p in ras. scr.* P¹ || 51 δὲ *omittendūm conit*. Kukules || καὶ *om.* V Me || 53 κονδοῦραι *scr.* Moravcsik: κοντοῦραι P *edd.* ||

declare to have wrought abundant miracles; this pious man, who was sick and had had his feet amputated, so that he was carried by four bearers and taken about wherever he wanted to go, confirmed upon these same Croats this injunction of the most holy pope, that they should keep it so long as their life should last; and he himself also pronounced on their behalf a benediction similar to that which the pope had made. For this reason neither the galleys nor the cutters of these Croats ever go against anyone to make war, unless of course he has come upon them. But in these vessels go those of the Croats who wish to engage in commerce, travelling round from city to city, in Paganía and the gulf of Dalmatia and as far as Venice.

The prince of Croatia has from the beginning, that is, ever since the reign of Heraclius the emperor, been in servitude and submission to the emperor of the Romans, and was never made subject to the prince of Bulgaria. Nor has the Bulgarian ever gone to war with the Croats, except when Michael Boris, prince of Bulgaria, went and fought them and, unable to make any headway, concluded peace with them, and made presents to the Croats and received presents from the Croats. But never yet have these Croats paid tribute to the Bulgarians, although the two have often made presents to one another in the way of friendship.

In baptized Croatia are the inhabited cities of Nona, Belgrade, Belitzin, Skordona, Chlebena, Stolpon, Tenin, Kori, Klaboka.

Baptized Croatia musters as many as 60 thousand horse and 100 thousand foot, and galleys up to 80 and cutters up to 100. The galleys carry 40 men each, the cutters 20 each, and the smaller cutters 10 each.

This great power and multitude of men Croatia possessed until the time of prince Krasimer. But when he was dead and his son Miroslav, after ruling four years, was made away with by the ban Pribounias, and quarrels and numerous dissensions broke out in the country, the horse and foot and galleys and cutters of the Croat dominion were diminished. And now it has 30 galleys and *** cutters, large and small, and *** horse and *** foot.

55 ἐμπορεία P || κάστρον¹ (etiam Bury): κάστρου edd. || 62 Βορίσης coní. Meursius Bandurius Bury: Βορώσης P edd. || πολεμίας P || 66 ἀλλήλους V edd.: ἀλλήλοις P || 68 ἐν τῇ βαπτισμένῃ Χρῳαβία coní. Bury: ἡ βαπτισμένη Χρῳαβία P edd. || 69 Νόνα V edd. || Βελόγγραδον edd. Βελόγγραδον V mg. P^s || Βελίτζειν V edd. || 70 Κόρι V edd.: Κόρη P Κόρι-κον coní. Rački || 71 τῶν σκ. V edd. || 72 ξ' χιλιάδων scr. Moravcsik: ξ ᾗ ᾗ P Ba Be || χιλιάδων² corr. Moravcsik: χιλιάδας P edd. || σαγήνας P || 73 κονδοῦρας (littera τ in δ correcte) PY: κοντούρας P V edd. κονδοτούρας mg. P^s || 74 κονδοῦραι (littera τ erasa et s. v. littera δ addita) P¹ mg. P^s V edd.: κοντούραι P || 77 τέσσαρα edd.: δ' P || 78 Πριβουνία (etiam Bandurius Be): Πριβουνίου V Me Ba || 80 κονδοῦραι V edd.: κονδοῦραι P || 81 κονδοῦρας P || post κονδοῦρας addendum μ' coní. Bury || post μικράς lac. ind. P numerum condurarum excidisse coní. Meursius Bandurius || 82 post καθολλαρικὸν et post πεζικὸν numerum equitatus pediatatusque excidisse coní. Meursius Bandurius ||

“Οτι ἡ μεγάλη Χρωατία, ἡ καὶ ἄσπρη ἐπονομαζομένη, ἀβάπτιστος
 93P τυγχάνει μέχρι τῆς σήμερον, καθὼς καὶ οἱ πλη|σιάζοντες αὐτὴν Σέρβλοι.
 152Be Ὀλιγώτερον δὲ καβαλλαρικὸν ἐκβάλ|λουσιν, ὁμοίως καὶ πεζικὸν παρὰ 85
 τὴν βαπτισμένην Χρωατίαν, ὡς συνεχέστερον πραιδευόμενοι παρὰ τε
 τῶν Φράγγων καὶ Τούρκων καὶ Πατζινακιδῶν. Ἄλλ’ οὐδὲ σαγήνας
 κέκτηνται, οὔτε κονδούρας, οὔτε ἐμπορευτικά πλοῖα, ὡς μήκοθεν οὔσης
 τῆς θαλάσσης· ἀπὸ γὰρ τῶν ἐκεῖσε μέχρι τῆς θαλάσσης ὁδὸς ἐστὶν
 ἡμερῶν λ’. Ἡ δὲ θάλασσα, εἰς ἣν διὰ τῶν λ’ ἡμερῶν κατέρχονται, ἐστὶν 90
 ἡ λεγομένη σκοτεινὴ.

32. Περὶ τῶν Σέρβλων καὶ τῆς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι οἱ Σέρβλοι ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Σέρβλων, τῶν καὶ
 ἄσπρων ἐπονομαζομένων, κατάγονται, τῶν τῆς Τουρκίας ἐκεῖθεν κατοι-
 93P κούτων εἰς τὸν παρ’ | αὐτοῖς Βοΐκι τόπον ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἐν οἷς πλη-
 σιάζει καὶ ἡ Φραγγία, ὁμοίως καὶ ἡ μεγάλη Χρωατία, ἡ ἀβάπτιστος, 5
 ἡ καὶ ἄσπρη προσαγορευομένη· ἐκεῖσε τοίνυν καὶ οὗτοι οἱ Σέρβλοι τὸ
 ἀπ’ ἀρχῆς κατώκουν. Δύο δὲ ἀδελφῶν τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς Σερβλίας ἐκ τοῦ
 πατρὸς διαδεξαμένων, ὁ εἰς αὐτῶν τὸ τοῦ λαοῦ ἀναλαβόμενος ἡμισυ,
 εἰς Ἡράκλειον, τὸν βασιλεῖα Ῥωμαίων, προσέφυγεν, ὃν καὶ προσδεξά-
 μενος ὁ αὐτὸς Ἡράκλειος βασιλεὺς, παρέσχεν τόπον εἰς κατασκήνωσιν 10
 ἐν τῷ θέματι Θεσσαλονίκης τὰ Σέρβλια, ἃ ἔκτοτε τὴν τοιαύτην προση-
 γορίαν ἀπέληφεν. Σέρβλοι δὲ τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων διαλέκτῳ ‘δοῦλοι’
 153Be προσαγορεύονται, | ὅθεν καὶ ‘σέρβυλα’ ἡ κοινὴ συνήθεια τὰ δουλικὰ
 94P | φησιν ὑποδήματα, καὶ ‘τζερβουλιανούς’ τοὺς τὰ εὐτελεῖ καὶ πενιχρὰ
 ὑποδήματα φοροῦντας. Ταύτην δὲ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν ἔσχον οἱ Σέρβλοι διὰ 15
 τὸ δοῦλοι γενέσθαι τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων. Μετὰ δὲ χρόνον τινὰ ἔδοξεν
 τοὺς αὐτοὺς Σέρβλους εἰς τὰ ἴδια ἀπελθεῖν, καὶ τούτους ἀπέστειλεν ὁ
 βασιλεὺς. Ὅτε δὲ διεπέρασαν τὸν Δανούβιν ποταμόν, μετάμελοι γενό-
 μενοι ἐμήνυσαν Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ βασιλεῖ διὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ, τοῦ τότε τὸ
 Βελέγραδον κρατοῦντος, δοῦναι αὐταῖς ἑτέραν γῆν εἰς κατασκήνωσιν. 20
 Καὶ ἐπειδὴ ἡ νῦν Σερβλία καὶ Παγανία καὶ ἡ ὀνομασθεῖσα Ζαχλούμων
 94P χώρα καὶ Τερβουνία καὶ ἡ τῶν Καναλιτῶν ὑπὸ | τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ βασι-
 λέως Ῥωμαίων ὑπῆρχον, ἐγένοντο δὲ αἱ τοιαῦται χώραι ἔρημοι παρὰ
 τῶν Ἀβάρων (ἀπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε γὰρ Ῥωμάνους τοὺς νῦν Δελματίαν καὶ
 τὸ Δυρράχιον οἰκοῦντας ἀπέλασαν), {καὶ} κατεσκήνωσεν ὁ βασιλεὺς 25

V 83 ἡ καὶ (coni. etiam Marquart Bury): καὶ ἡ V edd. || 85 δὲ om. V edd. ||
 87 σαγήνας P || 88 κονδαῦρας P || οὔσης V edd.: οὔσαν P || 90 λ’ ἡμερῶν:
 ἡμερῶν λ’ edd.

Great Croatia, also called 'white', is still unbaptized to this day, as are also the Serbs who are its neighbours. They muster fewer horse and fewer foot than does baptized Croatia, because they are more constantly plundered, by the Franks and Turks and Pechenegs. Nor have they either galleys or cutters or merchant-ships, for the sea is far away; for from those parts to the sea it is a journey of 30 days. And the sea to which they come down after the 30 days is that which is called 'dark'.

32. Of the Serbs and of the country they now dwell in.

The Serbs are descended from the unbaptized Serbs, also called 'white', who live beyond Turkey in a place called by them Boiki, where their neighbour is Francia, as is also Great Croatia, the unbaptized, also called 'white'; in this place, then, these Serbs also originally dwelt. But when two brothers succeeded their father in the rule of Serbia, one of them, taking one half of the folk, claimed the protection of Heraclius, the emperor of the Romans, and the same emperor Heraclius received him and gave him a place in the province of Thessalonica to settle in, namely Serbia, which from that time has acquired this denomination. 'Serbs' in the tongue of the Romans is the word for 'slaves', whence the colloquial 'serbula' for menial shoes, and 'tzerboulianoi' for those who wear cheap, shoddy footgear. This name the Serbs acquired from their being slaves of the emperor of the Romans. Now, after some time these same Serbs decided to depart to their own homes, and the emperor sent them off. But when they had crossed the river Danube, they changed their minds and sent a request to the emperor Heraclius, through the military governor then holding Belgrade, that he would grant them other land to settle in. And since what is now Serbia and Pagania and the so-called country of the Zachlumi and Terbounia and the country of the Kanalites were under the dominion of the emperor of the Romans, and since these countries had been made desolate by the Avars (for they had expelled from those parts the Romani who now live in Dalmatia and

32. 2 Σερβλῶν P || 4 Βόικα edd. Βοϊσκι coní. Marquart Βοϊοι coní. Skok Βόϊμι coní. Grégoire || 6 τοίνυν: οὖν V edd. || 12 ἀπειληφεν: παρείληφε edd. || 13 σέρβουλα edd. || δουλικὰ coní. Bekker: δουλικῶς P edd. δουλικῶς <έχοντά> coní. Bury || 18 Δάνουβιν edd. || 20 Βελόγραδον scr. Moravesik: Βελάγραδον P Βελόγραδον Be || 21 ὀνομασθεῖσα: ὀνομαζομένη V edd. || 23 ἔρημαι Ba Be || 25 ἀπήλασαν Be || καὶ omittendum coní. Bury Kukules ||

τοὺς αὐτοὺς Σέρβλους ἐν ταῖς τοιαύταις χώραις, καὶ ἦσαν τῷ βασιλεῖ
 Ῥωμαίων ὑποτασσόμενοι, οὓς ὁ βασιλεὺς πρεσβύτας ἀπὸ Ῥώμης
 ἀγαγὼν ἐβάπτισεν, καὶ διδάξας αὐτοὺς τὰ τῆς εὐσεβείας τελεῖν καλῶς,
 αὐτοῖς τὴν τῶν Χριστιανῶν πίστιν ἐξέθετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ Βουλγαρία ὑπὸ
 τὴν ἐξουσίαν ἦν τῶν Ῥωμαίων, * * * αὐτοῦ οὖν τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ 30
 95^P Σέρβλου, τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα προσφυγόντος, τελευτήσαντος, | κατὰ
 διαδοχὴν ἤρξεν ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, καὶ πάλιν ὁ ἕγγων, καὶ οὕτως ἐκ τῆς γενεᾶς
 154^{Be} αὐτοῦ οἱ καθεξῆς ἄρχοντες. | Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινὰς ἐγεννήθη ἐξ αὐτῶν
 ὁ Βοϊσέσθλαβος, καὶ ἐξ αὐτοῦ ὁ Ῥοδόσθλαβος, καὶ ἀπ' ἐκείνου ὁ Προ-
 σηγότης, καὶ ἐξ ἐκείνου ὁ Βλαστίμηρος, καὶ μέχρις αὐτοῦ τοῦ Βλαστιμή- 35
 ρου μετὰ τῶν Σέρβλων εἰρηνικῶς διετέλουν οἱ Βούλγαροι, ὡς γείτονες
 καὶ συνορίται ἀγαπῶντες ἀλλήλους, ἔχοντες δὲ δούλωσιν καὶ ὑποταγὴν
 εἰς τοὺς βασιλεῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ εὐεργετούμενοι παρ' αὐτῶν. Ἐπὶ
 δὲ τῆς ἀρχῆς τοῦ αὐτοῦ Βλαστιμήρου ἦλθεν μετὰ πολέμου Πρεσιάμ,
 ὁ ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας, κατὰ τῶν Σέρβλων θέλων αὐτοὺς ὑποτάξαι, 40
 96^P ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τρι|ετίαν πολεμήσας, οὐ μόνον οὐδὲν ἤνυσεν, ἀλλὰ καὶ λαὸν
 αὐτοῦ πλεῖστον ἀπώλεσεν. Μετὰ δὲ θάνατον Βλαστιμήρου τοῦ ἄρχοντος
 διεδέξαντο τὴν ἀρχὴν τῆς Σερβλίας οἱ τρεῖς υἱοὶ αὐτοῦ, ὁ Μουντιμήρος
 καὶ ὁ Στροϊμήρος καὶ ὁ Γοϊνίκος, μερισάμενοι τὴν χώραν. Ἐπὶ τούτων
 παρεγένετο ὁ τῆς Βουλγαρίας ἄρχων, Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βορίσης, θέλων διεκδικῆ- 45
 σαι τὴν ἦσαν Πρεσιάμ, τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ, καὶ πολεμήσας, εἰς τοσοῦτον
 αὐτὸν ἐπτόησαν οἱ Σέρβλοι, ὥστε καὶ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ, Βλαδίμηρον
 ἐκράτησαν δέσμιον μετὰ καὶ βοϊλάδων δώδεκα μεγάλων. Τότε δὴ τῇ
 τοῦ υἱοῦ θλίψει καὶ μὴ θέλων ὁ Βορίσης εἰρήνευσε μετὰ τῶν Σέρβλων.
 96^P Μέλλων δὲ ὑποστρέφειν ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ | καὶ φοβηθεὶς, μήποτε ἐνεδρεύσω- 50
 σιν αὐτὸν οἱ Σέρβλοι καθ' ὁδόν, ἐπεζήτησεν εἰς διάσωσιν αὐτοῦ τὰ τοῦ
 ἄρχοντος Μουντιμήρου παιδία, τὸν Βόρενα καὶ τὸν Στέφανον, οἱ καὶ
 155^{Be} δίδεωσαν αὐτὸν ἀβλαβῆ μέχρι τῶν συνόρων, | ἕως τῆς Ῥάσης. Καὶ ὑπὲρ
 τῆς τοιαύτης χάριτος δέδωκεν αὐτοῖς Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βορίσης δωρεὰς μεγάλας,
 καὶ ἐκεῖνοι ἀντέδωκαν αὐτῷ χάριν ξενίων ψυχάρια δύο, φαλκῶνια δύο, 55
 σκυλία δύο καὶ γούνας ὀγδοήκοντα, ὅπερ λέγουσιν οἱ Βούλγαροι εἶναι
 πάκτον. Μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ ἐγένοντο κατ' ἀλλήλων οἱ αὐτοὶ τρεῖς ἀδελφοί,
 οἱ ἄρχοντες Σερβλίας, καὶ γενόμενος ἐπικρατέστερος ὁ εἰς αὐτῶν, ὁ
 96^P Μουντιμήρος, καὶ θέλων μόνος | τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐπέχειν, κρατήσας παρέ-
 δωκεν τοὺς δύο ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, μόνον τὸ παιδίον τοῦ ἐνὸς ἀδελφοῦ, 60
 Γοϊνίκου, Πέτρον ὀνόματι, παρ' ἐαυτῷ κρατήσας καὶ ἐπιμελούμενος,

V 27 πρεσβύτας: πρεσβυτέρους *comi*. Bury || 29 τὴν τῶν Χριστιανῶν *comi*. Bekker
 Bury: τὴν τῶν χρόνων P τὴν *om*. V *edd*. || 30 *post* Ῥωμαίων *lac. ind*.
 Jenkins || τοῦ¹ (*addendum comi. etiam Bekker*): *om*. *edd*. || 30/1 τοῦ

Dyrrachium), therefore the emperor settled these same Serbs in these countries, and they were subject to the emperor of the Romans; and the emperor brought elders from Rome and baptized them and taught them fairly to perform the works of piety and expounded to them the faith of the Christians. And since Bulgaria was beneath the dominion of the Romans *** when, therefore, that same Serbian prince died who had claimed the emperor's protection, his son ruled in succession, and thereafter his grandson, and in like manner the succeeding princes from his family. And after some years was begotten of them Boiseslav, and of him Rodoslav, and of him Prosigois, and of him Blastimer; and up to the time of this Blastimer the Bulgarians lived at peace with the Serbs, whose neighbours they were and with whom they had a common frontier, and they were friendly one toward another, and were in servitude and submission to the emperors of the Romans and kindly entreated by them. But, during the rule of this same Blastimer, Presiam, prince of Bulgaria, came with war against the Serbs, with intent to reduce them to submission; but though he fought them three years he not merely achieved nothing but also lost very many of his men. After the death of prince Blastimer his three sons, Muntimer and Stroimer and Goinikos, succeeded to the rule of Serbia and divided up the country. In their time came up the prince of Bulgaria, Michael Boris, wishing to avenge the defeat of his father Presiam, and made war, and the Serbs discomfited him to such an extent that they even held prisoner his son Vladimer, together with twelve great boyars. Then, out of grief for his son, Boris perforce made peace with the Serbs. But, being about to return to Bulgaria and afraid lest the Serbs might ambush him on the way, he begged for his escort the sons of prince Muntimer, Borenas and Stephen, who escorted him safely as far as the frontier at Rasi. For this favour Michael Boris gave them handsome presents, and they in return gave him, as presents in the way of friendship, two slaves, two falcons, two dogs and eighty furs, which the Bulgarians describe as tribute. A short while after, the same three brothers, the princes of Serbia, fell out, and one of them, Muntimer, gained the upper hand and, wishing to be sole ruler, seized the other two and handed them over to Bulgaria, keeping by him and caring for only the son

Σέρβλου: τῆς Σερβλίας *coni.* Bekker Bury || 32 ἔγγων V *edd.* ἔγγων P: ἔγγονος PY || 33 ἐγεννήθη *edd.*: ἐγεννήθην P || 35 Βλαστήμερος *edd.* || 35/6 Βλαστημέρου *edd.* || 39 Βλαστημέρου *edd.* || 41 πολέμιος P || 42 ἀπόλεσεν P || Βλαστημέρου *edd.* || 43 Μουντίμηρος Bury || 44 Στροτήμηρος V Στροήμηρος P: Στροήμηρος Ba Be || 45/6 διεκδικῆσαι: ἐκδικῆσαι *edd.* || 46 πολέμιος P || 47 ἐπτήσαν *edd.*: ἐπτασαν *coni.* Kyriakides || Βλαδίμηρον *scr.* Moravcsik: Βλαστήμηρον V Βλαστιμήρων P Βλαστήμερον *edd.* Βλαδήμερον *coni.* Šafarik Rački Dümmler Grot Zlatarski || 48 βοιάδων *scr.* Moravcsik: βοιάδων P *edd.* || δώδεκα *edd.*: ἑβ' P || δῆ: δὲ *edd.* || 51 καθ' ὅδον *coni.* Bekker: καθ' ὁδόν *edd.* καθοδόν P || 56 γούνας P || ὀγδοήκοντα Moravcsik π' P: ἐνενήκοντα Me ἐννεήκοντα Ba Be || 57 αὐτοὶ *om.* *edd.* || 58 γενόμενος *edd.* || 59 Μουντίμηρος *edd.* ||

- ὅστις καὶ φυγὼν ἦλθεν ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ, περὶ οὗ μετ' ὀλίγον ῥηθήσεται. Ὁ δὲ προρρηθείς ἀδελφὸς ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, Στροΐμηρος εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Κλονίμηρον, ᾧ καὶ γυναῖκα παρέσχεν ὁ Βορίσσης Βουλγάραν. Ἐξ αὐτοῦ γεννᾶται ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ ὁ Τζεσθλαβος. Ὁ δὲ Μουντιμῆρος, ὁ τοὺς δύο ἀδελφούς διώξας καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν δεξάμενος, γεννᾷ υἱοὺς τρεῖς, τὸν Πριβέσθλαβον καὶ τὸν Βράνον καὶ τὸν Στέφανον, καὶ μετὰ τὸν αὐτοῦ θάνατον διαδέχεται αὐτὸν ὁ πρῶτος υἱός, ὁ Πριβέσθλαβος. Μετὰ οὖν χρόνον
- 97^P ἕνα ἐξελθὼν | ἀπὸ Χρωβατίας ὁ προειρημένος Πέτρος, ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Γοϊνίκου, διώκει ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς τὸν ἐξάδελφον αὐτοῦ, Πριβέσθλαβον μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν, κάκεινος τὴν ἀρχὴν διαδέχεται, ἐκεῖνοι δὲ φυγόντες εἰσέρχονται ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ. Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τρεῖς ἐλθὼν ὁ Βράνος πρὸς
- 156^{Be} τὸ | πολεμῆσαι τὸν Πέτρον καὶ ἡττηθεὶς καὶ κρατηθεὶς παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐτυφλώθη. Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους δύο φυγὼν καὶ ὁ Κλονίμηρος ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίαν, ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ Τζεσθλάβου, καταλαμβάνει καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ εἰσέρχεται εἰς ἐν τῶν κάστρων Σερβλίας, τὴν Δοστινίκαν, μετὰ λαοῦ πρὸς τὸ παραλαβεῖν τὴν ἀρχὴν. Τοῦτον οὖν πολεμήσας ὁ Πέτρος ἀπέκτεινεν,
- 97^{vP} καὶ ἐκράτησεν | ἕτερα ἑτῇ κ', ἄρξας ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος, τοῦ μακαριωτάτου καὶ ἁγίου βασιλέως, ἔχων ὑποταγὴν καὶ δούλωσιν πρὸς αὐτόν. Εἰρήνευσεν δὲ καὶ μετὰ Συμεών, τοῦ ἄρχοντος Βουλγαρίας, ὥστε καὶ τὸν σύντεκνον αὐτὸν ἐποίησεν. Μετὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν, ὃν αὐτὸς ὁ κύρις Λέων ἐβασίλευσεν, παρεγένετο ὁ τότε εἰς τὸ Δυρράχιον στρατηγῶν, ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων ὁ Ῥαβδοῦχος, ὁ μετὰ τοῦτο μάγιστρος τιμηθεὶς καὶ λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου, εἰς Παγανίαν, τὴν τότε παρὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας διακρατουμένην, πρὸς τὸ βουλευθῆναι καὶ συντυχεῖν τῷ αὐτῷ ἄρχοντι Πέτρῳ περὶ τινος δουλείας καὶ ὑποθέσεως. Ζηλοτυπήσας δὲ
- 98^P πρὸς τοῦτο Μιχαήλ, ὁ ἄρχων τῶν Ζαχλού|μων, ἐμήνυσεν Συμεών, τῷ Βουλγάρων ἄρχοντι, ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων δεξιούται διὰ δώρων τὸν ἄρχοντα Πέτρον πρὸς τὸ συνεπαρεῖν τοὺς Τούρκους καὶ ἐπελθεῖν κατὰ Βουλγαρίαν. Ἐγένετο δὲ κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον καὶ πόλεμος εἰς Ἀχελῶν μεταξὺ τῶν Ῥωμαίων καὶ τῶν Βουλγάρων. Ἐμμανῆς οὖν
- 157^{Be} ἐν τούτῳ γενόμενος Συμεών κατὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβ|λίας, Πέτρον, ἀπέστειλε τὸν Σιγρίτζη Θεόδωρον καὶ τὸν Μαρμαῆν ἐκεῖνον μετὰ φοσσάτου, ἔχοντας καὶ ἄρχοντόπουλον Παῦλον, τὸν υἱὸν Βράνου, ὃν ὁ Πέτρος, ὁ ἄρχων Σερβλίας ἐτύφλωσεν. Δόλῳ οὖν ἐπελθόντες οἱ Βούλ-
- 98^{vP} γαραι πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα Σερβλίας καὶ συντεκν|αν μετ' αὐτοῦ ποιησάμενοι καὶ ὕρκῳ βεβαιώσαντες μὴ παθεῖν τι παρ' αὐτῶν ἐναντίον, ἡπάτησαν αὐτὸν ἐξελθεῖν πρὸς αὐτούς, ὃν καὶ πάραυτα δεσμήσαντες εἰσήγαγον

of the one brother Goïnikos, Peter by name, who fled and came to Croatia, and of whom we shall speak in a moment. The aforesaid brother Stroïmer, who was in Bulgaria, had a son Klonimer, to whom Boris gave a Bulgarian wife. Of him was begotten Tzeëslav, in Bulgaria. Muntimer, who had expelled his two brothers and taken the rule, begat three sons, Pribeslav and Branos and Stephen, and after he died his eldest son Pribeslav succeeded him. Now, after one year the aforesaid Peter, son of Goïnikos, came out of Croatia and expelled from the rule his cousin Pribeslav and his two brothers, and himself succeeded to the rule, and they fled away and entered Croatia. Three years later Branos came to fight Peter and was defeated and captured by him, and blinded. Two years after that, Klonimer, the father of Tzeëslav, escaped from Bulgaria and he too came and with an army entered one of the cities of Serbia, Dostinika, with intent to take over the rule. Peter attacked and slew him, and continued to govern for another 20 years, and his rule began during the reign of Leo, the holy emperor, of most blessed memory, to whom he was in submission and servitude. He also made peace with Symeon, prince of Bulgaria, and even made him god-father to his child. Now, after the time that this lord Leo had reigned, the then military governor at Dyrrachium, the protospatharius Leo Rhabduchus, who was afterwards honoured with the rank of magister and *office* of foreign minister, arrived in Pagania, which was at that time under the control of the prince of Serbia, in order to advise and confer with this same prince Peter upon some service and affair. Michael, prince of the Zachlumi, his jealousy aroused by this, sent information to Symeon, prince of Bulgaria, that the emperor of the Romans was bribing prince Peter to take the Turks with him and go upon Bulgaria. It was at that time when the battle of Achelo had taken place between the Romans and the Bulgarians. Symeon, mad with rage at this, sent against prince Peter of Serbia Sigritzis Theodore and the late Marmais with an army, and they took with them also the young prince Paul, son of Branos whom Peter, prince of Serbia, had blinded. The Bulgarians proceeded against the prince of Serbia by treachery, and, by binding him with the relationship of god-father and giving a sworn undertaking that he should suffer nothing untoward at their hands, they tricked him into coming out to them, and then on the instant bound him

om. edd. || Τζεεσθλάβος P *edd.* || Μουντιμήρος P: Μουντιμηρος *edd.* || 63
om. edd. || 67 Βράνον] *litteram β in ras. scr. P¹ mg. iter. P²* || 68
 Πριβέσθλαβος *mg. P² V edd.*: Πριδέσθλαβος P || 73 πολεμείσαι P || 74 ό
om. edd. || 74/5 Βουλγαρίας V *edd.* || 76 τῶν *om. V edd.* || κάστρων: κάστρον
 V *edd.* || ante Σερβίλλας *add. τῆς V edd.* || Δοστινίκαν: Δροστινίκαν *conit.*
 Skok || 77 πολεμίσας P || 80 ὥστε: ὅστε *edd.* || 85 γε αν ὥστε? *conit.* Bek-
 ker || 81 κύρης P || 83 Παυδοῦχος P || 86 δουλείας: δουλώσεως *edd.* || 90 post
 δὲ *add. καὶ edd.* || 92 τοῦτω V *edd.*: τοῦτο P || γενόμενος ἐν τοῦτω V *edd.* ||
 ante Συμεών *add. ό V edd.* || 94 φωσσάτου P || 98 παρατὰ Be ||

- ἐν Βουλγαρίᾳ, καὶ ἀποθνήσκει ἐν φυλακῇ. Εἰσῆλθεν δὲ αὐτὸς Παῦλος, ὁ υἱὸς Βράνου, καὶ ἐκράτησεν ἑτὴ τρία. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς, ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανός¹⁰⁰ ἔχων ἀρχοντόπουλον ἐν τῇ πόλει Ζαχαρίαν, τὸν υἱὸν Πριβεσθλάβου, τοῦ ἀρχοντος Σερβλίας, ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸ γενέσθαι ἀρχοντα ἐν Σερβλίᾳ, ἀλλὰ ἀπελθὼν καὶ πολεμήσας, ἡττήθη παρὰ τοῦ Παύλου κρατήσας γὰρ αὐτὸν παρέδωκεν τοῖς Βουλγάροις, καὶ ἐκρατεῖτο δέσμιος. Εἶτα
- 99^P μετὰ χρόνους τρεῖς, τοῦ Παύλου ἐναντιωθέντος τοῖς Βουλγάροις,¹⁰⁵ ἀπέστειλεν τὸν Ζαχαρίαν, τὸν πρότερον παρὰ τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποσταλέντα, καὶ διώξας τὸν Παῦλον, ἐκράτησεν αὐτὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν τῶν Σέρβλων, ὅστις πάραυτα τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων ἐπιμνησθεὶς, ἐγένετο κατὰ τῶν Βουλγάρων, μὴδ' ὅλως θελήσας ὑποταγῆναι αὐτοῖς, ἀλλ' ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως μᾶλλον Ῥωμαίων δεσπό-¹¹⁰ ζεσθαι. Ὡστε καὶ τοῦ Συμεὼν φροσᾶτον κατ' αὐτοῦ ἀποστείλαντος
- 158^{Be} διὰ τοῦ Μαριμαῆ καὶ τοῦ | Σιγρίτζη {καὶ} Θεοδώρου, ὧν καὶ τὰς κεφαλὰς καὶ ἄρματα ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
- 99^P ἐπινίκια (ἐτι γὰρ μετὰ τὸν Ῥωμαίων καὶ | τῶν Βουλγάρων μάχην ἦν), οὐδέποτε δὲ ἐπαύσατο, καθὼς καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ ἀρχοντες, ἀποστελλόντων¹¹⁵ πρὸς τοὺς βασιλεῖς Ῥωμαίων, καὶ ὑποτασσόμενος καὶ δουλεύων αὐτοῖς. Πάλιν δὲ ἀπέστειλεν ἕτερον φροσᾶτον ὁ Συμεὼν διὰ τοῦ Κνήνου καὶ τοῦ Ἡμνήκου καὶ τοῦ Ἡτζβόκλια κατὰ τοῦ ἀρχοντος Ζαχαρίου, συναποστείλας μετ' αὐτῶν καὶ Τζεέσθλαβον. Τότε ὁ μὲν Ζαχαρίας φοβηθεὶς φεύγει ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ, οἱ δὲ Βούλγαροι μηνύσαντες τοῖς ζουπάνοις ἐλθεῖν¹²⁰ πρὸς αὐτοὺς καὶ παραλαβεῖν ἀρχοντα τὸν Τζεέσθλαβον καὶ δι' ὅρκου τοὺς αὐτοὺς ἀπατήσαντες καὶ ἐξαγαγόντες μέχρι {τῶ} τοῦ πρώτου χωρίου
- 100^P καὶ πάραυτα δεσμήσαντες | αὐτούς, εἰσῆλθον ἐν Σερβλίᾳ καὶ συνεπῆραν τὸν ἅπαντα λαὸν ἀπὸ μικροῦ ἕως μεγάλου, καὶ εἰσῆγαγον ἕως Βουλγαρίας, τινὲς δὲ ἀποδράσαντες εἰσῆλθον καὶ ἐν Χρωβατίᾳ, καὶ ἔμεινεν¹²⁵ ἡ χώρα ἔρημος. Κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν οὖν ἐκεῖνον εἰσῆλθον οἱ αὐτοὶ Βούλγαροι εἰς Χρωβατίαν μετὰ τοῦ Ἀλογοβότου τοῦ πολεμήσαι, καὶ ἐσφάγησαν πάντες ἐκεῖσε παρὰ τῶν Χρωβάτων. Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους ἑπτὰ ἀπὸ τῶν Βουλγάρων φυγῶν ὁ Τζεέσθλαβος μετὰ καὶ ἐτέρων τεσσάρων, ἀπὸ Περσθλάβου εἰσῆλθεν ἐν Σερβλίᾳ, οὐχ εὗρεν δὲ εἰς τὴν χώραν, εἰ μὴ¹³⁰ πενήτηντα μόνους ἄνδρας μῆτε γυναῖκας ἔχοντας, μῆτε παιδία, ἀλλὰ
- 100^P κυνηγοῦντας, καὶ διατρεφομένους. Μετὰ τούτων κρατήσας τὴν χώραν,
- 159^{Be} ἐμήνυσεν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων, τὴν ἐξ | αὐτοῦ ἀντίληψιν καὶ βοήθειαν ἐπιζητῶν, ὑπισχνόμενος, δουλεύειν καὶ ὑπέκειν τῇ προστάξει

V 100 τρία edd.: γ' P || κύρης P || 103 πολέμιας P || 106 ἀπέστειλαν conit. Jenkins || 108 παραυτά Be || 111 φροσᾶτον P || 112 καὶ² P V: erat. P^v om. Ba Be secl. Moravcsik || 114 ἐτι—ἦν in parenthesis posuit Be || τῶν om V.

and carried him off to Bulgaria, and he died in prison. Paul, son of Branos, took his place and governed three years. The emperor, the lord Romanus, who had in Constantinople the young prince Zacharias, son of Pribeslav, prince of Serbia, sent him off to be prince in Serbia, and he went and fought, but was defeated by Paul; who took him prisoner and handed him over to the Bulgarians and he was kept in prison. Then, three years later, when Paul had put himself in opposition to the Bulgarians, *they* sent this Zacharias, who had previously been sent by the lord Romanus the emperor, and he expelled Paul and himself took possession of the rule over the Serbs; and thereupon, being mindful of the benefits of the emperor of the Romans, he broke with the Bulgarians, being not at all wishful to be subjected to them, but rather that the emperor of the Romans should be his master. And so, when Symeon sent against him an army under Marmaim and Sigritzis Theodore, he sent their heads and their armour from the battle to the emperor of the Romans as tokens of his victory (for the war was still going on between the Romans and the Bulgarians); nor did he ever cease, like the princes also that were before him, to send missions to the emperors of the Romans, and to be in subjection and servitude to them. Again, Symeon sent another army against prince Zacharias, under Kninos and Himnikos and Itzboklias, and together with them he sent also Tzečslav. Then Zacharias took fright and fled to Croatia, and the Bulgarians sent a message to the 'zupans' that they should come to them and should receive Tzečslav for their prince; and, having tricked them by an oath and brought them out as far as the first village, they instantly bound them, and entered Serbia and took away with them the entire folk, both old and young, and carried them into Bulgaria, though a few escaped away and entered Croatia; and the country was left deserted. Now, at that time these same Bulgarians under Alogobotour entered Croatia to make war, and there they were all slain by the Croats. Seven years afterwards Tzečslav escaped from the Bulgarians with four others, and entered Serbia from Preslav, and found in the country no more than fifty men only, without wives or children, who supported themselves by hunting. With these he took possession of the country and sent a message to the emperor of the Romans asking for his support and succour, and promising to serve him and be obedient to his command, as had been the princes before him.

edd. || 115 δὲ *per comp. inser.* P¹ in *textum receperunt* V edd.: *omittendum conī.* Kukules || ἀποστέλλον *conī.* Kyriakides: ἀπέσπελλον P edd. || 117 φασάτον P || 118 Ἡτζβόκλια: Ἡτζβούλια *conī.* Hilferding ἡτζ(ίργου) βουλιὰ *conī.* Bečevliev || 122 τῶ *om. edd. secl.* Moravesik || 123 παρωτὰ Be || 127 Ἀλογοβότουρ: Ἀλοβογότουρ *conī.* Понавскіѣ Томасчех Маркуарт Феһер || 128 ἐπὶ τὰ edd.: ζ' P || 129 τεσσάρων edd.: δ' P || 130 Πρεσλάβου edd. || 131 πεντήκοντα edd.: ν' P ||

αὐτοῦ, καθὼς καὶ οἱ πρὸ αὐτοῦ ἄρχοντες. Καὶ ἔκτοτε οὐ διέλιπεν ὁ 135
τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλεὺς εὐεργετῶν αὐτόν, ὥστε καὶ <οἱ> εἰς Χρωβατίαν
καὶ Βουλγαρίαν καὶ ἐν ταῖς λοιπαῖς χώραις διάγοντες Σέρβλοι, οὓς ὁ
Συμεὼν διεσκόρπισεν, τοῦτο ἀκούσαντες συνήχθησαν εἰς αὐτόν. Ἀλλὰ καὶ
ἐν τῇ πόλει πολλοὶ ἀπὸ Βουλγαρίας φυγόντες εἰσῆλθον, οὓς καὶ ἐνδύσας
καὶ εὐεργετήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς τῶν Ῥωμαίων, ἀπέστειλε πρὸς τὸν Τζεέσθλα-140

101*P βον. Καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλουσίων δωρεῶν τοῦ | βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων
συστησάμενος καὶ ἐνοικίσας τὴν χώραν, ὡς τὸ πρότερον, ἐστὶν ὑποτεταγ-
μένος δουλοπρεπῶς τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ διὰ τῆς τοῦ βασιλέως
συνδρομῆς καὶ τῶν πολλῶν αὐτοῦ εὐεργεσιῶν τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν
συστήσας καὶ ἄρχων ἐν αὐτῇ βεβαιωθείς. 145

Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων Σερβλίας ἐξ ἀρχῆς, ἡγουν ἀπὸ τῆς βασιλείας Ἑρακ-
λείου τοῦ βασιλέως, δουλικῶς ἐστὶν ὑποτεταγμένος τῷ Ῥωμαίων βασι-
λεῖ, καὶ οὐδέποτε τῷ ἄρχοντι Βουλγαρίας καθυπετάγη.

Ὅτι ἐν τῇ βαπτισμένῃ Σερβλίᾳ εἰσὶν κάστρα οἰκούμενα· τὸ
Δεστινίκον, τὸ Τζερναβουσική, τὸ Μεγυρέτους, τὸ Δρεσνεήκ, τὸ Λεσνήκ, 150

101*P τὸ Σαληνές καὶ εἰς τὸ χωρίον Βόσωνα | τὸ Κάτερα καὶ τὸ Δεσνήκ.

160Be 33. Περὶ τῶν Ζαχλούμων καὶ ἧς νῦν οἰκοῦσι
χώρας.

Ὅτι ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων χώρα παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων πρότερον
ἐκρατεῖτο, Ῥωμάνων δὴ φημι, οὓς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης Διοκλητιανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς
μετόπισεν, καθὼς καὶ εἰς τὴν τῶν Χρωβάτων ἱστορίαν εἴρηται περὶ 5
αὐτῶν. Ὑπὸ τῷ βασιλεῖ δὲ Ῥωμαίων ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων αὕτη χώρα
ὑπῆρχεν, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἀβάρων αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα ἢ τε χώρα καὶ
ὁ ταύτης λαὸς τὸ παράπαν ἡρῆμωται. Οἱ δὲ νῦν οἰκοῦντες ἐκεῖσε Ζαχλοῦ-
μοι Σέρβλοι τυγχάνουσιν ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος, τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλέα
Ἑράκλειον προσφυγόντος. Ζαχλοῦμοι δὲ ὀνομάσθησαν ἀπὸ ὅρους οὕτω 10

102*P καλουμένου Χλούμου, καὶ ἄλλως δὲ παρὰ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ
ἐρμηνεύεται τὸ Ζαχλοῦμοι ἡγουν ὀπίσω τοῦ βουνοῦ, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐν τῷ
τοιούτῳ χωρίῳ βουνός ἐστιν μέγας, ἔχων ἄνωθεν αὐτοῦ δύο κάστρα,
τὸ Βόνα καὶ τὸ Χλούμ, ὅπισθεν δὲ τοῦ τοιούτου βουνοῦ διέρχεται ποτα-
μὸς καλούμενος Βόνα, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται ῥαλόν. 15

Ὅτι ἡ γενεὰ τοῦ ἀνθυπάτου καὶ πατρικίου Μιχαήλ, τοῦ υἱοῦ
τοῦ Βουσεβούτζη, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν Ζαχλούμων, ἦλθεν ἀπὸ τῶν κατοι-

V 136 τῶν om. edd. || βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων edd. || οἱ addendum conl. Bekker
Bury || 137 διάγοντες] litteras es in ras. scr. P¹ || 142 ἐνοικίσας V edd. || 150
Δεστινίκον: Δρεστινίκον conl. Skok || Τζερναβουσική Ba Be Τζερναβουσιική

And thenceforward the emperor of the Romans continually benefited him, so that the Serbs living in Croatia and Bulgaria and the rest of the countries, whom Symeon had scattered, rallied to him when they heard of it. Moreover, many had escaped from Bulgaria and entered Constantinople, and these the emperor of the Romans clad and comforted and sent to Tzeëslav. And from the rich gifts of the emperor of the Romans he organized and populated the country, and is, as before, in servitude and subjection to the emperor of the Romans; and through the co-operation and many benefits of the emperor he has united this country and is confirmed in the rule of it.

The prince of Serbia has from the beginning, that is, ever since the reign of Heraclius the emperor, been in servitude and submission to the emperor of the Romans, and was never subject to the prince of Bulgaria.

In baptized Serbia are the inhabited cities of Destinikon, Tzernabouskeï, Megyretous, Dresneïk, Lesnik, Salines; and in the territory of Bosona, Katera and Desnik.

33. Of the Zachlumi and of the country they now dwell in.

The country of the Zachlumi was previously possessed by the Romans, I mean, by those Romani whom Diocletian the emperor translated from Rome, as has been told of them in the story of the Croats. This land of the Zachlumi was beneath the emperor of the Romans, but when it and its folk were enslaved by the Avars, it was rendered wholly desolate. Those who live there now, the Zachlumi, are Serbs from the time of that prince who claimed the protection of the emperor Heraclius. They were called Zachlumi from a so-called mount Chlumos, and indeed in the tongue of the Slavs 'Zachlumi' means 'behind the mountain', since in that territory is a great mountain with two cities on the top of it, Bona and Chlum, and behind this mountain runs a river called Bona, which means 'good'.

The family of the proconsul and patrician Michael, son of Bouseboutsis, prince of the Zachlumi, came from the unbaptized who dwell on

coni. Šišić || Μεγυρέτους: Μεγερέτους *mg.* P^s Μεγυρέτζος coni. Skok || Δρεσνεήκ: Δρεσνεή κ' (=κάστρον) coni. Skok || Λεσνήκ: Λεσνή κ' (=κάστρον) coni. Skok || 151 Βόσωνα V edd. Βόσθνα coni. Šafarik || τὸ^s: τὰ coni. Bury || Δεσνήκ: Λεσνήκ coni. Rački Δεσνή κ' (=κάστρον) coni. Skok.

33. 3 'Ρωμάνων edd. || 4 δὴ Moravesik: δέ P edd. || 5 μετόκησεν P || 6 τῇ *om.* edd. || 8 ἔκεισε οὐκαῦντες edd. || 8/9 Ζαχλούμοι P || 9 post βασιλέα *add.* 'Ρωμάνων V *add.* 'Ρωμαίων edd. || 10 Ζαχλούμοι P || 12 Ζαχλούμοι P ||

κούντων ἀβαπτίστων εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν Βίσλας, τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους
Λιτζίκη, καὶ ὥκησεν εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν, τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Ζαχλούμα.

161Be "Οτι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ τῶν Ζαχλούμων εἰσὶν κάστρα οἰκού|μενα· τὸ 20

102*P Στα|γνόν, τὸ Μοκρισίκη, τὸ Ἰοσλή, τὸ Γαλουμαήνικ, τὸ Δοβρισίκη.

34. Περὶ τῶν Τερβουνιωτῶν καὶ τῶν Καναλιτῶν καὶ ἥς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

"Οτι ἡ τῶν Τερβουνιωτῶν καὶ τῶν Καναλιτῶν χώρα μία ὑπάρχει.
Ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν ἀβαπτίστων Σερβλίων οἱ ἐκεῖσε οἰκοῦντες κατὰγονται, ἐξ
ἐκείνου τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα Ἡράκλειον προσφυγόντος 5
ἀπὸ τῆς ἀβαπτίστου Σερβλίας, μέχρι τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας τοῦ Βλαστι-
μήρου. Οὗτος οὖν ὁ ἄρχων Βλαστήμηρος τῇ ἰδίᾳ θυγατρὶ δέδωκεν ἄν-
δρα Κραῖναν, τὸν υἱὸν Βελάη, τοῦ ζουπάνου Τερβουνίας. Θέλων δὲ
οὗτος τὸν ἴδιον γαμβρὸν δοξάσαι, ὠνόμασεν αὐτὸν ἄρχοντα, ποιήσας
103*P αὐτὸν αὐτεξούσιον. Ἐξ ἐκεῖ|νου δὲ ὁ Φαλιμέρης ἐγεννήθη, καὶ ἀπ' 10
ἐκείνου ὁ Τζουζήμερις. Ἦσαν δὲ οἱ τῆς Τερβουνίας ἄρχοντες αἰεὶ ὑπὸ
τὸν λόγον τοῦ ἄρχοντος Σερβλίας. Τερβουνία δὲ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων δια-
λέκτῳ ἐρμηνεύεται ἰσχυρὸς τόπος· ἡ γὰρ τοιαύτη χώρα ὀχυρώματα
ἔχει πολλά.

"Οτι ἐστὶν καὶ ἑτέρα χώρα ὑπὸ ταύτην τὴν χώραν Τερβουνίας, 15
Καναλή προσαγορευομένη. Τὸ δὲ Καναλή ἐρμηνεύεται τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων
162Be διαλέκτῳ ἁμαξία, ἐπειδὴ διὰ τὸ εἶναι | τὸν τόπον ἐπίπεδον πάσας
αὐτῶν τὰς δουλείας διὰ ἁμαξῶν ἐκτελοῦσιν.

"Οτι ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ Τερβουνίας καὶ τοῦ Καναλή εἰσὶ κάστρα οἰκού-
μενα· ἡ Τερβουνία, τὸ Ὀρμός, τὰ Ῥίσενα, τὸ Λουκάβετα, τὸ Ζετλήβη. 20

103*P 35. Περὶ τῶν Διοκλητιανῶν καὶ ἥς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

"Οτι ἡ Διοκλείας χώρα καὶ αὕτη πρότερον παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμάνων
ἐκρατεῖτο, οὗς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης μετῴκισεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός, καθὼς
καὶ εἰς τὴν περὶ τῶν Χρωβάτων ἱστορίαν εἴρηται, ὑπὸ δὲ τὸν βασιλεῖα 5

V 18 post Βίσλας addendum καὶ coní. Laskin Iljinskij || τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους:
τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Meursius Ba Be || 19 Λιτζίκη coní. Grégoire Λιτζίκη coní.
Niederle: Λιτζίκη coní. Skok Λιτζίκη P Διτζίκη coní. Safarik || Ζαχλούμα
P || 21 Μοκρισίκη: Μοκρισι κ' (= κάστρον) coní. Skok || Ὀσλή coní. Dvornik ||
Γαλουμαήνικ: Γαλουμηνικ (sine acc.) coní. Rački Γαλουμαήνι κ' (= κάστρον)
coní. Skok || Δοβρισίκη: Δοβρισί κ' (= κάστρον) coní. Skok.

33, 34, 35

the river Visla and are called Litziki; and it settled on the river called Zaehluma.

In the territory of the Zaehlumi are the inhabited cities of Stagnon, Mokriskik, Iosli, Galoumañnik, Dobriskik.

34. Of the Terbouniotes and Kanalites and of the country they now dwell in.

The country of the Terbouniotes and the Kanalites is one. The inhabitants are descended from the unbaptized Serbs, from the time of that prince who came out of unbaptized Serbia and claimed the protection of the emperor Heraclius until the time of Blastimer, prince of Serbia. This prince Blastimer married his daughter to Kraīnas, son of Belaēs, 'zupan' of Terbounia. And, desiring to ennoble his son-in-law, he gave him the title of prince and made him independent. Of him was begotten Phalimer, and of him Tzouzimer. The princes of Terbounia have always been at the command of the prince of Serbia. Terbounia in the tongue of the Slavs means 'strong place'; for this country has many strong defences.

Subordinate to this country of Terbounia is another country called Kanali. Kanali means in the tongue of the Slavs 'waggon-load', because, the place being level, they carry on all their labours by the use of waggons.

In the territory of Terbounia and Kanali are the inhabited cities of Terbounia, Ormos, Rhisena, Loukabetai, Zetlibi.

35. Of the Diocletians and of the country they now dwell in.

The country of Diocleia was also previously possessed by the Romani whom the emperor Diocletian translated from Rome, as has been said in the story about the Croats, and was under the emperor of the Romans.

84. 1 Τερβουνιωτῶν *corr.* Moravesik: Τερβουνατων P *edd.* || 3 Τερβουνατων *edd.* || 4/5 οἱ ἐκεῖσε οἰκοῦντες κατὰγονται ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀρχοντος τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα *coni.* Jenkins: οἱ ἐκεῖσε κατὰγονται, οἱ ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀρχοντος οἰκοῦντες τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα P *edd.* || 6/7 Βλαστημέρου *edd.* || 7 Βλαστήμερος *edd.* || 8 δὲ *om.* *edd.* || 9 ὀνόμασεν P || 11 Τζουζήμερης P Τζουτζήμερης *edd.* || 15 ἑτέρα χώρα Meursius Ba Be ἑτερα χωρία P || 17 ἀμαξιά *edd.* || 20 Ὀρμος Be || Λουκάβετε V *edd.* Λουκάβε τε *coni.* Šafarik Λουκάβετζ *coni.* Rački.
85. 3 Διοκλήας P Ba Be || 4 μετώκησεν P ||

Ῥωμαίων ὑπῆρχεν. Παρὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ χώρα αἰχμαλω-
τισθεῖσα ἡρῆμωται, καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ἑρακλείου, τοῦ βασιλέως ἐνωκίσθη,
καθὼς καὶ ἡ Χρωβατία καὶ ἡ Σερβλία καὶ ἡ τῶν Ζαχλούμων καὶ ἡ
Τερβουνία καὶ τοῦ Καναλή. Διόκλεια δὲ ὀνομάζεται ἀπὸ τοῦ ἐν τῇ τοιαύτῃ
χώρᾳ κάστρου, οὐπερ ἔκτισεν ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός, νυνὶ δὲ ἐστὶν 10
104^F ἔρημóκαστρον μέχρι | τοῦ νῦν ὀνομαζόμενον Διόκλεια.

Ὅτι ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Διοκλείας εἰσὶ μεγάλα κάστρα οἰκούμενα· τὸ
Γράδεται, τὸ Νουγράδε, τὸ Λοντοδόκλα.

163^{Be} 36. Περὶ τῶν Παγανῶν, τῶν καὶ Ἀρεντανῶν
καλουμένων, καὶ ἥς νῦν οἰκοῦσι χώρας.

Ὅτι ἡ χώρα, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν οἱ Παγανοί, καὶ αὐτὴ πρότερον
παρὰ τῶν Ῥωμάνων ἐκρατεῖτο, οὗς ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ὁ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός
μετοικίσας ἐν Δελματίᾳ ἐνωκίσειεν. Οἱ δὲ αὐτοὶ Παγανοὶ ἀπὸ τῶν ἀβαπτί- 5
στων Σέρβλων κατάγονται ἐξ ἐκείνου τοῦ ἀρχοντος, τοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλεῖα
Ἑράκλειον προσφυγόντος. Παρὰ δὲ τῶν Ἀβάρων καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ χώρα
αἰχμαλωτισθεῖσα ἡρῆμωται, καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ἑρακλείου τοῦ βασιλέως
104^F ἐνωκίσθη. | Παγανοὶ δὲ καλοῦνται διὰ τὸ μὴ καταδέξασθαι αὐτοὺς
τῷ τότε καιρῷ βαπτισθῆναι, ὅτε καὶ πάντες οἱ Σέρβλοι ἐβαπτίσθησαν. 10
Καὶ γὰρ Παγανοὶ τῇ τῶν Σκλάβων διαλέκτῳ ἄβαπτιστοὶ ἐρμηνεύονται,
τῇ τῶν Ῥωμαίων δὲ διαλέκτῳ ἡ χώρα αὐτῶν Ἀρεντα καλεῖται, ἐξ
οὗ κάκεινοι παρὰ τῶν αὐτῶν Ῥωμαίων Ἀρεντανοὶ καλοῦνται.

Ὅτι ἐν Παγανίᾳ εἰσὶν κάστρα οἰκούμενα· τὸ Μόκρον, τὸ Βερούλ-
λια, τὸ Ὅστρωκ καὶ ἡ Σλαβίνετζα. Κρατοῦσιν δὲ καὶ ταύτας τὰς νήσους 15
νῆσος μεγάλη ἡ Κούρκρα, ἥτοι τὸ Κίκερ, ἐν ᾗ ἐστὶν καὶ κάστρον· νῆσος
ἐτέρα μεγάλη τὰ Μέλετα, ἥτοι τὸ Μαλοζεάται, ἣν ἐν ταῖς Πράξεσι τῶν
105^F ἀποστόλων ὁ ἅγιος Λουκᾶς μέμνηται Μελίτην ταύτην προσαγορεύων, | ἐν
164^{Be} ᾗ καὶ | ἔχισ τὸν ἅγιον Παῦλον ἀπὸ τοῦ δακτύλου προσήψατο, ἣν καὶ
τῷ πυρὶ ὁ ἅγιος Παῦλος κατέφλεξεν· νῆσος ἐτέρα μεγάλη τὸ Φάρα· 20
νῆσος ἐτέρα μεγάλη ὁ Βράτζης. Εἰσὶ δὲ καὶ ἕτεροι νῆσοι, αἱ μὴ κρατού-
μεναι παρὰ τῶν αὐτῶν Παγανῶν· νῆσος τὰ Χώαρα, νῆσος Ἴης, νῆσος
τὸ Λάστοβον.

F 36, 18 Μελίτην — 20 κατέφλεξεν: Acta 28, 1—5.

V 6 αὕτη Be || 9 ante τοῦ¹ addendum ἡ conī. Bury || Διόκληα P Ba Be || 10
οὐπερ: ὑπερ V edd. || 11 Διόκληα P Ba Be || 12 τῇ χώρᾳ] litteras ἡ et a
in ras. scr. P¹ || Διοκλήας P || 13 Γράδεται: Γράδεται conī. Rački Γρά-
δετζ: conī. Skok || Νουγράδε: Νούγράδε seu Νουιγράδε conī. Rački ||

But this country also was enslaved by the Avars and made desolate, and repopulated in the time of Heraclius the emperor, just as were Croatia and Serbia and the country of the Zachlumi and Terbounia and the country of Kanali. Diocleia gets its name from the city in this country that the emperor Diocletian founded, but now it is a deserted city, though still called Diocleia.

In the country of Diocleia are the large inhabited cities of Gradetai, Nougrade, Lontodokla.

36. Of the Pagani, also called Arentani, and of the country they now dwell in.

The country in which the Pagani now dwell was also previously possessed by the Romani whom the emperor Diocletian translated from Rome and settled in Dalmatia. These same Pagani are descended from the unbaptized Serbs, of the time of that prince who claimed the protection of the emperor Heraclius. This country also was enslaved by the Avars and made desolate and repopulated in the time of Heraclius the emperor. The Pagani are so called because they did not accept baptism at the time when all the Serbs were baptized. For 'Pagani' in the tongue of the Slavs means 'unbaptized', but in the tongue of the Romans their country is called Arenta, and so they themselves are called Arentani by these same Romans.

In Paganía are the inhabited cities of Mokron, Beroullia, Ostrok and Slavinetza. Also, they possess these islands: the large island of Kourkra, or Kiker, on which there is a city; another large island, Meleta, or Malozeatai, which St. Luke mentions in the 'Acts of the Apostles' by the name of Melite, in which a viper fastened upon St. Paul by his finger, and St. Paul burnt it up in the fire; another large island, Phara; another large island, Bratzis. There are other islands not in the possession of these same Pagani: the island of Choara, the island of Iës, the island of Lastobon.

Λοντοδόκλα: Λόντο, τὸ Δόκλα *coní*. Šafarik Λόντο, τὸ Δεόκλα *coní*. Rački Λουτοδόκλα *coní*. Skok.

36. 1 'Αρεντανῶν: Ναρεντανῶν *coní*. Šafarik || 3 αὕτη *edd.* || 4 'Ρωμάνων *coní*. Jenkins: 'Ρωμαίων *P edd.* || 5 μετακλήσας *P* || ἐνώκησεν *P* || 6 εἰς: πρὸς *edd.* || 7 αὕτη *Be* || 12 'Αρέντα *V edd.* || 13 'Αρεντανὸν *scr.* Moravesik: 'Αρεντάνον *P edd.* || 15 ἡ Σλαβίνετza *scr.* Moravesik εἰσλαβίνετza *P*: ἡ Λαβίνετza *V edd.* Λαβίνετza *ng.* P^a Λαβρίνετza *coní*. Novaković Λαβίνzane seu Λαβίτζane *coní*. Skok || 18 Λουκάς *P*: Λούκας *edd.* || 21 ἑτέροι *P* || 22 Χόαρα *V edd.* Χόάζα *coní*. Šafarik Dümmler Rački Šišić.

37. Περί τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Πατζινακίτων.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι οἱ Πατζινακῖται τὸ ἀπ' ἀρχῆς εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν Ἀτῆλ
τὴν αὐτῶν εἶχον κατοικήσιν, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν Γεήχ, ἔχοντες
τούς τε Χαζάρους συνοροῦντας καὶ τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους Οὐζοὺς.
Πρὸ ἐτῶν δὲ πεντήκοντα οἱ λεγόμενοι Οὐζοὶ μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ὁμονόη- 5
σαντες καὶ πόλεμον συμβαλόντες πρὸς τοὺς Πατζινακίτας, ὑπερίσχυσαν,
καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας χώρας αὐτοὺς ἐξεδιώξαν, καὶ κατέσχον αὐτὴν μέχρι
τῆς σήμερον οἱ λεγόμενοι Οὐζοὶ. Οἱ δὲ Πατζινακῖται φυγόντες περιήρ-
χοντο, ἀναψηλαφῶντες τόπον εἰς τὴν αὐτῶν κατασκήνωσιν, καταλα-
βόντες δὲ τὴν σήμερον παρ' αὐτῶν διακρατουμένην γῆν καὶ εὐρόντες 10
τοὺς Τούρκους οἰκοῦντας ἐν αὐτῇ, πολέμου τρόπῳ τούτους νικήσαντες
καὶ ἐκβαλόντες αὐτοὺς ἐξεδιώξαν, καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν ἐν αὐτῇ, καὶ
δεσπόζουσιν τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν, ὡς εἴρηται, μέχρι τὴν σήμερον ἔτη
πεντήκοντα πέντε.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι πᾶσα ἡ Πατζινακία εἰς θέματα ὀκτὼ διαιρεῖται, 15
106^P 165^{Be} ἔχουσα καὶ μεγάλους ἄρχοντας τοσοῦτους. Τὰ | δὲ | θέματά εἰσιν ταῦτα·
ὄνομα τοῦ πρώτου θέματος Ἡρτήμ, τοῦ δευτέρου Τζούρ, τοῦ τρίτου
Γύλα, τοῦ τετάρτου Κουλπέη, τοῦ πέμπτου Χαραβόη, τοῦ ἕκτου Ταλ-
μάτ, τοῦ ἑβδόμου Χοπόν, τοῦ ὀγδόου Τζοπόν. Κατὰ δὲ τὸν καιρὸν, ὃν
ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας χώρας οἱ Πατζινακῖται ἐξεδιώχθησαν, εἶχον ἄρχοντας 20
εἰς μὲν τὸ θέμα Ἡρτήμ τὸν Βάιτζαν, εἰς δὲ τὸ Τζούρ τὸν Κούελ, εἰς δὲ
τὸ Γύλα τὸν Κουρκοῦται, εἰς δὲ τὸ Κουλπέη τὸν Ἰπαόν, εἰς δὲ τὸ Χαρα-
βόη τὸν Καῖδούμ, εἰς δὲ τὸ θέμα Ταλμάτ τὸν Κώσταν, εἰς <δὲ> τὸ
Χοπόν τὸν Γιαζή, εἰς δὲ τὸ θέμα Τζοπόν τὸν Βατᾶν. Μετὰ δὲ θάνατον
αὐτῶν διεδέξαντο τὰς ἀρχάς οἱ τούτων ἐξάδελφοι. Νόμος γάρ ἐν αὐτοῖς 25
106^P καὶ τύπος ἐκράτησεν παλαιὸς μὴ ἔχειν ἐξουσίαν πρὸς παῖδας ἢ ἀδελ-
φοὺς αὐτῶν μεταπέμπειν τὰ ἀξιώματα, ἀλλ' ἀρκεῖσθαι μόνον τοῖς
κεκτημένοις τὸ καὶ μέχρι ζωῆς ἄρχειν αὐτούς, μετὰ δὲ θάνατον προχειρί-
ζεσθαι ἢ ἐξάδελφον αὐτῶν ἢ ἐξαδέλφων παῖδας πρὸς τὸ μὴ καθόλου
εἰς ἐν μέρος τῆς γενεᾶς διατρέχειν τὸ ἀξίωμα, ἀλλὰ καὶ {εἰς} τοὺς ἐκ 30
πλαγίου καὶ κληρονομεῖν καὶ ἀπεκδέχεσθαι τὴν τιμὴν· ἀπὸ ξένης δὲ
γενεᾶς οὐχ ὑπέισέρχεται τις καὶ γίνεται ἄρχων. Τὰ δὲ ὀκτὼ θέματα
διαίρουνται εἰς τεσσαράκοντα μέρη, καὶ ἔχουσι καὶ ἐλάττωνας ἄρχοντας.

V 37, 2 οἱ om. Be || Πατζινακῖται P || 3 Γεήχ] *litteram e in ras. scr.* P¹
mg. iter. P || 4 Χαζάρους *coni.* Bandurius Dankowszky Zeuss Cassel Grot
Thury Marquart Manojlovič Schönebaum *aliique*; Μαζάρους P *mg.* P edd.
Βαζάρους *coni.* Bury || Οὐζοὺς *per comp.* (?) P: Οὐζ V edd. Οὐζω *mg.*
P || 5 πενήκοντα edd.: ὕ P *post* πενήκοντα *excidisse* πέντε *coni.* Pauler
Bury *aliique* || Οὐζοὶ *per comp.* (?) P: Οὐζ V edd. || Χαζάρων: Μαζάρων

37. Of the nation of the Pechenegs.

Originally, the Pechenegs had their dwelling on the river Atil, and likewise on the river Geich, having common frontiers with the Chazars and the so-called Uzes. But fifty years ago the so-called Uzes made common cause with the Chazars and joined battle with the Pechenegs and prevailed over them and expelled them from their country, which the so-called Uzes have occupied till this day. The Pechenegs fled and wandered round, casting about for a place for their settlement; and when they reached the land which they now possess and found the Turks living in it, they defeated them in battle and expelled and cast them out, and settled in it, and have been masters of this country, as has been said, for fifty-five years to this day.

The whole of Patzinacia is divided into eight provinces with the same number of great princes. The provinces are these: the name of the first province is Irtim; of the second, Tzour; of the third, Gyla; of the fourth, Koulpeï; of the fifth, Charaboi; of the sixth, Talmat; of the seventh, Chopon; of the eighth, Tzopon. At the time at which the Pechenegs were expelled from their country, their princes were, in the province of Irtim, Baïtzas; in Tzour, Kouel; in Gyla, Kourkoutai; in Koulpeï, Ipaos; in Charaboi, Kaïdoun; in the province of Talmat, Kostas; in Chopon, Giazis; in the province of Tzopon, Batas. After their deaths their cousins succeeded to their rule. For law and ancient principle have prevailed among them, depriving them of authority to transmit their ranks to their sons or their brothers, it being sufficient for those in power to rule for their own life-time only, and when they die, either their cousin or sons of their cousins must be appointed, so that the rank may not run exclusively in one branch of the family, but the collaterals also inherit and succeed to the honour; but no one from a stranger family intrudes and becomes a prince. The eight provinces are divided into forty districts, and *these* have minor princelings over them.

coni. Bayer || 8 Οἱ P || Πατζινακται P || 9 ἀναψηλαφῶντες edd. ἀναψηλαφόντες P: ἀναψηλαφούντες V || 10 διακρατουμένην: κρατουμένην V edd. || 12 ἐξεδίωξαν αὐτούς edd. || 13 τὴν τριακτὴν χώραν: τῆς τριακτὸς χώρας V edd. || τῇ^α: τῆς V edd. || 14 πεντήκοντα πέντε edd.: νε' P *post* ἔτη *numerus anni excedisse*, N *autem per comp. pro* Ἰνδικτιῶν *seu* Ἰνδικτιῶνος *scriptum fuisse susp.* Moravcsik || 17 πρώτου V edd.: α' P || δευτέρου edd.: β' P || τρίτου edd.: γ' P || 18 τετάρτου edd.: δ' P || πέμπτου edd.: ε' P || Χαραβόη Moravcsik: Χαραβόη P edd. || ἑκτου edd.: ζ' P || 19 ἐβδόμου edd.: ζ' P || ὀγδόου edd.: η' P || 20 τῆς ἰδίας χώρας (*etiam* Bandurius): τῶν ἰδίων τόπων edd. || Πατζινακται P || 21 Βαίτζανconi. Rásonyi Μάιτζαν V Μαίτζαν edd. || 22 Κουρκούταν edd. || 22/3 Χαραβόη *corr.* Moravcsik: Χαραβόη edd. Χαρβόη P || 23 δὲ *add.* Moravcsik || 24 Βατάν P || 27 ἀρκεῖσθαι: ἀρκεῖν coni. Bekker || 28 αὐτούς edd.: αὐτοῦ P || 30 τῆς *om.* edd. || εἰς *secl.* Moravcsik || 30/1 ἐκπλαγίου P: ἐκπλαγίους edd. || 32 διτῶ edd.: η' P || 33 τεσσαράκοντα edd.: μ' P ||

- Ἰστέον, ὅτι αἱ τέσσαρες τῶν Πατζινακитῶν γενεαί, ἡγουν τὸ
 166Be θέμα Κουαρτζιτζούρ καὶ τὸ θέμα Συρουκάλπη καὶ τὸ | θέμα Βοροταλμάτ 35
 107P καὶ τὸ θέμα Βουλατζοπόν, κεῖνται πέραν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ
 πρὸς τὰ ἀνατολικώτερα καὶ βορειότερα μέρη, ἐναποβλέποντα πρὸς τε
 Οὐζίαν καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ Ἀλανίαν καὶ τὴν Χερσῶνα καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κλί-
 ματα. Αἱ δὲ ἄλλαι τέσσαρες γενεαὶ κεῖνται ἔνθεν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποτα-
 μοῦ πρὸς τὰ δυτικώτερα καὶ ἀρκτικώτερα μέρη, τουτέστιν τὸ θέμα 40
 Γιαχιχοπόν πλησιάζει τῇ Βουλγαρίᾳ, τὸ δὲ θέμα τοῦ κάτω Γύλα πλησιάζει
 τῇ Τουρκίᾳ, τὸ δὲ θέμα τοῦ Χαραβόη πλησιάζει τῇ Ῥωσίᾳ, τὸ δὲ
 θέμα Ἰαβδιερτιμ πλησιάζει τοῖς ὑποφόροις χωρίοις χώρας τῆς Ῥωσίας,
 τοῖς τε Οὐλτίνοις καὶ Δερβλενίνοις καὶ Λενζενίνοις καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς
 107P Σκλάβοις. Ἀπῶκισται δὲ ἡ Πατζινακία ἐκ μὲν | Οὐζίας καὶ Χαζαρίας 45
 ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν πέντε, ἐκ δὲ Ἀλανίας ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν ἕξ, ἀπὸ δὲ Μορδίας
 ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν δέκα, ἀπὸ δὲ Ῥωσίας ὁδὸν ἡμερᾶς μιᾶς, ἀπὸ δὲ Τουρκίας
 ὁδὸν ἡμερῶν τεσσάρων, ἀπὸ δὲ Βουλγαρίας ὁδὸν ἡμέρας τὸ ἡμισυ, καὶ
 εἰς Χερσῶνα μὲν ἐστὶν ἐγγιστα, εἰς δὲ τὴν Βόσπορον πλησιέστερον.
 Ἰστέον, ὅτι κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν, ὃν οἱ Πατζινακίται ἀπὸ τῆς ἰδίας 50
 χώρας ἐξεδιώχθησαν, θελήσει τινὲς ἐξ αὐτῶν καὶ οἰκίᾳ γνώμῃ ἐναπέμει-
 ναν ἐκεῖσε, καὶ τοῖς λεγομένοις Οὐζοῖς συνώκησαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν
 εἰσιν ἐν αὐτοῖς, ἔχοντες τοιαῦτα γνωρίσματα, ὥστε διαχωρίζεσθαι
 αὐτοὺς καὶ νοεῖσθαι, τίνες τε ἦσαν, καὶ πῶς αὐτοὺς ἀποσπασθῆναι τῶν
 167Be ἰδίων συν[έβη] | τὰ γὰρ ἱμάτια αὐτῶν εἰσιν κόντουρα μέχρι γονάτων 55
 108P καὶ τὰ μανίτια ἀπὸ τῶν βραχιόνων ἀποκεκομμένα, ὥς δῆθεν ἐκ τούτου
 δευκνύντες, ὅτι ἀπὸ τῶν ἰδίων καὶ ὁμοφύλων ἀπεκόπησαν.
 Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἔνθεν τοῦ Δανάστρεως ποταμοῦ πρὸς τὸ ἀποβλέπον
 μέρος τὴν Βουλγαρίαν εἰς τὰ περάματα τοῦ αὐτοῦ ποταμοῦ εἰσιν ἐρημό-
 καστρα· κάστρον πρῶτον τὸ ὀνομασθὲν παρὰ τῶν Πατζινακитῶν Ἄστρον 60
 διὰ τὸ τοὺς λίθους αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι καταλεύκους, κάστρον δεύτερον τὸ
 Τουγγάται, κάστρον τρίτον τὸ Κρακνακάται, κάστρον τέταρτον τὸ
 Σαλμακάται, κάστρον πέμπτον τὸ Σακακάται, κάστρον ἕκτον <τὸ>
 Γιαιουκάται. Ἐν αὐτοῖς δὲ τοῖς τῶν παλαιοκάστρον κτίσμασιν εὐρίσκον-
 108P ται καὶ ἐκκλησιῶν | γνωρίσματά τινα καὶ σταυροὶ λαξευτοὶ εἰς λίθους 65
 πωρίνους, ὅθεν καὶ τινες παράδοσιν ἔχουσιν, ὥς Ῥωμαῖοι ποτε τὰς
 κατοικίας εἶχον ἐκεῖσε.

V 35 Συρουκαλπέη edd. Συρουκουλπέη coní. Bandurius Συροκουλπέη coní. Németh
 Σαρυκουλπέη coní. Marquart || Βοροτάλματ edd. || 36 Βουλατζοπόν P coní.
 Marquart Németh: Βουλατζοπάν P^x edd. Τζοπόν scr. quo deletio Βουλατζοπάν
 iter. V¹ || πέρα Βα Be || 38/9 κλήματα P || 39 τέσσαρες edd.: δ' P ||
 ἔνθεν (*littera o erasa et en in ras. scripto*) P^y Βα Be: ὅθεν P ὅθεν
 V || 41 τοῦ κάτω Γύλα: Χαβουζιγγυλά coní. Lehrberg Κουρκάτα Γύλα coní.

Four clans of the Pechenegs, that is to say, the province of Kouartz-itzour and the province of Syroukalpei and the province of Borotalmat and the province of Boulatzopon, lie beyond the Dnieper river towards the eastern and northern parts that face Uzia and Chazaria and Alania and Cherson and the rest of the Regions. The other four clans lie on this side of the Dnieper river, towards the western and northern parts, that is to say that the province of Giazichopon is neighbour to Bulgaria, the province of Kato Gyla is neighbour to Turkey, the province of Charaboi is neighbour to Russia, and the province of Iabdiertim is neighbour to the tributary territories of the country of Russia, to the Oultines and Dervlenines and Lenzenines and the rest of the Slavs. Patzinacia is distant a five days journey from Uzia and Chazaria, a six days journey from Alania, a ten days journey from Mordia, one day's journey from Russia, a four days journey from Turkey, half a day's journey from Bulgaria; to Cherson it is very near, and to Bosphorus closer still.

At the time when the Pechenegs were expelled from their country, some of them of their own will and personal decision stayed behind there and united with the so-called Uzes, and even to this day they live among them, and wear such distinguishing marks as separate them off and betray their origin and how it came about that they were split off from their own folk: for their tunics are short, reaching to the knee, and their sleeves are cut off at the shoulder, whereby, you see, they indicate that they have been cut off from their own folk and those of their race.

On this side of the Dniester river, towards the part that faces Bulgaria, at the crossings of this same river, are deserted cities: the first city is that called by the Pechenegs Aspron, because its stones look very white; the second city is Tountatai; the third city is Kraknakatai; the fourth city is Salmakatai; the fifth city is Sakakatai; the sixth city is Giaioukatai. Among these buildings of the ancient cities are found some distinctive traces of churches, and crosses hewn out of porous stone, whence some preserve a tradition that once on a time Romans had settlements there.

Marquart || κάτω V edd.: *incertum scripserint* κάτω an κάτω P || 42 τοῦ om. edd. || Χαροβόη edd. || 43 τοῖς ὑποφόροις χωρίοις χώρας (*prima littera a ex dimidia parte, quinta littera i penitus erasa accentuque correcto*) P^v Ba Be: ταῖς ὑποφόροις χωρίοις χώραις P ταῖς ὑποφόροις χωρίαις, χώραις V ταῖς ὑποφόροις χώραις Me || 44 τοῖς¹ edd.: τοὺς P || Οὐλτινούς: Οὐλτινούς coni. Šachmatov || 46 πέντε edd.: ε' P || ὁδὸν² om. V edd. || ἔξ edd.: ε' P || Μορδίας: Μοδίας V Me Μηδίας coni. Meursius || 47 δέκα edd.: ε' P || μίαις P || 48 τεσσαρὼν edd.: δ' P || τὸ om. V edd. || 50 Πατζίνακῆται P || 54 αὐτοῦς² coni. Moravcsik: αὐτοῖς P αὐτῶν coni. Kukules || αὐτοὺς edd.: αὐτῶν P || 55 κόντουρα (*corr. etiam Grégoire Psaltes*) κόντευρα Be || 58 Δανάστρεως coni. Westberg Laskin Latyšev Šachmatov: Δανάστρεως P edd. || 60 πρῶτον V edd.: α' P || 61 δευτέρον edd.: β' P || 62 Τουγγᾶται P || τρίτον edd.: γ' P || τέταρτον edd.: δ' P || 63 πέμπτον edd.: ε' P || ἕκτον edd.: ζ' P || τὸ add. Moravcsik || 64 Γαιουκάται P || 66 παρίνους coni. Bekker: παρίνους P Ba Be πυρίτας coni. Meursius ||

Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ Κάγγαρ ὀνομάζονται οἱ Πατζινακίται, ἀλλ' οὐχὶ πάντες, πλὴν ὁ τῶν τριῶν θεμάτων λαός, τοῦ Ἰαβδιηρτί καὶ τοῦ Κουαρτζι-τζούρ καὶ τοῦ Χαβουγιγγυλά, ὡς ἀνδρεύτεροι καὶ εὐγενέστεροι τῶν 70 λοιπῶν· τοῦτο γὰρ δηλοῖ ἡ τοῦ Κάγγαρ προσηγορία.

168Be 38. Περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Τούρκων, καὶ ὅθεν κατὰγονται.

- “Ὅτι τὸ τῶν Τούρκων ἔθνος πλησίον τῆς Χαζαρίας τὸ παλαιὸν τὴν κατοίκησιν ἔσχεν εἰς τὸν τόπον τὸν ἐπονομαζόμενον Λεβεδία ἀπὸ τῆς τοῦ πρώτου βοεβόδου αὐτῶν ἐπωνυμίας, ὅστις βοέβοδος τὸ μὲν 5
- 109*P τῆς κλήσεως ὄνομα Λεβεδίας | προσηγορεύετο, τὸ δὲ τῆς ἀξίας, ὡς καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ μετ’ αὐτόν, βοέβοδος ἐκαλεῖτο. Ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ τόπῳ, τῷ προρρηθέντι Λεβεδία, ποταμός ἐστιν ῥέων Χιδμάς, ὁ καὶ Χιγγιλοῦς ἐπονομαζόμενος. Οὐκ ἐλέγοντο δὲ τῷ τότε χρόνῳ Τούρκοι, ἀλλὰ Σάβαρτοι ἀσφαλοὶ ἐκ τινος αἰτίας ἐπωνομαζόντο. Καὶ οἱ μὲν Τούρκοι γενεαὶ ὑπῆρχον 10 ἐπτά, ἄρχοντα δὲ εἰς αὐτοὺς εἶτε ἴδιον, εἶτε ἀλλότριόν ποτε οὐκ ἐκτήσαντο, ἀλλ’ ὑπῆρχον ἐν αὐτοῖς βοέβοδοί τινες, ὧν πρῶτος βοέβοδος ἦν ὁ προρρηθεὶς Λεβεδίας. Συνώκησαν δὲ μετὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ἐνιαυτοὺς τρεῖς, συμμαχοῦντες τοῖς Χαζάροις ἐν πᾶσι τοῖς αὐτῶν πολέμοις. Ὁ δὲ χαγάνος ἄρχων Χαζαρίας διὰ τὴν αὐτῶν ἀνδρείαν καὶ συμμαχίαν τῷ 15
- 109*P πρώτῳ βοεβόδῳ τῶν | Τούρκων, Λεβεδία ἐπονομαζόμενῳ, γυναῖκα δέδωκεν πρὸς γάμον Χαζάραν εὐγενῆ διὰ τὸ τῆς ἀνδρείας αὐτοῦ περίφημον καὶ τὸ τοῦ γένους περιφανές, ὅπως ἐξ αὐτοῦ τεκνώσῃ· ὁ δὲ Λεβεδίας
- 169Be ἐκεῖνος ἐκ τινος τύχης μετὰ τῆς αὐτῆς Χαζάρας οὐκ ἐπαυδοποίησεν. | Οἱ δὲ Πατζινακίται, οἱ πρότερον Κάγγαρ ἐπονομαζόμενοι (τοῦτο γὰρ τὸ 20 Κάγγαρ ὄνομα ἐπ’ εὐγενείᾳ καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ ἐλέγετο παρ’ αὐτοῖς), πρὸς Χαζάρους οὖν οὗτοι κινήσαντες πόλεμον καὶ ἡττηθέντες, τὴν οἰκίαν γῆν καταλεῖψαι καὶ τὴν τῶν Τούρκων κατοικῆσαι κατηναγκάσθησαν. Ἀναμεταξὺ δὲ τῶν Τούρκων συναφθέντος πολέμου καὶ τῶν Πατζινακί- τῶν, τῶν τῆνικαῦτα Κάγγαρ ἐπονομαζόμενων, τὸ τῶν Τούρκων φροσᾶ- 25
- 110*P τον ἡττήθη καὶ εἰς δύο διηρέθη | μέρη. Καὶ τὸ μὲν ἐν μέρος πρὸς ἀνατολὴν εἰς τὸ τῆς Περσίδος μέρος κατῴκησεν, οἱ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν κατὰ τὴν τῶν Τούρκων ἀρχαίαν ἐπωνυμίαν καλοῦνται Σάβαρτοι ἀσφαλοὶ, τὸ δὲ

V 68 καὶ om. V edd. || Κάγγαρ B¹: Κάγκαρ P V F edd. Βάγκαρ hic et infra conit. Grégoire || Πατζινακίται P || 69 τριῶν edd.: γ’ P || Ἰαβδιηρτί Ba Be: Ἰαυδιηρτί P || 69/70 Κουαρτζιτζούρ P^y Ba Be: Κουαρτζιτζού P V Me.

The Pechenegs are also called 'Kangar', though not all of them, but only the folk of the three provinces of Iabdierti and Konartzitzour and Chabouxingyla, for they are more valiant and noble than the rest: and that is what the title 'Kangar' signifies.

38. Of the genealogy of the nation of the Turks, and whence they are descended.

The nation of the Turks had of old their dwelling next to Chazaria, in the place called Lebedia after the name of their first voivode, which voivode was called by the personal name of Lebedias, but in virtue of his rank was entitled voivode, as have been the rest after him. Now in this place, the aforesaid Lebedia, there runs a river Chidmas, also called Chingilous. They were not called Turks at that time, but had the name 'Sabartoi asphaloi', for some reason or other. The Turks were seven clans, and they had never had over them a prince either native or foreign, but there were among them 'voivodes', of whom first voivode was the aforesaid Lebedias. They lived together with the Chazars for three years, and fought in alliance with the Chazars in all their wars. Because of their courage and their alliance, the chagan-prince of Chazaria gave in marriage to the first voivode of the Turks, called Lebedias, a noble Chazar lady, because of the fame of his valour and the illustriousness of his race, so that she might have children by him; but, as it fell out, this Lebedias had no children by this same Chazar lady. Now, the Pechenegs who were previously called 'Kangar' (for this 'Kangar' was a name signifying nobility and valour among them), these, then, stirred up war against the Chazars and, being defeated, were forced to quit their own land and to settle in that of the Turks. And when battle was joined between the Turks and the Pechenegs who were at that time called 'Kangar', the army of the Turks was defeated and split into two parts. One part went eastwards and settled in the region of Persia, and they to this day are called by the ancient denomination of the Turks 'Sabartoi

38. 4 ἔσχεν: ἐποιεῖτο V edd. || 6 Λεβεδιάς: Λαβαδιάς *hic et infra* coní. Ijinskij || προσαγορεύετο edd. || 8 Χιδμάς: Χουμάς coní. Cassel Χιδμάς coní. Hammer-Purgstall || 6 V edd.: 6 P || Χιγγιλοῦς P V¹: Χιγγιλοῦς V F edd. || 9 Τούρκοι P || 9/10 Σάβαρτοι ἀσφαλοὶ *scr.* Moravcsik: Σαβαρτοῖασφαλοὶ P V Σαβαρτοῖασφαλοὶ V¹ F edd. Σάβαρ τουτέστι ἀσφαλοὶ coní. Fessler Σάβαρ ἦτοι σφάλει et Σάβαρ ἦτοι ἀσφαλοὶ coní. Dankovszky Hilferding || 10 ἐκονομάζοντο P || Τούρκοι P || 11 ἐπτά edd.: ζ' P || 13 Συνέφεκσαν edd.: συνωκίσας P συνοικήσας *susp.* Moravcsik || 14 τρεῖς: σγ' coní. Thunmann Schlözer Büdinger *aliique* τ' coní. Dankovszky Marczali Zichy Grégoire *aliique* σ' coní. Moravcsik λ' seu λγ' coní. Westberg || συμμαχοῦντες: συμμαχῶν τε *susp.* Moravcsik || 19 Χαζάρας coní. Moravcsik: Χαζάρου P edd. || 20 Πατρινακίται P || 20 τοῦτο — 21 αὐτοῖς *in parenthesi posuit* Be || 25/6 φασάκτον P || 27 κατώκισεν P || 28 Σαβαρτοῖασφαλοὶ edd. ||

- ἕτερον μέρος εἰς τὸ δυτικὸν κατέκρησε μέρος ἅμα καὶ τῷ βοεβόδῳ αὐτῶν
καὶ ἀρχηγῷ, Λεβεδία, εἰς τόπους τοὺς ἐπονομαζομένους Ἀτελκούζου, 30
ἐν οἷς τόποις τὰ νῦν τὸ τῶν Πατζινακιδῶν ἔθνος κατοικεῖ. Ὀλίγου δὲ
χρόνου διαδραμόντος, ὁ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος ἄρχων Χαζαρίας τοῖς Τούρκοις
ἐμήνυσεν τοῦ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀποσταλῆναι Λεβεδία, τὸν πρῶτον αὐτῶν
βοεβόδον. Ὁ Λεβεδίας τοίνυν πρὸν τὸν χαγάνον Χαζαρίας ἐναφικόμενος
ἀνηρώτα τὴν αἰτίαν, δι' ἣν ἔλθειν πρὸς αὐτὸν αὐτὸν μετεπέμψατο. Ὁ δὲ 35
110*P χαγάνος | εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτόν, ὅτι «Διὰ τοῦτό σε προσεκαλεσάμεθα, ἵνα,
ἐπειδὴ εὐγενὴς καὶ φρόνιμος καὶ ἡνδρειωμένος ὑπάρχεις καὶ πρῶτος τῶν
Τούρκων, ἄρχοντά σε τοῦ ἔθνους σου προβαλώμεθα, καὶ ἵνα ὑπέκρης
τῷ λόγῳ καὶ τῇ προστάξει ἡμῶν.» Ὁ δὲ ἀποκριθεὶς πρὸς τὸν χαγάνον
170Be ἀντέφησεν, ὅτι: «Τὴν περὶ ἐμέ σου σχέσιν τε καὶ | προαίρεσιν μεγάλως 40
ἐναποδέχομαι, καὶ τὴν εὐχαριστίαν ὁμολογῶ σοι προσήκουσαν, ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀδυ-
νάτως ἔχω πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρχήν, ὑπακοῦσαι οὐ δύναμαι, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον
ἔστιν ἕτερος ἀπ' ἐμοῦ βοεβόδος, λεγόμενος Ἀλμούτζης καὶ υἱὸν κεκτη-
μένος ὀνόματι Ἀρπαδῇ· ἐκ τούτων μᾶλλον εἴτε ἐκεῖνος ὁ Ἀλμούτζης,
111*P εἴτε ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ Ἀρπαδῆς ἵνα γένηται ἄρχων, | καὶ ἔστιν ὑπὸ τὸν λόγον 45
ἡμῶν». Ἐν τούτῳ οὖν τῷ λόγῳ ἀρεσθεῖς ὁ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος δέδωκεν
ἀνθρώπους αὐτοῦ μετ' αὐτοῦ καὶ εἰς τοὺς Τούρκους ἀπέστειλεν, οἱ καὶ
συλλαλήσαντες περὶ τούτου μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων, μᾶλλον οἱ Τούρκοι τὸν
Ἀρπαδῇ γενέσθαι προέκριναν ἄρχοντα, ἥπερ Ἀλμούτζη, τὸν ἑαυτοῦ
πατέρα, ὡς ἀξιολογώτερον ὄντα καὶ περισπούδαστον ἐν τε φρονήσει καὶ 50
βουλῇ καὶ ἀνδρείᾳ καὶ ἱκανὸν πρὸς τὴν τοιαύτην ἀρχήν, ὃν καὶ ἄρχοντα
κατὰ τὸ τῶν Χαζάρων ἔθος καὶ ζάκανον πεποιήκασι, σηκώσαντες αὐτὸν
εἰς σκουτάριον. Πρὸ δὲ τοῦ Ἀρπαδῇ τούτου ἄρχοντα ἕτερον οἱ Τούρκοι
οὐκ ἐκτήσαντο πώποτε, ἐξ οὗ καὶ μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐκ τῆς τούτου
111*P γενεᾶς ἄρχων Τουρκίας καθίσταται. Μετὰ | δέ τινας χρόνους τοῖς Τούρ- 55
κοις ἐπιπεσόντες οἱ Πατζινακῖται, κατεδίωξαν αὐτοὺς μετὰ τοῦ ἄρχοντος
αὐτῶν Ἀρπαδῆ. Οἱ οὖν Τούρκοι τραπέντες καὶ πρὸς κατοίκησιν γῆν
ἐπιζητοῦντες, ἐλθόντες ἀπεδίωξαν οὗτοι τοὺς τὴν μεγάλην Μοραβίαν
οἰκοῦντας, καὶ εἰς τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν κατεσκήνωσαν, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἱ Τούρκοι
171Be μέχρι τῆς σήμερον κατοικοῦσιν. Καὶ ἔκτοτε πᾶσι οἱ Τούρκοι παρὰ 60
τῶν Πατζινακιδῶν οὐκ ἐδέξαντο. Εἰς δὲ τὸ κατασκηνώσαν τὸ προρρηθὲν
ἔθνος τῶν Τούρκων πρὸς ἀνατολὴν εἰς τὰ τῆς Περσίδος μέρη μέχρι τοῦ
νῦν πραγματευτὰς ἀποστέλλουσιν οὗτοι οἱ πρὸς τὸ δυτικὸν μέρος οἰκοῦν-

Y 30 Ἀτελκούζου: Ἀτελκ Οὐζου (*sine acc.*) *conī*. Thunmann Ἀτελ καὶ Οὐζου
(*sine acc.*) *conī*. Lehrberg Hammer-Purgstall Ἀτελουζου (*sine acc.*) *conī*.
Roesler || 31 τὰ: τὸ edd. || τὸ *om.* edd. || 33 Λεβεδία *conī*. Moravcsik Λεβεδία

asphaloi'; but the other part, together with their voivode and chief Lebedias, settled in the western region, in places called Atelkouzou, in which places the nation of the Pechenegs now lives. A short while afterwards, the then chagan-prince of Chazaria sent a message to the Turks, requiring that Lebedias, their first voivode, should be sent to him. Lebedias, therefore, came to the chagan of Chazaria and asked the reason why he had sent for him to come to him. The chagan said to him: «We have invited you upon this account, in order that, since you are noble and wise and valorous and first among the Turks, we may appoint you prince of your nation, and you may be obedient to our word and our command.» But he, in reply, made answer to the chagan: «Your regard and purpose for me I highly esteem and express to you suitable thanks, but since I am not strong enough for this rule, I cannot obey you; on the other hand, however, there is a voivode other than me, called Almoutzis, and he has a son called Arpad; let one of these, rather, either that Almoutzis or his son Arpad, be made prince, and be obedient to your word.» That chagan was pleased at this saying, and gave some of his men to go with him, and sent them to the Turks, and after they had talked the matter over with the Turks, the Turks preferred that Arpad should be prince rather than Almoutzis his father, for he was of superior parts and greatly admired for wisdom and counsel and valour, and capable of this rule; and so they made him prince according to the custom, or 'zakanon', of the Chazars, by lifting him upon a shield. Before this Arpad the Turks had never at any time had any other prince, and so even to this day the prince of Turkey is from his family. Some years later, the Pechenegs fell upon the Turks and drove them out with their prince Arpad. The Turks, in flight and seeking a land to dwell in, came and in their turn expelled the inhabitants of great Moravia and settled in their land, in which the Turks now live to this day. And since that time the Turks have not sustained any attack from the Pechenegs. To the aforesaid nation of the Turks that settled in the east, in the regions of Persia, these Turks aforesaid who live toward the western region still send mer-

coni. Manojlović: *χελάνδια* P edd. || 34 *ἐναφικόμενος*: *ἀφικόμενος* edd. || 35 *αὐτὸν*² *om.* edd. || 36 *προσεκαλεσάμεθα* edd.: *προσεκαλεσώμεθα* P || 37 *ὑπάρχεις* Ba Be: *ὑπάρχεις* P || 38 *προβαλλόμεθα* V edd.: *προβαλλώμεθα* (*incertum sitne ω an ο*) P || *ὑπεβης* edd.: *ὕψηεις* P || 41 *εὐχαριστίαν* *εὐχαριστεῖαν* (*prima littera a s. v. addita*) P¹ || 43 *Ἀλμούτζης coni.* Meursius Thummann Roesler Grot: *Σαλμούτζης* P edd. || 44 *ὁ Ἀλμούτζης* P V Me: *Σαλμούτζης* (*spiritibus erasis et littera ὁ in σ correcto*) P² Ba Be || 45 *ἔστιν*: *ἔσται coni.* Bekker Marozzi || *τὸν λόγον* (*coni. etiam Bekker*): *τοῦ λόγου* V edd. || 48 *Τούρκοι* P || 49 *Ἀλμούτζη* P V Me: *Σαλμούτζη* (*spiritu eraso et littera σ addita*) P² Ba Be || *ἐαυτοῦ*: *αὐτοῦ* edd. || 52 *συκόσαντες* P || 53 *Ἀρπαδῆ* P || *Τούρκοι* P || 56 *Πατζινακέται* P || 57 *Ἀρπαδῆ* P || *Τούρκοι* P || 59 *οἰκοῦντας*: *κατοικοῦντας* V edd. || *Τούρκοι* P || 60 *Τούρκοι* P || *παρὰ* (*etiam Bandurius*): *μετὰ* V edd. || 61 *ἐδέξαντο* (*etiam Bandurius*): *ἐποίησαν* V edd. || 62 *post πρὸς add.* *τὴν* V edd. ||

112^P τες προρρηθέντες Τούρκοι, καὶ βλέπουσιν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀποκρίσεις | παρὰ αὐτῶν πρὸς αὐτούς πολλάκις ἀποκομίζουσιν. 65

Ὅτι ὁ τῶν Πατζινακιδῶν τόπος, ἐν ᾧ τῷ τότε καιρῷ κατόκησαν οἱ Τούρκοι, καλεῖται κατὰ τὴν ἐπωνυμίαν τῶν ἐκεῖσε ὄντων ποταμῶν. Οἱ δὲ ποταμοὶ εἰσιν οὗτοι· ποταμὸς πρῶτος ὁ καλούμενος Βαρούχ, ποταμὸς δευτέρος ὁ καλούμενος Κουβοῦ, ποταμὸς τρίτος ὁ καλούμενος Τροῦλλος, ποταμὸς τέταρτος ὁ καλούμενος Βροῦτος, ποταμὸς πέμπτος 70 ὁ καλούμενος Σέρετος.

39. Περὶ τοῦ ἔθνους τῶν Καβάρων.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι οἱ λεγόμενοι Κάβαροι ἀπὸ τῆς τῶν Χαζάρων γενεᾶς ὑπῆρχον. Καὶ δὴ συμβάν τινα παρὰ αὐτῶν ἀποστασίαν γενέσθαι πρὸς 112^{VP} τὴν ἀρχὴν αὐτῶν, καὶ πολέμου ἐμφυλίου καθι|στάντος, ἡ πρώτη ἀρχὴ αὐτῶν ὑπερίσχυσεν, καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐξ αὐτῶν ἀπεσφάγησαν, οἱ δὲ ἐξέφυγον, καὶ ἦλθαν 5 καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων εἰς τὴν τῶν Πατζινακιδῶν γῆν, καὶ ἀλλήλοις συνεφιλιώθησαν, καὶ Κάβαροι τινες ὠνομάσθησαν. Ὅθεν 172^{Bo} καὶ τὴν τῶν Χαζάρων γλῶσσαν αὐτοῖς | τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐδίδαξαν, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν τὴν αὐτὴν διάλεκτον ἔχουσιν· ἔχουσιν δὲ καὶ τὴν τῶν Τούρκων ἐτέραν γλῶσσαν. Διὰ δὲ τὸ εἰς τοὺς πολέμους ἰσχυροτέρους 10 καὶ ἀνδρειοτέρους δεῖκνυσθαι τῶν ὀκτῶ γενεῶν καὶ προεξάρχειν τοῦ πολέμου προεκρίθησαν πρῶται γενεαί. Εἰς δὲ ἐστὶν ἄρχων ἐν αὐτοῖς, ἡγουν ἐν ταῖς τρισὶ γενεαῖς τῶν Καβάρων, ὅστις καὶ μέχρι τὴν σήμερον ἐστίν.

113^P 40. Περὶ τῶν γενεῶν τῶν Καβάρων καὶ τῶν Τούρκων.

Πρώτη ἡ παρὰ τῶν Χαζάρων ἀποσπασθεῖσα αὕτη ἡ προρρηθεῖσα τῶν Καβάρων γενεά, δευτέρα τοῦ Νέκη, τρίτη τοῦ Μεγέρη, τετάρτη <τοῦ> Κουρτουγερμάτου, πέμπτη τοῦ Ταριάνου, ἕκτη Γενάχ, ἐβδόμη 5 Καρῆ, ὀγδόη Κασῆ. Καὶ οὕτως ἀλλήλοις συναφθέντες, μετὰ τῶν Τούρκων οἱ Κάβαροι εἰς τὴν τῶν Πατζινακιδῶν κατόκησαν γῆν. Μετὰ δὲ

V 64 προρρηθέντες: προειρηγμένοι V edd. || Τούρκοι P || ἀποκρίσεις Ba Be: ἀποκρίσεις P || 67 Τούρκοι P || 69 δευτέρος edd.: β' P || Κουβοῦ: Κοβοῦ mg. P Κουζοῦ coní. Roessler || τρίτος edd.: γ' P || 70 Τροῦλλος: Τούρλος coní. Roessler || τέταρτος edd.: δ' P || πέμπτος edd.: ε' P.

38, 39, 40

chants who look them up, and often bring them back official messages from them.

The place of the Pechenegs, in which at that time the Turks lived, is called after the name of the local rivers. The rivers are these: the first river is that called Barouch, the second river that called Koubou, the third river that called Troullos, the fourth river that called Broutos, the fifth river that called Seretos.

39. Of the nation of the Kabaroi.

The so-called Kabaroi were of the race of the Chazars. Now, it fell out that a secession was made by them to their government, and when a civil war broke out their first government prevailed, and some of them were slain, but others escaped and came and settled with the Turks in the land of the Pechenegs, and they made friends with one another, and were called 'Kabaroi'. And so to these Turks they taught also the tongue of the Chazars, and to this day they have this same language, but they have also the other tongue of the Turks. And because in wars they show themselves strongest and most valorous of the eight clans, and are leaders in war, they have been promoted to be first clans. There is one prince among them, I mean, among the three clans of the Kabaroi, who is even to this day.

40. Of the clans of the Kabaroi and the Turks.

The first is this aforesaid clan of the Kabaroi which split off from the Chazars; the second, of Nekis; the third, of Megeris; the fourth, of Kourtoutgermatos; the fifth, of Tarianos; the sixth, Genach; the seventh, Kari; the eighth, Kasi. Having thus combined with one another, the Kabaroi dwelt with the Turks in the land of the Pechenegs. After this, at the invitation

39. 2 Κάβαροι edd.: Καβάροι P *ubique sine x scribendum coní.* Mour-sius Βάκαροι *hic et infra coní.* Grégoire || 3 συμβάν *corr.* Moravesik: συμβάσαν P edd. || 4 καθιστάντος: καταστάντος *coní.* Bekker || 5 ἔλθον edd. || 7 Κάβαροι: βάρβαροι V Me || ὀνομάσθησαν P || 8 γλώτταν edd. || 11 ἀνδρειωτέρους edd.: ἡνδρειωτέρους P || ὁκτώ edd.: ἡ' P || 13 τρισί edd.: τρεῖς P || τῆν: τῆς V edd.

40. 1 τῶν^s *om.* edd. || 3 ἀποσπαθεῖσα V edd.: ἀποσπαθεῖσα P || 4 δευτέρα edd.: β' P || τρίτη edd.: γ' P || τετάρτη edd.: δ' P || 5 τοῦ *add.* V edd. || Κουρτουγερμάτου edd. || πέμπτη edd.: ε' P || ἕκτη edd.: ζ' P || ἑξῆς edd.: ζ' P || 6 Καρή P || ὀγδόη edd.: ἡ' P || Κασή P || Βάκαροι V F ||

- ταῦτα παρὰ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ αἰοιδίμου βασιλέως, προσκλη-
θέντες διεπέρασαν, καὶ τὸν Συμεὼν πολεμήσαντες κατὰ κράτος αὐτὸν
ἤττησαν, καὶ ἐξελάσαντες μέχρι τῆς Πρεσθλάβου διῆλθον, ἀποκλείσαν- 10
τες αὐτὸν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ λεγόμενον Μουνδράγα, καὶ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν
113*P χώραν ὑπέστρεψαν. Τῷ δὲ τότε | καιρῷ τὸν Λιούντινα, τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ
'Αρπαδῆ εἶχον ἄρχοντα. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ πάλιν τὸν Συμεὼν μετὰ τοῦ βασι-
λέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰρηνεῦσαι καὶ λαβεῖν ἄδειαν διεπέμψατο πρὸς
173Be τοὺς | Πατζινακίτας, καὶ μετὰ αὐτῶν ὁμοφώνησεν τοῦ καταπολεμῆσαι 15
καὶ ἀφανίσει τοὺς Τούρκους. Καὶ ὅτε οἱ Τούρκοι πρὸς ταξίδιον ἀπῆλθον,
οἱ Πατζινακίται μετὰ Συμεὼν ἦλθον κατὰ τῶν Τούρκων, καὶ τὰς αὐτῶν
φαμίλιας παντελῶς ἐξηφάνισαν, καὶ τοὺς εἰς φύλαξιν τῆς χώρας αὐτῶν
Τούρκους ἀπ' ἐκεῖσε κακιγκάκως ἀπεδίωξαν. Οἱ δὲ Τούρκοι ὑποστρέψαν-
τες καὶ τὴν χώραν αὐτῶν οὕτως εὐρόντες ἔρημον καὶ κατηφανισμένην, 20
114*P κατεσκήνωσαν εἰς τὴν γῆν, εἰς ἣν καὶ σήμερον κατοικοῦσιν, τὴν ἐπονο-
μαζομένην κατὰ τὴν ἀνωτέρω, ὡς εἴρηται, τῶν ποταμῶν ἐπωνυμίαν.
'Ο δὲ τόπος, ἐν ᾧ πρότερον οἱ Τούρκοι ὑπῆρχον, ὀνομάζεται κατὰ τὴν
ἐπωνυμίαν τοῦ ἐκεῖσε διερχομένου ποταμοῦ 'Ετέλ καὶ Κουζοῦ, ἐν ᾧ
ἄρτίως οἱ Πατζινακίται κατοικοῦσιν. Οἱ δὲ Τούρκοι παρὰ τῶν Πατζι- 25
νακιτῶν διωχθέντες ἦλθον καὶ κατεσκήνωσαν εἰς τὴν γῆν, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦ-
σιν. 'Εν αὐτῷ δὲ τῷ τόπῳ παλαιὰ τινα ἔστιν γνωρίσματα· καὶ πρῶτον
μὲν ἔστιν ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως Τραϊανοῦ γέφυρα κατὰ τὴν τῆς Τουρκίας
ἀρχήν, ἔπειτα καὶ ἡ Βελέγραδα ἀπὸ τριῶν ἡμερῶν τῆς αὐτῆς γεφύρας,
114*P ἐν ἣ καὶ ὁ πύργος ἔστιν τοῦ ἀγίου καὶ | μεγάλου Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ 30
βασιλέως, καὶ πάλιν κατὰ τὴν τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἀναδρομὴν ἔστιν τὸ Σέρμιον
ἐκεῖνο λεγόμενον, ἀπὸ τῆς Βελεγράδας ὁδὸν ἔχον ἡμερῶν δύο, καὶ ἀπὸ
τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἡ μεγάλη Μοραβία, ἡ ἀβάπτιστος, ἣν καὶ ἐξήλειψαν οἱ Τούρ-
174Be κοί, ἥς ἤρχε τὸ πρότερον ὁ Σφενδοπλόκος.

Ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κατὰ τὸν Ἰστρον ποταμὸν γνωρίσματά τε καὶ 35
ἐπωνυμίαι, τὰ δὲ ἀνώτερα τούτων, ἐν ᾧ ἔστιν ἡ πᾶσα τῆς Τουρκίας
κατασκήνωσις, ἄρτίως ἐπονομάζουσιν κατὰ τὰς {τοῦ} τῶν ἐκεῖσε ῥεόντων
ποταμῶν ἐπωνυμίας. Οἱ δὲ ποταμοὶ εἰσιν οὗτοι· ποταμὸς πρῶτος ὁ
Τιμήσης, ποταμὸς δεύτερος (ὁ) Τούτης, ποταμὸς τρίτος ὁ Μορήσης,
115*P <ποταμὸς> τέταρτος ὁ Κρίσος, καὶ πάλιν ἕτερος ποταμὸς ἡ Τίτζα. 40

F 7 Μετὰ δὲ — 13 ἄρχοντα: cf. Georg. Mon. (cont.), ed. Bonn. p. 853, 20—855, 7; Georg. Mon. (cont.), ed. Istin II. p. 27, 20—28, 11; Leo Gramm., ed. Bonn. p. 267, 15—269, 4; Theod. Melit., ed. Tafel p. 186, 30—188, 2; Theoph. Cont., ed. Bonn. p. 358, 7—359, 16; Cedr., ed. Bonn. II. p. 254, 24—256, 1; Zon. XVI. 12., ed. Bonn. III. p. 442, 17—443, 16; Leo, Tact. XVIII. 42., ed. Migne, P. G. 107. c. 956 C—D.

of Leo, the Christ-loving and glorious emperor, they crossed over and fought Symeon and totally defeated him, and drove on and penetrated as far as Preslav, having shut him up in the city called Moundraga; and they went back to their own country. At that time they had Liountikas, son of Arpad, for their prince. But after Symeon was once more at peace with the emperor of the Romans and was free to act, he sent to the Pechenegs and made an agreement with them to attack and destroy the Turks. And when the Turks had gone off on a military expedition, the Pechenegs with Symeon came against the Turks and completely destroyed their families and miserably expelled thence the Turks who were guarding their country. When the Turks came back and found their country thus desolate and utterly ruined, they settled in the land where they live to-day, which is called after the above name of the rivers, as has been said. The place in which the Turks used formerly to be is called after the name of the river that runs through it, Etel and Kouzou, and in it the Pechenegs live now. But the Turks, expelled by the Pechenegs, came and settled in the land which they now dwell in. In this place are various landmarks of the olden days: first, there is the bridge of the emperor Trajan, where Turkey begins; then, a three days journey from this same bridge, there is Belgrade, in which is the tower of the holy and great Constantine, the emperor; then, again, at the running back of the river, is the renowned Sirmium by name, a journey of two days from Belgrade; and beyond lies great Moravia, the unbaptized, which the Turks have blotted out, but over which in former days Sphendoplokos used to rule.

Such are the landmarks and names along the Danube river; but the regions above these, which comprehend the whole settlement of Turkey, they now call after the names of the rivers that flow there. The rivers are these: the first river is the Timisis, the second river the Toutis, the third river the Morisis, the fourth river the Krisos, and again another river, the

V 9 πολέμισαντες P || 12 Λιούντινα Ba Be || 13 Ἀρπαδή P || 14 εἰρηνεύσαι P V¹ F: εἰρηνεύθαι V εἰρηνεύεσθαι edd. || 15 ὁμοφώνησεν P || 16 Τούρκοι P || 17 Πατρινάκιται P || post μετά *add.* τοῦ edd. || 18 φαμηλίας P || 19 Τούρκοι P || 21 τὴν ἐπονομαζομένην — 22 ἐπωνυμίαν post κατηφανισμένην (20) *transponenda coni.* Marquart || 23 Τούρκοι P || 24 τοῦ ἐκεῖσε διερχομένου ποταμοῦ: τοῖν ἐκεῖσε διερχομένοιν ποταμοῖν *coni.* Hammer-Purgstall τῶν ἐκεῖσε διερχομένων ποταμῶν *coni.* Marquart || Ἐτέλ καὶ Κουζοῦ: Ἐτέλ καὶ Οὐζοῦ *coni.* Lehrberg καὶ *omittendum coni.* Thunmann Marquart Westberg post Ἐτέλ et post Κουζοῦ *punctum posuit* P Ἐτέλ ποταμὸς καὶ Κουζοῦ *mg.* P³ || Κουζοῦ edd. || 25 Πατρινάκιται P || Τούρκοι P || 29 καὶ ἡ: δὲ καὶ edd. || Βελέγραδα *mg.* P⁶ edd. || γέφυρας P || 31 ἀναδρομὴν *ser.* Moravesik ἀναδρομὴν P: ἐκδρομὴν V ἐκδρομὴν F edd. || 32 post ἐκεῖνο *add.* τὸ V edd. || Βελεγράδας edd.: Βελέγραδας P Βελέγραδας *mg.* P⁶ || 33/4 Τούρκοι P || 37 ἐπονομάζουσιν: ὀνομάζουσι edd. || τοῦ *om.* Bekker *secl.* Moravesik τούτων Me Ba || 38 πρῶτος edd.: α' P || 39 δεύτερος edd.: β' P || ὁ *add.* Moravesik || τρίτος Be: γ' P || 40 ποταμὸς *add.* V || τέταρτος Be: δ' P ||

Πλησιάζουσι δὲ τοῖς Τούρκοις πρὸς μὲν τὸ ἀνατολικὸν μέρος οἱ Βούλγαροι, ἐν ᾧ καὶ διαχωρίζει αὐτοὺς ὁ Ἰστρος, ὁ καὶ Δανούβιος λεγόμενος ποταμός, πρὸς δὲ τὸ βόρειον οἱ Πατζινακῖται, πρὸς δὲ τὸ δυτικώτερον οἱ Φράγγοι, πρὸς δὲ τὸ μεσημβρινὸν οἱ Χρωβάτοι. Αἱ δὲ ὀκτὼ γενεαὶ τῶν Τούρκων αὐταὶ πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους ἄρχοντας οὐχ ὑπείκουσιν, ἀλλ' 45 ὁμόνοιαν ἔχουσιν εἰς τοὺς ποταμούς, εἰς οἷον μέρος προβάλλει πόλεμος, συναγωνίζεσθαι μετὰ πάσης φροντίδος τε καὶ σπουδῆς. Ἐχουσι δὲ κεφαλὴν πρώτην τὸν ἄρχοντα ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς τοῦ Ἀρπαδῆ κατὰ ἀκολουθίαν καὶ δύο ἐτέρους, τὸν τε γυλᾶν καὶ τὸν καρχᾶν, οἵτινες ἔχουσι τάξιν

115^vP κριτοῦ· | ἔχει δὲ ἐκάστη γενεὰ ἄρχοντα.

50

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ γυλᾶς καὶ ὁ καρχᾶς οὐκ εἰσὶ κύρια ὀνόματα, ἀλλὰ ἀξιώματα.

175^BBe Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ Ἀρπαδῆς, ὁ μέγας Τουρκίας ἄρχων, ἐποίησεν | τέσσαρας υἱούς· πρῶτον τὸν Ταρκατζοῦν, δευτέρον τὸν Ἰέλεχ, τρίτον τὸν Ἰουτοτζᾶν, τέταρτον τὸν Ζαλτᾶν.

55

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀρπαδῆ, ὁ Ταρκατζοῦς ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Τεβέλη, ὁ δὲ δευτέρος υἱός, ὁ Ἰέλεχ ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἐζέλεχ, ὁ δὲ τρίτος υἱός, ὁ Ἰουτοτζᾶς ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Φαλίτζιν, τὸν νυνὶ ἄρχοντα, ὁ δὲ τέταρτος υἱός, <δ> Ζαλτᾶς ἐποίησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ταξίν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι πάντες <οἱ> υἱοὶ τοῦ Ἀρπαδῆ ἐτελεύτησαν, οἱ δὲ 60 ἔγγονοι αὐτοῦ, ὃ τε Φαλῆς καὶ ὁ Τασῆς καὶ ὁ ἐξάδελφος αὐτῶν, ὁ Ταξίς, ζῶσιν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Τεβέλης, καὶ ἔστιν ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ ὁ 116^P Τερματζοῦς, ὁ ἀρτίως ἀνελθὼν φίλος | μετὰ τοῦ Βουλτζοῦ, τοῦ τρίτου ἄρχοντος καὶ καρχᾶ Τουρκίας.

65

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ Βουλτζοῦς, ὁ καρχᾶς ἔστιν ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Καλῆ, τοῦ καρχᾶ, καὶ ὅτι τὸ μὲν Καλῆ ἔστιν ὄνομα κύριον, τὸ δὲ καρχᾶς ἔστιν ἀξίωμα, ὥσπερ καὶ τὸ γυλᾶς, <δ> ἔστιν μεῖζον τοῦ καρχᾶ.

V 43 Πατζινακῖται P || 44 Χρώβατοι edd. || ὀκτὼ edd.: ἡ' P V || 45 οὐχ *delendum* coní. Jenkins || ὑπείκουσιν F: ὑπῆκουσιν P V ὑπηρετοῦσιν Ba Be || 46 ποταμούς: πολέμους coní. Marczali Jenkins || προβάλλει: προσβάλλει coní. Bekker || 48 Ἀρπαδῆ P || 49 δύο edd.: β' P || γυλᾶν P || καρχᾶν P || 51 γυλᾶς P || καρχᾶς P: καρχᾶν Be || ὀνόματα κύρια edd. || 53/4 τέσσαρας Be: δ' P || 54 πρῶτον edd.: α' P || δευτέρον edd.: β' P || τρίτον edd.: γ' P || 55 Ἰουτοτζᾶν Ba Be: Ἰουτότζαν P || τέταρτον edd.: δ' P || Ζαλτᾶν

Titza. Neighbours of the Turks are, on the eastern side the Bulgarians, where the river Istros, also called Danube, runs between them; on the northern, the Pechenegs; on the western, the Franks; and on the southern, the Croats. These eight clans of the Turks do not obey their own particular princes, but have a joint agreement to fight together with all earnestness and zeal upon the rivers, wheresoever war breaks out. They have for their first chief the prince who comes by succession of Arpad's family, and two others, the gylas and the karchas, who have the rank of judge; and each clan has a prince.

Gylas and karchas are not proper names, but dignities.

Arpad, the great prince of Turkey, had four sons: first, Tarkatzous; second, Ielech; third, Ioutotzas; fourth, Zaltas.

The eldest son of Arpad, Tarkatzous, had a son Tebelis, and the second son Ielech had a son Ezelech, and the third son Ioutotzas had a son Phalitzis, the present prince, and the fourth son Zaltas had a son Taxis.

All the sons of Arpad are dead, but his grandsons Phalis and Tasis and their cousin Taxis are living.

Tebelis is dead, and it is his son Termatzous who came here recently as 'friend' with Boultzous, third prince and karchas of Turkey.

The karchas Boultzous is the son of the karchas Kalis, and Kalis is a proper name, but karchas is a dignity, like gylas, *which* is superior to karchas.

P || 56 πρῶτος edd.: α' P || 'Αρπαδῆ P || Ταρχατζούς P || 57 δεύτερος edd.: β' P || 58 τρίτος edd.: γ' P || 'Ιουτοτζάς P || 59 τέταρτος edd.: δ' P || δ add. Moravesik || Ζαλτάς P || τὸν om. edd. || 60 οἱ add. edd. || 'Αρπαδῆ P: 'Αρπαδᾶ edd. || 61 ὁ² om. edd. || Τάξις edd. || 63 ὁ² om. F || 64 Τερματζούς P || 65 καρχά P || 66 Βουλτζούς P || καρχάς P || ἔστιν ὁ υἱός: ἔστιν υἱός V υἱός ἔστι edd. || 67 καρχά P || Καλλή P || καρχάς P || 68 γυλάς P || δ add. edd. || καρχά P.

41. Περὶ τῆς χώρας τῆς Μοραβίας.

- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ Μοραβίας ἄρχων, ὁ Σφενδοπλόκος, ἀνδρεῖος καὶ
φοβερός εἰς τὰ πλησιάζοντα αὐτῷ ἔθνη γέγονεν. Ἐσχχε δὲ ὁ αὐτός
176Be Σφενδοπλόκος τρεῖς υἱούς, καὶ τελευτῶν διεῖλεν | εἰς τρία μέρη τὴν
ἑαυτοῦ χώραν, καὶ τοῖς τρισὶν υἱοῖς αὐτοῦ ἀνὰ μιᾶς μερίδος κατέλιπεν, 5
τὸν πρῶτον καταλείψας ἄρχοντα μέγαν, τοὺς δὲ ἑτέρους δύο τοῦ εἶναι
ὑπὸ τὸν λόγον τοῦ πρώτου υἱοῦ. Παρήνεσεν δὲ αὐτοὺς τοῦ μὴ εἰς διάστα-
116vP σιν καὶ κατ' ἀλλήλων γενέσθαι, παράδειγμα αὐτοῖς τοιοῦτον ὑποδείξας·
ράβδους γὰρ τρεῖς ἐνεγκὼν καὶ συνδήσας, δέδωκεν τῷ πρώτῳ υἱῷ τοῦ
ταύτας κλάσαι, τοῦ δὲ μὴ ἰσχύσαντος, πάλιν δέδωκεν τῷ δευτέρῳ, 10
ὡσαύτως καὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, καὶ εἴθ' οὕτως διαιρῶν τὰς τρεῖς ράβδους δέδω-
κεν τοῖς τρισὶ πρὸς μίαν· οἱ δὲ λαβόντες καὶ κελευσθέντες ταύτας κλά-
σαι, εὐθέως αὐτὰς κατέκλασαν. Καὶ διὰ τοιοῦτου ὑποδείγματος παρήνε-
σεν αὐτοὺς εἰπὼν, ὥς ὅτι· «Εἰ μὲν διαμένετε ἐν ὁμοψυχίᾳ καὶ ἀγάπῃ
ἀδιαίρετοι, ἀκαταγώνιστοι παρὰ τῶν ἐναντίων καὶ ἀνάλωτοι γενήσεσθε» 15
εἰ δὲ ἐν ὑμῖν γένηται ἔρις καὶ φιλονικία, καὶ διαχωρισθῇτε εἰς τρεῖς
117vP ἄρχάς, μὴ ὑποκείμενοι τῷ πρώτῳ ἀδελφῷ, καὶ ὑπ' ἀλλήλων | ἀφανισθῇ-
σεσθε, καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν πλησιάζόντων ὑμῖν ἐχθρῶν παντελῶς ἐξολοθρευθῇ-
σεσθε.» Μετὰ δὲ τὴν τελευτὴν τοῦ αὐτοῦ Σφενδοπλόκου ἓνα χρόνον ἐν
εἰρήνῃ διατελέσαντες, ἔριδος καὶ στάσεως ἐν ἑαυτοῖς ἐμπεσοῦσης, καὶ 20
πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἐμφύλιον πόλεμον ποιήσαντες, ἐλθόντες οἱ Τοῦρκοι
τούτους παντελῶς ἐξωλόθρευσαν, καὶ ἐκράτησαν τὴν ἑαυτῶν χώραν,
εἰς ἣν καὶ ἀρτίως οἰκοῦσιν. Καὶ οἱ ὑπολειφθέντες τοῦ λαοῦ διεσκορπί-
σθησαν, προσφυγόντες εἰς τὰ παρακείμενα ἔθνη, εἰς τε τοὺς Βουλγάρους
καὶ Τοῦρκους καὶ Χρωβάτους καὶ εἰς τὰ λοιπὰ ἔθνη. 25

F 41. 7 Παρήνεσεν — 19 ἐξολοθρευθήσεσθε: cf. Aesopus, fab. 103., ed. Halm; Babrius, fab. 47., ed. Schneidewin; Plutarchus, De garrulitate c. 18., ed. Bernardakis III. p. 325; Plutarchus, Regum et imperatorum apophthegmata 174., ed. c. II. p. 8—9.

41. Of the country of Moravia.

The prince of Moravia, Sphendoplokos, was valiant and terrible to the nations that were his neighbours. This same Sphendoplokos had three sons, and when he was dying he divided his country into three parts and left a share apiece to his three sons, leaving the eldest to be great prince and the other two to be under the command of the eldest son. He exhorted them not to fall out with one another, giving them this example by way of illustration: he brought three wands and bound them together and gave them to the first son to break them, and when he was not strong enough, handed them on to the second, and in like manner to the third, and then separated the three wands and gave one each to the three of them; when they had taken them and were bidden to break them, they broke them through at once. By means of this illustration he exhorted them and said: «If you remain undivided in concord and love, you shall be unconquered by your adversaries and invincible; but if strife and rivalry come among you and you divide yourselves into three governments, not subject to the eldest brother, you shall be both destroyed by one another and brought to utter ruin by the enemies who are your neighbours.» After the death of this same Sphendoplokos they remained at peace for a year, and then strife and rebellion fell upon them and they made a civil war against one another and the Turks came and utterly ruined them and possessed their country, in which even now they live. And those of the folk who were left were scattered and fled for refuge to the adjacent nations, to the Bulgarians and Turks and Croats and to the rest of the nations.

V 41. 2 Μωραβίας P || 4 τρία edd.: γ' P || 6 μέγαν edd.: μέγα P || 8 καὶ om, F *delendum conſi.* Bandurius || 10 ταύτας] *litteram σ inser.* P¹ || δευτέρῳ Moravciuk β' P: ἐτέρῳ V edd. || 14 αὐτοῖς V || ὡς om. V edd. || 16 τρεῖς edd.: γ' P || 17 πρώτῳ edd.: α' P || 20 ἑαυτοῖς: αὐτοῖς V edd. || 21 Τοῦρκοι P || 22 ἐξολώθησαν P || ἑαυτῶν: αὐτῶν edd.

177Be 42. Γεωγραφία ἀπὸ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι τοῦ
 Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ καὶ τοῦ κάστρου Βελε-
 117P γράδας, Τουρκίας τε καὶ Πατζινακίας μέχρι
 τοῦ Χαζαρικοῦ κάστρου Σάρκελ καὶ τῆς Ῥω-
 σίας καὶ μέχρι τῶν Νεκροπύλων, τῶν ὄντων 5
 εἰς τὴν τοῦ Πόντου θάλασσαν πλησίον τοῦ
 Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, καὶ Χερσῶνος ὁμοῦ καὶ
 Βοσπόρου, ἐν οἷς τὰ κάστρα τῶν κλιμάτων
 εἰσὶν, εἰτα μέχρι λίμνης Μαιώτιδος, τῆς
 καὶ θαλάσσης διὰ τὸ μέγεθος ἐπονομαζομέ- 10
 νης, καὶ μέχρι τοῦ κάστρου Ταμάταρχα λεγο-
 μένου, πρὸς τούτοις δὲ καὶ Ζιχίας καὶ Πα-
 παγίας καὶ Κασαχίας καὶ Ἀλανίας καὶ Ἀβα-
 σγίας καὶ μέχρι τοῦ κάστρου Σωτηρίου πόλεως.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἀπὸ Θεσσαλονίκης μέχρι τοῦ ποταμοῦ Δανούβεως, 15
 118P ἐν ᾧ τὸ | κάστρον ἐστὶν τὸ Βελέγραδα ἐπονομαζόμενον, ἐστὶν ὁδὸς
 ἡμερῶν ὀκτώ, εἰ καὶ μὴ διὰ τάχους τις, ἀλλὰ μετὰ ἀναπαύσεως πορεύε-
 ται. Καὶ κατοικοῦσιν μὲν οἱ Τοῦρκοι πέραθεν τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ
 εἰς τὴν τῆς Μοραβίας γῆν, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐνθεν μέσον τοῦ Δανούβεως καὶ
 τοῦ Σάβα ποταμοῦ. Ἀπὸ δὲ κάτωθεν τῶν μερῶν Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ 20
 τῆς Δίστρας ἀντίπερα ἡ Πατζινακία παρέρχεται, καὶ κατακρατεῖ ἡ
 κατοικία αὐτῶν μέχρι τοῦ Σάρκελ, τοῦ τῶν Χαζάρων κάστρου, ἐν ᾧ
 ταξεῖται καθέζονται τριακόσιοι, κατὰ χρόνον ἐναλλασσόμενοι. Ἑρμη-
 νεύεται δὲ παρὰ αὐτοῖς τὸ Σάρκελ ἄσπρον ὀσπίτιον, ὅπερ ἐκτίσθη
 118P παρὰ σπαθαροκανιδιάτου Πετρωνᾶ, τοῦ ἐπονομαζομένου Καματηροῦ, 25
 178Be τὸν βασιλέα Θεόφιλον πρὸς | τὸ κτισθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ κάστρον τοῦτο τῶν
 Χαζάρων αἰτησαμένων. Ὁ γὰρ χαγάνος ἐκεῖνος καὶ ὁ πῆχ Χαζαρίας
 εἰς τὸν αὐτὸν βασιλέα Θεόφιλον πρέσβεις ἐναποστείλαντες, κτισθῆναι
 αὐτοῖς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Σάρκελ ᾗτήσαντο, οἷς ὁ βασιλεὺς, τῇ τούτων
 αἰτήσῃ πεισθεὶς, τὸν προρρηθέντα σπαθαροκανιδιάτον Πετρωνᾶ μετὰ 30
 χελανδίων βασιλικῶν πλωτῶν ἀπέστειλεν καὶ χελάνδια τοῦ κατεπάνω
 Παφλαγονίας. Καὶ δὴ ὁ αὐτὸς Πετρωνᾶς τὴν Χερσῶνα καταλαβὼν τὰ
 μὲν χελάνδια ἔλιπεν ἐν Χερσῶνι, τὸν δὲ λαὸν εἰσαγαγὼν εἰς καματερά

F 42. 20 Ἀπὸ δὲ — 55 καθέστημεν: cf. Theoph. Cont. p. 122, 19—124, 5; Cedr., ed. Bonn. II. p. 129, 21—130, 13.

V 42. 4 Σάρκελ καὶ scr. Moravosik: Σάρκελ κὲ P Σαρκελ κὲ V Με Σάρκελ (litteris κὲ erasis) P V Ba Be || 5 Νεκροπύλων V edd.: Νεκροπήλων P || 8 κλιμάτων P || 10/1 ἐπονομαζομένης: καλουμένης V edd. || 11 Ταμάταρχα scr.

42. Geographical description from Thessalonica to the Danube river and the city of Belgrade; of Turkey and Patzinacia to the Chazar city of Sarkel and Russia and to the Nekropyla, that are in the sea of Pontus, near the Dnieper river; and to Cherson together with Bosphorus, between which are the cities of the Regions; then to the lake of Maeotis, which for its size is also called a sea, and to the city called Tamatarcha; and of Zichia, moreover, and of Papagia and of Kasachia and of Alania and of Abasgia and to the city of Sotirioupolis.

From Thessalonica to the river Danube where stands the city called Belgrade, is a journey of eight days, if one is not travelling in haste but by easy stages. The Turks live beyond the Danube river, in the land of Moravia, but also on this side of it, between the Danube and the Save river. From the lower reaches of the Danube river, opposite to Distra, Patzinacia stretches along, and its inhabitants control the territory as far as Sarkel, the city of the Chazars, in which garrisons of 300 men are posted and annually relieved. Sarkel among them means 'white house', and it was built by the spatharocandidate Petronas, surnamed Camaterus, when the Chazars requested the emperor Theophilus that this city should be built for them. For the then chagan and the pech of Chazaria sent envoys to this same emperor Theophilus and begged that the city of Sarkel might be built for them, and the emperor acceded to their request and sent to them the afore-said spatharocandidate Petronas with ships of war of the imperial navy, and sent also ships of war of the captain-general of Paphlagonia. This same Petronas arrived at Cherson and left the ships of war at Cherson, and,

Moravcsik τὰ Μάταρχα P: τοῦ Μάταρχα edd. || 12/3 Παπαγίας (*secunda syllaba πα s. v. rubro atramento addita*) Pⁱ V edd.: Παγίας P || 13 Καζαχίας edd. || 16 Βελέγραδα: Βελάγραδον *mg.* P || 17 δετώ edd.: ἡ' P ἡ' *coni.* Marquart || 17/8 πορεύεται Ba Be || 18 Τούρκοι P || 19 Μωραβίας P || εἰς τὴν τῆς Μωραβίας γῆν *post* ἐνθεν *transponendum coni.* Marquart || 22 κάστρου V edd.: κάστρων P || 23 τριακῆσοι Theoph. Cont. τ' *coni.* Migne Bury: τὰ P edd. || 24 ἄσπρον ὁπίτινον: λευκὸν οἶκημα Theoph. Cont. || 25 Καματεροῦ Theoph. Cont. || 27 καὶ ὁ Theoph. Cont. *coni.* Bayer Lehrberg Marquart Bury: ὁ καὶ P edd. || 28 βασιλέα: αὐτοκράτορα Theoph. Cont. || ἑναποστελλαντες: ἀποστέλλαντες edd. || 30 σπαθαροκανδιδάτον P || Πετρωνά P: Πετρωνᾶν Theoph. Cont. || 31 βασιλικῶν πλωτῶν: βασιλικοπλωτῶν Theoph. Cont. || 33 χελάνδια: μακράς νῆας Theoph. Cont. || ἔλπεν *coni.* Moravcsik: εὔρεν P εὔρεν edd. ὥρμισεν *coni.* Bury προσαρμίσας... κατέλειπεν Theoph. Cont. || 33/4 εἰς καματερά καράβια: ἐν στοργγύλαις ... καὶσι Theoph. Cont. ||

- καράβια, ἀπῆλθεν ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τοῦ Τανάϊδος ποταμοῦ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ κά-
 119^ρP στρον | ἔμελλεν κτίσαι. Καὶ ἐπειδὴ ὁ τόπος λίθους οὐκ εἶχεν πρὸς κτίσιν 35
 τοῦ κάστρου ἐπιτηδείους, καμίνιά τινα ποιησάμενος καὶ βήσσαλον ἐν
 αὐτοῖς ἐγκαύσας, μετ' αὐτῶν τὴν τοῦ κάστρου κτίσιν ἐποιήσατο, ἐκ
 μικρῶν τινων τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ κοχλιδίων ἄσβεστον ἐργασάμενος.
 Οὗτος οὖν ὁ προρρηθεὶς σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος Πετρωνᾶς μετὰ τὸ κτίσαι
 τὸ κάστρον τὸ Σάρκελ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Θεοφίλον εἰσελθὼν, εἶπεν 40
 αὐτῷ, ὅτι· «Εἰ θέλῃς ὅλως τὸ τῆς Χερσῶνος κάστρον καὶ τοὺς ἐν αὐτῇ
 τόπους κυρίως ἐξουσιάσαι καὶ τούτους μὴ τῆς σῆς ἐκτὸς γενέσθαι χειρὸς,
 προβάλλου στρατηγὸν ἴδιον, καὶ μὴ τοῖς ἐκείνων καταπιστεύσης πρω-
 119^ρP τεύουσί τε καὶ ἄρχουσι.» Μέχρι γὰρ Θεοφίλου τοῦ | βασιλέως οὐκ ἦν
 στρατηγὸς ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀποστελλόμενος, ἀλλ' ἦν ὁ τὰ πάντα διοι- 45
 κῶν ὁ λεγόμενος πρωτεύων μετὰ καὶ τῶν ἐπονομαζομένων πατέρων
 179^{Be} τῆς | πόλεως. Τοῦ οὖν βασιλέως Θεοφίλου πρὸς ταῦτα βουλευσαμένου
 τὸν ὁ δεῖνα ἔξαποστεῖλαι στρατηγὸν ἢ τὸν ὁ δεῖνα, ὕστερον ἀποσταλῆναι
 προέκρινεν τὸν προρρηθέντα σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον Πετρωνᾶν ὡς † ἐμπειραῖ
 τοῦ τόπου γεγονότα καὶ τῶν πραγμάτων οὐκ ἀνεπιστήμονα, ὃν καὶ 50
 πρωτοσπαθᾶριον τιμήσας, προεβάλετο στρατηγόν, καὶ εἰς Χερσῶνα
 ἔξαπέστειλεν, ὀρίσας τὸν τότε πρωτεύοντα καὶ πάντας ὑπέεικεν αὐτῷ,
 ἐξ οὗ καὶ μέχρι τὴν σήμερον ἐπεκράτησεν ἀπὸ τῶν ἐντεῦθεν εἰς Χερσῶνα
 120^ρP προβάλλεσθαι στρατηγούς. Ἄλλ' αὕτη μὲν | ἡ τοῦ Σάρκελ τοῦ κάστρου
 κτίσις καθέστηκεν. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανούβεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι τοῦ προρρη- 55
 θέντος κάστρου, τοῦ Σάρκελ ὁδὸς ἐστὶν ἡμερῶν ξ'. Μέσον δὲ τῆς τῆς
 γῆς ποταμοὶ μὲν εἰσὶν πολλοί· δύο δὲ μέγιστοι ἐξ αὐτῶν ὃ τε Δάναστρις
 καὶ ὁ Δάναπρις. Εἰσὶ δὲ ἕτεροι ποταμοί, ὃ τε λεγόμενος Συγγούλ καὶ
 ὁ Ὑβύλ <καὶ> ὁ Ἀλματαὶ καὶ ὁ Κοῦφισ καὶ ὁ Βογοῦ καὶ ἕτεροι πολλοί.
 Εἰς δὲ τὰ ὑψηλότερα τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ μέρη κατοικοῦσιν οἱ 60
 Ῥῶς, δι' οὗ ποταμοῦ ἀποπλέοντες, πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ποιοῦνται τὴν ἀφίξιν.
 Ἡ δὲ Πατζινακία πᾶσαν τὴν γῆν <μέχρι> τῆς τε Ῥωσίας καὶ Βοσπόρου
 κατακρατεῖ καὶ μέχρι Χερσῶνος καὶ ἕως τὸ Σαράτ, Βουράτ καὶ τῶν
 120^ρP λ' μερῶν. Τὸ | δὲ τῆς παραλίας τῆς θαλάσσης ἀπὸ τοῦ Δανούβεως
 ποταμοῦ διάστημα μέχρι τοῦ Δανάστρεως ποταμοῦ εἰσὶν μίλια ρκ'. 65
 Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Δανάστρεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι <τοῦ> ποταμοῦ Δανάπρεως
 180^{Be} εἰσὶν μίλια π', ὁ χρυσὸς λεγόμενος αἰγιαλός. Ἀπὸ δὲ τὸ στόμιον ποταμοῦ

V 34/5 τὸ κάστρον· τὴν πόλιν Theoph. Cont. || 35 κτίσαι· οἰκοδομεῖν Theoph. Cont. ||
 ἐπειδὴ· ἐπεὶ δὲ Theoph. Cont. || 36 βήσσαλον P Theoph. Cont. || 38 κοχλιδίων·
 καχλιδίων P⁹ Ba Be· καχλήρων Theoph. Cont. καχληρίων conit. Bek-
 ker || 39 σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος P || 43 προβάλλου V edd.: προβάλου P προβαλοῦ
 conit. Bekker || 46 καὶ (etiam Theoph. Cont.): om. V edd. || 48 ἀποσταλῆναι·
 ἀποστεῖλαι V edd. || 49 σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον P || Πετρωνᾶ edd. || ἐμπειρά:

having embarked his men on ships of burden, went off to that place on the Tanaïs river where he was to build the city. And since the place had no stones suitable for the building of the city, he made some ovens and baked bricks in them and with these he carried out the building of the city, making mortar out of tiny shells from the river. Now this aforesaid spatharocandidate Petronas, after building the city of Sarkel, went to the emperor Theophilus and said to him: «If you wish complete mastery and dominion over the city of Cherson and of the places in Cherson, and not that they should slip out of your hand, appoint your own military governor and do not trust to their primates and nobles.» For up till the time of Theophilus the emperor, there was no military governor sent from here, but all administration was in the hands of the so-called primate, with those who were called the fathers of the city. The emperor Theophilus took counsel in this matter, whether to send as military governor so-and-so or such-an-one, and at last made up his mind that the aforesaid spatharocandidate Petronas should be sent, as one who had acquired local *experience* and was not unskilled in affairs, and so he promoted him to be protospatharius and appointed him military governor and sent him out to Cherson, with orders that the then primate and everyone else were to obey him; and from that time until this day it has been the rule for military governors in Cherson to be appointed from here. So much, then, for the building of the city of Sarkel. From the Danube river to the aforesaid city of Sarkel is a journey of 60 days. In this land between are many rivers; the two biggest of them are the Dniester and the Dnieper. But there are other rivers, that which is called the Syngoul and the Hybyl and the Almatai and the Kouphis and the Bogou and many others. On the higher reaches of the Dnieper river live the Russians, and down this river they sail and arrive at the Romans. Patzinacia possesses all the land as far as Russia and Bosphorus and as far as Cherson and up to Sarat, Bourat and the 30 places. The distance along the sea-coast from the Danube river to the Dniester river is 120 miles. From the Dniester river to the river Dnieper is 80 miles, the so-called 'gold-coast'. After the

ἐμπειραν Theoph. Cont.^V ἐμπειρον V edd. Theoph. Cont. ἐν πείρᾳ conī. Kukules Kyriakides || 50 γεγονότα: γινόμενον V edd. || καὶ² om. edd. || 51 καὶ s. v. add. P¹ in textum receperunt V edd. || 52 ὁρίσας: θεσπισας Theoph. Cont. διατάγματα πέμψας Cedr. || τὸν τότε πρωτεύοντα edd.: τὸν τε πρωτεύοντα Theoph. Cont. τὸ τότε πρωτεύοντα P || 53 τὴν: τῆς V edd. || 54 τοῦ Σάρκελ τοῦ κάστρου: κάστρου Σάρκελ edd. || 55 κτίσις: οἰκοδομή Theoph. Cont. || 58 Συγγούλ: Ὑγγούλ conī. Thunmann Brun || 59 Ὑβυλ Be || καὶ add. Moravcsik || Κούφης P || καὶ ὁ³: ὁ καὶ conī. Marquart || 62 μέχρι addendum conī. Bayer Lehrberg μεταξὺ addendum conī. Makai || 63/4 τῶν λοιπῶν μερῶν conī. Lehrberg: ἔστιν ὁδὸς ἡμερῶν... conī. Šestakov Latyšev || 65 ἀναστρεως conī. Westberg Laskin Latyšev: ἀναπρεως P edd. || 66 τοῦ add. V edd. || 67 δὲ om. V edd. ||

τοῦ Δανάπρεως εἰσι τὰ Ἀδαρά, κάκεισε κόλπος ἐστὶν μέγας, ὁ λεγόμενος τὰ Νεκρόπυλα, ἐν ᾧ τις διελθεῖν ἀδυνατεῖ παντελῶς. Καὶ ἀπὸ μὲν τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ μέχρι Χερσῶνός εἰσιν μίλια τ', ἐν τῷ μέσῳ 70 δὲ λίμναι καὶ λιμένες εἰσὶν, ἐν οἷς οἱ Χερσωνῖται τὸ ἄλας ἐργάζονται.

Ἀπὸ δὲ Χερσῶνος μέχρι Βοσπόρου εἰσὶν τὰ κάστρα τῶν κλιμάτων, 121*P τὸ δὲ διάστημα μίλια τ'. Καὶ ἀπὸ Βοσπόρου τὸ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης στόμιόν ἐστιν, ἥτις καὶ θάλασσα διὰ τὸ μέγεθος παρὰ πάντων ὀνομάζεται. Εἰς δὲ τὴν αὐτὴν Μαιώτιδα θάλασσαν εἰσρέουσιν ποταμοὶ πολλοὶ 75 καὶ μεγάλοι· πρὸς μὲν τὸ ἀρκτέων αὐτῆς μέρος ὁ Δάναπρις ποταμός, ἐξ οὗ καὶ οἱ Ῥῶς διέρχονται πρὸς τε τὴν μαύρην Βουλγαρίαν καὶ Χαζαρίαν καὶ Συρίαν. Ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς κόλπος τῆς Μαιώτιδος ἔρχεται ἀντικρὺ τῶν Νεκροπύλων, τῶν ὄντων πλησίον τοῦ Δανάπρεως ποταμοῦ, ὡς ἀπὸ 80 μιλίων δ', καὶ μίσγεται, ἐν ᾧ καὶ σοῦδαν οἱ παλαιοὶ ποιησάμενοι διεβί- 80 βασαν τὴν θάλασσαν, μέσον ἀποκλείσαντες πᾶσαν τὴν Χερσῶνος γῆν

121*P καὶ τῶν κλιμάτων | καὶ τῆς Βοσπόρου γῆν, κρατοῦσαν μέχρι, α μιλίων ἢ καὶ πλείονων τινῶν. Ἐκ δὲ τῶν πολλῶν ἐτῶν κατεχώσθη ἡ αὐτὴ σοῦδα καὶ εἰς δάσος ἐγένετο πολὺ, καὶ οὐκ εἰσὶν ἐν αὐτῷ πλὴν δύο ὁδοί, ἐν αἷς οἱ Πατζινακῖται διέρχονται πρὸς τε Χερσῶνα καὶ Βόσπορον καὶ 85 τὰ κλίματα. Εἰς δὲ τὸ ἀνατολικώτερον μέρος τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης

181Be εἰσέρχονται πολλοὶ τινες ποταμοί, ὃ τε Τάναϊς ποταμός, ὁ ἀπὸ τὸ κά- στρον Σάρκελ ἐρχόμενος, καὶ τὸ Χαράκουλ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ τὸ βερζίτικον ἀλιεύεται, εἰσι δὲ καὶ ἕτεροι ποταμοί, ὁ Βάλ καὶ ὁ Βουρλίκ, ὁ Χαδὴρ καὶ ἄλλοι πλεῖστοι ποταμοί. Ἐκ δὲ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης ἐξέρχεται στό- 90

122*P μιον τὸ Βουρλίκ ἐπονομαζόμενον, καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ Πόντου θά|λασσαν καταρρεῖ, ἐν ᾧ ἐστὶν ἡ Βόσπορος, ἀντικρὺ δὲ τῆς Βοσπόρου τὸ Ταμάταρχα λεγόμενον κάστρον ἐστίν. Τὸ δὲ διάστημα τοῦ περάματος τοῦ τοιούτου στομίου ἐστὶν μίλια ιη'. Ἐν δὲ τῷ μέσῳ τῶν αὐτῶν ιη' μιλίων ἐστὶ νησίον μέγα χαμηλόν, τὸ λεγόμενον Ἀτέχ. Ἀπὸ τὸ Ταμάταρχά ἐστι 95 ποταμός ἀπὸ μιλίων ιη' ἢ καὶ κ', λεγόμενος Οὐκρούχ, ὁ διαχωρίζων τὴν Ζιχίαν καὶ τὸ Ταμάταρχα, ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Οὐκρούχ μέχρι τοῦ Νικόψεως ποταμοῦ, ἐν ᾧ καὶ κάστρον ἐστὶν ὁμώνυμον τῷ ποταμῷ, ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα τῆς Ζιχίας· τὸ δὲ διάστημά ἐστιν μίλια τ'. Ἄνωθεν δὲ τῆς Ζιχίας ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα ἡ λεγομένη Παπαγία, καὶ ἄνωθεν τῆς Παπαγίας χώρας 100

122*P ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα ἡ λεγομένη Κασαχία, ἄνωθεν δὲ τῆς | Κασαχίας ὄρη τὰ Καυκάσιά εἰσιν, καὶ τῶν ὁρέων ἄνωθεν ἐστὶν ἡ χώρα τῆς Ἀλανίας. Ἡ δὲ τῆς Ζιχίας παράλιος ἔχει νησία, τὸ μέγα νησίον καὶ τὰ τρία νησία· ἐνδοθεν δὲ τούτων εἰσὶν καὶ ἕτερα νησία, τὰ καὶ ἐπινημηθέντα καὶ παρὰ

F 80 ἐν ᾧ — 83 τινῶν: cf. Herod. IV. 3, 20; Ptolem. Geogr. III. 6, 5; Steph. Byz. s. v. Τάφραι, etc.

mouth of the river Dnieper comes Adara, and there is a great gulf, called Nekropyla, where it is utterly impossible for a man to pass through. From the Dnieper river to Cherson is 300 miles, and between are marshes and harbours, in which the Chersonites work the salt. Between Cherson and Bosphorus are the cities of the Regions, and the distance is 300 miles. After Bosphorus comes the mouth of the Maeotic lake, which for its size everybody calls a sea. Into this same Maeotic sea run rivers many and great; on its northern side runs the Dnieper river, from which the Russians come through to Black Bulgaria and Chazaria and Syria. This same gulf of Maeotis comes opposite to, and within about four miles of, the Nekropyla that are near the Dnieper river, and joins them where the ancients dug a ditch and carried the sea through, enclosing within all the land of Cherson and of the Regions and the land of Bosphorus, which cover up to 1,000 miles or even rather more. In the course of many years this same ditch has silted up and become a great forest, and there are in it but two roads, along which the Pechenegs pass through to Cherson and Bosphorus and the Regions. Into the eastern side of the Maeotic lake debouch many rivers, the Tanais river that comes down from the city of Sarkel, and the Charakoul, in which they fish for sturgeon, and there are other rivers, the Bal and the Bourlik, the Chadir and other rivers very numerous. From the Maeotic lake debouches a mouth called Bourlik and flows down into the sea of Pontus where Bosphorus is, and opposite to Bosphorus is the city called Tamatarcha; the width of the strait of this mouth is 18 miles. In the middle of these 18 miles is a large, low island, called Atech. After Tamatarcha, some 18 or 20 miles from it, is a river called Oukrouch, which divides Zichia and Tamatarcha, and from the Oukrouch to the Nikopsis river, on which stands a city with the same name as the river, is the country of Zichia; the distance is 300 miles. Beyond Zichia is the country called Papagia, and beyond the country of Papagia is the country called Kasachia, and beyond Kasachia are the Caucasian mountains, and beyond the mountains is the country of Alania. Off the sea-board of Zichia lie islands, the great island and the three islands; and, closer to shore than these, are yet other islands, which have been used for pasturage

V 68 τὰ Ἀδάρᾳ: Τάνδαρα *coni.* Latyſhev || καὶ ἐκείσε *edd.* || 69 Νεκρόπυλα V *edd.*: Νεκρόπηλα P || 70 μέσον: μέσῳ V *edd.* || 71 οἷς: αἷς V *edd.* || *ol om. edd.* || Χερσωνίται P || 72 Βοσπόρου P || κλημάτων P || 76 μὲν *om. edd.* || 78 Συρίαν: Ζυχίαν *coni.* Kunik Σουρίαν *coni.* Gibbon Μυρίαν seu Μορδίαν *coni.* Tomasehek || 79 Νεκροπύλων V *edd.*: Νεκροπήλων P || 80 σούδα P || 82 κλημάτων P || τῆς: τὴν Ba Be || ,α: α' *edd.* || 83 πλείονων Ba Be: πλέον P || σούδα P || 85 Πατζινάκται P || 86 κλήματα P || 88 Χωράκου V *edd.* || βερζήτικον P *edd.* || 89 καὶ ὁ: ὁ καὶ *coni.* Marquart || 92 ἡ: ὁ *edd.* || τῆς: τοῦ Migne || 94 μέσον: μέσῳ *edd.* || 97 Ταματαρχά P || 99 δὲ *om. edd.* || 102 Ἀλανίας] *litteras alani in ras. scr.* P¹ || 103 Ζηχίας P || νησὶν P νησὶν P^x: νηοὶ V νησιῶν *edd.* || 104 καὶ *om.* V *edd.* || ἐπινημθέντα *coni.* Jenkins: ἐπινηθέντα P *edd.* ||

τῶν Ζιχῶν κτισθέντα, τό τε Τουργανήρχ καί τὸ Τζαρβαγάνιν καὶ 105
 ἕτερον νησί, καὶ εἰς τὸν τοῦ Σπαταλοῦ λιμένα ἕτερον νησί, καὶ εἰς
 182Be τὰς Πτελέας ἕτερον, ἐν ᾧ ἐν ταῖς τῶν Ἀλανῶν ἐπιδρομαῖς οἱ Ζιχοὶ
 καταφεύγουσιν. Τὸ δὲ παραθαλάσσιον ἀπὸ τῆς συμπληρώσεως τῆς
 Ζιχίας, ἥτοι τοῦ Νικόψεως ποταμοῦ, ἐστὶν ἡ τῆς Ἀβασγίας χώρα μέχρι
 τοῦ κάστρου Σωτηριουπόλεως· εἰσὶ δὲ μίλια τ'.

110

43. Περὶ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ταρών.

123P Ἀλλὰ περὶ μὲν τῶν βορείων Σκυθῶν ἱκανῶς σοι δεδήλωται,
 τέκνον ποθοῦμενον, ὧν ἡ γνώσις ἐπωφελὴς τε καὶ εὐχρηστος ἐν καιρῷ
 σοι πάντως γενήσεται· δεῖ δέ σε μὴδὲ τὰ πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ἀγνοεῖν,
 ὅθεν ὑπήκοα πάλιν τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐγένετο, ἀφ' οὗ τὸ πρῶτον τῆς τοῦ- 5
 των ἐπικρατείας ἐξέπεσον.

Πρῶτος γὰρ ὁ Κρικορίκιος ἐκεῖνος τοῦ Ταρῶν ἄρχων πρὸς τὸν
 βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων ἑαυτὸν ὑπέκλινεν καὶ ὑπέταξεν, ἀλλ' ἐξ ἀρχῆς μὲν
 ἐπαμφοτερίζων ἐφαίνετο, καὶ λόγῳ μὲν τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως φιλίαν προσ-
 ποιεῖτο τιμᾶν, ἔργῳ δὲ τῇ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κατάρχοντι τὰ καθ' 10
 ἡδονὴν διεπράττετο, καὶ διαφόρως ἡγεμῶν ἐχρημάτισεν τῶν ἀπὸ Συρίας
 123P ἐξερχομένων φοσσάτων | κατὰ τῶν ὑπηκόων θεμάτων τῷ βασιλεῖ
 Ῥωμαίων, καὶ πάντα τὰ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ μελετώμενα
 κατὰ τῶν ἀντιπάλων Σαρακηνῶν πρὸς Συρίαν ἐμήνυνεν, καὶ λάθρᾳ περὶ
 τῶν παρ' ἡμῖν συμβαινόντων ἀεὶ πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν διὰ γραμμάτων 15
 183Be ἐδηλοποιεῖ, καὶ δοκεῖν μὲν ἐβούλετο | τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων φρονῶν, εὐρί-
 σκετο δὲ μᾶλλον τὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν προκρίνων τε καὶ τιμῶν. Πλὴν
 ἀπέστελλεν ἀεὶ δῶρα, ἅπερ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε βαρβάροις δοκεῖ τίμια, πρὸς
 τὸν ἐν βασιλεῦσιν αἰοίδιμον Λέοντα, καὶ ἀντελάμβανε πλειονὰ τε καὶ
 κρεῖττονα παρὰ τοῦ εὐσεβοῦς βασιλεύοντος, ὃς καὶ πολλάκις αὐτῷ προ- 20
 124P ἐτρέψατο διὰ γραμμάτων πρὸς τὴν βασι|λεύουσαν εἰσελθεῖν καὶ τὸν
 βασιλέα θεάσασθαι καὶ τῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ φιλοφρονήσεων καὶ τιμῶν με-
 τασχεῖν. Ὁ δὲ δεδοικώς, μὴ πρὸς λύπην καὶ σκάνδαλον τοῦ ἀμερμου-
 μνῆ γένηται τοῦτο, προφάσεις ἐπλάττετο, καὶ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι τὴν ἑαυτοῦ
 χώραν ἔρημον τῆς ἐξ αὐτοῦ βοήθειας καταλιπεῖν, ἵνα μὴ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακη- 25
 νῶν καταληϊσθῇ, μάτην ἐσκήπτετο.

Ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς ἄρχων τοῦ Ταρῶν κρατήσας ἐν πολέμῳ ποτὲ τοῦ
 Ἀρκάδου τοὺς παῖδας, ἡγουν Κρικορίκιου τοῦ πατρικίου, τοῦ πατρὸς

V 105 Ζηχῶν P || Τζαρβαγάνην P: Τζαρβαγάνι V edd. || 106 νησίον P νησὴν
 P^x: νησί V νησίον edd. || Σπαταλοῦ (*etiam* mg. P^x): ποταμοῦ V edd. ||
 νησίον P νησὴν P^x: νησί V νησίον edd. || 107 Ζηχοὶ P || 109 Ζηχίας P ||
 τοῦ om. edd.

and built upon by the Zichians, Tourganirch and Tzarbaganin and another island; and in the harbour of Spalaton another island; and at Pteleai another, where the Zichians take refuge during Alan incursions. The coastal area from the limit of Zichia, that is, from the Nikopsis river, is the country of Abasgia, as far as the city of Sotirioupolis; it is 300 miles.

43. Of the country of Taron.

But concerning the northern Scyths sufficient has been made plain to you, beloved child, knowledge of which shall be all ways advantageous and useful to you in time of need; but also it is right that you should not be ignorant of the parts towards the rising sun, for what reasons they became once more subject to the Romans, after they had first fallen away from their control.

The late Krikorikios, then, prince of Taron, at first bent and submitted himself before the emperor of the Romans, but from the first he seemed double-faced, and while in word he pretended to esteem the friendship of the emperor, in fact he acted at the pleasure of the chief prince of the Saracens, and on various occasions led armies that came out of Syria against provinces subject to the emperor of the Romans, and everything that the Romans were planning in secret against their Saracen adversaries he would divulge to Syria, and would always keep the commander of the faithful informed secretly through his letters of what was going on among us; and while he wished to appear a partisan of the Roman cause, he was found, on the contrary, to prefer and favour the cause of the Saracens. However, he continually sent presents, such as appear valuable to the barbarians of those parts, to Leo, the glorious among emperors, and got in return more and better from the pious emperor, who also frequently urged him by letter to visit the imperial city and behold the emperor and partake of the bounties and honours bestowed by him. But he, fearing lest this might vex and offend the commander of the faithful, would trump up excuses, and falsely allege that it was impossible for him to leave his own country deprived of his assistance, lest it might be plundered by the Saracens.

Now, this same prince of Taron one day captured in battle the sons of Arkaïkas, that is to say, the cousins of the patrician Krikorikios, father

43. 1 Ταρων P || 14 ἐμνήνευ: ἀνεμνήνευ edd. || 15 ἡμῖν Bandurius Be: ὑμῖν P || ἀμερμουμένην P || 17 τιμῶν: φρονῶν V edd. || 20 εὐσεβοῦς edd.: εὐσεβῶς *coni.* Bekker || 20/1 προυτρέψατο edd. || 21 καὶ *om.* Be || 24 τὴν *om.* edd. || 25 τῶν *om.* edd. || 26 ἐσκήπτετο (*etiam* Be): ἐσκέπτετο V Me Ba || 28 Κρικωρίκη edd. ||

τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀσωτίου, τοὺς ἐξαδέλφους, εἶχε παρ' ἑαυτῷ δεσμίους. Περί ὧν καὶ Συμβάτιος, ὁ τότε ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων, τὸν 30 αὐτὸν μακαριώτατον βασιλέα διὰ γραμμάτων ἠξίωσεν τοῦ ἀποστελεῖν

124^{VP} | πρὸς τὸν Ταρωνίτην καὶ ἀναλαβέσθαι σπουδάσαι τοὺς οἰκείους ἀνεψίους, οἵτινες ἦσαν υἱοὶ τοῦ εἰρημένου Ἀρχαῖκα, ἵνα μὴ πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουμνήν ἀποσταλῶσιν· συγγενὴς γὰρ ἦν τοῦ Συμβατίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόν- 35 των, Γρηγόριος ὁ πατρίκιος. Επακούσας δὲ τῆς τοιαύτης τοῦ Συμβα- 35 τίου ἀξιόσεως Λέων, ὁ μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς, τὸν Σινούτην ἐκείνον

184^{Be} | τὸν εὐνοῦχον ἀπέστειλε, χαρτουλάριον τηνικαῦτα τοῦ ὁξέως δρόμου τυγχάνοντα, πρὸς τε τὸν ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρῶν τῆς τοιαύτης ἐνεκα ὑποθέ- 40 σεως καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἀδρανασήρ, τὸν κουροπαλάτην Ἰβηρίας, διὰ τινὰς ἐτέρας ὑποθέσεις, δούς αὐτῷ καὶ πρὸς ἀμφοτέρους ξενάλια τὰ ἀρμόζοντα. 40

125^{VP} Διαβληθέν/τος δὲ τοῦ εἰρημένου Σινούτου παρὰ Θεοδώρου, τοῦ τῶν Ἀρμενίων ἐρμηνευτοῦ, πρὸς τὸν εἰρημένον αἰοιδιμον βασιλέα, ἐξαπεστάλη βασιλικὸς ἀντ' αὐτοῦ ὁ πρωτοσπαθᾶριος Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ δομέστικος τῆς ὑπουργίας ὁ τοῦ Λιβός, ὁ νῦν ἀνθύπατος πατρίκιος καὶ μέγας ἐται- 45 ρειάρχης, ἐνταλματικῶς ὁρισθεὶς τοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι τὰ πρὸς τὸν ἄρχοντα 45 τοῦ Ταρῶν, τὸν Κρικορίκιον, ἀποσταλέντα ξενάλια, καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν πρὸς τὸ Ταρῶν εἰσελθεῖν, τὸν δὲ Σινούτην προτρέψασθαι πρὸς τὸν Ἀδραν- 45 σήρ, τὸν κουροπαλάτην Ἰβηρίας, κατὰ τὰ ἐνταλθέντα αὐτῷ ἀπελθεῖν. Καταλαβὼν δὲ τὸ Ταρῶν ὁ εἰρημένος πρωτοσπαθᾶριος καὶ ἀποδοὺς

125^{VP} Κρικορίκιῳ τὰ πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀποσταλέντα τοῦ βασιλέως δῶρα | καὶ γράμ- 50 ματα, ἀνέλαβeto τὸν νόθον τοῦ Ταρωνίτου υἱόν, δς Ἀσώτιος ὀνομάζετο, καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, ὃν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τιμήσας ἀξία καὶ ἱκανῶς φιλοφρονησάμενος, πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον πατέρα διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀπέστειλεν. Ἀναλαβό- 55 μενος οὖν ὁ αὐτὸς Κωνσταντῖνος ἐκεῖθεν Ἀπογάνεμ, τὸν ἀδελφὸν 55 Κρικορίκιου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τοῦ Ταρῶν, εἰσήγαγεν πρὸς τὸν μακάριον 185^{Be} βασιλέα μετὰ καὶ τῶν | δύο υἱῶν τοῦ Ἀρχαῖκα, ὃν καὶ τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπα- 55 θαρίου ἀξία τιμήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ φιλοφρόνως πολλάκις δεξιωσάμενος, ἀπέστειλεν αὐθις διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κωνσταντίνου εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν χώραν καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἴδιον ἀδελφόν. 60

126^{VP} Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἐν Χαλδίᾳ ὁ εἰρημένος Κωνσταντῖνος ἐπὶ χρὸ|νον ἱκανὸν διατρίψας, ἐπετράπη διὰ κελεύσεως εἰσελθεῖν ἐν τῷ Ταρῶν καὶ ἀναλαβέσθαι Κρικορίκιον, τὸν ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρῶν καὶ πρὸς τὴν βασι- 65 λεύουσαν εἰσελθεῖν, ὃ καὶ ἐποίησεν. Εἰσελθόντος δὲ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κρικορι- 65 κίου ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ πόλει καὶ τῇ τοῦ μαγίστρου καὶ στρατηγοῦ 65 Ταρῶν ἀξία τιμηθέντος, ἐδόθη αὐτῷ καὶ οἶκος εἰς κατοικίαν, ὁ τοῦ Βαρβάρου λεγόμενος, ὁ νῦν Βασιλείου τοῦ παρακοιμωμένου οἶκος. Ἐτιμήθη δὲ καὶ ἐτησίῳ ῥόγῃ χρυσοῦ μὲν δέκα λίτρας καὶ μιλιαρησίαν

of the protospatharius Asotios, and he held them by him as prisoners. On their behalf the then prince of princes Symbatio sent letters to the same emperor, of most blessed memory, begging him to send to the Taronite and make efforts to recover these nephews of his, the sons of the said Arkaïkas, so that they might not be sent to the commander of the faithful; for the patrician Grigorios was a relative of Symbatio, the prince of princes. The emperor Leo, of most blessed memory, acceded to this request of Symbatio, and sent the late Sinoutis, the eunuch, who was then chief clerk to the foreign ministry, to the prince of Taron upon this business, and also to Adranasir, the curopalate of Iberia, on some other matters of business; and he furnished him with presents suitable to both. But when a calumnious charge was laid before the said glorious emperor against the said Sinoutis by Theodore, the Armenian interpreter, there was sent out as imperial agent in his stead the protospatharius Constantine Lips, keeper of the imperial plate, — he who is now patrician proconsul and commander of the great company, — with orders instructing him to take over the presents dispatched to the prince of Taron, Krikorikios, and himself to proceed to Taron, and to order Sinoutis to go on to Adranasir, the curopalate of Iberia, as he had been instructed to do. The said protospatharius arrived at Taron and gave to Krikorikios the gifts and letters of the emperor which had been sent to him, and took up the bastard son of the Taronite, who was called Asotios, and brought him to the imperial city; and the emperor honoured him with the rank of protospatharius and richly entertained him, and then sent him back to his father in the conduct of the same protospatharius. The same Constantine took thence Apoganem, brother of Krikorikios, prince of Taron, and brought him to the emperor, of blessed memory, together with the two sons of Arkaïkas; and him too the emperor honoured with the rank of protospatharius and many times bounteously entertained him, and sent him back again, in conduct of the same Constantine, to his country and his brother.

After this the said Constantine spent some time in Chaldia, and was then commissioned by imperial mandate to go to Taron and take Krikorikios, prince of Taron, and come to the imperial city; and this he did. When this same Krikorikios had entered the city protected of God, and had been honoured with the rank of magister and military governor of Taron, he was also given for his residence a house called the house of Barbaros, now the house of Basil the chamberlain. He was, moreover, honoured with an annual stipend of ten pounds in gold and a further ten pounds in miliaresia,

V 33 ἀμερμουνην P || 46 Κρικορίκιον edd.: Γρικορίκιον P || 49 ἀποδοῦς F
 cont. Bekker: ἀποδιδούς P edd. || 51 ὀνομάζετο P || 55 ἐκεῖθεν: ἐκεῖνος edd. ||
 post ἀδελφὸν add. τοῦ edd. || 56 Κρικορικίου Ba Be || 57 τοῦ om. edd. ||
 68 δέκα edd.: ι' P || μυλιαρισίων P ||

έτέρας δέκα λίτρας, ὥς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν λίτρας εἴκοσι. Καὶ ἐπὶ χρόνον ἐν τῇ βασιλευοσῇ διατρίψας, καὶ διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Κων- 70 σταντίνου πάλιν πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν διεσώθη χώραν.

- 126^{VP} Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα πάλιν εἰσῆλθεν καὶ ὁ Ἀπογάνεμ πρὸς τὸν μακάριον βασιλέα, καὶ προσεβίβασθη παρ' αὐτοῦ εἰς πατρικιότητα· ἐπετρέπη δὲ καὶ εἰς γυναῖκα λαβεῖν τοῦ εἰρημένου Κωνσταντίνου θυγατέρα, καὶ ἐπὶ τῇ τοιαύτῃ προφάσει καὶ οἶκον ἐπεζήτησεν, καὶ ἔλαβεν καὶ αὐτὸς τὸν 75 τοῦ Βαρβάρου οἶκον χρυσοβούλλιου χωρὶς. Καὶ φιλοφρονηθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, τῷ τότε μὲν πρὸς τὴν ἰδίαν χώραν ὑπέστρεψεν πρὸς τὸ
- 186Be | πάλιν εἰσελθεῖν καὶ τὰ τοῦ γάμου ἀπαρτίσασθαι, ἅμα δὲ τῷ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν χώραν διασωθῆναι μετ' ὀλίγας ἡμέρας τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο. Ὁ δὲ τούτου ἀδελφός, Κρικορίκιος διὰ γραμμάτων αὐτοῦ ἐζητήσατο 80
- 127^{TP} εἰσερχεσθαι εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν καὶ παρὰ τῶν χειρῶν τοῦ ἀγίου βασιλέως λαμβάνειν τὴν διδομένην ῥόγαν αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐπὶ χρόνον τινὰ ἐν τῇ θεοφυλάκτῳ διατρίβειν πόλει. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ τὸν τῷ οἰκίῳ ἀδελφῷ προχειρισθέντα οἶκον εἰς κατοίκησιν λαβεῖν ἤξιου, ὃν καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς διὰ τε τὸ νεωστὶ ὑποταγῆναι καὶ διὰ τὸ καὶ 85 ἄλλους ἄρχοντας τῆς ἀνατολῆς πρὸς τὸν ὅμοιον ζῆλον τῆς πρὸς Ῥωμαίους ὑποταγῆς ἐγκαλέσασθαι· ἐγγραφον δὲ χρυσοβούλλιον δωρεὰν τοῦ τοιούτου οἴκου πρὸς αὐτὸν οὐκ ἐποίησεν.

- Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους ἱκανούς, Ῥωμανοῦ τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως τῶν σκήπτρων τῆς βασιλείας Ῥωμαίων ἐπειλημμένου, ἀνήγαγεν ὁ αὐτὸς 90
- 127^{VP} Κρικ|χορίκιος μὴ ἰσχύειν κρατεῖν τὸν τοῦ Βαρβάρου οἶκον, ἀλλ' ἤξιου λαβεῖν ἀντ' αὐτοῦ προάστειον ἐν Κελτζηνῇ, εἴτε τοῦ Τατζάτου, εἴτε ἄλλο, οἷον κελεύει ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἵνα, ὅτε ἐπιδρομὴ τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν κατὰ τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ γένηται, ἀποστέλλειν ἐκεῖσε ἔχει τὴν οἰκίαν συγγένειαν καὶ ὑπόστασιν. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὴν ἀκριβῆ γνῶσιν τῶν πραγμάτων 95 μὴ κεκτημένος, ἐλπίζων δὲ ἀπὸ βασιλικοῦ χρυσοβούλλιου τοῦ μακαρίου Λέοντος ἔχειν τὸν Ταρωνίτην τὸν τοῦ Βαρβάρου οἶκον, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ
- 187Be τὸ προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγοῶ ἐν Κελτζηνῇ, καὶ τὸν οἶκον δῆθεν | ἀντέλαβεν, χρυσοβούλλιον δὲ οὐδὲ οὗτος πρὸς αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τῷ προαστείῳ ἐποίησατο.
- 128^{TP} Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἔγραψε πρὸς τὸν | αὐτὸν βασιλέα ὁ Τορνίκης, ὁ 100 τοῦ Ταρωνίτου ἀνεψιός, ὁ τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ ἐκείνου υἱός, ὅτι· «Τὸν οἶκον τοῦ Βαρβάρου ὁ μακαριώτατος βασιλεὺς Λέων τῷ ἐμῷ πατρὶ ἔδωκῆσατο, μετὰ δὲ τὸν τοῦ πατρός μου θάνατον — διὰ τὸ ἔτι ἀνήλικον καὶ ὀρφανὸν τυγχάνειν ἐμέ — κατ' ἐξουσίαν ὁ θεὸς μου τὸν τούτου οἶκον κατεκράτησεν, αἰεὶ καθυπισχνουμένός μοι, ὅταν εἰς τὸν τέλειον τῆς ἡλικίας ἔλθω¹⁰⁵ χρόνον, ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν οἶκον τὸν πατρικόν, καὶ νῦν, ὥς ἔμαθον, δέδωκεν

making twenty pounds in all. After some sojourn in the imperial city, he was escorted back again to his country by this same protospatharius Constantine.

After this, Apoganem came once more to the emperor, of blessed memory, and was advanced by him to the rank of patrician; and he was also permitted to take to wife the daughter of the said Constantine, and on this ground he asked for a house as well and he too received the house of Barbaros, without a golden bull. After receiving the emperor's bounty, he then returned to his country, with intent to come again and complete the celebration of his marriage; but no sooner was he escorted back to his country than he ended his life, a few days afterwards. His brother Krikorikios sent letters asking that he might come to the imperial city and receive from the hands of the holy emperor the stipend granted to him and sojourn for some while in the city protected of God. Thereupon he proceeded to demand for his residence the house which had been set aside for his brother, and the emperor, of blessed memory, handed it over to him, both because he had lately submitted himself and in order to excite in other princes of the east a similar eagerness for submission to the Romans; but he issued no golden bull making a deed of gift of this house to him.

Several years later, when the emperor Romanus, of blessed memory, had laid hold upon the sceptre of the empire of the Romans, this same Krikorikios reported that he had not the means to keep the house of Barbaros, but demanded that he should receive in its stead a suburban estate in Keltzini, either that of Tatzates or some other, whichever the emperor directed, in order that, when the Agarenes should make an incursion into his country, he might be able to send thither his personal relatives and substance. The emperor, who did not possess an accurate knowledge of the facts, and supposed that the Taronite held the house of Barbaros in virtue of an imperial golden bull of Leo, of blessed memory, gave him the suburban estate of Grigoros in Keltzini and, of course, took back the house; but he too issued no golden bull in his favour in respect of the suburban estate.

Thereupon Tornikis, nephew of the Taronite and son of the late Apoganem, wrote to this same emperor: «The house of Barbaros was presented to my father by the emperor Leo, of most blessed memory, but after my father's death, because I was under age and an orphan, my uncle, in virtue of his authority, took possession of his house, always promising me that when I should come of age, I should take over the paternal house; and now, as I have

V 69 δέκα edd.: ι' P || ὥς: ὥστε edd. || 72 ὁ om. edd. || 73 post εἰς add. τὴν edd. || 84 προχειρισθέντα F: πρὸ χωρισθέντα P προχωρισθέντα V edd. προ-
 χαρισθέντα coní. Bekker || 82 Τατζάτου (etiam V¹ F Bandurius): Πατζάτου V
 edd. || 93 ἄλλον V edd. || κελύσαι edd. || 94 ἐχῆ edd. || 99 οὗτος: αὐτός
 V edd. || 104 ὁ om. edd. || τοῦτου: τοῦτον Me Ba τοιούτου Be ||

τὸν τοιοῦτον οἶκον ὁ ἐμὸς θεῖος τῇ βασιλείᾳ σου, καὶ ἔλαβεν εἰς ἀντιστή-
κωσιν αὐτοῦ τὸ προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγοῤᾤ ἐν Κελτζηνή.»

Ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν τοιούτων βασιλικῶν φιλοτιμιῶν, τῶν πρὸς τὸν
128^{vP} ἄρχοντα τοῦ Ταρών, φθόνος ὑπεφύη καὶ ἀνεβλάστησεν πρὸς αὐτὸν παρὰ 110
τε τοῦ Κακικίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος Βασπαρακά, καὶ Ἀδριανασήρ, τοῦ κουροπα-
λάτου Ἰβηρίας, καὶ Ἀσωτικίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, οἵτινες
ἔγραψαν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα διαγογγύζοντες, δι' ἣν αἰτίαν ὁ Ταρωνίτης
μόνος ῥόγας ἀπολαύει βασιλικῆς, αὐτῶν ἀπάντων λαμβανόντων οὐδέν.
«Τίνα γάρ — ἔλεγον — περισσοτέραν δουλείαν ἡμῶν ποιεῖται, ἢ τί 115
πλέον ἡμῶν τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἐπωφελεῖ; Ὅθεν χρῆ ἢ καὶ ἡμᾶς ὡς ἐκείνον
ῥογεύεσθαι, ἢ μὴδ' ἐκείνον ἐντὸς τῆς τοιαύτης τυγχάνειν δωρεᾶς.»
Ὁ δὲ μακάριος βασιλεὺς Ῥωμανὸς ἀντέγραψεν πρὸς αὐτοὺς μὴ παρ'
129^{vP} αὐτοῦ τὴν ἐπὶ τῷ Ταρωνίτῃ γενέσθαι | ῥόγαν, ἵνα ἐπ' | αὐτῷ κείται
188^{Be} καὶ ἡ ταύτης νῦν ἐκκοπή, ἀλλὰ παρὰ τοῦ μακαριωτάτου βασιλέως, καὶ 120
μὴ δίκαιον εἶναι τὰ τῶν προβεβασιλευκότων παρὰ τῶν ὕστερον ἀνατρέπε-
σθαι. Ἐγραψε δ' ὅμως πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν Ταρωνίτην, δηλοποιῶν αὐτὸν
τὴν τῶν εἰρημένων ἀνδρῶν λύπην καὶ τὸ σκάνδαλον. Ὁ δὲ ἀνήγαγεν
μήτε χρυσόν, μήτε ἄργυρον παρέχειν δύνασθαι, ὑπισχνεῖτο δὲ ἔξωθεν
τῶν κατὰ τύπον ἀποστελλομένων ξενίων διδόναι ἱμάτια καὶ χαλκῶματα, 125
μέχρι τῶν δέκα λιτρῶν συντιμώμενα, ἀ καὶ δέδωκεν μέχρι τριῶν ἢ
τεσσάρων ἐνιαυτῶν. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα ἀνήγαγεν μὴ δύνασθαι παρέχειν τὸ τοι-
οῦτον πάκτον, τὴν δὲ ῥόγαν ἢ προῖκα λαμβάνειν ἡξίου, καθὼς ἐπὶ τοῦ
129^{vP} | μακαριωτάτου βασιλέως Λέοντος, ἢ ἐκκοπήναι αὐτήν. Ὅθεν διὰ τὸ μὴ
εἰς σκάνδαλον εἶναι τοῦ Κακικίου καὶ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν 130
ἐξέκοψεν ταύτην ὁ εἰρημένος μακάριος βασιλεὺς Ῥωμανός. Παραμυθού-
μενος δὲ ὥσπερ αὐτόν, μετὰ ταῦτα τὸν τούτου υἱόν, Ἀσώτιον, ἐν τῇ
πόλει παραγεγονότα, εἰς πατρικίους ἐτίμησεν, καὶ φιλοφρονησάμενος
αὐτάρκως πρὸς τὰ ἴδια ἐξαπέστειλεν.

Τοῦ δὲ μαγίστρου Κρικορικίου τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντος, ἀνήγαγεν 135
Τορνίκιος, ὁ τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ υἱός, ἔρωτα ἔχειν ἐγκάρδιον εἰσελθεῖν καὶ
τὸν βασιλέα θεάσασθαι, ἐφ' ᾧ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον Κρινίτην καὶ ἐρμη-
νευτὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐξαπέστειλεν, ὃς καὶ εἰσήγαγεν ἐν τῇ πόλει τὸν εἰρη-
130^{vP} μένον Τορνίκιον, καὶ προήγαγεν τὸν αὐτὸν Τορνίκιον ὁ βασιλεὺς | εἰς
189^{Be} τὴν τῶν πατρικίων τιμὴν. Προσετίνατο δὲ δικαιολογίας ἐπὶ τῷ τοῦ 140
Βαρβάρου οἴκῳ, καὶ ἀκούσας, ὅτι προάστειον λαβὼν ὁ θεῖος αὐτοῦ
ἐν Κελτζηνή, τὴν τούτου παρεχώρησεν ἐξουσίαν, ἔλεγε μὴ δύνασθαι
τὸν θεῖον αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τῇ πατρικῇ κληρονομίᾳ αὐτοῦ ποιεῖσθαι ἀνταλλαγὴν,
καὶ ἡξίου ἢ τὸν οἶκον λαβεῖν ἢ τὸ προάστειον, εἰ δὲ μὴ, καὶ ἀμφοτέρω
παρεχώρει τῷ βασιλεῖ πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἔχειν αὐτὰ τοὺς ἐξαδέλφους αὐτοῦ. 145
Τοῦτου ἔνεκεν ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἐπεὶ καὶ ὁ γέρων ὁ Ταρωνίτης ἐτίγχανεν

learned, my uncle has given this house to your imperial majesty, and has received in exchange for it the suburban estate of Grigoros in Keltzini.»

And because of these imperial gifts bestowed on the prince of Taron, envy towards him was implanted and grew up in Kakikios, prince of Baspataka, and Adranasir, the curopalate of Iberia, and Asotikios, the prince of princes, who wrote to the emperor grumbling at the cause whereby the Taronite alone enjoyed an imperial stipend, while all of them got nothing. «For what service — they said — is he performing more than we, or in what does he help the Romans more than we do? Either, therefore, we too should be stipendiary as he is, or else he too should be excluded from this largess.» The emperor Romanus, of blessed memory, wrote back to them, that the stipend in favour of the Taronite had not been granted by him, that it should now lie with him to cut it off, but by the emperor, of most blessed memory; nor was it right that what had been done by former emperors should be undone by their successors. However, he wrote to this same Taronite informing him that the said parties were vexed and offended. He replied that he could provide neither gold nor silver, but promised to give, over and above the gifts regularly sent, tunics and bronze vessels up to ten pounds in total value, and these he did give for three or four years. But thereafter he reported that he could not provide this tribute, and demanded either that he should receive the stipend gratis as in the time of the emperor Leo, of most blessed memory, or else that it should be cut off. And so, that it might not cause offence to Kakikios and the curopalate and the rest, the said emperor Romanus, of blessed memory, cut it off. But to console him, as it were, he afterwards honoured his son Asotios, when he came to Constantinople, with patrician rank and entertained him munificently before sending him home.

On the death of the magister Krikorikios, Tornikios, son of Apoganem, reported that he heartily desired to come and behold the emperor; whereupon the emperor sent the protospatharius Krinitis, the interpreter, who brought the said Tornikios to Constantinople, and the emperor advanced the same Tornikios to the honour of patrician rank. He put forward his claims to the house of Barbaros, and, having heard that his uncle had resigned his ownership of it on receipt of a suburban estate in Keltzini, declared that his uncle had no power to effect an exchange in respect of his paternal inheritance, and demanded that he should be given either the house or the suburban estate, failing which, he was for resigning both to the emperor, so that his cousins might not have them. Therefore the emperor, since

V 110 ἀνεβλάστησεν: ἐβλάστησε edd. || 111 Κακικίου (*litteris* καὶ *s. v. additis*)
P¹ Ba Be: Κικίου V Me || Βασπατακικά edd. || 113 διαγωνγύζοντες P || 116
ἡμῶν edd.: ὁμῶν P || 118 βασιλεὺς *om.* V edd. || 120 μακαριωτάτου: μακαρίου
V edd. || *post* βασιλέως *excidisse* Λέοντος *susp.* Jenkins || 122 αὐτὸν²: αὐτῷ
V edd. || 123 τὸ *om.* edd. || 126 δέκα edd.: εἴ P || 131 μακάριος: μακαριωτάτος
edd. || 134 αὐτάρκως *scr.* Moravesik: αὐταρκῶς P edd. || 135 ἀντὶ Κρικωρικίου
add. τοῦ edd. || 140 τῷ τοῦ V edd.: τοῦ τῷ P || 145 παρεχώρει: προσεχώρει edd. ||

ἀποθανών, ἀνελάβετο τὸ προάστειον, καὶ οὐδὲ τὸν οἶκον ἀντέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ μὴδὲ χρυσοβούλλιον, καθὼς ἀνωτέρω προείρηται, ἐπὶ τινι τούτων ἐξετέθη.

- 130^vP Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα εἰσῆλθεν πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν Παγκράτιος 150
ἐκεῖνος, ὁ πρῶτος υἱὸς τοῦ μαγίστρου ἐκείνου Κρικορικίου τοῦ Ταρωνί-
του, καὶ προεβιβάσθη παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως εἰς τὸ τῶν πατρικίων ἀξίωμα,
καὶ γέγονεν καὶ στρατηγὸς τοῦ Ταρών. Ἡτήσατο δὲ καὶ γυναῖκα
λαβεῖν ἀπὸ τῶν βασιλικῶν συγγενίδων, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ ὁ βασιλεὺς
τὴν τοῦ μαγίστρου Θεοφυλάκτου ἀδελφὴν εἰς γυναῖκα. Καὶ μετὰ τὸν 155
γάμον διαθήκας ἐξέθετο, ἐν αἷς ἐδήλου, ὅτι «Ἐάν μοι γένωνται παῖδες
ἀπὸ τῆς τοιαύτης γυναικὸς, ἵνα ἔχουσιν τὴν ἅπασάν μου χώραν εἰς
κλήρον προγονικόν.» Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ ἡτήσατο τὸν βασιλέα δοθῆναι αὐτῷ
- 131^vP τὸ προάστειον τοῦ Γρηγοῦ πρὸς | τὸ ἐν αὐτῷ τὴν πατρικίαν, τὴν τούτου
190Be γυναῖκα καθέζεσθαι, μετὰ δὲ τὴν αὐτῆς ἀποβίω|σιν εἶναι πάλιν τὸ 160
τοιούτον προάστειον τῆς βασιλείας αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἐπένευσεν καὶ πρὸς τοῦτο
ὁ βασιλεὺς, καὶ πολλαῖς φιλοτιμίαις αὐτὸν δεξιωσάμενος, μετὰ τῆς
ἰδίας γυναικὸς ἐξαπέστειλεν εἰς τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ. Οἱ δὲ υἱοὶ τοῦ μαγί-
στρου Κρικορικίου, ὃ τε αὐτὸς Παγκράτιος ὁ πατρίκιος καὶ Ἀσώτιος ὁ
πατρίκιος, μεγάλως παρελύπουν καὶ ἐβιάζοντο τὸν οἰκεῖον αὐτῶν ἐξάδελ- 165
φον, Τορνίκιον τὸν πατρίκιον, ὃς μὴ ὑποφέρων τὴν ἀπὸ τούτων ἐπίθεσιν,
ἔγραψε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα ἀποστέλλαι πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον καὶ παραλαβεῖν
- 131^vP τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, αὐτὸν δὲ καὶ τὴν γυναῖκα καὶ τὸ παιδίον | αὐτῶν
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα εἰσαγαγεῖν. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀπέστειλεν τὸν πρωτοσπαθά-
ριον Κρινίτην καὶ ἐρμηνέα πρὸς τὸ κατὰ τὴν ἀξίωσιν αὐτοῦ ἀναλαβέσθαι 170
καὶ εἰσαγαγεῖν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ Θεοφυλάκτῳ πόλει. Ὅτε δὲ τὴν τοιαύτην
χώραν ὁ Κρινίτης κατέλαβεν, εὗρεν αὐτὸν ἤδη τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντα,
διαταξάμενον πρὸ τῆς τελευτῆς εἶναι πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ ὑποκειμέ-
νην τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων, τὴν δὲ γυναῖκα καὶ τὸ παιδίον αὐτοῦ εἰσελθεῖν
πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, ἧ καὶ δέδωκεν ὁ βασιλεὺς εἰς κατοίκησιν, εἰσελθούσης, 175
τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Μιχαήλ, τοῦ ποτε γεγονότος κομμερικίου Χαλδίας
καὶ τὴν τοῦ Ῥωμανθέως μονήν. Καὶ πάλιν ἀπεστάλη ὁ εἰρημένος Κρινίτης
- 132^vP παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως πρὸς | τὸ παραλαβεῖν τὴν χώραν τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ,
ἥτοι τὸ μέρος τοῦ πατρικίου Τορνικίου. Ἀνταπέστειλαν δὲ ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ
191Be Ταρωνί|του υἱοί, οἱ τοῦ ἀποθανόντος ἐξάδελφοι, ἀξιοῦντες δοῦναι τὸ 180
Οὐλνούτιν καὶ ἔχειν τὴν χώραν τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν, μὴ γὰρ δύνασθαι
ὅλως αὐτοὺς ζῆν, εἰ τὴν τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν χώραν ὡς οἰκίαν κατ'ἀσχη
ὁ βασιλεὺς. Οἰκεία δὲ ἀγαθότητι ὑπείξας ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν αἴτησιν αὐτῶν
ἐξεπλήρωσεν, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτοῖς μὲν τὴν χώραν τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ, τοῦ
ἐξαδέλφου αὐτῶν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνελάβετο τὸ Οὐλνούτιν μετὰ πάσης τῆς 185

the old Taronite was now dead, resumed the suburban estate but did not give the house in exchange for it, because, as has already been stated above, no golden bull had been issued in respect of any of these transactions.

After this, the late Pankratios, eldest son of that magister Krikorikios the Taronite, came to the imperial city and was advanced by the emperor to the dignity of patrician and was also made military governor of Taron. He asked that he might also be given a wife from among the ladies related to the imperial family, and the emperor gave him to wife the sister of the magister Theophylact. And after his marriage he made a will, in which he stated: «If children are born to me of this woman, they are to have all my country for their ancestral inheritance.» Thereupon he asked the emperor that he might be given the suburban estate of Grigoros for the patrician lady, his wife, to reside there, and after her death this suburban estate should revert to his imperial majesty. The emperor sanctioned this too, and after presenting him with many gifts, sent him with his wife away to his country. Now, the sons of the magister Krikorikios, this same patrician Pankratios and the patrician Asotios, greatly vexed and oppressed their cousin, the patrician Tornikios, who, finding their aggressiveness unendurable, wrote to the emperor to send a trustworthy servant and take over his country, and conduct himself and his wife and their child to the emperor. The emperor sent the protospatharius Krinitis, the interpreter, to take him and conduct him to the city protected of God, in accordance with his demand. But when Krinitis arrived in that country, he found that *Tornikios* had already departed this life, having devised before his end that all his country should be subject to the emperor of the Romans, and that his wife and his child should go to the emperor; and to her, on her arrival, the emperor gave for her residence the monastery in Psomathia of the protospatharius Michael, formerly collector of Chaldia. The said Krinitis was sent back again by the emperor to take over the country of Apoganem, that is, the portion of the patrician Tornikios. But the sons of the Taronite, the cousins of the deceased, sent back thence a demand that they should give up Oulnoutin and retain the country of their cousin, for they were quite unable to live if the emperor were to occupy their cousin's country as his own. The emperor, yielding to his own goodness of heart, fulfilled their request and gave them the country of Apoganem, their cousin, and himself took Oulnoutin with all its surrounding territory.

V 153 καὶ om. edd. || 155/6 τὸν γάμον P¹ V edd.: τῶν γάμων (?) P || 157 ἔχουσιν (*littera o in ras. scripta*) P¹ ἔχουσι V: ἔχουσι edd. || 158 τὸν om. edd. || 159 Γρηγοῤῥᾶ edd.: Γρηγορίου P || 160 αὐτῆς: τοιαύτης edd. τ(οι)αύτης Migne || 165 αὐτῶν *litteram ω in ras. scr.* P¹ || 169/70 πρωτο-σπαθᾶριον Κρινίτην *per comp. litteras α κρινί^τ in ras. scr.* P¹ || 176 Χαλδίας <οἶκον> cons. Kyriakides || 177 τὴν τοῦ Ψωμαθέως μονήν: τοῦ Ψωμαθέως τὴν μονήν V Me Ba Ψωμαθέως τὴν μονήν Be || ἀπεστάλη V edd.: ἀπεστάλην P || 181 Οὐλνούτην P edd. || 185 Οὐλνούτην P edd. ||

περιχώρου αὐτοῦ. Ἡ δὲ ὅλη τοῦ Ταρών χώρα εἰς δύο διανεμηθεῖσα
 132^vP ἐτύγχανεν, ἥς τὸ μὲν ἡμῖς οἱ τοῦ μαγίστρου | Κρικορικίου εἶχον υἱοί,
 τὸ δὲ ἡμῖς <οἱ> τοῦ Ἀπογάνεμ τοῦ πατρικίου, οἱ τούτων ἐξάδελφοι.

44. Περὶ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τοῦ
 κάστρου τοῦ Μανζικιέρτ καὶ τοῦ Περκρί καὶ
 τοῦ Χλιὰτ καὶ τοῦ Χαλιὰτ καὶ τοῦ Ἀρζές καὶ
 τοῦ Τιβί καὶ τοῦ Χέρτ καὶ τοῦ Σαλαμᾶς καὶ τοῦ
 Τζερματζοῦ.

5

Ἰστέον, ὅτι πρὸ τοῦ Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, τοῦ
 πατρὸς τοῦ Συμβατίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὃν ἀπεκεφάλισεν
 ὁ ἀμυρᾶς Περσίδος, ὁ Ἀποσάται, ὃς καὶ ἐποίησεν δύο υἱούς, τὸν τε
 Ἀσώτιον, τὸν μετ' αὐτὸν γενόμενον ἄρχοντα τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ Ἀπα-
 σάκιον, τὸν μετὰ ταῦτα μάγιστρον τιμηθέντα, τὰ τρία ταῦτα κάστρα 10
 133^rP τὸ τε Περκρί καὶ τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ τὸ Ἀρζές, ὑπὸ τὴν τῆς Περσίδος ἐπι-
 κράτειαν ἐτύγχανον.

192Be "Ὅτι ὁ ἄρχων ἐκαθέζετο τῶν ἀρχόντων εἰς τὴν μεγάλην Ἀρμε-
 νίαν, εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κάρς, καὶ ἐπεῖχεν καὶ τὰ τρία τὰ προγεγραμμένα
 κάστρα, τὸ τε Περκρί <καὶ> τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ τὸ Ἀρζές καὶ τὸ Τιβί καὶ 15
 τὸ Χέρτ καὶ τὸ Σαλαμᾶς.

"Ὅτι Ἀπελβάρτ ἐκράτει τὸ Μανζικιέρτ, καὶ ἦν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν
 <Ἀσωτίου>, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ Συμβα-
 τίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων. Δέδωκεν δὲ <τῷ> αὐτῷ Ἀπελβάρτ
 ὁ αὐτὸς Ἀσώτιος, ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χλιὰτ 20
 καὶ τὸ Ἀρζές καὶ τὸ Περκρί· ὁ γὰρ προρρηθεὶς Ἀσώτιος, ὁ ἄρχων
 τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὁ πατὴρ τοῦ Συμβατίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων,
 133^vP κατέιχεν | πάσας τὰς τῆς ἀνατολῆς χώρας. Τελευτήσαντος δὲ Ἀπελβάρτ,
 κατέσχεν τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ ὁ ἴδιος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀβελχαμίτ, τοῦ δὲ
 Ἀβελχαμίτ τελευτήσαντος, ἐκράτησε τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ ὁ πρῶτος 25
 υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀποσεβατᾶς. Τοῦ δὲ Συμβατίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόν-
 των, παρὰ τοῦ Ἀποσάται, τοῦ ἀμυρᾶ Περσίδος, ἀναιρεθέντος, ἐκράτη-
 σεν αὐθεντῶς καὶ κυρίως ὡς δεσπότης καὶ αὐτοκέφαλος τὸ τε κάστρον
 τὸ Μανζικιέρτ καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα καὶ τὰς χώρας, ὅστις καὶ ὑπετάγη
 τῷ βασιλεῖ μετὰ τῶν ἐτέρων δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ, τοῦ τε Ἀπολεσφοῦετ 30
 καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη, διὰ τὸ διαφόρως καταπολεμηθῆναι τὰ τε κάστρα
 καὶ πραιδευθῆναι καὶ ἀφανισθῆναι καὶ τὰς χώρας αὐτῶν παρὰ τοῦ
 134^rP δομεστίκου τῶν σχολῶν, παρέχοντες τὸν | βασιλεῖα Ῥωμαίων καὶ πάκτα

The whole country of Taron was divided in two, one half of it being held by the sons of the magister Krikorikios, the other half by their cousins, the sons of the patrician Apoganem.

44. Of the country of Apachounis and of the city of Manzikiert and Perkri and Chliat and Chaliat and Arzes and Tibi and Chert and Salamas and Tzermatzou.

Before the time of Asotios, prince of princes, father of Symbatios, prince of princes, whom the emir of Persia Aposatai beheaded and who had two sons, Asotios, who was prince of princes after him, and Apasakios, who was afterwards honoured with the rank of magister, these three cities, Perkri and Chaliat and Arzes, were under the control of Persia.

The prince of princes had his seat in great Armenia, at the city of Kars, and held both these three cities aforementioned, Perkri and Chaliat and Arzes, and also Tibi and Chert and Salamas.

Apelbart possessed Manzikiert and was beneath the dominion of *Asotios*, the prince of princes, the father of Symbatios, the prince of princes. The same Asotios, prince of princes, gave to *this* same Apelbart also the city of Chliat and Arzes and Perkri: for the aforesaid Asotios, prince of princes, father of Symbatios, prince of princes, held all the countries of the east. On the death of Apelbart his son Abelchamit possessed his domain, and on the death of Abelchamit his eldest son Aposebatas possessed his domain. He, after the murder of Symbatios, prince of princes, by Aposatai, the emir of Persia, took possession, in absolute sovereignty, as an independent potentate, both of the city of Manzikiert and of the rest of the cities and the countries; and he submitted himself to the emperor together with his other two brothers, Apolesphouet and Aposelmis, after their cities and their countries had on various occasions been over-run and ravaged and destroyed by the commander-in-chief, and they paid the emperor of the Romans tribute in respect of their cities and their territories. But from the

44. 1 τοῦ¹: τῆς edd. || 2 Μαντζικιερτ V edd. || Περκρή P || 3 Χλιὰτ: Χαλιὰτ Me con. Iaskin || 'Αρζες scr. Moravcsik: "Αρζες P edd. || 4 Τιβή P || 7 τοῦ² edd.: καὶ P || 8 ἀμηνάς P || 'Αποσάτας F edd. || 11 'Αρζες scr. Moravcsik: "Αρζες P "Αρσες edd. || 14 Καρς (sine acc.) P || 15 Περκρή P || καὶ add. Moravcsik || "Αρζες edd. || Τιβή P || 16 Σαλαμάς P || 17 'Απελκάρτ edd. || Μαντζικιερτ Ba Be || 18 'Ασωτίου add. Jenkins || 19 τῷ add. Moravcsik || 20 Χλιὰτ: Χαλιὰτ con. Iaskin || 21 'Αρζες scr. Moravcsik: "Αρζες P edd. || Περκρή P || 25 πρῶτος edd.: α' P || 26 ὁ om. edd. || 'Αποσεβατάς P || 27 'Αποσάτα edd. || ἀμηνὰ P || 29 Μαντζικιερτ Ba Be || 30 τε om. edd. || 33 παρέχοντας: παρέχοντος Be ||

ὑπὲρ τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ προρρηθέντος
 193Be Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος | τῶν ἀρχόντων, τοῦ πατρὸς μὲν τοῦ Συμβατίου, 35
 πάππου δὲ τοῦ δευτέρου Ἀσωτίου καὶ τοῦ μαγίστρου Ἀπασακίου,
 μέχρι ζωῆς τοῦ δευτέρου Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, ὑπῆρ-
 χον τὰ τοιαῦτα τρία κάστρα ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόν-
 των, καὶ ἐλάμβανεν ἐξ αὐτῶν πάντα ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων. Ἀλλὰ
 καὶ τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Μανζικιέρτ μετὰ τῆς χώρας τοῦ Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ 40
 τοῦ Κορῆ καὶ τοῦ Χάρκα ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν καὶ ἐπικράτειαν τοῦ αὐτοῦ
 ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων ὑπῆρχεν, ἕως οὗτο Ἀποσεβατᾶς, ὁ ἀμηνῶς τοῦ
 134vP Μανζικιέρτ, μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ, τοῦ τε Ἀπο|λεσφοῦετ καὶ
 τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη, ὑπετάγησαν τῷ βασιλεῖ, διδόντες καὶ πάντα ὑπὲρ τε
 τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν· ἐπεὶ (δὲ) ὁ ἄρχων τῶν ἀρχόντων 45
 δοῦλος τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαίων τυγχάνει, ὡς παρ' αὐτοῦ προβαλλό-
 μενος καὶ τὸ τοιοῦτον δεχόμενος ἀξίωμα, δηλονότι καὶ τὰ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ
 δεσποζόμενα κάστρα καὶ πολιτεῖαι καὶ χωρία τοῦ βασιλέως τῶν Ῥωμαί-
 ων τυγχάνουσιν.

Ὅτι τοῦ Συμβατίου, τοῦ ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων τῆς μεγάλης 50
 Ἀρμενίας, κρατηθέντος παρὰ τοῦ Ἀποσάται, τοῦ ἀμηνῶ Περσίδος,
 καὶ ἀποκεφαλισθέντος παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἐκράτησεν ὁ Ἀποσεβατᾶς, ὁ καθιζό-
 μενος εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μανζικιέρτ, τὸ κάστρον τὸ Χαλιὰτ καὶ τὸ
 135rP κάστρον τὸ Περκρί καὶ τὴν πολιτείαν τοῦ Ἀρ|ζῆς.

194Be Ὅτι ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ὁ Ἀπολεσφοῦετ | καὶ 55
 ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ καὶ ὁ προγονός, ὁ Ἀχμετ ἐκράτησαν τὸ κάστρον τὸ
 Χλιὰτ καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀρζῆς καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζικέ, καὶ αὐτοὶ
 ὑπετάγησαν τῷ Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ
 καὶ παρεῖχον καὶ πάντα, καθὼς καὶ ὁ πρῶτος ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀποσε-
 βατᾶς, ὑπὲρ τε τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτῶν. 60

Ὅτι ὁ τρίτος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφοῦετ,
 ὁ Ἀποσέλμης, ἐκράτει τὸ κάστρον τὸ Τζεμματζοῦ μετὰ καὶ τῶν χωρίων
 αὐτοῦ, καὶ αὐτὸς ὑπετάγη τῷ τῶν Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ, καὶ ἐδίδου πάντα,
 καθὼς καὶ ὁ πρῶτος ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀποσεβατᾶς, καὶ ὁ δεύτερος
 ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀπολεσφοῦετ. 65

135vP Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ τε|λευτήσαντος, ἐκράτησε τὸ κάστρον τὸ
 Μανζικιέρτ μετὰ τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ καὶ τῆς ἐπικρατείας αὐτοῦ πάσης
 ὁ Ἀβδεραχεῖμ, ὁ υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, τελευτήσαντος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδε-
 ραχεῖμ, ἐκράτησεν ὁ Ἀπολεσφοῦετ, ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ,
 θεῖος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδεραχεῖμ, τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μανζικιέρτ καὶ πάσας τὰς 70

V 36 Ἀπασακίου Ba Be: Ἀπασακίου P || 37 δευτέρου edd.: β' P || τοῦ² om. edd. ||
 40 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 41 Κορῆ P || τοῦ Χάρκα καὶ τοῦ Κορῆ edd. || Χάρκα

time of the aforesaid Asotios, prince of princes, father of Symbatios and grandfather of the second Asotios and of the magister Apasakios, until the lifetime of the second Asotios, prince of princes, these three cities were under the dominion of the prince of princes, and the prince of princes received tribute from them. Moreover, the city of Manzikiert with the country of Apachounis and Kori and Charka was under the dominion and control of the same prince of princes, up till the time when Aposebatas, emir of Manzikiert, and his two brothers Apolesphouet and Aposelmis submitted themselves to the emperor and paid tribute in respect of their cities and their territories; and since the prince of princes is the servant of the emperor of the Romans, being appointed by him and receiving this rank from him, it is obvious that the cities and townships and territories of which he is lord also belong to the emperor of the Romans.

When Symbatios, prince of princes of great Armenia, was captured by Aposatai, the emir of Persia, and by him beheaded, Aposebatas, with his seat at the city of Manzikiert, took possession of the city of Chaliat and the city of Perkri and the township of Arzes.

The second brother of Aposebatas, Apolesphouet, and his nephew and step-son Achmet took possession of the city of Chliat and the city of Arzes and the city of Altzike, and they too submitted themselves to the emperor of the Romans and came beneath his dominion and paid tribute in respect of their cities and their territories, as did the eldest brother Aposebatas.

The third brother of Aposebatas and Apolesphouet, Aposelmis, was in possession of the city of Tzermatzou with its territories, and he too submitted himself to the emperor of the Romans and paid tribute, as did his eldest brother Aposebatas and his second brother Apolesphouet.

On the death of Aposebatas, Abderacheim, son of Aposebatas, possessed the city of Manzikiert with its territories and all its domain, and on the death of Abderacheim, Apolesphouet, second brother of Aposebatas and uncle of Abderacheim, possessed the city of Manzikiert and all the

scr. Moravcsik: Χαρκά P edd. || 42 'Αποσεβατάς P || ἀμηνάς P || 43 Μανζικιέρτ V Me: Μαντζικιέρτ P Ba Be || 45 δὲ add. Moravcsik γὰρ addendum coní. Bekker || 51 'Αποσάτα Ba Be || ἀμηνά P || 52 'Αποσεβατάς P || 53 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 54 Περκρή P || 'Αρζες edd. || 55 'Αποσεβατά P || 'Απολεσφούετ edd.: 'Απολεσφούτ P || 56 'Αχμετ edd. || 57 'Αρζες edd. || 'Αλτζικέ *scr.* Moravcsik: 'Αλτζικε P edd. 'Αρτζικέ coní. V. Laurent || 59 πρώτος *scr.* Moravcsik: α' P om. V edd. || δ² V: α' P om. edd. || 59/60 'Αποσεβατάς P || 61 τρίτος edd.: γ' P || 'Αποσεβατά P || 62 τὸ²: τοῦ V edd. || 64 πρώτος *scr.* Moravcsik: α' P om. V edd. || 'Αποσεβατάς P || δεύτερος Be: β' P || 66 'Αποσεβατά P || τὸ κάστρον om. edd. || 67 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 68 'Αβδραχέιμ edd. || 'Αποσεβατά P || 68/9 'Αβδραχέιμ edd. || 69 'Αποσεβατά P || 70 'Αβδραχέιμ Ba Be || Μανζικιέρτ Me: Μαντζικιέρτ P Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be ||

προρρηθείσας χώρας, καὶ αὐτοῦ τελευτήσαντος, ἐκράτησεν ὁ τρίτος ἀδελφός, ἡγουν τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ, ὁ Ἀποσέλμης τό τε Μανζικιερτ καὶ πάσας τὰς προρρηθείσας χώρας.

Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσεβατᾶς εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀβδεραχείμ καὶ τὸν Ἀπελμουζέ.

75

195Be Ὅτι ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ εἶχεν προγονὸν καὶ ἀνεψιὸν τὸν Ἀχάμετ,
136P υἱὸν γὰρ οὐκ εἶχεν, ἀλλὰ τὸν Ἀχάμετ τὸν προγονὸν | καὶ ἀνεψιὸν αὐτοῦ
εἶχεν ἀντὶ υἱοῦ.

Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσέλμης εἶχεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀπελβάρτ, τὸν ἀρτίως κρα-
τοῦντα τὸ Μανζικιερτ.

80

Ὅτι ἀποθανόντος τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, κατέλιπε τὸν Ἀβδεραχείμ, τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ἀμνηρᾶν, ὁ δὲ ἕτερος υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀπελμουζέ ἦν νήπιος πάνυ, διὸ καὶ καταφρονήθη ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ ἐξουσίαν.

Ὅτι ὁ Ἀποσεβατᾶς, ὁ πρῶτος ἀδελφός, ἐκαθέζετο εἰς τὸ κάστρον 85
τὸ Μανζικιερτ, καὶ ἐκράτει, καθὼς εἴρηται, ταύτας τὰς χώρας, τό τε Ἀπαχουνῆς καὶ τὸ Κορή καὶ τὸ Χάρκα, καὶ ἐδίδου τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν πάντα τῷ Ῥωμαίων βασιλεῖ, καὶ τούτου τελευτήσαντος, ἐκράτησεν ὁ υἱὸς
136P αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀβδεραχείμ, καὶ ἐδίδου καὶ αὐτὸς τὰ προρρηθέντα | πάντα διὰ
τὸ εἶναι, καθὼς προεῖρηται, νήπιον παντελῶς τὸν ἀδεδφὸν αὐτοῦ, τὸν 90
Ἀπελμουζέ.

Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀβδεραχείμ τελευτήσαντος, καὶ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ, Ἀπελμουζέ ὡς νηπίου καταφρονηθέντος, ἐκράτησεν τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μανζικιερτ καὶ τὰς ὑπ' αὐτῷ προρρηθείσας χώρας ὁ δεύτερος ἀδελφός τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ὁ προλεχθεὶς Ἀπολεσφούετ, θεῖος δὲ τοῦ Ἀβδεραχείμ 95
καὶ τοῦ διὰ τὴν νηπιότητα καταφρονηθέντος ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ Ἀπελμουζέ.

Ὅτι τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ τελευτήσαντος, ἐκράτησεν ὁ τρίτος
196Be | ἀδελφός τοῦ Ἀποσεβατᾶ, ἡγουν ὁ Ἀποσέλμης τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μανζικιερτ μετὰ τῶν χωρίων τῶν προρρηθέντων. Ὁ δὲ προρρηθεὶς Ἀχάμετ 100
ὁ καὶ ἀνεψιὸς καὶ προγονὸς τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ, ἐκράτει εἰδήσει καὶ
137P βουλήσει τοῦ Ἀπολεσφούετ τό τε | Χλιάτ καὶ τὸ Ἀρζές καὶ τὸ Περκρί
καὶ γὰρ ὁ Ἀπολεσφούετ υἱὸν μὴ ἔχων, καθὼς προεῖρηται, τοῦτον τὸν Ἀχάμετ, τὸν τε ἀνεψιὸν καὶ προγονὸν αὐτοῦ, εἶχεν κληρονόμον πάσης αὐτοῦ τῆς ὑποστάσεως καὶ τῶν κάστρων καὶ τῶν χωρίων αὐτοῦ. 105

Ὅτι τελευτήσαντος τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη, ἐκράτησεν τὸ κάστρον τὸ Μανζικιερτ ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ Ἀπελβάρτ μετὰ καὶ τῆς περιχώρου αὐτοῦ. Ὁ δὲ Ἀχμετ ἐκράτησεν τὰ τρία κάστρα, τό τε κάστρον τὸ Χλιάτ (καὶ) τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀρζές καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλτζικέ.

Ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Ἀχμετ δοῦλος ἦν τοῦ βασιλέως, καθὰ καὶ 110

countries aforesaid, and on his death the third brother, that is, the brother of Aposebatas and Apolesphouet, Aposelmis, possessed Manzikiert and all the countries aforesaid.

Aposebatas had a son Abderacheim, and *another*, Apelmouze.

Apolesphouet had a step-son and nephew, Achamet, for he had no son, but had instead of a son Achamet, his step-son and nephew.

Aposelmis had a son Apelbart, who now possesses Manzikiert.

On the death of Aposebatas, he left Abderacheim his son to be emir, but his other son, Apelmouze, was a mere infant, and hence was passed over as unfit to enter into the authority of his father and brother.

Aposebatas, the eldest brother, had his seat at the city of Manzikiert and possessed, as has been said, these countries, Apachounis and Kori and Charka, and paid tribute in respect to them to the emperor of the Romans; and on his death his son Abderacheim ruled, and he too paid the aforesaid tribute, his brother Apelmouze being, as was said above, quite an infant.

On the death of Abderacheim, since his brother Apelmouze was passed over as an infant, the possession of the city of Manzikiert and of the aforesaid countries beneath it fell to the second brother of Aposebatas, the aforesaid Apolesphouet, uncle of Abderacheim and of his brother Apelmouze, who had been passed over because of his infancy.

On the death of Apolesphouet, the third brother of Aposebatas, that is, Aposelmis, took possession of the city of Manzikiert with the territories aforesaid. The aforesaid Achamet, who was nephew and step-son of Apolesphouet, took possession, by consent and will of Apolesphouet, of Chliat and Arzes and Perkri: for Apolesphouet, having, as was said above, no son, made Achamet, his nephew and step-son, heir of all his substance and of his cities and territories.

On the death of Aposelmis, his son Apelbart possessed the city of Manzikiert with its surrounding territory. But Achmet possessed the three cities, the city of Chliat *and* the city of Arzes and the city of Altzike.

This Achmet too was servant of the emperor, as has been said above,

V 71 τρίτος edd.: γ' P || 72 'Αποσεβατά P || 73 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 74 'Αποσεβατάς P || υἱόν: υἱός *confl.* Bekker || 'Αβδηραχείμ Ba Be || 80 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 81 'Αποσεβατά P || 'Αβδηραχείμ V Me: 'Αβδηραχή P || 'Αβδηραχείμ Ba Be || 82 ἀμυράν P || 'Απελμουζέ: 'Απελμουέζ *confl.* Marquart || 85 'Αποσεβατάς P || πρώτος edd.: α' P || 86 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 89 'Αβδηραχείμ Ba Be || 92 'Αβδηραχείμ Ba Be || 94 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 95 'Αποσεβατά P || προλεχθεῖς: προρηθηῖς edd. || 'Αβδηραχείμ Ba Be || 98 τρίτος edd.: γ' P || 99 'Αποσεβατά P || 99/100 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 100 'Αχάμετ edd. 'Αχαμτ P || 102 'Αρζέσ *scr.* Moravcsik: 'Αρζέσ P edd. || Περκρή P || 104 'Αχάμετ edd.: 'Αχαμτ P || 107 Μαντζικιέρτ Ba Be || 108 'Αχάμετ edd. || τρία edd.: γ' P || καὶ *add.* Moravcsik || 109 'Αρζέσ Ba Be || 'Αλτζικέ *scr.* Moravcsik: 'Αλτζίβες P edd. || 110 'Αχάμετ edd. ||

προείρηται, παρέχων καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ καὶ τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ θεοῦ αὐτοῦ,
 τοῦ Ἀπολεσφοῦετ, πάκτα. Ὁ δὲ Ἀπελβάρτ μετὰ δόλου καὶ χλεύης
 137^vP αὐτὸν ἔσφαξεν, καὶ ἀνελάβετο τὰ τρία αὐτὰ | κάστρα, τό τε κάστρον
 τὸ Χλιάτ <καὶ> τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀρζές καὶ τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀλ-ζικέ
 καὶ ταῦτα ὀφείλει ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀναλαβέσθαι ὡς ἴδια αὐτοῦ τυγχάνοντα. 115

Ὅτι ταῦτα πάντα τὰ προρρηθέντα κάστρα καὶ αἱ προρρηθεῖσαι
 χῶραι οὐδέποτε γεγόνασιν ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῆς Περσίδος ἢ ὑπὸ τὴν
 ἐξουσίαν τοῦ ἀμερμουμνῆ, ἀλλ' ὑπῆρχον, καθὼς εἴρηται, ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις
 197^{Be} τοῦ κυροῦ Λέοντος, τοῦ βασιλέως ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ Συμβατίου, τοῦ
 ἄρχοντος τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν 120
 τῶν τριῶν ἀδελφῶν, τῶν προρρηθέντων ἀμηνάδων, τοῦ τε Ἀποσεβατᾶ
 καὶ τοῦ Ἀπολεσφοῦετ καὶ τοῦ Ἀποσέλμη· καὶ ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις αὐτῶν
 καὶ ἐδουλώθησαν καὶ ἐπακτώθησαν καὶ ἐγένοντο ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τῶν
 138^rP | βασιλέων τῶν Ῥωμαίων.

Ὅτι τὰ τρία ταῦτα κάστρα, τό τε Χλιάτ καὶ τὸ Ἀρζές καὶ τὸ 125
 Περκρί, εἰ κρατεῖ ὁ βασιλεὺς, Περσικὸν φοσσᾶτον κατὰ Ῥωμανίας
 ἐξελεθεῖν οὐ δύναται, ἐπειδὴ μέσον τυγχάνουσιν τῆς τε Ῥωμανίας καὶ
 Ἀρμενίας, καὶ εἰσὶν φραγμοὶ καὶ ἀπλίκτα τῶν φοσσάτων.

45. Περὶ τῶν Ἰβήρων.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἑαυτοὺς σεμνύνοντες οἱ Ἰβηρες, ἡγουν οἱ τοῦ κουρο-
 παλάτου, λέγουσιν ἑαυτοὺς κατάγεσθαι ἀπὸ τῆς γυναικὸς Οὐρίου, τῆς
 παρὰ τοῦ Δαυὶδ, τοῦ προφήτου καὶ βασιλέως μοιχευθείσης· ἐκ γὰρ
 τῶν ἐξ αὐτῆς τεχθέντων παιδίων τῷ Δαυὶδ ἑαυτοὺς λέγουσιν κατάγεσθαι 5
 καὶ συγγενεῖς εἶναι Δαυὶδ, τοῦ προφήτου καὶ βασιλέως καὶ ὡς ἐκ τούτου
 139^vP καὶ τῆς ὑπεραγίας Θεοτόκου διὰ τὸ | ἐκ τοῦ σπέρματος Δαυὶδ ταύτην
 κατάγεσθαι. Διὰ τοῦτο καὶ οἱ μεγιστᾶνες τῶν Ἰβήρων ἀκωλύτως τὰς
 συγγενίδας αὐτῶν πρὸς γάμον ἄγουσιν, τὴν παλαιὰν οἰόμενοι φυλάττειν
 198^{Be} νομοθεσίαν· ἐξ Ἱερουσαλὴμ τε λέγουσιν εἶ|ναι τὴν γέννησιν αὐτῶν, 10
 καὶ ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε χρηματισθῆναι κατ' ὄναρ μετελθεῖν καὶ κατοικῆσαι
 πρὸς τὰ μέρη Περσίδος, ἡγουν εἰς τὴν χώραν, εἰς ἣν νῦν οἰκοῦσιν. Οἱ
 δὲ χρηματισθέντες καὶ ἐξελεθόντες ἐκ τῆς Ἱερουσαλὴμ ὑπῆρχον ὁ τε
 Δαυὶδ ἐκεῖνος καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, Σπανδιάτης, ὅστις Σπανδιάτης
 ἦν ἐκ Θεοῦ λαβὼν χάρισμα, ὡς αὐτοὶ φάσκουσιν, τοῦ μὴ ἐν πολέμῳ 15

F 45. 3 κατάγεσθαι — 4 μοιχευθείσης: cf. II Reg. 11, 3—5; Matth. 1,
 8. 6 ὡς ἐκ τούτου — 8 κατάγεσθαι: cf. The Apocryphal New Testament,
 London 1820, p. 17: The Gospel of the Birth of Mary, 1, 1. 11 χρηματισθῆναι
 κατ' ὄναρ: Matth. 2, 12.

and paid tribute on his own behalf and on behalf of his uncle Apolesphouet. But Apelbart by guile and deceit slew him and took these three cities, the city of Chliat *and* the city of Arzes and the city of Altzike; and these the emperor should get back, as they are his property.

All these cities aforesaid and the aforesaid countries have never been beneath the dominion of Persia or beneath the dominion of the commander of the faithful, but were, as has been said, in the days of the lord Leo, the emperor, beneath the dominion of Symbatios, the prince of princes, and afterwards came beneath the dominion of the three brothers, the aforesaid emirs, Aposebatas and Apolesphouet and Aposelmis; and in their days were brought into servitude and made tributary and fell beneath the dominion of the emperors of the Romans.

If these three cities, Chliat and Arzes and Perkri, are in the possession of the emperor, a Persian army cannot come out against Romania, because they are between Romania and Armenia, and serve as a barrier and as military halts for armies.

45. Of the Iberians.

The Iberians, I mean, those who belong to the europalate, pique themselves upon their descent from the wife of Uriah, with whom David, the prophet and king, committed adultery: for they say they are descended from the children she bore to David and are related to David, the prophet and king, and consequently to the most holy Mother of God also, inasmuch as she was by descent of the seed of David. For this reason also the great ones of the Iberians take in marriage their female relatives without impediment, believing that they are preserving the ancient ordinance; and they say that they originate from Jerusalem and were warned by an oracular dream to migrate thence and to settle over toward the region of Persia, that is to say, in the country where they live now. They who were warned by the oracle and came out of Jerusalem were the former David and his brother Spandiatis, which Spandiatis had received from God a boon, as they pretend, that in battle the sword should not touch him in any member of

114 καὶ *add.* *edd.* || "Αρζες Ba Be || 'Αλτζικε *edd.* 'Απτζικε *coni.* V. Laurent || 116 αὶ *s. v. add.* P¹ *in textum receperunt* V *edd.* || 119 τοῦ² *om.* V *edd.* || 121 τριῶν *edd.*: γ' P || 'Αποσεβατὰ P || 124 τῶν *om.* *edd.* || 125 τρία *edd.*: γ' P || 'Αρζες *scr.* Moravosik: "Αρζες P *edd.* || 126 Περκρή P || φασσάτον P || 128 ἀπληκτα P.

45. 1 Περὶ τῶν Ἰβήρων (π² *rubro atramento*) *mg.* *add.* P¹, *unde in textum receperunt* V *edd.* || 8 μεγιστάνες P || 11 χρηματισθῆναι *om.* V *edd.* ||

- ἄπτεσθαι αὐτοῦ ξίφος εἰς οἰονδήποτε μέλος τοῦ σώματος αὐτοῦ ἄνευ
 139^oP τῆς καρδίας, ἣν καὶ διὰ τινος σκεπάσματος | ἐν τοῖς πολέμοις περιεφρού-
 ρει. Διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἐπτοῦντο τοῦτον καὶ ἐδεδείξαν οἱ Πέρσαι, ὁ δὲ
 νενίκηκέ τε αὐτοὺς καὶ αὐτῶν κατεκράτησεν, καὶ τοὺς συγγενεῖς ἐνῶχι-
 σεν Ἰβηρας εἰς τὰς δυσκολίας, τὰς νῦν παρ' αὐτῶν κρατουμένας, ἐξ 20
 ὧν καὶ κατ' ὀλίγον ἐπλατύνθησαν καὶ ἠϋξήθησαν καὶ εἰς μέγα ἔθνος
 ἐγένοντο. Εἰθ' οὕτως τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου κατὰ Περσίδος ἐκστρα-
 τεύσαντος, ἠνώθησαν καὶ συνεταξίδευσαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἕκτοτε ὑπέταξαν
 τῷ φόβῳ Ἡρακλείου, τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων μᾶλλον, ἥπερ τῇ ἑαυτῶν
 ἰσχύϊ καὶ δυνάμει πόλεις καὶ χώρας ἱκανὰς τῶν Περσῶν. Ἀπαξ γὰρ 25
 139^oP τοῦ βασιλέως Ἡρακλείου τοὺς Πέρσας τροπωσαμένου καὶ εἰς τὸ | μηκέτι
 εἶναι τὴν τούτων ἀρχὴν παραστήσαντος, εὐάλωτοι καὶ εὐχειρώτοι οὐ
 μόνον τοῖς Ἰβηρσιν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς οἱ Πέρσαι γεγόνασιν.
 Διὰ δὲ τὸ κατάγεσθαι αὐτούς, ὥς αὐτοὶ λέγουσιν, ἐξ Ἱερουσαλὴμ διὰ
 τὸ μεγάλην πίστιν ἔχουσιν ἐν αὐτοῖς καὶ ἐν τῷ τάφῳ τοῦ Κυρίου 30
 199^{Be} ἡμῶν {ἡ} Ἰησοῦ Χριστοῦ, καὶ κατὰ τινας | καιροὺς ἀφθόνως ἀποστέλ-
 λουσι χρήματα τῷ πατριάρχῃ τῆς ἀγίας πόλεως καὶ τοῖς ἐκεῖσε Χριστια-
 νοῖς. Ὁ δὲ προρρηθεὶς Δαυὶδ, ὁ τοῦ Σπανδιατοῦ ἀδελφός, ἐγέννησεν
 υἱὸν τὸν Παγκράτιον, καὶ ὁ Παγκράτιος ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀσώτιον,
 καὶ ὁ Ἀσώτιος ἐγέννησεν υἱὸν τὸν Ἀδρανασὴν, τὸν καὶ κουροπαλάτην 35
 τιμηθέντα παρὰ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου βασιλέως Ῥωμαίων. Ὁ δὲ
 140^oP Σπανδιάτης, ὁ ἀδελφός τοῦ | προρρηθέντος Δαυὶδ, ἐτελεύτησεν ἄτεκνος.
 Ἀπὸ δὲ τῆς ἐξ Ἱερουσαλὴμ μετουικήσεως αὐτῶν εἰς τὴν νῦν οἰκουμένην
 παρ' αὐτῶν χώραν εἰσὶν ἔτη υ' ἢ καὶ φ' μέχρι τῆς σήμερον, ἥτις ἐστὶν
 ἰνδικτιῶν ι', ἔτος ἀπὸ κτίσεως κόσμου ρυξ' ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Κωνσταν- 40
 τίνου καὶ Ῥωμανοῦ, τῶν φιλοχρίστων καὶ πορφυρογεννήτων βασιλέων
 Ῥωμαίων.

- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ φιλόχριστος καὶ πορφυρογέννητος καὶ αἰδιδμος
 βασιλεὺς Λέων ἀκούσας, ὅτι εἰς τὸν τόπον, τὸν λεγόμενον Φασιανὴν
 ἐλθόντες οἱ Σαρακηνοί, τὰς ἐκεῖσε ἐκκλησίας ἐποίησαν κάστρα, ἀπέ- 45
 στείλεν τὸν πατρίκιον {ὁ δεῖνα} καὶ στρατηγὸν τῶν Ἀρμενιάκων τὸν
 Λαλάκωνα μετὰ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Κολωνείας καὶ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Μεσο-
 140^oP ποταμίας | καὶ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ Χαλδίας, καὶ κατέστρεψαν τὰ τοιαῦτα
 κάστρα, τὰς ἐκκλησίας ἐλευθερώσαντες, ληϊσάμενοι καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν
 Φασιανὴν, τῷ τότε καιρῷ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κρατουμένην. Καὶ εἰθ' 50
 οὕτως πάλιν ἀπέστειλεν τὸν μάγιστρον Κατακαλὼν καὶ δομέστικον
 τῶν σχολῶν, ὅς ἐλθὼν ἐν τῷ κάστρῳ Θεοδοσιουπόλεως καὶ τὰ περίξ
 200^{Be} αὐτῆς ληϊσάμενος καὶ τὴν χώραν τῆς Φασιανῆς καὶ τὰ περὶ αὐτὴν κάστρα

his body save only in the heart, which he used to protect by a sort of covering in battles. On this account the Persians were dismayed at and feared him, and he overcame them and mastered them and settled his Iberian kinsmen in the difficult territories now possessed by them; whence by degrees they expanded and increased and grew into a great nation. Thereafter, when the emperor Heraclius marched against Persia, they united and campaigned with him, and as a result, through the dread inspired by Heraclius, emperor of the Romans, rather than by their own strength and power, they subdued a great number of cities and countries of the Persians. For once the emperor Heraclius had routed the Persians and had forcibly brought their empire to an end, the Persians were easily defeated and mastered, not by the Iberians only, but by the Saracens as well. And because they originated, as they themselves say, from Jerusalem, for this reason they are very loyal to it and to the sepulchre of our Lord Jesus Christ, and from time to time they send large sums of money to the patriarch of the holy city and to the Christians there. Now, the aforesaid David, the brother of Spandiatris, begat a son Pankratios, and Pankratios begat a son Asotios, and Asotios begat a son Adranasi, who was honoured with the rank of curopalate by Leo, the Christ-loving emperor of the Romans. But Spandiatris, the brother of the aforesaid David, died childless. And from their migration from Jerusalem to the country now inhabited by them it is 400 years, or rather 500 up to the present day, which is the 10th indiction, the year from the creation of the world 6460, in the reign of Constantine and Romanus, Christ-loving emperors of the Romans, born in the purple.

The Christ-loving and glorious emperor Leo, born in the purple, hearing that the Saracens had arrived in the place called Phasiane and had made the churches there into fortresses, sent the patrician Lalakon, military governor of the Armeniakoi, together with the military governor of Koloneia and the military governor of Mesopotamia and the military governor of Chaldia, and they destroyed these fortresses and liberated the churches and ravaged all Phasiane, at that time in the possession of the Saracens. And again afterwards he sent the magister Katakalon, the commander-in-chief, who arrived at the city of Theodosiupolis and ravaged the territory all about it, and gave up the country of Phasiane and the cities around it to the

V 17 ἀνεπάσματος: περιανεπάσματος V edd. || 19 νεύοντες] *litteras né in ras. scr.* P¹ || τε om. edd. || 19/20 ἐνοίκησεν P || 20 δυσκολίας: δυσχωρίας *coni.* Bekker || 21 καὶ om. Ba Be || ὑβήθησαν *scr.* Moravcsik: ὑβήθησαν P ὑβήθησαν edd. || 29 ἐξ: ἐκ τῆς Ba Be || 30 ἔχουσιν (*etiam* Ba): ἔχειν V Me Be || 31 ἡ om. V edd. *secl.* Moravcsik || 39 εἰσὶν a P¹ *false post i'* (40) *insertum huc transp.* Moravcsik || 40 ἔτος: ἔτη V edd. || 44 τὸν¹ om. Be || 46 ὁ δεινὰ *per comp.* P: om. edd. *secl.* Moravcsik || Ἀρμενιακῶν edd. || 51 Κατακαλὸν P ||

τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἡλέθρῳ παραδούς, ὑπέστρεψεν, μεγάλην πληγὴν ἐν τούτῳ
 δούς τοῖς Σαρακηνοῖς. Ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ, τοῦ 55
 βασιλέως ὁ μάγιστρος Ἰωάννης ὁ Κουρκούας ἀπερχόμενος κατὰ τοῦ

141^P κάστρου Τιβρίου, εἰς τὴν διόδον αὐτοῦ ἠφάνισεν τὴν πᾶσαν χώ|ραν τῆς
 Φασιανῆς, ὡς ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν κρατουμένην. Ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος
 Θεόφιλος, ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος μαγίστρου Ἰωάννου, τὸ πρῶτον
 αὐτοῦ στρατηγεύοντος ἐν Χαλδίᾳ, ἐπραίδευσεν τὴν τοιαύτην χώραν 60
 τῆς Φασιανῆς, ὡς καὶ τότε ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν δεσποζομένην. Μέχρι
 γὰρ τοῦ γεγονέναι τὸν λόγον μετὰ τοὺς Θεοδοσιουπολίτας εἰς τὴν χώραν
 τῆς Φασιανῆς χωρίον οὐ συνέστη, οὐδὲ εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου.
 Καὶ οἱ Ἰβηρες πάντοτε εἶχον ἀγάπην καὶ φιλίαν μετὰ τῶν Θεοδοσιου-
 πολιτῶν καὶ τῶν Ἀβνικιωτῶν καὶ μετὰ τῶν Μανζικιερωτῶν καὶ μετὰ 65
 πᾶσαν τὴν Περσίδα, ἀλλ' ἐν Φασιανῇ οὐδέποτε ἐπεκτήσαντο χωρία.

141^VP Ὅτι πολλάκις ὁ κύρις Λέων, ὁ βασιλεὺς | καὶ ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανὸς
 καὶ αὐτὴ ἡ βασιλεία ἡμῶν ἐπεζήτησεν τὸ κάστρον τὸ Κετζέον τοῦ ἀναλα-
 βέσθαι αὐτὸ καὶ εἰσαγαγεῖν ταξάτους πρὸς τὸ μὴ ἐκεῖθεν σιταρχεῖσθαι
 τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἐξασφαλιζόμενοι πρὸς τε τὸν κουροπαλάτην καὶ 70
 τοὺς ἀδελφούς αὐτοῦ τοῦ — μετὰ τὸ παραληφθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπο-

201Be λιν — ἀνα|λαβέσθαι αὐτοὺς τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἠνέσχοντο
 οἱ Ἰβηρες τοῦτο ποιῆσαι διὰ τὴν ἀγάπην τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν, καὶ
 διὰ τὸ μὴ πορθηθῆναι τὸ κάστρον Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλ' ἀντεδήλωσαν
 τὸν κύριον Ῥωμανὸν καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν, λέγοντες, ὅτι· «Εἰ τοῦτο 75
 ποιήσωμεν, ἀτιμία ἔχομεν γενέσθαι εἰς τοὺς γείτονας ἡμῶν, οἷον εἰς

142^P τὸν μάγιστρον καὶ (εἰς τὸν) ἐξουσιαστὴν Ἀβασγίας καὶ εἰς | τὸν Βασπα-
 κανίτην καὶ εἰς τοὺς ὑπερεξάρχοντας τῶν Ἀρμενίων, καὶ εἰπεῖν ἔχουσιν,
 ὅτι ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀπίστους ἔχει τοὺς Ἰβηρας, τὸν τε κουροπαλάτην καὶ
 τοὺς ἀδελφούς αὐτοῦ, καὶ οὐ πιστεύει αὐτοῖς, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἀνελάβετο 80
 <τὸ> κάστρον ἐξ αὐτῶν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἅς ἀποστείλῃ ὁ βασιλεὺς τουρμάρ-
 χην ἢ βασιλικὸν τινα, καὶ ἅς καθέξῃται εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Κετζέου,
 καὶ ἅς θεωρῇ.» Καὶ ἐδέξαντο διὰ κελεύσεως, ὅτι· «Τί ὄφελος ἡ τουρμάρ-
 χην ἢ βασιλικὸν ἀποστεῖλαι; Πάντως ἐὰν εἰσέλθῃ εἴτε τουρμάρχης,
 εἴτε βασιλικός, μετὰ δέκα ἢ δώδεκα ἀνθρώπων ἔχει εἰσελθεῖν, καὶ 85
 καθέξεσθαι ἔχει εἰς τὸ ἀπλίκτον, ὃ παρ' ὑμῶν λάβῃ· καὶ ἐπεὶ πολλαὶ
 εἰσὶν ὁδοί, αἱ εἰσάγουσαι εἰς τὸ κάστρον Θεοδοσιουπόλεως, οὐ δύναται
 142^VP ἀπὸ τοῦ | κάστρου βλέπειν τὰ εἰσερχόμενα καρβάνια εἰς τὸ κάστρον
 Θεοδοσιουπόλεως· δύναται δὲ εἰσερχεσθαι καρβάνια ἐν Θεοδοσιου-
 πόλει τῇ νυκτὶ, ἐκεῖνων μηδὲν νοούντων.» Ἀλλ' οὖν διὰ τὸ μὴ θέλειν 90
 τοὺς Ἰβηρας πορθηθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον σιταρ-

like destruction, and returned after inflicting thereby a great blow upon the Saracens. And in the reign of the lord Romanus, the emperor, the magister John Kourkouas, marching against the city of Tibi, utterly devastated in his passage the whole country of Phasiane, since it was in the possession of the Saracens. Moreover, the patrician Theophilus also, brother of the aforesaid magister John, when he was for the first time military governor of Chaldia, plundered this country of Phasiane, because then too it was controlled by the Saracens. For by the time that terms had been agreed with the Theodosiopolitans, no village had been left standing in the country of Phasiane, or about the city of Abnikon either. And the Iberians always maintained loving and friendly relations with the men of Theodosiopolis and Abnikon and Manzikert and with all Persia, but in Phasiane they never acquired any territories.

The lord Leo, the emperor, and the lord Romanus and our own imperial majesty several times asked for the city of Ketzeon, so that we might take it over and introduce garrisons, in order to stop Theodosiopolis from being revictualled thence, assuring the europalate and his brothers that, after Theodosiopolis had been taken, they should have this city back; but the Iberians did not consent to do this, out of their love for the Theodosiopolitans and in order that the city of Theodosiopolis might not be taken, and declared in answer to the lord Romanus and to our imperial majesty, saying: «If we do this, we shall become dishonoured in the eyes of our neighbours, such as the magister the ruler of Abasgia and the Basparakanite and the potentates of the Armenians, and they will say that 'the emperor holds the Iberians, the europalate and his brothers, for faithless and does not trust them, and that is why he has taken over the city from them'; but let the emperor rather send a lieutenant-general or some imperial agent, and let him take up his quarters in the city of Ketzeon and let him watch.» And they were instructed by imperial mandate, to this effect: «What is the use of our sending either lieutenant-general or imperial agent? Even if he enters, whether he be lieutenant-general or imperial agent, he will enter with ten or a dozen men and will take up his quarters in the lodgings which you will provide for him; and since the roads leading to the city of Theodosiopolis are many, he cannot from the city see the caravans entering the city of Theodosiopolis; and caravans may enter Theodosiopolis by night, and they none the wiser.» And so, then, because the Iberians did not wish that Theodosiopolis should be taken, but rather that it should be

V 55 τοῦ¹ om. edd. || τοῦ² om. edd. || 65 Μαντζικερτῶν Ba Be || 67 κύρης¹ P || κύρης² P || 75 κύρην P || εἰ in ras. scr. P¹ || 76 ποιήσομεν edd. || 77 εἰς τὸν secl. Jenkins || 81 τὸ add. edd. || ἄς (sine acc.) P || 82 ἄς (sine acc.) P || καθέζεται edd.: καθέζεται P || τὸ om. edd. || Κετζέου edd.: Κετζέος P || 83 ἄς (sine acc.) P || θεωρῇ Be: θεωρεῖ P || 85 δέκα edd.: εἰ P || δώδεκα edd.: ιβ' P || 86 ἀπλήκτον P || ὁμῶν: ὁμῶν edd. || λάβη edd.: λάβει P ||

202Be χεῖσθαι, τούτου ἕνεκα οὐχ ὑπήκουσαν, καὶ δέδωκαν τὸ κά|στρον τὸ
Κετζέον, καίτοι καὶ ὄρκον ἔγγραφον δεχόμενοι τοῦ — μετὰ τὸ παραληφθῆ-
ναι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν — ἀποστραφῆναι αὐτοῖς τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον.

“Ὅτι οὐδέποτε ἡβουλήθησαν οἱ Ἰβηρες πραιδεῦσαι ἢ αἰχμαλωτίσαι 95
τὰ πέριξ τοῦ κάστρου Θεοδοσιουπόλεως ἢ τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ ἢ εἰς τὸ
κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκιου ἢ τὰ περὶ αὐτὸ χωρία ἢ εἰς τὸ κάστρον Μαντζικιερτ

143P καὶ | εἰς τὴν αὐτοῦ ἐπικράτειαν.

“Ὅτι καθὼς ἐνίσταται ὁ κουροπαλάτης περὶ τῶν χωρίων τῆς
Φασιανῆς, ἐπιζητῶν ὅλην τὴν Φασιανὴν καὶ τὸ κάστρον τοῦ Ἀβνίκου, 100
προφασιζόμενος χρυσοβούλλια ἔχειν τοῦ μακαρίου βασιλέως, τοῦ κυροῦ
Ῥωμανοῦ καὶ τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας, ὧν καὶ τὰ Ἰσα πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἀπέ-
στεileen διὰ τοῦ Ζουρβανέλη πρωτοσπαθαρίου, τοῦ ἁζάτου αὐτοῦ,
ταῦτα ἐπισκεψάμενοι εὗρομεν αὐτὸν μηδεμίαν βοήθειαν ἔχοντα. Τὸ μὲν

γὰρ χρυσοβούλλιον τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἡμῶν περιέχει ὑποσχέσθαι τὸν αὐτὸν 105
κουροπαλάτην, ὥς δι’ ὅρκου ἐβεβαίωσεν αὐτὸν οἰκείᾳ χειρὶ ἐγγραψάμε-
νος, τοῦ διαμεῖναι ἐν τῇ πίστει τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας καὶ τοῖς μὲν

143P ἔχθροῖς ἡμῶν ἀντιμάχεσθαι, | τοὺς δὲ φίλους ὑπερασπίζεσθαι καὶ τὴν
ἀνατολὴν ὑπόσπονδον ποιῆσαι τῇ βασιλείᾳ ἡμῶν καὶ κάστρα χειρώ-
σασθαι καὶ μεγάλα πρὸς θεραπείαν ἡμῶν ἔργα ποιήσασθαι, καὶ ὑπεσχέθη 110
αὐτῷ παρὰ τοῦ πενθεροῦ ἡμῶν, ἕνα, ἐὰν φυλάξῃ τὴν τοιαύτην πιστὴν

203Be δούλωσιν καὶ εὐγνωμοσύνην, διαμείνῃ ἀμετασάλευτος | καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ
οἱ τοῦ γένους αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ τούτου ἀρχῇ καὶ ἐξουσίᾳ· καὶ οὐ μεταστήσει
τὰ ὅρια τῶν τόπων αὐτοῦ, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τῶν πρώην βασιλέων τὰ σύμφωνα
στέργει, καὶ οὐχὶ περαιτέρω ὑπερβήσεται, καὶ ὅτι οὐδὲ κωλύσει αὐτὸν 115
καταστρέψαι τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα τῶν ἐχθρῶν,

144P κἂν τε δι’ αὐτοῦ μόνου πολιορκηθῇσονται, κἂν τε δι’ | αὐτοῦ τοῦ στρατο-
πέδου ἡμῶν. Ταῦτα μὲν τὰ κεφάλαια περιέχουσιν τὰ χρυσοβούλλια,
ἐξ ὧν οὐδεμίαν βοήθειαν ὁ κουροπαλάτης ἔχει· τὸ μὲν γὰρ τοῦ πενθεροῦ
ἡμῶν διαγορεύει, ὅτι οὐ παρασάλευσμεν αὐτὸν ἐκ τῶν παλαιῶν ὁρίων 120
τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ, καὶ ὅτι, ἐὰν δυνηθῇ εἴτε καὶ μόνος, εἴτε καὶ μετὰ
τοῦ στρατοπέδου ἡμῶν, πολιορκήσει καὶ καταστρέψει τὴν Θεοδοσιούπο-
λιν καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ κάστρα τῶν ἐχθρῶν, οὐχὶ δὲ κατασχεῖν αὐτὰ εἰς τελείαν
δεσποτείαν καὶ κυριότητᾳ· τὸ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν περιέχει, ἕνα,
ὅσους ἂν τόπους δυνηθῇ καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ὁ ἀνεψιὸς αὐτοῦ, ὁ μάγιστρος 125

144vP Ἀδριανασέ, ἐξ οἰκείας δυνάμεως καθυποτάξει τῶν Ἀγαρηνῶν, | ἢ ἀπὸ
τοῦ νῦν καθυποτάξει, κατέχει ἐπὶ δεσποτείᾳ καὶ κυριότητι. Καὶ ἐπεὶ
οὔτε ἐξ οἰκείας δυνάμεως τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν κατεστρέψατο, οὔτε τὸ

revictualled, for this reason they did not obey and give up the city of Ketzeon, although they received a sworn promise in writing that after the capture of Theodosioupolis this city should revert to them.

The Iberians never consented to raid or take prisoners in the environs of the city of Theodosioupolis or in its territories, or in the city of Abnikion or the territories about it, or in the city of Manzikiert or the area controlled by it.

Whereas regarding the territories of Phasiane the *curopalate* persists in his demand for all Phasiane and the city of Abnikon, and alleges that he has golden bulls of the emperor the lord Romanus, of blessed memory, and of our imperial majesty, copies of which he sent us by the hand of Zourbanelis the protospatharius, his 'azat', we examined these and found that they gave him no help. For, first, the golden bull of our father-in-law embodies a promise of this same *curopalate*, as he assured him on his oath and inscribed it with his own hand, that he will abide in loyalty to our imperial majesty, and fight against our foes and protect our friends, and subdue the east to our imperial majesty, and reduce cities and do great works for our comfort; and on the part of our father-in-law a promise was made to him that, if he continues in this loyal servitude and gratitude, he shall remain unshaken, both he and those of his family, in his rule and dominion; and *the emperor* will not move the boundaries of his territories, but will be content with the agreements made by former emperors and will not push beyond them; nor will he stop *the curopalate* from destroying Theodosioupolis and the rest of the cities of the enemy, whether he lays siege to them with his own unaided strength or with the assistance of this our army. Such are the main points contained in the golden bulls, and from them the *curopalate* gets no help: for that of our father-in-law lays it down that we will not disturb him from the ancient boundaries of his country, and that, if he can, whether by himself or with our army, he shall lay siege to and destroy Theodosioupolis and the rest of the cities of the enemy, but not so as to hold them in absolute sovereignty and lordship; while that of our own imperial majesty includes a provision that all the places of the Agarenes which both he and his nephew, the magister Adranase, may be able by their own power to reduce, or shall in future reduce, he shall hold as sovereign lord. And since by his own power he subdued neither Theodosioupolis nor

P || 108 τοὺς δὲ φίλους *corr.* Moravcsik: τοῖς δὲ φίλοις P *edd.* || 111 αὐτῷ *corr.* Tomašić: αὐτοῖς P *edd.* || πεμθεροῦ P || πιστὴν: πιστὴν *edd.* || 113 μεταστήσῃ F || 115 στέρξει Be: στέρξῃ P στέρξῃ Me Ba || οὐχὶ *om.* *edd.* || *post* περαιτέρω *add.* μὴ *edd.* || ὑπερβήσῃται F || 116 τὴν *his* P || 117 δι' αὐτοῦ: διὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ Me Ba τοῦ *secl.* Be || 119 πεμθεροῦ P || 120 παρασαλεύομεν V *edd.* || 122 καταστρέψει V *edd.*: καταστρέψῃ P || 126 Ἀδρανασέ *scr.* Moravcsik: Ἀδρανασαί P Ἀδρανασή *edd.* || 127 κατέχῃ *edd.* ||

- Ἀβνίκιον, οὔτε τὸ Μαστάτον, οὐκ ὀφείλει ταῦτα κατέχειν, ὥς ὄντα
 ἔνθεν τοῦ Ἑραξ ποταμοῦ, ἥτοι τοῦ Φάσιδος, διότι τὸ μὲν κάστρον τοῦ 130
 Ἀβνίκου μέχρι τοῦ νῦν ἦν αὐτεξούσιον καὶ αὐτοδέσποτον, ἔχον ἴδιον
 ἀμνηρᾶν, καὶ πολλάκις ὁ λαὸς τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν ἐπραίδευσεν αὐτό,
 204Be ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Ἰωάννης καὶ στρατηγὸς ὁ Ἀρραβωνίτης
 καὶ ὁ πατρίκιος Θεόφιλος καὶ ἀρτίως στρατηγὸς Θεοδοσιουπόλεως, καὶ
 οἱ λοιποὶ στρατηγοὶ μεγάλην πραΐδαν καὶ αἰχμαλωσίαν εἰς αὐτὸ ἤργα-135
 145P σαντο, κατακυβερνήσαντες τὰ χωρία αὐτοῦ, μηδέποτε τοῦ κουροπαλάτου
 πραιδεύσαντος αὐτό. Καὶ ἡνίκα ἠφανίσθησαν τὰ τοῦτου χωρία παρὰ
 τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν, ὑπεισῆλθον οἱ Ἰβηρες, καὶ κατεκράτησαν αὐτά,
 πειρώμενοι ἐκ τούτου τὸ κάστρον κρατῆσαι. Ὁ δὲ ἀμνηρᾶς πολλάκις
 μηνυθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ πατρίκιου Θεοφίλου καὶ στρατηγοῦ καὶ ἰδὼν, ὅτι 140
 οὐδαμῶθεν ἔχει ἐλπίδα ζωῆς, ὑπετάγη καὶ κατένευσεν γενέσθαι δοῦλος
 τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν, δοὺς τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ ὄψιδα. Τὸ δὲ Μαστάτον ὑπῆρχεν
 τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν, καὶ ἡνίκα ὁ μάγιστρος Ἰωάννης ἐπολιόρκησεν
 τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν ἑπτὰ μῆνας, διὰ τὸ μὴ δύνασθαι παραλαβεῖν αὐτὴν
 ἀποστείλας λαόν, παρέλαβεν τὸ αὐτὸ κάστρον τὸ Μαστάτον, καὶ εἰσῆγα-145
 145P γεν | ἐν αὐτῷ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον Πετρωνᾶν τὸν Βόβλαν, τὸν τότε
 ὄντα κατεπάνω Νικοπόλεως. Ὁ δὲ μάγιστρος Παγκράτιος συνταξιδεύ-
 σας τῷ αὐτῷ μαγίστρῳ ἐν Θεοδοσιουπόλει, ἡνίκα ἐμελλεν ἀναχωρεῖν,
 παρεκάλεσεν, ἵνα δώσῃ αὐτῷ τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, ποιήσας ἔγγραφον
 ὅρκον πρὸς αὐτὸν τοῦ ἐπικρατεῖν αὐτὸ καὶ μηδέποτε τοῦτο τοῖς Σαρα-150
 κηνοῖς ἐπιδοῦναι. Καὶ διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν καὶ Χριστιανὸν καὶ δοῦλον τῆς
 βασιλείας ἡμῶν, πιστεύσας τῷ ὅρκῳ αὐτοῦ, δέδωκεν αὐτὸ τὸν εἰρημένον
 Παγκράτιον, ὁ δὲ πάλιν ἀπεχαρίσατο αὐτὸ τοῖς Θεοδοσιουπολίταις.
 205Be Καὶ ἡνίκα παρελήφθη ἡ Θεοδοσιούπολις, | ὑπεισεληθόντες οἱ Ἰβηρες
 ἐκράτησαν αὐτό, διότι οὔτε τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον τὸ Μαστάτον, οὔτε τοῦ 155
 146P Ἀβνίκου ἔχουσιν ἐξουσίαν | ἐπιζητεῖν. Ἄλλ' ἐπειδὴ ὁ κουροπαλάτης
 πιστὸς καὶ ὁρθὸς δοῦλος καὶ φίλος ἡμῶν ἐστιν, διὰ τὴν αὐτοῦ παράκλη-
 σιν ἵνα γένηται σύνορον τῆς Φασιανῆς ὁ ποταμὸς ὁ Ἑραξ, ἥτοι ὁ Φᾶσις,
 καὶ τὰ μὲν ἀριστερὰ μέρη, τὰ πρὸς τὴν Ἰλλυρίαν, κατέχωσιν οἱ Ἰβηρες,
 τὰ δὲ δεξιὰ, ὅσα εἰσὶν πρὸς τὴν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, κἄν τε κάστρα, κἄν τε 160
 χωρία εἰσὶν, ὧσιν ὑπὸ τὴν βασιλείαν ἡμῶν, τοῦ ποταμοῦ δηλονότι σύνο-
 ρον ἀμφοτέρων ὑπάρχοντος, καθὼς καὶ ζῶν ὁ μακάριος Ἰωάννης ὁ
 Κουρκούας περὶ τούτου ἐρωτηθεὶς ἐξεῖπεν συμφέρον εἶναι τὸν ποταμὸν
 σύνορον. Τὸ μὲν γὰρ ἀκριβὲς δίκαιον οὐδεμίαν ἐξουσίαν παρέχει τῷ
 κουροπαλάτῃ, εἴτε εἰς τὰ ἔνθεν τοῦ ποταμοῦ, εἴτε εἰς τὰ ἐκεῖθεν δια-165
 146P κράτησιν ἔχειν, διότι τὰ τοιαῦτα πάντα χωρία τῶν Θεοδοσιουπολιτῶν

V 129 Ἀβνίκον edd. || Μαστάτον V² edd.: Ναστάτον P V F || ὀφείλει Be:
 ὀφείλη P ὀφείλη Me Ba || 132 ἀμνηρᾶν P || 135/6 ἐργάσαντο Be ||

Abnikion nor Mastaton, he has no right to hold them, lying as they do on this side of the Erax or Phasis river; because the city of Abnikon, on the one hand, has hitherto been independent and self-governing, under its own emir, and several times the army of our imperial majesty has raided it, yes, and the protospatharius John Arrhabonitis, the military governor, and the patrician Theophilus, who is now military governor of Theodosioupolis, and the rest of the military governors have taken great plunder and many prisoners in it, and burnt its villages, while the curopalate has never raided it at all. And when these villages had been utterly devastated by our imperial majesty, the Iberians crept in and took possession of them, and tried thereafter to possess themselves of the city. But the emir, after being several times warned by the patrician and military governor Theophilus, and seeing that he had no hope of survival from any quarter, submitted himself and consented to become the servant of our imperial majesty, and gave his son as a hostage. Mastaton, on the other hand, belonged to the Theodosiopolitans; and when the magister John had besieged Theodosioupolis seven months, because he was unable to take it he sent some men and took this same city of Mastaton and introduced into it the protospatharius Petronas Boilas, who was then captain-general of Nicopolis. And the magister Pankratios, who had joined the campaign of this same magister at Theodosioupolis, when *the latter* was about to retire, begged him to give him this city, and made him an oath in writing that he would retain it and never give it up to the Saracens. He, as the said Pankratios was a Christian and servant of our imperial majesty, trusted to his oath and gave it him, and he gave it back again to the Theodosiopolitans. And when Theodosiupolis was taken, the Iberians crept in and took possession of *Mastaton*; for these reasons they have no authority to demand either this city of Mastaton or that of Abnikon. But since the curopalate is our faithful and upright servant and friend, at his request let the frontier of Phasiane be the river Erax or Phasis, and let the Iberians possess the parts on the left hand side towards Illyria, and all the parts on the right towards Theodosiupolis, whether cities or villages, be beneath our imperial majesty, the river, that is to say, forming the frontier between the two, just as in his lifetime John Kourkouas, of blessed memory, when asked about this, declared that it was best for the river to be the frontier. Strict justice does not allow the curopalate any authority to exercise control either on this side of the river or on the other, since all these villages of the Theodosiopolitans were enslaved and

139 ἀμηνάς P || 140 ἰδὼν edd.: ἰδῶς P || 141 οὐδαμῶθεν: οὐδαμῶς edd. || δοῦλος γενέσθαι edd. || 143 Θεοδοσιουπολίτων P || 149 δώσει edd.: δώσει P || 152/3 τὸν εἰρημένον Παγκράτιον: τῷ εἰρημένῳ Παγκρατεῖ edd. || 155 τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον τὸ Μαστάτον: τοῦ τοιοῦτου κάστρου τοῦ Μαστάτου edd. || 159 Ἰαλυρίαν: Ἰβηρίαν conit. Brosset Laskin || κατέχωσιν edd. κατέχουσιν P || 162 ὁ οἱ. edd. || 163 Κουρκουάς P || 166 Θεοδοσιουπολίτων P ||

τὰ στρατεύματα τῆς βασιλείας ἡμῶν ἡχμαλώτισαν καὶ ἐπυρπόλησαν, καὶ οὐδέποτε χωρὶς ἡμετέρου λαοῦ Ἰβηρες ἐξῆλθον καὶ ἐπραιδευσαν Θεοδοσιούπολιν, ἀλλ' αἰεὶ φίλους εἶχον αὐτούς, καὶ ἐπραγματεύοντο μετ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τῷ μὲν στόματι ἤθελον ποροθηθῆναι τὴν Θεοδοσιού-170 πολιν, τῇ δὲ καρδίᾳ οὐδαμῶς ἐβούλοντο παραληφθῆναι αὐτήν. Ἀλλ' ἡ βασιλεία ἡμῶν, ὡς εἴρηται, διὰ τὴν πρὸς τὸν κουροπαλάτην ἀγάπην ἠθέλησεν γενέσθαι τὸν ποταμὸν τὸν Ἑραξ, ἥτοι τὸν Φᾶσιν σύνορον ἀμφοτέρων, καὶ ὀφείλουσιν ἀρκεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν τοιαύτην διακράτησιν καὶ μηδὲν πλέον ἐπιζητεῖν.

175

206Be 46. Περὶ τῆς γενεαλογίας τῶν Ἰβήρων καὶ τοῦ
καστροῦ Ἀρδανουτζίου.

- 147P Ἰστέον, ὅτι ὁ Παγκράτιος καὶ ὁ Δαυιδ ὁ Μάμπαλις, ὁ ἐρμηνεύεται
'πανάγιος', ὑπῆρχον υἱοὶ τοῦ μεγάλου Συμβατίου, τοῦ Ἰβηρος. Καὶ
ἔλαχεν τὸ Ἀρδανουτζὶ εἰς κληρονομίαν τῷ Παγκρατίῳ, τῷ δὲ Δαυιδ 5
ἔλαχεν ἑτέρα χώρα. Ὁ δὲ Παγκράτιος ἐποίησεν υἱοὺς τρεῖς, τὸν Ἀδρα-
νασέρ, τὸν Κουρκένιον καὶ τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον, τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην,
καὶ διεμέρισεν αὐτοὺς τὴν χώραν αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἔλαχεν τὸ Ἀρδανουτζὶ τῷ
υἱῷ αὐτοῦ, Κουρκενίῳ, κάκεινον τελευτήσαντος ἀτέκνου, εἶασεν αὐτὸ
τῷ ἀδελφῷ αὐτοῦ, Ἀσωτίῳ, τῷ καὶ Κισκάσῃ. Ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος, 10
ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης, ἐπῆρεν γαμβρὸν εἰς θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ τὸν Κουρκένην
ἐκεῖνον, τὸν μάγιστρον, ὅστις δυναστεύσας ἀφείλετο ἐκ τοῦ πενθεροῦ
147P αὐτοῦ Ἀσωτίου τὸ Ἀρδανουτζὶ κατὰ τυραννίδα, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ
εἰς ἀντιστήκωσιν τό τε Τυρόκαστρον καὶ τὴν ποταμίαν τοῦ Ἀτζαρά,
τὴν οὖσαν σύνορον Ῥωμανίας εἰς Κώλωριν. Εἶχεν δὲ γυναῖκα ὁ πατρί- 15
κιος Ἀσώτιος, ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης, τὴν ἀδελφὴν τοῦ μαγίστρου Γεωργίου
καὶ ἐξουσιαστοῦ Ἀβασγίας. Καὶ ὅτε ἐγένοντο κατ' ἀλλήλων ὁ τε μάγι-
στρος Κουρκένιος καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Γεωργίας καὶ ἐξουσιαστῆς Ἀβασγίας,
διὰ τὸ συναγωνίζεσθαι τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον τοῦ ἐξουσιαστοῦ Ἀβα-
σγίας δυνηθεὶς ὁ Κουρκένιος ἀφείλετο καὶ τὴν ἀντιστήκωσιν, ἣν δέδωκεν 20
αὐτῷ ὑπὲρ τοῦ Ἀρδανουτζίου, καὶ ἐδίωξεν αὐτόν, καὶ ἀπῆλθεν εἰς
207Be Ἀβασγίαν. Τελευτήσαντος δὲ τοῦ μαγίστρου | Κουρκενίου, κατελείφθη
148P τὸ Ἀρδανουτζὶ τῇ γυναικὶ αὐτοῦ, τῇ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ
(καὶ) Κισκάσης, θυγατρὶ ὡς πατρικὸν αὐτῆς. Ὅτε δὲ διεμέριζον τὴν
χώραν τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου μεθ' ἑπλων, ὁ τε Ἀσώτιος ὁ κουρο- 25
παλάτης καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Γεωργίος, ὁ ἐξουσιαστῆς Ἀβασγίας καὶ ὁ

burnt by the armies of our imperial majesty, and never without our army did the Iberians come out and raid Theodosioupolis, but always maintained friendship with them and traded with them; and while they said they wished Theodosioupolis to be taken, in their hearts they by no means desired its capture. However, our imperial majesty, for our love of the europalate, as has been said, has consented that the river Erax, or Phasis, shall be the frontier between the two, and they must be content with retaining this much, and demand nothing more.

46. Of the genealogy of the Iberians and of the city of Ardanoutzi.

Pankratios and David the Mampalis, which means 'all-holy', were sons of the elder Symbatios the Iberian. Ardanoutzi fell to the inheritance of Pankratios, and other country fell to David. Pankratios had three sons, Adranaser, Kourkenios and the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, and he divided his country among them, and Ardanoutzi fell to his son Kourkenios, who, dying childless, left it to his brother Asotios, called Kiskasis. The patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, married his daughter to the late magister Kourkenis, who, having grown great, revolted, and deprived his father-in-law Asotios of Ardanoutzi, and gave him in exchange Tyrokastron and the river region of Atzaras, which forms the frontier of Romania at Kolorin. Now, the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, had to wife the sister of the magister George, ruler of Abasgia. And when the magister Kourkenios and the magister George, ruler of Abasgia, fell out with one another, the patrician Asotios took the side of the ruler of Abasgia, and for that reason Kourkenios, gaining the upper hand, deprived him even of what he had given him in exchange for Ardanoutzi, and expelled him, and he departed to Abasgia. On the death of the magister Kourkenios, Ardanoutzi was left to his wife, the daughter of the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, as her father's heiress. Now when Asotios the europalate and the magister George, ruler of Abasgia, and the magister Pankratios, brother of the aforesaid europalate, were dividing up the country of the magister Kourkenios by

46. 2 'Αδρανουτζίου edd. || 3 post Δαυίδ add. καὶ edd. *omittendum* coni. Brosset || post δ³ *addendum* καὶ coni. Marquart || 5 'Αρδανούτζη P: 'Αδρανούτζη edd. || 6 τρεῖς V edd.: γ' P || 8 αὐτοῖς V edd. || 'Αρδανούτζη Moravesik: 'Αδρανούτζη P edd. || 12 περὶ θεοῦ P || 13 'Αρδανούτζη P: 'Αδρανούτζη Ba Be || 15 ante 'Ρωμανίας add. τῆς edd. || Κόλωρην P || 20 ἀφελετο V edd.: ἀφείλατο P || 21 'Αρδανουτζίου Moravesik: 'Αδρανουτζίου P edd. || 23 'Αρδανούτζη P: 'Αδρανούτζη edd. || 24 καὶ add. Moravesik ||

μάγιστρος Παγκράτιος, ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος κουροπαλάτου, ἦλθον εἰς συμβίβασιν, καὶ ἐπῆρεν ἕκαστος τὸ πλησιάζον αὐτῷ. Τὸ δὲ Ἀρδανούτζιν ἐπλησίαζεν τῷ Συμβατίῳ, τῷ τοῦ προρρηθέντος Δαυὶδ υἱῷ. Τότε ἐκράτησαν πάντες τὴν γυναῖκα τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου, 30 ἡγουν τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση, λέγοντες, ὡς ὅτι· «Ζὺ γυνὴ οὐσα οὐ δύνασαι κρατεῖν τὸ κάστρον.» Τότε δέ-
 148*P δωκεν ὁ Συμβάτιος εἰς ἀντιστήκωσιν τοῦ κάστρου χωρία τῇ γυναικί, καὶ ἀνελάβετο τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον τὸ Ἀρδανούτζιν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ συγγένεια τῶν τοιούτων Ἰβήρων τοῦτον ἔχει τὸν 35 τρόπον. Τοῦ Δαυὶδ ἡ μήτηρ καὶ τοῦ Ἀδρανασὲ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ ἀρτίως Ἀσωτίου τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, ὑπῆρχον δύο ἀδελφῶν παιδιά, ἡγουν ἐξαδέλφαι. Εἶχεν δὲ Συμβάτιος, ὁ τοῦ Δαυὶδ υἱός, γυναῖκα τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ μαγίστρου Παγκρατίου, τοῦ πατρὸς τοῦ Ἀδρανασῆ, τοῦ ἀρτίως μαγίστρου, καὶ τελευτησάσης, ἔλαβεν ὁ 40 Ἀδρανασὴ τὴν ἀδελφὴν τοῦ Συμβατίου, τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ Δαυὶδ.

149*P "Ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀρδανούτζιν ἐστὶν ὁχυρὸν πάνυ, ἔχει δὲ καὶ 208Be ῥαπάτιν μέγα ὡς χωρόπολιν, καὶ αἱ πραγματεῖαι | τῆς | τε Τραπεζοῦντος καὶ τῆς Ἰβηρίας καὶ τῆς Ἀβασγίας καὶ ἀπὸ πάσας τὰς χώρας τὰς Ἀρμενικὰς καὶ τῆς Συρίας ἐκεῖσε ἀφικνοῦνται, ἔχει δὲ καὶ κομμέριον ἐκ 45 τῶν τοιούτων πραγματειῶν ἄπειρον. Ἡ δὲ χώρα τοῦ κάστρου Ἀρδανουτζίου, ἥτοι τὸ Ἀρζῦν ἐστὶν καὶ πολλὴ καὶ εὐφορος, καὶ ὑπάρχει κλειδὶν τῆς τε Ἰβηρίας καὶ Ἀβασγίας καὶ τῶν Μισχιῶν.

"Ὅτι ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς, ὁ κύρις Ῥωμανὸς ἀπέστειλεν τὸν πατρίκιον Κωνσταντῖνον καὶ δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωῖμου, τῷ τότε καιρῷ 50 πρωτοσπαθαρίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου τυγχάνοντος, δεδοκῶς αὐτῷ καὶ ἱμάτιον μαγιστράτου πρὸς τὸ ποιῆσαι τὸν Κουρκενίον τὸν Ἰβηρα μάγιστρον. Μετὰ δὲ τὸ ἐξελθεῖν τὸν πατρίκιον Κωνσταντῖνον καὶ δρουγγά-
 149*P ριον τοῦ | πλωῖμου μέχρι Νικομηδείας εἰσῆλθεν ὁ μοναχὸς Ἀγάπιος ὁ τοῦ Κυμιᾶ, ὃς ἦν τῷ τότε καιρῷ εἰς τὴν ἁγίαν πόλιν εὐχῆς ἕνεκα. 55 Καὶ διερχομένου αὐτοῦ τὴν Ἰβηρίαν, κατήντησεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀρδανούτζιν. Καὶ εἶχεν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος, ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης καλούμενος, ἔχθραν μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ Κουρκενῆ, καὶ ἐλάλησεν εἰς τὸν μοναχὸν Ἀγάπιον, ὅτι· «Ἐνορκῶ σε εἰς τὸν Θεὸν καὶ εἰς τὴν δύναμιν τοῦ τιμίου καὶ ζωοποιοῦ σταυροῦ, ἵνα ἀπέλθῃς ἐν τῇ πόλει, καὶ 60 εἴπῃς τὸν βασιλέα, ἵνα ἀποστείλῃ καὶ παραλάβῃ τὸ κάστρον μου καὶ ἔχῃ ὑπὸ τὴν ἐξουσίαν αὐτοῦ.» Ὁ δὲ μοναχὸς Ἀγάπιος εἰσελθὼν ἐν τῇ πόλει, διηγήσατο τὸν βασιλέα, ὅσα ἐλάλησεν πρὸς αὐτὸν ὁ πατρί-

F 29 Ἀρδανούτζιν edd. || 32 ὡς om. V edd. || 33 ἀντιστήκωσιν: συνάντησιν V edd. || 34 τοιοῦτο V edd. || Ἀρδανούτζιν edd. || 36 Τοῦ Δαυὶδ: τοῦ Συμβατίου

force of arms, they came to an accommodation and each took what was next to him. And Ardanoutzi lay next to Symbatios, son of the aforesaid David. Then all of them seized on the widow of the magister Kourkenios, that is, the daughter of the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, and said to her: «You, as a woman, cannot possess the city.» Then Symbatios gave the woman territories in exchange for the city, and took the city of Ardanoutzin.

These Iberians are related to one another in the following manner. The mother of David and the mother of Adranase the curopalate, father of the present curopalate Asotios, were the children of two brothers, that is to say, they were first cousins. Symbatios, the son of David, had to wife the daughter of the magister Pankratis, father of Adranasi who is now magister, and after her death Adranasi married the sister of Symbatios, son of David.

The city of Ardanoutzin is very strongly defended, and has moreover a considerable suburban area like a provincial city, and the commerce of Trapezus and of Iberia and of Abasgia and from the whole country of Armenia and Syria comes to it, and it has an enormous customs revenue from this commerce. The country of the city of Ardanoutzin, the 'Arzyn', is both extensive and fertile, and it is a key of Iberia and Abasgia and of the Mischians.

The emperor the lord Romanus, of blessed memory, sent the patrician Constantine, the lord admiral, who was at that time protospatharius and lictor, with a tunic of the magistracy in order to make Kourkenios the Iberian a magister. When the patrician Constantine, the lord admiral, had reached Nicomedeia, the monk Agapios of Kyminas came on the scene, who had at that time been visiting the holy city to fulfil a vow. In his passage through Iberia he had come to the city of Ardanoutzin. The patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, at feud with his son-in-law Kourkenios, had spoken thus to the monk Agapios: «I adjure you, by God and by the power of the honourable and life-giving Cross, to go to Constantinople and tell the emperor to send and take over my city, and have it beneath his dominion.» The monk Agapios came to Constantinople and related to the emperor all that the patrician

seu <Συμβατίου τοῦ υἱοῦ> τοῦ Δαβὶδ *coni.* Brosset Laskin || 'Αδρανασή *edd.* || 40 'Αδρανασή *edd.* || 42 'Αδρανουτζίβ Ba Be || ὀχυρὸν ἐστὶ πᾶν V *edd.* || 43 βασιάνην P || μέγα V *edd.*: μέγαν P || χωρόπολιν: χωρόπουλον *sive* χωριόπουλον *coni.* Meursius || 44 τῆς² *om.* V *edd.* || πάσας τὰς χώρας τὰς Ἀρμενικὰς: πάσης τῆς χώρας τῆς Ἀρμενίας *edd.* || 46/7 'Αρδανουτζίου Moravcsik: 'Αδρανουζίου P 'Αδρανουτζίου *edd.* || 47 Ἀρζήν *edd.* || 48 κλειδὴν P || Μισχιῶν: Μοσχιῶν *coni.* Meursius Bandurcius Laskin || 49 κύρης P || 50 Κωνσταντινὸν *per comp.* P: Κόνσταντα *edd.* || 51 πρωτοσπαθαρίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου τυγχάνοντος: πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ καὶ μαγγλαβίτῃ τυγχάνοντι *coni.* Brosset || 52 μαγιστράτου *edd.*: μαγιστράτον P || 53 Κωνσταντινὸν *per comp.* P: Κόνσταντα *edd.* || 55 Κυμινὰ P || καιρῷ: χρόνῳ *edd.* || 57 'Αδρανουτζίβ *edd.* || 62 ἐχῆ *edd.*: ἐχῆ P ||

- 150^Pκιος | 'Ασώτιος, ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης. Τοῦ δὲ προρρηθέντος πατρι^{κίου}
 209^{Be}Κωνσταντίνου καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωῖμου ἐν Νικομηδείᾳ τυγχάνον- 65
 τος διὰ τὴν προρρηθεῖσαν τῆς προβολῆς τοῦ μαγίστρου τοῦ Κουρκένη
 'Ιβήρος ὑπόθεσιν, ἐκ προστάξεως τοῦ βασιλέως ἐδέξατο πιττάκιον τοῦ
 πατρικίου Συμεών, τοῦ πρωτοασηκρήτης, ὡς ὅτι· «Κελεύει ὁ βασιλεὺς
 ἡμῶν ὁ ἅγιος καταλιπεῖν σε πάσας σου τὰς δουλείας καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ἐν
 συντομίᾳ πρὸς τὸν πατρίκιον 'Ασώτιον, τὸν καὶ Κισκάσῃν λεγόμενον, 70
 καὶ παραλαβεῖν τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ τὸ 'Αρδανούτζιν, ἐπειδὴ διὰ τοῦ
 μοναχοῦ 'Αγαπίου ἐδηλοποίησεν τὸν βασιλέα ἡμῶν τὸν ἅγιον τοῦ ἀπο-
 150^Pσταλῆναι πιστὸν ἄνθρωπον καὶ οἰκεῖον τοῦ παραλαβεῖν | τὸ κάστρον
 αὐτοῦ τὸ 'Αρδανούτζιν· καὶ ἀπερχομένου σου ἐν Χαλδίᾳ, ἀναλαβοῦ
 ἄρχοντας χρησίμους, οὓς ἐπίστασαι εἶναι ἡνδρειωμένους καὶ πιστούς, 75
 καὶ εἰσελθε καὶ κράτησον τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον.» Τοῦ δὲ πατρικίου
 Κωνσταντίνου καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωῖμου ἀπελθόντος ἐν Χαλδίᾳ
 καὶ ἀναλαβομένου τουρμάρχας χρησίμους καὶ ἄρχοντας καὶ λαὸν μέχρι
 τῶν τ', εἰσῆλθεν ἐν 'Ιβηρίᾳ, καὶ ἐκράτησεν αὐτὸν ὁ μακάριος Δαυὶδ,
 ὁ ἀδελφὸς 'Ασωτίου, τοῦ ἀρτίως κουροπαλάτου, λέγων πρὸς αὐτόν· 80
 «Ποῦ ἀπεστάλης παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ τί δουλείαν ὀφείλεις ἐκτελέσαι,
 ὅτι τοσοῦτον λαὸν ἐπιφέρει μετὰ σεαυτοῦ;» 'Εσκέπτοντο γὰρ διὰ τὸ
 151^Pἀποθανεῖν 'Αδριανὰς τὸν κουροπαλάτην, ὅτι μήπως | ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν
 Κουρκένιον ὀφείλει τιμῆσαι κουροπαλάτην, ἐπειδὴ ἀναμεταξὺ οἱ τοῦ
 'Αδριανὰς τοῦ κουροπαλάτου παῖδες, τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτῶν τελευτησάντος, 85
 210^{Be}φιλονικίας τινὰς ἔσχον μετὰ τοῦ ἐξαδέλ|φου αὐτῶν. Διὰ τὸ καὶ τὸν
 πρῶτον ἄνθρωπον αὐτοῦ ἀπολῦσαι μετὰ μεγάλου κανισκίου τὸν Κουρκέ-
 νιον πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, ἐξαιτούμενον τὸ κουροπαλατικὸν ἢ τὸ μαγιστρά-
 τον, ὑπέλαβον οἱ τέσσαρες ἀδελφοί, ἡγουν οἱ τοῦ 'Αδριανὰς τοῦ κουροπαλά-
 του παῖδες, ὅτι διὰ τὸ ποιῆσαι τὸν Κουρκένιον κουροπαλάτην ἀπέρχεται 90
 ἐκεῖσε. 'Ο δὲ πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος ἀπελογήσατο, ὅτι· «Διὰ τὸ μέλλειν
 με τιμῆσαι τὸν Κουρκένιον μάγιστρον ἐπιφέρομαι καὶ τὸν τοσοῦτον
 151^Pλαόν.» Καὶ ἀπελθόντος | τοῦ αὐτοῦ πατρικίου Κωνσταντίνου εἰς τὴν
 χώραν τοῦ Κουρκενίου, ἐτίμησεν αὐτὸν μάγιστρον καὶ ἀποχαιρετίσας
 αὐτόν * * *, ὅτι· «Ἀπέρχομαι εἰς τὸν Δαυὶδ τὸν μάγιστρον.» Εἶχεν 95
 δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ πρὸς τὸν Δαυὶδ κέλευσιν ἀπὸ
 τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ ξένια. Καὶ εἰσῆλθεν εἰς τὸ κάστρον τοῦ πατρικίου
 'Ασωτίου, τοῦ καὶ Κισκάσῃ, εἰς τὸ 'Αρδανούτζιν, καὶ δέδωκεν αὐτῷ
 τὴν πρὸς αὐτόν τοῦ βασιλέως κέλευσιν οὐ περὶ τοῦ κάστρου 'Αρδανουτζίου
 περιέχουσάν τι, ἀλλὰ περὶ ἐτέρων ὑποθέσεων. Εἶπεν δὲ πρὸς αὐτόν ὁ 100

V 65 Κωνσταντίνου *per comp.* P: Κώνσταντος edd. || 67 ἐδέξατο: ἔλαβε τὸ edd. || 68 πρωτοασηκρήτης *per comp.* P: ασηκρήτης edd. || 71 'Αρδανούτζιν F

Asotios, called Kiskasis, had said to him. The aforesaid patrician Constantine, the lord admiral, who was at Nicomedeia on the aforesaid business of appointing Kourkenios the Iberian to be magister, received by command of the emperor a missive of the patrician Symeon, the head of the imperial chancellery, which said: «Our holy emperor commands that you leave all you are engaged upon and go in haste to the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, and take over his city of Ardanoutzin, since he has declared to our holy emperor, by the mouth of the monk Agapios, that a trustworthy and familiar servant should be sent to take over his city of Ardanoutzin; go, then, to Chaldia and take some capable officers, whom you know to be brave and trustworthy, and enter and take possession of this city.» The patrician Constantine, the lord admiral, went to Chaldia and took capable lieutenant-generals and officers and men to the number of 300, and entered Iberia and fell into the hands of David, of blessed memory, brother of Asotios who is now europalate, who said to him: «Whither have you been sent by the emperor and what task are you to perform, that you bring so many men along with you?» For they suspected that, now Adranase the europalate was dead, the emperor must be about to honour Kourkenios with the rank of europalate; because, in the mean time, the sons of the europalate Adranase had, after their father's death, had certain quarrels with their cousin. And since Kourkenios had dispatched his chief man with a large gift to the emperor, requesting that he might be made europalate or magister, the four brothers, that is, the sons of Adranase the europalate, assumed that the patrician Constantine came thither to create Kourkenios europalate. But the patrician Constantine put them off by saying: «Because I am about to honour Kourkenios with the rank of magister I bring with me so many men.» And the patrician Constantine went off to the country of Kourkenios and honoured him with the rank of magister, and, bidding him farewell, said: «I am going to David the magister.» For this same patrician Constantine had for David also a mandate and presents from the emperor. And he entered Ardanoutzin, the city of the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, and gave him the imperial mandate addressed to him, which contained nothing about the city of Ardanoutzin, but was about other matters. But

* Ἀρδανούζην P: Ἀδρανούτιζιν edd. || 72/3 ἀποσταλῆναι: ἀποστέλλαι edd. || 74 Ἀδρανούτιζιν edd. || 77 Κωνσταντίνου per comp. P: Κώνσταντος edd. || 79 τῶν om. edd. || 81 τί: τίνα edd. || ὀφείλει edd.: ὀφείλης P || 82 τὸ Be to (sine acc.) P: τοῦτο V Me Ba || 83 post τὸν¹ add. καὶ edd. || 84 ὀφείλῃ edd. || 87 πρῶτον V edd.: α' P || αὐτοῦ om. V edd. || ἀπολύσαι: ἀποστέλλαι V edd. || 88 κουροπαλατίκην P || 88/9 μαγιστράτον P || 89 τέσσαρες edd.: δ' P || οἱ² om. V edd. || 90 ante παῖδες add. οἱ V edd. || 91 Κωνσταντῖνος per comp. P: Κώνστας edd. || 93 Καὶ ἀπελθόντος — 95 μάγιστρον post ξένια (97) transp. edd. || 93 Κωνσταντίνου per comp. P: Κώνσταντος edd. || 95 lac. ind. εἶπεν aut aliquid simile exordisse coniciens Moravesik || 96 Κωνσταντῖνος per comp. P: Κώνστας edd. || 98 Ἀδρανούτιζιν edd. || 99 Ἀδρανουτζίου Moravesik: Ἀδρανουτζίου P edd. ||

- πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος, ὅτι· «Κἂν μὲν ἡ κέλευσις οὐδὲν περιέχει περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Ἀρδανουτζίου, ἀλλ' οὖν τοῦ μοναχοῦ Ἀγαπίου πρὸς τὸν
 152^P βασιλέα εἰσελθόντος καὶ ἀναγγειλαντος αὐτόν, ὅσα καὶ | παρήγγειλας αὐτὸν περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Ἀρδανουτζίου, διὰ τοῦτο καὶ ἀπέστειλén με, ὅπως παραλάβω τὸ κάστρον καὶ εἰσαγάγω ἐν αὐτῷ, ὅνπερ περιφέρομαι¹⁰⁵ λαόν.» Καὶ ἐπειδὴ, καθὰ προεῖρηται, εἶχεν ἔχθραν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος,
 211^{Be} ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης, μετὰ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ, | τοῦ Κουρκένη, προειθυμήθη δοῦναι τὸ κάστρον αὐτοῦ μᾶλλον τὸν βασιλέα. Ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος εἶχεν παρ' ἑαυτῷ φλάμμουλα, καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν τῷ πατρικίῳ Ἀσωτίῳ, τῷ καὶ Κισκάσῃ. Ὁ δὲ βαλὼν αὐτὸ εἰς κοντάριον, ἐπιδέδωκεν¹¹⁰ τῷ πατρικίῳ Κωνσταντίνῳ εἰπών, ὅτι· «Ἐπίστησον αὐτὸ ἄνωθεν εἰς τὸ τεῖχος, ἵνα γνῶσιν πάντες τοῦ βασιλέως εἶναι ἀπὸ τῆς σήμερον
 152^{vP} ἡμέρας τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον.» Καὶ τοῦτο | ποιήσας ὁ πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ τὸ φλάμμουλον ἐπιστήσας ἄνωθεν τοῦ τείχους καὶ τοὺς βασιλεῖς τῶν Ῥωμαίων κατὰ τὸ εἰωθὸς εὐφημήσας, πᾶσιν ἐγένετο¹¹⁵ γνωστόν, ὅτι τὸ κάστρον τὸ Ἀρδανουτζίν ἀπεχαρίσατο ὁ πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος, ὁ καὶ Κισκάσης, τὸν βασιλέα. Ὁ οὖν Δαυὶδ, ὁ μέγας, τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν οὐκ ἐδίδου τὸν βασιλέα, κἂν τάχα συνορῇ τὴν τοῦρμαν τοῦ Ἀχαμψῆ καὶ τῇ Μουργούλῃ. Ὁ οὖν πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος ἀνήγαγε πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, ἐξαποστείλας δύο ἀναφοράς, τὴν μὲν μίαν περιέχουσας,¹²⁰ ὅπως ἐτίμησεν τὸν Κουρκένην μάγιστρον, καὶ ὅπως ὁ Κουρκένιος ἀπεδέξατο τὸ μαγιστράτον, καὶ εὐφήμησεν τὸν βασιλέα, τὴν δὲ ἑτέραν περιέχουσας περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Ἀρδανουτζίου, καὶ ὅπως τοῦτο παρέλαβεν
 153^{vP} | παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ καὶ Κισκάσῃ, καὶ ὅτι μεγάλην διαφορὰν καὶ ἔχθραν ἔχουσιν πρὸς ἀλλήλους ὁ τε πατρίκιος Ἀσώτιος μετὰ¹²⁵ τοῦ γαμβροῦ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ μαγίστρου Κουρκενίου, καὶ ἵνα ἀποστελῇ ὁ
 212^{Be} βασιλεὺς βοήθειαν τοῦ ταξατεῦσαι τὸ τοιοῦτον κάστρον, καὶ ὅτι, εἰ ἐνδέχεται, ἔλθῃ καὶ ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν. Ταῦτα ἰδόντες οἱ Ἰβηρες, ὁ τε μάγιστρος Κουρκένιος καὶ ὁ μάγιστρος Δαυὶδ, ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ κουροπαλάτου Ἀσωτίου, ἔγραψαν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, ὅτι· «Εἰ τοῦτο κατα-¹³⁰δέξῃται ἡ βασιλεία σου, καὶ εἰσέλθῃ μέσον τῆς χώρας ἡμῶν, ἐξερχόμεθα τῆς δουλώσεως τῆς βασιλείας σου, καὶ γινόμεθα μετὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν,
 153^{vP} ἐπειδὴ ἔχειν ἔχομεν μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων μάχας καὶ πολέμια, καὶ βιαζόμενοι κινῆσαι ἔχομεν φοσησάτον κατὰ τε τοῦ κάστρου Ἀρδανουτζίου καὶ τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ καὶ αὐτῆς τῆς Ῥωμανίας.» Ταῦτα καὶ διὰ τῶν¹³⁵

V 101 Κωνσταντῖνος *per comp.* P: Κώνστας edd. || 102 Ἀρδανουτζίου Moravcsik: Ἀδρανουτζίου P edd. || 103 παρήγγειλας V edd.: παρείγγειλας (*litteris ei in ras. scriptis*) P¹ || 104 Ἀρδανουτζίου Moravcsik: Ἀδρανουτζίου P edd. || 108/9 Κωνσταντῖνος *per comp.* P: Κώνστας edd. || 109

the patrician Constantine said to him: «Although the mandate contains nothing about the city of Ardanoutzin, none the less the monk Agapios came to the emperor and reported to him all that you had bidden him about the city of Ardanoutzin, and therefore *the emperor* has sent me, to take over the city and introduce into it the men I bring along with me.» And since, as has been said above, the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, was at feud with his son-in-law Kourkenios, he had made up his mind the rather to give his city to the emperor. The patrician Constantine had with him standards and he gave *one* to the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis. He put it upon a pike and gave it to the patrician Constantine, saying: «Set it up on top of the wall, that all may know that from this day this city belongs to the emperor.» The patrician Constantine did so and set the standard on top of the wall and made the customary salutations of the emperors of the Romans, so that it became known to all that the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, had made a present of the city of Ardanoutzin to the emperor. Now, the elder David made no offer of his country to the emperor, notwithstanding it marched with the county of Akampsis and with Mourgouli. So then the patrician Constantine reported to the emperor in two dispatches, the one containing the news of how he had honoured Kourkenios with the rank of magister, and of how Kourkenios had accepted the magistracy and saluted the emperor; and the other containing news about the city of Ardanoutzin, and of how he had taken it over from the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, and that the patrician Asotios and his son-in-law the magister Kourkenios had a great quarrel and feud with one another, and that the emperor should send succour for the garrisoning of this city, and that, should it be possible, the commander-in-chief should also come. When the Iberians, the magister Kourkenios and the magister David, brother of the curopalate Asotios, saw what was done, they wrote to the emperor: «If your imperial majesty approves this and enters our country, then we put off our servitude to your imperial majesty and make common cause with the Saracens, since we shall have fighting and hostilities with the Romans and shall, perforce, move an army against the city of Ardanoutzin and its country, and against Romania itself.» *The emperor*, having learnt

φλάμουλα P || 110 βαλὼν: λαβὼν V edd. || *post* κοντάριον *add.* περιέθηκε
καὶ V edd. || 111 Κωνσταντίνω *per comp.* P V Me: Κώνσταντι Ba Be || 113/4 Κωνσταντίνος *per comp.* P V Me: Κώνστας Ba Be || 114 φλάμουλλον
P || 116 Ἀδρανουτζίην edd. || 118 τούρμαν P || 119 Ἀκαμψή P || Μουργούλη
Be: Μούργουλη P || Κωνσταντίνος *per comp.* P V Me: Κώνστας Ba Be ||
121 Κουρκένιον edd. || 122 μαγιστράτον P || 123 Ἀρδανουτζίου Moravcsik:
Ἀδρανουτζίου P edd. || 124 καὶ Κισκάση V edd.: Κεκισκάση P || 126 τοῦ
om. edd. || 129 *post* Δαυίδ *add.* καὶ edd. || 134 φεσσάτον P || Ἀρδανουτζίου
Moravcsik: Ἀδρανουτζίου P edd. || 135 αὐτοῦ *com.* Moravcsik: αὐτῶν P edd. ||

γραμμαμάτων τῶν προρρηθέντων ἀρχόντων ἀναμαθὼν καὶ παρὰ τῶν ἀποσταλέντων παρ' αὐτῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀκηχοῦς καὶ πτοηθεὶς, μήπως γένωνται μετὰ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καὶ ἐξαγάγωσι τὰ τῆς Περσίας φροσᾶτα κατὰ Ῥωμανίας, ἡρνήσατο λέγων, ὅτι· «Οὐκ ἔγραψα τὸν πρωτοσπαθᾶριον Κωνσταντῖνον καὶ μαγγλαβίτην περὶ τοῦ τοιούτου κάστρου καὶ 140 τῆς χώρας αὐτοῦ τοῦ παραλαβεῖν αὐτήν, ἀλλ' ἐξ οἰκείας ὡς εἰπεῖν ἀφροσύνης τοῦτο ἐποίησεν.» Καὶ ταῦτα εἶπεν ὁ βασιλεὺς, τελείως ἀπο- 154P θεραπεῦσαι τούτους βουλόμενος, καὶ ἐδέξατο | ο ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθᾶριος Κωνσταντῖνος καὶ μαγγλαβίτης κέλευσιν μετὰ ὕβρεων καὶ ἀπειλῶν περιέχουσαν· «Τίς διωρίσατό σοι τοῦτο ποιῆσαι; Ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐξελθε 213Be ἐκ τοῦ κάστρου, καὶ ἀναλαβοῦ Ἀσώτιον, τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ τελευτῆ|ηκότος Ἀδρανασέ, τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, καὶ εἰσάγαγε αὐτὸν ἐνταῦθα, ὅπως τιμῆσωμεν αὐτὸν τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῦ ἀξίαν τοῦ κουροπαλάτου.» Ταῦτα δεξάμενος ὁ πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος, κατέλειπεν τὸν πατρίκιον Ἀσώτιον, τὸν καὶ Κισκάσην, εἰς τὸ ἑαυτοῦ κάστρον, τὸ Ἀρδανούτζιν, 150 κακείνος ἐξελθὼν ἀπῆει πρὸς τὸν Δαυίδ, τὸν μέγαν, καὶ ἐπιδέδωκεν αὐτῷ, ἣνπερ εἶχεν πρὸς αὐτὸν κέλευσιν, καὶ ὑπέστρεψεν, καὶ εἰσῆλθεν 154vP εἰς Ἰβηρίαν, καὶ εὗρεν ἐπὶ τὸ αὐτὸ | συνηθροισμένους τὸν τε μάγιστρον Κουρκένιον καὶ τὸν μάγιστρον Δαυίδ, τὸν ἀδελφὸν Ἀσωτίου τοῦ κουροπαλάτου. Καὶ ἤρξαντο φιλονικεῖν καὶ κατονειδίζειν τὸν πατρίκιον Κων- 155 σταντῖνον, λέγοντες, ὅτι· «Κρυπτὸς ἄνθρωπος καὶ κακὸς τυγχάνεις, ὅτι οὐκ ἐφανέρωσας ἡμᾶς περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Ἀρδανουτζίου, ὅτι μέλλεις τοῦτο κρατῆσαι» καὶ ὅτι· «Οὐ συμφέρει τοῦτο κρατεῖσθαι παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, ἡμεῖς γάρ καὶ περὶ τῆς τοιαύτης ὑποθέσεως ἀνηγάγομεν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ ἐδεξάμεθα μηδαμῶς γινώσκειν τὸν βασιλέα περὶ 160 τῆς ὑποθέσεως ταύτης, ἀλλὰ σὲ τοῦτο ποιῆσαι διὰ τὴν ἀγάπην τοῦ πατρικίου Ἀσωτίου, τοῦ καὶ Κισκάση.» Ὁ δὲ πατρίκιος Κωνσταντῖνος 155P προσαπολογησάμενος τούτοις | τὰ εἰκότα, ἀνελάβετο Ἀσώτιον, τὸν υἱὸν Ἀδρανασέ τοῦ κουροπαλάτου, καὶ εἰσήγαγεν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ πόλει, καὶ ἐτιμήθη παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως κουροπαλάτης. 165

Τί δὲ καὶ περὶ τῶν ἐν τισι καιροῖς μεταξύ Ῥωμαίων καὶ διαφόρων ἐθνῶν συμβεβηκότων; Ἄξιον γάρ, φιλτατε υἱέ, μηδὲ τὴν περὶ τούτων 214Be μνήμην διαφυγεῖν σε, ἐν' ἐν ὁμοίοις | καιροῖς, τῶν αὐτῶν προσπιπτόντων, εἴη σοι εὐχερὴς ἢ ἐπανάρθωσις διὰ τῆς προγνώσεως.

F 168 ἐν ὁμοίοις — 169 προγνώσεως: cf. Thueyd. I. 22, 4.

V 138 φροσᾶτα P || 140 Κωνσταντῖνον *per comp.* P Me: Κώνσταντα Ba Be || καί: τὸν edd. || 144 Κωνσταντῖνος *per comp.* P Me: Κώνστας Ba Be || 145 διορίσατο

of these things through the letters of the aforesaid princes and having heard them from their envoys, and being terrified lest perchance they might make common cause with the Saracens and lead out the armies of Persia against Romania, denied it, saying: «I did not write to the protospatharius Constantine, the lictor, about this city and its country, telling him to take it over, but out of his own folly, so to say, he has done this.» So spoke the emperor in his desire to give them all satisfaction; and this same protospatharius Constantine, the lictor, received a mandate couched in terms of insult and menace: «Who instructed you to do this? Come you, the rather, out of the city and take Asotios, son of the late Adranase the curopalate, and conduct him hither, so that we may honour him with his father's rank of curopalate.» On receipt of these orders, the patrician Constantine abandoned the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis, in his city of Ardanoutzin, and himself took leave and departed to the elder David and gave him the mandate which he had for him, and returned and entered Iberia and found, met together in one place, the magister Kourkenios and the magister David, brother of Asotios the curopalate. And they began to quarrel with and to heap abuse upon the patrician Constantine, saying: «You are a sly and evil fellow in not revealing to us, concerning the city of Ardanoutzin, that you were about to take possession of it», and, «It is not the emperor's policy to possess himself of it, for we ourselves reported to the emperor on this affair and have received a reply that the emperor knows nothing whatsoever about this affair, but that you have done this out of love of the patrician Asotios, called Kiskasis.» The patrician Constantine made a reasonable defence to these charges, and took Asotios, son of Adranase the curopalate, and conducted him to Constantinople, and he was honoured by the emperor with the dignity of curopalate.

But what of events which have taken place at various times between the Romans and different nations? For it is worth while, my dearest son, that record of these things also should not escape you, in order that, should the same things come about on similar occasions, you may by foreknowledge find a ready remedy.

P || 146 τετελευτηκότος edd. || 149 Κωνσταντίνος *per comp.* P Me: Κώνστας Ba Be || 150 καὶ Κισκάσην V¹ edd.: Κευκασήν P V || 'Αρδανούτζιν Moravcsik: 'Αδρανούτζιν P edd. || 151 ἀπῆει edd.: ἀπέει P || μέγαν edd.: μέγα P || 152 ἦν περ εἶχεν: ἦν περιεῖχε edd. || 155/6 Κωνσταντῖνον *per comp.* P Me: Κώνσταντα Ba Be || 156 τυγχάνεις Ba Be: τυγχάνης P || 157 'Αρδανουτζίου Moravcsik: 'Αδρανουτζίου P edd. || μέλλεις Be: μέλλης P || 158 Οὐ *om.* edd. || 162 καὶ Κισκάση V edd.: Κευκασήν P || Κωνσταντίνος *per comp.* P Me: Κώνστας Ba Be || 163 προσαιπολογισάμενος P || 164 'Αδρανασή edd. || 166 ΤΙ: 'Ισθι Ba Migne || 167 τὴν περί: περί τὴν Be.

47. Περὶ τῆς τῶν Κυπρίων μεταναστάσεως ἔχει
ἡ ἱστορία τὰδε.

Τῆς νήσου ἀλωθείσης ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν καὶ ἐπὶ ἑπτὰ ἔτεσιν
ἀουκίητος μεινάσης, καὶ τοῦ ἀρχιεπισκόπου Ἰωάννου μετὰ τοῦ λαοῦ
155^P αὐτοῦ πρὸς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν καταλαβόντος, ἐγένετο οἰκονομία παρὰ 5
τοῦ βασιλέως Ἰουστινιανοῦ ἐν τῇ ἀγίᾳ ἔκτῃ συνόδῳ τοῦ τὴν Κύζικον
παραλαβεῖν μετὰ τῶν ἐπισκόπων αὐτοῦ καὶ τοῦ λαοῦ τῆς νήσου καὶ
ποιεῖσθαι καὶ χειροτονίας, ἥνικα ἂν λείψῃ ἐπίσκοπος, πρὸς τὸ μὴ δια-
πесεῖν τὴν αὐθεντίαν καὶ τὰ δίκαια τῆς Κύπρου (καὶ γὰρ καὶ αὐτὸς
ὁ Ἰουστινιανὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς Κύπριος ἦν, καθὼς καὶ παρὰ τῶν παλαιῶν 10
Κυπρίων ὁ λόγος μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἐπεκράτησεν), ὥστε καὶ ὠρίσθῃ
ἐν τῇ ἀγίᾳ ἔκτῃ συνόδῳ χειροτονεῖν τὸν ἀρχιεπίσκοπον Κύπρου τὸν
τῆς Κυζίκου πρόεδρον, καθὼς ἐν τῷ λθ' κεφαλαίῳ τῆς αὐτῆς ἀγίας
ἑκτῆς συνόδου ἀναγέγραπται.

Μετὰ δὲ ἑπτὰ ἔτη θελήσει Θεοῦ ἐκινήθη ὁ βασιλεὺς πάλιν οἰκίσαι 15
156^P τὴν Κύπρον, καὶ ἀπέστειλεν | πρὸς τὸν ἀμερμουμνῆν τοῦ Βαγδάδ τρεῖς
τῶν ἐνδόξων Κυπρίων, αὐτόχθονας τῆς αὐτῆς νήσου τυγχάνοντας, τοὺς
λεγομένους Φαγγομεῖς, μετὰ καὶ βασιλικοῦ τινος ἀγγλίνου τε καὶ ἐνδό-
215^{Be} ξου, γράφας | τῷ ἀμερμουμνῇ, ἵνα τὸν ἐν Συρίᾳ ὄντα λαὸν τῆς νήσου
Κύπρου ἀπολύσῃ εἰς τὸν ἴδιον τόπον. Καὶ ὑπακούσας ὁ ἀμερμουμνῆς 20
τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως γραφῇ, ἀπέστειλε κατὰ πάσας τὰς Συρίας ἐνδόξους
Σαρακηνοὺς, καὶ ἐπεσώρευσεν πάντας τοὺς Κυπρίους καὶ διεπέρασεν
εἰς τὸν ἴδιον τόπον. Ἀπέστειλεν δὲ καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς βασιλικόν, καὶ διεπέρα-
σεν καὶ τοὺς ἐν Ῥωμανίᾳ οἰκῆσαντας, ἡγουν ἐν τε τῇ Κυζίκῳ καὶ τῷ
156^{vP} Κιβυρραιωτῶν καὶ τῷ Θρακησίῳ, καὶ ἐνφίσιθῃ | ἡ νῆσος. 25

48. Κεφαλαίον λθ' τῆς ἀγίας ἑκτῆς συνόδου, τῆς
ἐν τῷ Τρούλλῳ τοῦ μεγάλου παλατίου γεγонуίας.

Τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ καὶ συλλειτουργοῦ ἡμῶν Ἰωάννου, τοῦ τῆς Κυπρίων
νήσου προέδρου, ἅμα τῷ οἰκείῳ λαῷ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλησπόντιον ἐπαρχίαν —

F 48. 3 Τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ — 21 χειροτονηθήσεται: Canon XXXIX. VII. Conc.
ed. Mansi XI. c. 961. = ed. Ralles—Potles II. p. 395.

V 47. 1/2 ἔχει ἡ ἱστορία τὰδε: ἡ ἱστορία ὧδε πως ἔχει V || 4 ἀουκίητος
(*littera v. erasa*) P^x V edd.: ἀνουκίητος P || 9 καὶ γὰρ — 11 ἐπεκράτησεν
in parenthesi posuit Be || 10 ὁ² om. edd. || Κυπριος P || 11 ὠρίσθῃ P || 13 λθ'

47. Of the migration of the Cypriots the story is
as follows.

When the island was captured by the Saracens and remained uninhabited seven years, and the archbishop John came with his folk to the imperial city, a dispensation was made by the emperor Justinian in the holy sixth synod that he, with his bishops and the folk of the island, should take over Cyzicus and should make his appointments whenever a bishopric should fall vacant, to the end that the authority and rights of Cyprus might not be interrupted (for the emperor Justinian himself also was a Cypriot, as from the Cypriots of olden days the tale has persisted unto this day); and so it was ordained in the holy sixth synod that the archbishop of Cyprus should appoint the president of Cyzicus, as it is recorded in the 39th chapter of the same holy sixth synod.

But after seven years, by God's will the emperor was moved to populate Cyprus again, and he sent to the commander of the faithful of Bagdad three of the illustrious Cypriots, natives of the same island, called Phangoumeis, in charge of an imperial agent both intelligent and illustrious, and wrote to the commander of the faithful asking him to dismiss the folk of the island of Cyprus that were in Syria to their own place. The commander of the faithful obeyed the emperor's epistle, and sent illustrious Saracens to all the parts of Syria and gathered together all the Cypriots and carried them over to their own place. And the emperor, for his part, sent an imperial agent and carried over those who had settled in Romania, that is, at Cyzicus and in the Kibyrhaiote and Thrakesian *provinces*, and the island was populated.

48. Chapter 39 of the holy sixth synod, held in the
Domed Hall of the Great Palace.

Whereas our brother and fellow-minister John, president of the isle of the Cypriots, because of the barbarian assaults and to the end that they

Ba Be: τθ' P || 15 ἐπὶ edd.: ζ' P || οὐκίσαι Be: οὐκῆσαι P οὐκῆσαι V Me Ba || 16 ἀμερμουμένην P || 19 ἀμερμουμένη P || ἐν om. Be || 20 ἀπολύση Be: ἀπολύσει P || 21 πάσας τὰς Συρίας: πάσης τῆς Συρίας Be πάσας τῆς Συρίας Me Ba || 25 Κιβυρραιωτῶν edd.: Κιβυρρωτῶν P || Θρακησίαν corr. Moravesik: Θρακήσαν P Θρακησίω edd. || ἐνοικίσθη P.

48. 2 Τρουλλῶ P || γεγυνηκας: γενομένης V edd. || 3 Κυπρίων Mansi Ralles-Potles: Κυπρίου P Κύπρου Be Ralles-Potles in *apparatu* || 4 Ἑλλησπόντιον Meursius Be Mansi Ralles-Potles: Ἑλισπονδον P || 5 τὰς βαρβαρικάς

διὰ τε τὰς βαρβαρικὰς ἐφόδους, διὰ τε τὸ τῆς ἐθνικῆς ἐλευθερωθῆναι 5
 δουλείας καὶ καθαρῶς τοῖς σκήπτροις τοῦ Χριστιανικωτάτου κράτους
 ὑποταγῆναι — τῆς εἰρημένης μεταναστάντος νήσου προνοίᾳ τοῦ φιλαν-
 θρώπου Θεοῦ καὶ μόχθῳ τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ εὐσεβοῦς ἡμῶν βασιλέως,
 συνορῶμεν, ὥστε ἀκαινοτόμητα διαφυλαχθῆναι τὰ παρὰ τῶν ἐν Ἐφέσῃ
 157*P τὸ πρότερον συνελθόντων θεοφόρων πατέρων τῷ θρόνῳ τοῦ προ|γεγραμ- 10
 216Be μένου ἀνδρὸς παρασχεθέντα προνόμια, | ὥστε τὴν νέαν Ἰουστινιανού-
 πολιν τὸ δίκαιον ἔχειν τῆς Κωνσταντινέων πόλεως καὶ τὸν ἐπ' αὐτῇ
 καθιστάμενον θεοφιλέστατον ἐπίσκοπον πάντων προεδρεῖν <τῶν>
 τῆς Ἑλλησποντιῶν ἐπαρχίας καὶ ὑπὸ τῶν οἰκείων ἐπισκόπων χειροτο-
 νεῖσθαι κατὰ τὴν ἀρχαίαν συνήθειαν (τὰ γὰρ ἐν ἐκάστη ἐκκλησίᾳ ἔθι 15
 καὶ οἱ θεοφόροι ἡμῶν πατέρες παραφυλάττεσθαι διεγνώκασιν), τοῦ
 τῆς Κυζικηνῶν πόλεως ἐπισκόπου ὑποκειμένου τῷ προέδρῳ τῆς εἰρημέ-
 νης Ἰουστινιανουπόλεως, μιμήσει τῶν λοιπῶν ἀπάντων ἐπισκόπων τῶν
 ὑπὸ τὸν λεχθέντα θεοφιλέστατον πρόεδρον Ἰωάννην, ἀφ' οὗ, χρείας
 157*P καλούσης, καὶ ὁ τῆς αὐτῆς Κυζικηνῶν πόλεως ἐπίσκοπος | χειροτονη- 20
 θήσεται.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τὰ περὶ ἐθνῶν οὕτως ἀκριβῶς σοι διευτυπώσαμεν
 καὶ προεξεθέμεθα, δίκαιον μὴ μόνον περὶ τῶν ἐν τῇ καθ' ἡμᾶς πολιτείᾳ,
 ἀλλὰ καὶ περὶ πάσης τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀρχῆς κατὰ τινὰς χρόνους
 καινοτομηθέντων σαφῇ κεκτῆσθαι σε τὴν εἰδῆσιν, ὥς ἂν ἡ περὶ τῶν 25
 ἐγγυτέρω καὶ οἰκείων γνώσις πλέον τῶν ἄλλων ἐν σοὶ διαμένουσα ποθει-
 νότερον ἀναδείξῃ πρὸς τὸ ὑπῆκουον.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ Κωνσταντίνου, υἱοῦ Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ καὶ
 Πωγωνάτου καλουμένου, Καλλίνικός τις ἀπὸ Ἡλιουπόλεως Ῥωμαῖος
 217Be προσφυγών, τὸ διὰ τῶν σιφώνων ἐκφερόμενον πῦρ | ὑγρὸν κατεσκεύασεν, 30
 δι' οὗ καὶ τὸν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν στόλον ἐν Κυζικίῳ Ῥωμαῖοι καταφλέξαν-
 158*P τες | τὴν νίκην ἤραντο.

F 28 Ἰστέον — 32 ἤραντο: cf. Theoph. p. 354, 13—17; Leo Gramm., ed. Bonn. p. 160, 6—10; Theod. Melit., ed. Tafel p. 110, 14—18; Cedr., ed. Bonn. I. p. 765, 11—15; Zon. XIV. 20., ed. Bonn. III. p. 223, 16—224, 4.

might be free from slavery to the infidel and be subject unfeignedly to the sceptre of his most Christian majesty, hath with his own folk migrated from the said isle to the province of Hellespont, by the providence and mercy of God and by the labour of our Christ-loving and pious emperor; we do resolve: that the privileges accorded unto the throne of the aforesaid by the fathers inspired of God at their sometimes meeting in Ephesus shall be preserved uninjured; that the new Justinianoupolis shall have the right of the city of the Constantinians; and that the most pious bishop who is set over it shall preside over all the *bishops* of the province of Hellespont, and shall be appointed by his own bishops, according to the ancient custom (for our fathers inspired of God have resolved that the practices in each church are to be preserved), the bishop of the city of the Cyzicenes being subject to the president of the said Justinianoupolis in like manner as are all the rest of the bishops under the said most pious president John, by whom as need shall arise the bishop also of the same city of the Cyzicenes shall be appointed.

But now that we have thus accurately formulated and set before you the matters concerning foreign nations, it is right that you should be certainly informed about reforms introduced, not only in the affairs of our city, but at various times over all the empire of the Romans, to the end that knowledge of things closer at hand and domestic may abide with you preeminently and may show you more worthy of affection to your subjects.

In the time of Constantine, son of Constantine, called Pogonatus, one Callinicus fled from Helioupolis to the Romans and manufactured the liquid fire which is projected through the tubes, by the aid of which the Romans gutted the fleet of the Saracens at Cyzicus, and gained the victory.

V Ba Be Mansi Ralles-Potles: τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ P || ἔθνηκῃς edd. Mansi Ralles-Potles: ἔθνηκούς P || 6 τοῖς ἀκήπτροις edd. Mansi Ralles-Potles: τοῖς Κύπροις P || 7 μεταναστάντιος edd.: μεταστάντιος P Mansi Ralles-Potles in *apparatu* || 11 παρασχεθέντα προνόμια edd. Mansi Ralles-Potles: παρὰθέντα προνοία P || 12 Κωνσταντινέων πόλεως: Κωνσταντινουπόλεως Me Mansi Ralles-Potles || 13 τῶν add. Ba Be Mansi Ralles-Potles || 14 Ἑλλησποντίων Ba Be Mansi Ralles-Potles: Ἐλισπόντων P || 15 τὰ γὰρ — 16 διεγνώμασιν in *parenthesi* posuit Be || 15 ἔθνη Ba Be Mansi Ralles-Potles: ἔθνη P || 19 ἀφ': ὅφ' Mansi Ralles-Potles || 24 πάσης τῆς V edd.: πᾶσι τῇ P || ἀρχῆς V edd.: ἀρχῇ P || 28 Κωνσταντίνου² F: Κωνσταντίου P V F¹ edd. || 30 σιφόνων P || πῦρ ὕγρον: πῦρ θαλάσσιον Theoph.

49. Ὁ ζητῶν, ὅπως τῇ τῶν Πατρῶν ἐκκλησίᾳ οἱ
Σκλάβοι δουλεύειν καὶ ὑποκεῖσθαι ἐτάχθη-
σαν, ἐκ τῆς παρούσης μανθανέτω γραφῆς.

- Νικηφόρος τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα ἐκράτει, καὶ οὗτοι ἐν τῷ
θέματι ὄντες Πελοποννήσου ἀπόστασιν ἐνόησαντες, πρῶτον μὲν τὰς 5
τῶν γειτόνων οὐκίας τῶν Γραικῶν ἐξεπόρθουν καὶ εἰς ἀρπαγὴν ἐτίθεντο,
ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ κατὰ τῶν οὐκιστῶν τῆς τῶν Πατρῶν ὁρμήσαντες πόλεως,
τὰ πρὸ τοῦ τείχους πεδία κατέστρεφόν τε καὶ ταύτην ἐπολιόρκουν, μεθ'
ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες καὶ Ἀφρικίους Σαρακηνοὺς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ χρόνος ἱκανὸς
158^vP διῆλθεν, καὶ σπάνις τῶν ἀναγκαίων τοῖς ἐνδοθεν τοῦ τείχους | γίνεσθαι 10
ἤρξατο, ὕδατός τε καὶ τροφῶν, βουλὴν βουλευόνται εἰς συμβιβάσεις τε
ἐλθεῖν καὶ λόγους ἀπαθείας λαβεῖν καὶ τηνικαῦτα τὴν πόλιν ὑποτάξαι
αὐτούς. Ἐπεὶ οὖν ὁ τηνικαῦτα στρατηγὸς ὑπῆρχεν πρὸς τὴν ἄκραν τοῦ
θέματος ἐν κάστρῳ Κορίνθου, καὶ προσδοκία ἦν τοῦ παραγενέσθαι
αὐτὸν καὶ καταπολεμῆσαι τὸ ἔθνος τῶν Σκλαβήνων, ὥς καὶ πρώην 15
καταμνησθέντος αὐτοῦ περὶ τῆς καταδρομῆς αὐτῶν παρὰ τῶν ἀρχόν-
των, ἐβουλευσάντο οἱ τοῦ κάστρου οὐκιστοὶ πρότερον ἀποσταλῆναι
218^{Be} σκοπὸν εἰς τὰ ἀνατολικώτερα τῶν ὁρέων καὶ ἀποσκοπεῦσαι καὶ γινῶναι,
εἰ ἄρα παραγίνεται ὁ στρατηγός, παραγγεῖλαντες καὶ σημεῖον δεδωκότες
159^vP τῷ ἀποσταλμένῳ, ἵνα, εἰ | μὲν ἴδοι ἐρχόμενον τὸν στρατηγόν, ἐν τῇ 20
ὑποστροφῇ αὐτοῦ κλίνῃ τὸ φλάμμουλον, ὅπως γινῶσιν τὴν ἔλευσιν τοῦ
στρατηγοῦ, εἰ δὲ μὴ γε, κατέχῃν ὀρθὸν τὸ φλάμμουλον πρὸς τὸ μὴ
ἔχειν αὐτοὺς προσδοκίαν (τοῦ) τοῦ λοιποῦ παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν.
Τοῦ οὖν σκοποῦ ἀπελθόντος καὶ μαθόντος μὴ παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν,
ὑπέστρεφεν ὀρθὸν κατέχων τὸ φλάμμουλον. Καὶ δὴ τοῦ Θεοῦ εὐδοκί- 25
αντος διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ ἁγίου ἀποστόλου Ἀνδρέου, τοῦ ἱπποῦ ὀλισθή-
σαντος καὶ τοῦ ἐπιβάτου ὑποπεπτωκότος, ἔκλινεν τὸ φλάμμουλον, καὶ
οἱ τοῦ κάστρου οὐκιστοὶ ἰδόντες τὸ γεγονός σημεῖον καὶ νομίσαντες
ἐξ ἁπαντος παραγίνεσθαι τὸν στρατηγόν, ἤνοιξαν τὰς πύλας τοῦ κάστρου,
159^vP καὶ ἐξῆλθον | θαρσαλέοι κατὰ τῶν Σκλαβήνων, καὶ εἶδον τὸν πρωτόκλη- 30
τον ἀπόστολον ὀφθαλμοφανῶς ἱππῶ ἐπικαθήμενον καὶ δρόμῳ ἐπερχό-
μενον κατὰ τῶν βαρβάρων· καὶ δὴ τρέψας τούτους κατὰ κράτος καὶ
διασκορπίσας καὶ ἀπελάσας πόρρῳ τοῦ κάστρου φυγάδας ἐποίησεν. Οἱ
δὲ βάρβαροι ἰδόντες καὶ καταπλαγέντες καὶ ἐκθαμβοὶ γεγονότες ἐπὶ
τῇ κατ' αὐτῶν κραταίᾳ ἐπελεύσει τοῦ ἀηττήτου καὶ ἀκαταγωνίστου 35
ὀπλίτου καὶ στρατηγοῦ καὶ ταξιάρχου καὶ τροπαιοῦχου καὶ νικηφόρου

F 49. 4 Νικηφόρος — 75 αὐτοῦς: cf. *Synodalis epistola patriarchae Nicolai III Grammatici*, ed. Migne, P. G. 119. c. 877 D—880 A. = ed. Ralles—Potles, V. p. 72.

49. He who enquires how the Slavs were put in servitude and subjection to the church of Patras, let him learn from the present passage.

Nicephorus was holding the sceptre of the Romans, and these *Slavs* who were in the province of Peloponnesus decided to revolt, and first proceeded to sack the dwellings of their neighbours, the Greeks, and gave them up to rapine, and next they moved against the inhabitants of the city of Patras and ravaged the plains before its wall and laid siege to itself, having with them African Saracens also. And when a considerable time had gone by and there began to be dearth of necessities, both water and foodstuffs, among those within the wall, they took counsel among themselves to come to terms of composition and to obtain promises of immunity and then to surrender the city to their yoke. And so, as the then military governor was at the extremity of the province in the city of Corinth, and it had been expected that he would come and defeat the nation of the Slavenes, since he had received early intelligence of their assault from the nobles, the inhabitants of the city resolved that a scout should first be sent to the eastern side of the mountains and spy out and discover if the military governor were in fact coming, and they instructed and gave a signal to their envoy, that if he were to see the military governor coming, he should on his way back dip the standard, so they might know of the coming of the military governor, but if not, to hold the standard erect, so they might for the future not expect the military governor to come. So the scout went off and found that the military governor was not coming, and began to come back, holding the standard erect. But, as it pleased God through the intercession of the holy apostle Andrew, the horse slipped and the rider fell off and dipped the standard, and the inhabitants of the city, seeing the signal given and believing that the military governor was coming undoubtedly, opened the gates of the city and sallied forth bravely against the Slavenes; and they saw the first-called apostle, revealed to their eyes, mounted upon a horse and charging upon the barbarians, yea, and he totally routed them and scattered them and drave them far off from the city and made them to flee. And the barbarians saw and were amazed and confounded at the violent assault upon them of the invincible and unconquerable warrior and captain and marshal, the triumphant and victorious first-called apostle Andrew,

V 49. 2 Σκλαβοὶ edd. || 5 τὰς V edd.: τοῦ P || 8 κατέστρεφόν τε: κατεστρέ-
 φοντο V edd. || 9 ἀντὶ Σαρακηνούς add. καὶ edd. || 13 αὐτοῖς V edd. || 15
 Σκλαβηγῶν Be Σκλαβινῶν Me Ba || 18 σκοπὸν edd.: σκοποῦς P || 20 ἀπεσταλ-
 μένῳ edd. || 21 κλῖνῃ Ba Be; κλῖναι P || φλάμουλον P || 22 φλάμουλον P || 23
 τοῦ add. Moravcsik || 25 φλάμουλον P || 27 φλάμουλον P || 28 ἰδόντες edd.:
 ἰδότες P || 30 Σκλαβηγῶν edd. || 34 ἰδόντες V edd.: εἰδότες P || καὶ² om. edd. ||

πρωτοκλήτου ἀποστόλου Ἀνδρέου, ἐταράχθησαν, ἐσαλεύθησαν, τρόμος ἐπελάβετο αὐτούς, καὶ προσέφυγον εἰς τὸν πάνσεπτον ναὸν αὐτοῦ.

- 160^{FP} Τοῦ οὖν στρατηγοῦ μετὰ τὸ τρόπαιον ἐν τῇ τρίτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταλα-
 219Be βόντος καὶ τὴν νίκην τοῦ ἀποστόλου μα|θόντος, κατεμήνυσεν τῷ βασι- 40
 λεῖ Νικηφόρῳ τὴν τε ἔφοδον τῶν Σκλαβήνων καὶ τὴν προνομὴν καὶ
 αἰχμαλωσίαν καὶ ἀφανισμόν καὶ τὴν λεηλασίαν καὶ τάλλα δεινά, ὅσα
 καταδραμόντες ἐποίησαν εἰς τὰ μέρη τῆς Ἀχαΐας, ἔτι δὲ καὶ τὴν πολυήμε-
 ρον πολιορκίαν καὶ τὴν κατὰ τῶν οἰκητόρων τοῦ κάστρου διηνεκὴ ἐπίθε-
 σιν, ὡσαύτως καὶ τὴν ἐπισκοπὴν καὶ συμμαχίαν καὶ τὸ τρόπαιον καὶ 45
 τὴν κατὰ κράτος νίκην, τὴν γενομένην παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστόλου, καὶ ὡς
 160^{VP} ὀφθαλμοφανῶς ὠράθη ἐπιτρέχων καὶ διώκων | τοὺς πολεμίους κατὰ
 νῶτον καὶ τροπούμενος αὐτούς, ὡς καὶ αὐτοὺς τοὺς βαρβάρους αἰσθῆσθαι
 τὴν τοῦ ἀποστόλου πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐπισκοπὴν καὶ συμμαχίαν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο
 προσφυγεῖν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸν σεβάσμιον ναὸν αὐτοῦ. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ταῦτα 50
 ἀναμαθὼν παρεκελεύσατο οὕτως· «Ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ τρόπαιον καὶ ἡ κατὰ
 κράτος νίκη παρὰ τοῦ ἀποστόλου γέγονεν, ὀφειλόμενον καθέστηκεν
 πᾶσαν τὴν ἐκστρατείαν τῶν πολεμίων καὶ τὰ λάφυρα καὶ τὰ σκῦλα
 αὐτῷ ἀποδοθῆναι.» Καὶ διωρίσατο αὐτοὺς τε τοὺς πολεμίους μετὰ
 πάσης τῆς φαμίλιας καὶ συγγενείας καὶ πάντων τῶν προσηκόντων 55
 αὐτοῖς, ἔτι δὲ καὶ πάσης τῆς ὑπάρξεως αὐτῶν, ἀφορισθῆναι εἰς τὸν ναὸν
 161^{FP} τοῦ | ἀποστόλου ἐν τῇ μητροπόλει Πατρῶν, ἐν ᾗ ὁ πρωτόκλητος καὶ
 μαθητὴς τοῦ Χριστοῦ τὸν τῆς ἀθλήσεως διήνυσεν ἀγῶνα, δεδωκώς
 περὶ αὐτῶν καὶ σιγίλλιον ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ μητροπόλει.

- Ταῦτα οἱ πρεσβύτεροι καὶ ἀρχαιότεροι ἀνήγγειλαν, παραδόντες 60
 220Be ἀγράφως χρόνῳ τε καὶ βίῳ τοῖς ὕστερον, ὅπως | ἂν κατὰ τὸν προφῆτην
 γνῶ γενεὰ ἡ ἐρχομένη τὸ γεγονός θαῦμα διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ ἀποστόλου,
 καὶ ἀναστήσονται καὶ ἀπαγγελοῦσιν αὐτὸ τοῖς υἱοῖς αὐτῶν, ἵνα μὴ
 ἐπιλάθωνται τῶν εὐεργεσιῶν, ὧν ἐποίησεν ὁ Θεὸς διὰ πρεσβειῶν τοῦ
 ἀποστόλου. Ἐκτοτε δὲ οἱ ἀφορισθέντες Σκλαβῆνοι ἐν τῇ μητροπόλει 65
 καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς βασιλικούς καὶ πάντας τοὺς ἐξ ἐθνῶν
 161^{VP} ἀποστελλομένους πρέσβεις | ὡς ὁμήρους διατρέφουσιν, ἔχοντες ἰδίους
 καὶ τραπεζοποιοὺς καὶ μαγείρους καὶ πάντας τοὺς παρασκευάζοντας
 τὰ τῆς τραπέζης βρώματα, τῆς μητροπόλεως εἰς ταῦτα μὴδὲν καινοτο-
 μουμένης, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ οἱ Σκλαβῆνοι ἀπὸ διανομῆς καὶ συνδοσίας τῆς 70
 ὁμάδος αὐτῶν ἐπισυνάγουσιν τὰς τοιαύτας χρείας. Ἐποίησεν δὲ καὶ
 σιγίλλιον Λέων, ὁ ἀείμνηστος καὶ σοφώτατος βασιλεὺς, λεπτομερῶς

and were thrown into disorder and shaken, and trembling gat hold upon them and they fled for refuge in his most sacred temple.

Now when the military governor arrived on the third day after the rout and learnt of the victory of the apostle, he reported to the emperor Nicephorus upon the onset of the Slavenes and the foraging and enslaving and destroying and the plundering and all the other horrors which in their incursion they had inflicted on the regions of Achaea; and also upon the siege of many days and the sustained assault on the inhabitants of the city; and in like manner upon the visitation and aid in battle and the rout and the total victory won by the apostle, and how he had been seen revealed to their eyes charging upon and pursuing the rear of the foe and routing them, so that the barbarians themselves were aware that the apostle had visited us and was aiding us in the battle, and therefore had fled for refuge to his hallowed temple. The emperor, learning of these things, gave orders to this effect: «Since the rout and total victory were achieved by the apostle, it is our duty to render to him the whole expeditionary force of the foe and the booty and the spoils.» And he ordained that the foemen themselves, with all their families and relations and all who belonged to them, and all their property as well, should be set apart for the temple of the apostle in the metropolis of Patras, where the first-called and disciple of Christ had performed this exploit in the contest; and he issued a bull concerning these matters in that same metropolis.

These things the older and more ancient narrated, handing them down in unwritten tradition to them who lived in the after time, so that, as the prophet says, the coming generation might know the miracle wrought through the intercession of the apostle, and might rise up and declare it to their sons, that they might not forget the benefits done by God through the intercession of the apostle. And from that time the Slavenes who were set apart in the metropolis have maintained like hostages the military governors and the imperial agents and all the envoys sent from foreign nations, and they have their own waiters and cooks and servants of all kinds who prepare foods for the table; and the metropolis interferes in none of these matters, for the Slavenes themselves collect the necessary funds by apportionment and subscription among their unit. And Leo, too, the ever-memorable and most wise emperor, issued a bull containing a detailed

V 39 τρίτη edd.: γ' P || 41 Σκλαβηνῶν edd. || 45 τὸ om. edd. || 47 ὁράθη P || 48 ὥς: ὥστε edd. || αἰσθεσθαι V edd.: αἰθεσθαι P αἰθεσθαι coní. Jenkins || 50 αὐτοῦ ναόν V edd. || 53 ἐκστρατιῶν P || 55 φαιμῆλιας P || 59 συγκίλλον Be || αὐτῇ] *litteram ἤ in ras. scr. P* || 63 ἀναστήσονται F Ba Be: ἀναστήσωνται P || 64 ὧν: & V || 65 Σκλαβηνοὶ edd. || 70 Σκλαβηνοὶ edd. || 72 σοφάτατος: αὐτοιδίμος edd.

περίεχον τό, τί ὀφείλουσιν παρέχειν οἱ αὐτοὶ ἐναπογραφόμενοι τῷ μητρο-
πολίτῃ, καὶ μὴ ἀπαργυρίζεσθαι παρ' αὐτοῦ ἢ ἄλλως πως κατ' ἐπίνοιαν
ἄδικον ζημιοῦσθαι αὐτούς.

75

50. Περὶ τῶν ἐν τῷ θέματι Πελοποννήσου Σκλάβ-
βων, τῶν τε Μηλιγγῶν καὶ Ἐξεριτῶν καὶ περὶ
162P τῶν τελοουμένων παρ' | αὐτῶν πάκτων, ὁμοίως
καὶ περὶ τῶν οἰκητόρων τοῦ κάστρου Μαΐνης καὶ
τοῦ παρ' αὐτῶν τελοουμένου πάκτου.

5

Ἰστέον, ὅτι οἱ τοῦ θέματος Πελοποννήσου Σκλάβοι ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις
221Be τοῦ βασιλέως Θεοφίλου καὶ τοῦ υἱοῦ αὐτοῦ, | Μιχαήλ, ἀποστατήσαντες
γεγόνασιν ἰδιόρρυθμοι, λεηλασίας καὶ ἀνδραποδισμούς καὶ πραιδας καὶ
ἐμπρησμούς καὶ κλοπὰς ἐργαζόμενοι. Ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Μιχαήλ, τοῦ
υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου, ἀπεστάλη ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Θεόκτιστος, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην 10
ὁ τῶν Βρυενίων, στρατηγὸς ἐν τῷ θέματι Πελοποννήσου μετὰ δυνά-
μεως καὶ ἰσχύος πολλῆς, ἥγουν Θρακῶν καὶ Μακεδόνων καὶ τῶν λοιπῶν
162P δυτικῶν θεμάτων τοῦ πολεμῆ|σαι καὶ καθυποτάξει αὐτούς. Καὶ πάντας
μὲν τοὺς Σκλάβους καὶ λοιποὺς ἀνυποτάκτους τοῦ θέματος Πελοπον-
νήσου ὑπέταξε καὶ ἐχειρώσατο, μόνοι δὲ οἱ Ἐξερῖται καὶ οἱ Μηλιγγοὶ 15
κατελείφθησαν ὑπὸ τὴν Λακεδαιμονίαν καὶ τὸ Ἔλος. Καὶ ἐπειδὴ ὅρος
ἐστὶν ἐκεῖσε μέγα καὶ ὑψηλότατον, καλούμενον Πενταδάκτυλος, καὶ
εἰσέρχεται ὥσπερ τράχηλος εἰς τὴν θάλασσαν ἕως πολλοῦ διαστήματος,
διὰ δὲ τὸ εἶναι τὸν τόπον δύσκολον κατάρκησαν εἰς τὰς πλευράς τοῦ
αὐτοῦ ὄρους, ἐν μὲν τῷ ἐνὶ μέρει οἱ Μηλιγγοί, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐτέρῳ μέρει 20
οἱ Ἐξερῖται. Καὶ ὁ μὲν προρρηθεὶς πρωτοσπαθάριος Θεόκτιστος καὶ
στρατηγὸς Πελοποννήσου δυνηθεὶς καὶ τούτους καθυποτάξει, ἐξέθετο
163P τοῖς μὲν Μηλιγγοῖς νομίσματα ξ', | τοῖς δὲ Ἐξερῖταις νομίσματα τ',
ἅτινα καὶ ἐτέλουν, αὐτοῦ στρατηγοῦντος, καθὼς παρὰ τῶν ἐντοπιῶν
διασώζεται μέχρι τῆς σήμερον ἡ τοιαύτη φήμη. Ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας 25
τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ, τοῦ βασιλέως, στρατηγῶν ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος
222Be Ἰωάννης ὁ Πρωτεύων εἰς | τὸ αὐτὸ θέμα ἀνήγαγεν πρὸς τὸν αὐτὸν
κύριν Ῥωμανὸν περὶ τε τῶν Μηλιγγῶν καὶ τῶν Ἐξεριτῶν, ὅτι ἀποστατή-
σαντες οὐ πείθονται οὔτε τῷ στρατηγῷ, οὔτε βασιλικῇ κελεύσει ὑπέικου-
σιν, ἀλλ' εἰσὶν ὥσπερ αὐτόνομοι καὶ αὐτοδέσποτοι, καὶ οὔτε παρὰ τοῦ 30
στρατηγοῦ δέχονται ἄρχοντα, οὔτε συνταξιδεῦσιν αὐτῷ ὑπέικουσιν,
οὔτε ἄλλην τοῦ δημοσίου δουλείαν ἐκτελεῖν πείθονται. Καὶ μέχρι τοῦ

account of what these same persons who are ascribed to the metropolitan are liable to provide, and forbidding him to exploit them or in any other way to hurt them unjustly at his whim.

50. Of the Slavs in the province of Peloponnesus, the Milingoi and Ezeritai, and of the tribute paid by them, and in like manner of the inhabitants of the city of Maïna and of the tribute paid by them.

The Slavs of the province of Peloponnesus revolted in the days of the emperor Theophilus and his son Michael, and became independent, and plundered and enslaved and pillaged and burnt and stole. And in the reign of Michael, the son of Theophilus, the protospatharius Theoctistus, surnamed Bryennius, was sent as military governor to the province of Peloponnesus with a great power and force, viz., of Thracians and Macedonians and the rest of the western provinces, to war upon and subdue them. He subdued and mastered all the Slavs and other insubordinates of the province of Peloponnesus, and only the Ezeritai and the Milingoi were left, towards Lacedaemonia and Helos. And since there is there a great and very high mountain called Pentadaktylos, which runs like a neck a long distance out into the sea, and because the place is difficult, they settled upon the flanks of this same mountain, the Milingoi in one part, and in the other part the Ezeritai. The aforesaid protospatharius Theoctistus, the military governor of Peloponnesus, having succeeded in reducing these too, fixed a tribute of 60 nomismata for the Milingoi, and of 300 nomismata for the Ezeritai, and this they used to pay while he was military governor, as this report of it is preserved to this day by the local inhabitants. But in the reign of the lord Romanus the emperor, the protospatharius John Proteunon, military governor in this same province, reported to the same lord Romanus concerning both Milingoi and Ezeritai, that they had rebelled and neither obeyed the military governor nor regarded the imperial mandate, but were practically independent and self-governing, and neither accepted a head man at the hand of the military governor, nor heeded orders for military service under him, nor would pay other dues to the treasury. While his

καστροῦ *add.* τοῦ *edd.* || Μαίνης *scr.* Moravcsik: Μαινῆς P Μαινῆς *edd.* || 5 τοῦ παρ' αὐτῶν τελουμένου πάκτου: τῶν παρ' αὐτῶν τελουμένων πάκτων *edd.* || 11 Βρομενίων P || 15 Ἐξερεῖται P || Μιληγγοὶ P *edd.* || 16 Ἑλος P || 19 δὲ *om.* Be || 20 Μιληγγοὶ P *edd.* || 20 μέρεα *om.* *edd.* || 22 ἐξέθετο (*etiam* Bandurius): ἐπέθετο *edd.* || 23 Μιληγγοῖς P Ba Be Μιληγγοὶ *mg.* P^s || 27 εἰς τὸ αὐτό: ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ Be || θέμα V Me: θέματι P Ba Be || 28 κύρην P || Μηλίγγων P Μιληγγῶν Ba Be ||

- 163^vP ἀνελθεῖν τὴν ἀναφορὰν αὐτοῦ | συνέβη προβληθῆναι τὸν πρωτοσπαθάρ-
ριον Κρινίτην τὸν Ἀροτράν στρατηγὸν ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ, τῆς δὲ ἀνα-
φορᾶς τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου καὶ στρατηγοῦ Πελοποννήσου 35
τοῦ Πρωτεύοντος καταλαβούσης καὶ κατ' ἐνώπιον τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦ
κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ἀναγνωσθείσης καὶ περιεχούσης τὴν ἀποστασίαν τῶν
προρρηθέντων Σκλάβων καὶ τὴν πρὸς τὰς βασιλικὰς προστάξεις δυσπεί-
θειαν ἢ μᾶλλον ἀπείθειαν, ἐδέξατο ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάρριος Κρινίτης,
ἵνα, ἐπεὶ εἰς τοσαύτην ἤλασαν ἀποστασίαν καὶ ἀπείθειαν, ἐκστρατεύσῃ 40
κατ' αὐτῶν καὶ καταπολεμήσῃ καὶ ὑποτάξῃ καὶ ἐξολοθρεύσῃ αὐτούς.
Ἀρξάμενος οὖν πολεμεῖν αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ μηνὸς Μαρτίου καὶ κατακαύσας
- 164^rP τὰ θέρη αὐτῶν καὶ ληϊσάμενος πᾶσαν τὴν | γῆν αὐτῶν, ἔσχεν αὐτοὺς
ἀνθισταμένους καὶ ἀντέχοντας μέχρι μηνὸς Νοεμβρίου, ἀπὸ τότε δὲ
ιδόντες τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἐξολόθρευσιν, ἤτήσαντο λόγον καὶ τοῦ ὑποταγῆναι 45
αὐτοὺς καὶ τυχεῖν συμπαθείας, ὑπὲρ ὧν πρῶην ἐπλημμέλησαν. Ὁ οὖν
- 223^{Be} προρρηθεὶς πρωτοσπαθάρριος | καὶ στρατηγὸς ὁ Κρινίτης ἐξέθετο αὐτοῖς
πάντα πλείονα, ὧν ἐτέλουν, τοῖς μὲν Μηλιγγοῖς ἀπὸ τῶν ξ' νομισμάτων,
ὧν πρότερον ἐτέλουν, νομίσματα φμ', ὥς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν πάκτον αὐτῶν
νομίσματα χ', τοῖς δὲ Ἑξερῖταις ἀπὸ τῶν τ' νομισμάτων, ὧν πρότερον 50
ἐτέλουν, ἕτερα νομίσματα τ', ὥς εἶναι τὸ πᾶν πάκτον αὐτῶν νομίσματα
χ', ἅτινα καὶ ἀπῆτησεν καὶ εἰσεκόμισεν ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάρριος Κρινί-
της ἐν τῷ θεοφυλάκτῳ κοιτῶνι. Τοῦ δὲ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Κρινίτου ἐν
- 164^vP τῷ θέματι μετατεθέντος | Ἑλλάδος, καὶ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Βάρδα
τοῦ Πλατυπόδη προβληθέντος στρατηγοῦ ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ, καὶ τῆς 55
ἀταξίας γεναμένης καὶ στάσεως παρὰ αὐτοῦ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
Βάρδα τοῦ Πλατυπόδη καὶ τῶν ὁμοφρόνων αὐτοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίων καὶ
ἀρχόντων, καὶ τὸν πρωτοσπαθάρριον Λέοντα τὸν Ἀγέλαστον ἀποδιωξάν-
των ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος, καὶ εὐθέως γενομένης καὶ τῆς τῶν Σκλαβησιάνων
ἐπιθέσεως κατὰ τοῦ αὐτοῦ θέματος, ἀπέστειλαν οἱ αὐτοὶ Σκλάβοι, 60
οἱ τε Μηλιγγοὶ καὶ οἱ Ἑξερῖται, πρὸς τὸν κύριον Ῥωμανόν, τὸν βασιλέα,
ἐξαίτουμένοι καὶ παρακαλοῦντες τοῦ συμπαθηθῆναι αὐτοῖς τὰς προσθή-
κας τῶν πάκτων καὶ τελεῖν αὐτούς, καθὼς καὶ πρότερον ἐτέλουν.
Ἐπεὶ δέ, καθὼς προεῖρηται, εἰσῆλθον οἱ Σκλαβησιάνοι ἐν τῷ θέματι
- 165^rP | Πελοποννήσου, δεδιὼς ὁ βασιλεὺς, ἵνα μὴ καὶ αὐτοὶ προστεθέντες τοῖς 65
Σθλάβοις παντελῇ ἐξολοθρεύσιν τοῦ αὐτοῦ θέματος ἐργάσωνται, ἐποίη-
σεν αὐτοῖς χρυσοβούλλιον τοῦ τελεῖν αὐτοὺς πάκτα, ὥς καὶ πρότερον,
- 224^{Be} | τοὺς μὲν Μηλιγγοὺς ξ' νομίσματα, τοὺς δὲ Ἑξερῖτας <νομίσματα> τ'.
Αὕτη οὖν ἐστὶν ἡ αἰτία τῆς προσθήκης καὶ τῆς ἐκκοπῆς τῶν πάκτων
τῶν τε Μηλιγγῶν καὶ τῶν Ἑξερῖτῶν.

report was on its way, it happened that the protospatharius Krinitis Arotas was appointed military governor in Peloponnesus, and when the report of the protospatharius John Proteuon, military governor of Peloponnesus, arrived and was read in the presence of the emperor, the lord Romanus, and was *found* to contain *news* of the revolt of the aforesaid Slavs and of their reluctant obedience, or, more properly, their disobedience to the imperial commands, this same protospatharius Krinitis was instructed, since they had gone so far in revolt and disobedience, to march against them and defeat and subdue and exterminate them. And so, beginning his war upon them in the month of March and burning down their crops and plundering all their land, he kept them to defence and resistance until the month of November, and then, seeing that they were being exterminated, they begged to negotiate for their submission and pardon for their past misdoings. And so the aforesaid protospatharius Krinitis, the military governor, fixed upon them tributes greater than they had been paying: upon the Milingoi 540 nomismata on top of the 60 nomismata which they had paid before, so that their total tribute was 600 nomismata, and upon the Ezeritai another 300 nomismata on top of the 300 nomismata they had paid before, so that their total tribute was 600 nomismata, which this same protospatharius Krinitis exacted and conveyed to the *Treasury of the Bedchamber* guarded of God. But when the protospatharius Krinitis was transferred to the province of Hellas and the protospatharius Bardas Platypodis was appointed military governor in Peloponnesus, and disorder and strife were aroused by this same protospatharius Bardas Platypodis and by protospatharii and nobles who took his part, and they expelled the protospatharius Leo Agelastos from the province, and straight away the Slavians made an attack upon this same province, then these same Slavs, both Milingoi and Ezeritai, sent to the lord Romanus, the emperor, requesting and praying that the increments to their tribute should be forgiven them, and that they should pay what they had paid before. And since, as has been said above, the Slavians had entered the province of Peloponnesus, the emperor, fearing lest they might join forces with the Slavs and bring about the total destruction of this same province, issued for *the latter* a golden bull providing that they should pay as before, the Milingoi 60 nomismata, and the Ezeritai 300 nomismata. Such, then, is the cause of the increase of the tribute of the Milingoi and Ezeritai, and of its remission.

V 38 τὴν om. edd. || 41 καταπολεμήσει Ba Be: καταπολεμήσει P καταπολεμήσει V || ὑποτάξει Ba Be: ὑποτάξει P || ἐξολοθρεύσει V || 42 αὐτοὺς: αὐτὸς Me || 45 καὶ om. V edd. || 46 αὐτοὺς scr. Moravosik: αὐτοῖς P(?) V edd.: ὡς (inter τ et ε duabus litteris erasis) P || 48 Μιληγγοῖς Ba Be || 55 Πλατουπόδῃ P || 56 γενομένης edd. || 59 Σκλαβισιάνων P: Σκλαβησιανῶν edd. || 61 Μιληγγοὶ edd. || κύρην P || 64 Ἐπει δέ: Ἐπειδὴ Migne || Σκλαβισιάνοι P: Σκλαβησιανοὶ edd. || 66 Σκλάβοις edd. || 67 τοῦ τελεῖν αὐτοὺς: ἕνα τελῶσι τὰ V edd. || 68 Μιληγγοῦς edd. || νομίσματα² add. edd. || 70 τε om. edd. || Μιληγγῶν edd. || Ἐξερῖτων P ||

Ἰστέον, ὅτι οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Μαίνης οὐκ ἴσχυοντες οὐκ εἰσὶν ἀπὸ τῆς γενεᾶς τῶν προρρηθέντων Σκλάβων, ἀλλ' ἐκ τῶν παλαιότερων Ῥωμαίων, οἱ καὶ μέχρι τοῦ νῦν παρὰ τῶν ἐντοπίων Ἑλληνας προσαγορεύονται διὰ τὸ ἐν τοῖς προπαλαιοῖς χρόνοις εἰδωλολάτραις εἶναι καὶ προσκυνητάς τῶν εἰδώλων κατὰ τοὺς παλαιούς Ἑλληνας, οἵτινες ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας 75

165^{VP} τοῦ αὐδιδίμου Βασιλείου | βαπτισθέντες Χριστιανοὶ γεγόνασιν. Ὁ δὲ τύπος, ἐν ᾧ οἰκοῦσιν, ἐστὶν ἄνδρος καὶ ἀπρόσοδος, ἐλαιοφόρος δέ, ὅθεν καὶ τὴν παραμυθίαν ἔχουσιν. Διάκειται δὲ ὁ τοιοῦτος τύπος εἰς ἄκραν τοῦ Μαλέα, ἡγουν ἐκεῖθεν τοῦ Ἐξερῶ πρὸς τὴν παραθαλασσίαν. Διὰ δὲ τὸ τελείως ὑποτεταγμένους εἶναι αὐτοὺς καὶ ἄρχοντα παρὰ τοῦ στρα- 80 τηγοῦ δέχεσθαι καὶ πειθαρχεῖν καὶ ὑπεῖκειν ταῖς τοῦ στρατηγοῦ προστάξεσιν παρέχουσιν πάντον ἐκ παλαιτάτου χρόνου νομίσματα υ'.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ Καππαδοκίας στρατηγὶς τὸ παλαιὸν τοῦρμα ἦν τῆς τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν στρατηγίδος.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ Κεφαλληνίας στρατηγὶς, ἡγουν τὰ νησία, τοῦρμα 85 ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν τῆς στρατηγίδος Λαγουβαρδίας, ἐπὶ δὲ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, γέγονεν στρατηγίς.

226B^o
166^{FP} Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ Κα|λαβρίας στρατηγὶς δουκᾶτον ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν τῆς στρατηγίδος Σικελίας.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ στρατηγὶς τοῦρμα ἦν τὸ παλαιὸν 90 τῆς τῶν Ἀρμενιάκων στρατηγίδος.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων εἰς τὸ Καππαδοκῶν θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία Βάρετας, ἡ τοποτηρησία Βαλβαδῶνας, ἡ τοποτηρησία Ἀσπονας καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Ἀκαρκοῦς, καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ 95 θέματος τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν εἰς τὸ Καππαδοκῶν θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία τῆς Εὐδοκιάδος, ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ Ἁγίου Ἀγαπητοῦ, ἡ τοποτηρησία Ἀφραζείας, καὶ ἐγένοντο ταῦτα τὰ ἑπτὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι τὰ τῶν Βουκελλαρίων τέσσαρα καὶ τρία τῶν Ἀνατολικῶν,

166^{VP} τοῦρμα | μία, ἡ νῦν τὰ Κόμματα λεγομένη. 100

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων εἰς τὸ θέμα Χαρσιανοῦ μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ Μυριοκεφάλου, ἡ τοποτηρησία τοῦ Τιμίου Σταυροῦ καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Βερνινοπόλεως, καὶ ἐγένοντο τοῦρμα ἡ νῦν Σανίανα λεγομένη. Καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Ἀρμενιάκων εἰς τὸ 105 τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ θέμα μετετέθησαν ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα, ἥτοι ἡ τοῦ Κωμοδρόμου τοποτηρησία, ἡ τοποτηρησία Τάβιας, καὶ εἰς τὴν τοῦρμαν τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ τὴν εἰρημένην προσετέθησαν. Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Καππαδοκῶν

226B^o εἰς τὸ τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ θέμα ταῦτα τὰ βάνδα μετετέθησαν, ἥτοι ἡ τοῦρμα Κασῆς ἐξ ὀλοκλήρου καὶ ἡ τοποτηρησία Νύσσης μετὰ τῆς Καισαρείας. 110

The inhabitants of the city of Maïna are not of the race of the aforesaid Slavs, but of the ancient Romans, and even to this day they are called 'Hellenes' by the local inhabitants, because in the very ancient times they were idolaters and worshippers of images after the fashion of the ancient Hellenes; and they were baptized and became Christians in the reign of the glorious Basil. The place where they live is waterless and inaccessible, but bears the olive, whence their comfort is. This place is situated on the tip of Malea, that is, beyond Ezeron towards the coast. Seeing that they are perfectly submissive and accept a head man from the military governor, and heed and obey the commands of the military governor, they have paid from very ancient times a tribute of 400 nomismata.

The province of Cappadocia was of old a county of the province of the Anatolikoi.

The province of Kephallenia, or the Islands, was of old a county of the province of Lombardy, but became a province in the time of Leo, the Christ-loving sovereign.

The province of Calabria was of old a duchy of the province of Sicily.

The province of Charsianon was of old a county of the province of the Armeniakoi.

In the time of Leo, the Christ-loving sovereign, the following hundreds were transferred from the province of the Boukellarioi to the province of the Cappadocians, viz., the garrison of Baretta, the garrison of Balbadona, the garrison of Aspona and the garrison of Akarkous; and from the province of the Anatolikoi to the province of the Cappadocians were transferred the following hundreds, viz., the garrison of Eudokias, the garrison of Haghios Agapitos, the garrison of Aphrazeia; and these seven hundreds, that is, the four of the Boukellarioi and three of the Anatolikoi, became one county, now called the Kommata.

In the time of Leo, the Christ-loving sovereign, the following hundreds were transferred from the province of the Boukellarioi to the province of Charsianon, viz., the garrison of Myriocephalon, the garrison of Timios Stauros and the garrison of Berinoupolis, and they became the county now called Saniana. And from the province of the Armeniakoi to the province of Komodromos, the garrison of Tabia, and were added to the said county of Charsianon. From the province of the Cappadocians to the province of Charsianon the following hundreds were transferred, viz., the county of Kasi in toto and the garrison of Nyssa with Caesareia.

V 79 τὴν om. Be || 82 ἐκ παλαινότητος edd.: ἐκ παλαι τὰ τοῦ P || 83 post ἡ add. τῆς edd. || 86 Λογουβαρδίας Ba Be || 88 Καλαβρίας V edd.: Καλαβρία P || δουκῆτον P || 90 τούρμα P || 91 Ἀρμενιακῶν Be || 94 Βαλβαδῶνας P: Βαλβαδῶνος V edd. || 85 Ἀκαρκοὺς P || 98 ἐπὶ τὰ edd.: ζ' P || 99 τέσσαρα edd.: δ' P || τρία edd.: γ' P || 100 τούρμα P || 105 Σακιάνα edd. || Ἀρμενιακῶν edd. || 106/7 Κομοδρόμου P || 107 Ταβίας V edd. || τούρμαν P || 109 τούρμα P || 110 Νύσης P ||

- 167^P Ἰστέον, ὅτι τοῖς παρελθούσιν χρόνοις τὸ τοῦ Χοζάνου θέμα ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἦν, ὁμοίως καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ἀσμοσάτου θέμα καὶ αὐτὸ ὑπὸ τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ἦν. Τὸ δὲ Χανζίτ καὶ ἡ Ῥωμανόπολις κλεισουραὶ τῶν Μελιτηνιατῶν ὑπῆρχον. Καὶ ἀπὸ τοῦ ὅρους τοῦ Φατιλάνου πάντα τὰ ἐκεῖθεν τῶν Σαρακηνῶν ὑπῆρχον, τὸ δὲ Τεκῆς ἦν τοῦ Μανουήλ.¹¹⁶ Ἡ δὲ Κάμαχα ἡ τοῦρμα ἄκρα Κολωνείας ἦν, ἡ δὲ τῆς Κελτζηνῆς τοῦρμα ὑπὸ τὴν Χαλδίαν ἦν. Ἡ δὲ Μεσοποταμία τῷ τότε καιρῷ θέμα οὐκ ἦν. Λέων δέ, ὁ φιλοχρίστος καὶ αἰμνηστος βασιλεὺς, τὸν Μανουήλ ἐκείνον ἀπὸ τοῦ Τεκῆς μετὰ λόγου ἐξήγαγεν, καὶ ἐν τῇ πόλει αὐτὸν εἰσήγαγεν, καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον πεποίηκεν. Ἐχει δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς Μανουήλ υἱοὺς τέσσα-¹²⁰ ρας, τὸν Παγκρατούκαν, τὸν Ἰαχνούκαν, τὸν Μουδάφαρ καὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην.
- 167^{vP} Καὶ τὸν μὲν Παγκρατούκαν ὁ βασιλεὺς ἱκανῶτον πεποίηκεν καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο στρατηγὸν εἰς τοὺς Βουκελλαρίους, τὸν δὲ Ἰαχνούκαν εἰς Νικόπο-
λιν στρατηγὸν ἐποίησεν, τὸν δὲ Μουδάφαρ καὶ τὸν Ἰωάννην ἐν Τραπε-
ζοῦντι δέδωκεν γῆν βασιλικήν, ἅπαντας ἀξιώμασιν τιμήσας καὶ δοὺς¹²⁵ αὐτοῖς εὐεργεσίας πολλὰς. Καὶ ἐποίησεν θέμα τὴν Μεσοποταμίαν, καὶ τὸν Ὁρέστην ἐκείνον τὸν Χαρσιανίτην στρατηγὸν προεβάλετο, καὶ τότε δέδωκεν τὴν τῆς Καμάχας τοῦρμαν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα εἶναι τῆς Μεσοποταμίας,
- 227^{Be} εἰθ' | οὕτως καὶ τὴν Κελτζηνῆς τοῦρμαν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα καὶ αὐτὴν Μεσο-
ποταμίας ἐποίησεν. Ἀρτίως δὲ ταῦτα πάντα γεγονότα ὑπὸ τὴν τῶν¹³⁰ Ῥωμαίων ἐξουσίαν, εἰς τὸ Μεσοποταμίας θέμα ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότου
- 168^{rP} προσετέθη ἡ τε Ῥωμανόπολις καὶ τὸ | Χανζίτ.
- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου, ἡ Λάρισσα τοῦρμα τῆς Σεβαστείας ἦν, τὸ δὲ Κυμβαλαῖος ἦν τοῦρμα τοῦ Χαρσιανοῦ, τὸ δὲ Συμπόσιον ἦν ἐρημία πρὸς τὰ μέρη τῆς Λυκανδοῦ παρακείμενον.¹³⁵ Καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότου, Εὐστάθιος ὁ τοῦ Ἀργυροῦ ἀπὸ τῆς ἐξορίας ἀνακληθεὶς εἰς τὸ Χαρσιανὸν στρατηγὸς προεχειρίσθη, ὁ δὲ Μελλίας εἰς τὴν Μελιτηνὴν ἔτι πρόσφυγος ἦν, καὶ ὁ Βασάκιος μετὰ τῶν δύο ἀδελφῶν αὐτοῦ, τοῦ τε Κρικορίκη καὶ τοῦ Παζουνη, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ Ἰσμαήλ ὁ Ἀρμένιος ἐκείνος, οἵτινες καὶ πρὸς¹⁴⁰ αὐτὸν καὶ τὸν προρρηθέντα Ἀργυρὸν ἔγραψαν διὰ τοῦ χρυσοβούλλου λόγον λαβεῖν καὶ ἐξελθεῖν καὶ τὸν μὲν Βασάκιον καὶ τοὺς ἀδελφοὺς
- 168^{vP} αὐτοῦ | εἰς Λάρισσαν καθεσθῆναι καὶ ὀνομασθῆναι μὲν τὸν Βασάκιον Λαρίσσης κλεισουριάρχην, ὅπερ καὶ γέγονεν, τὸν δὲ Ἰσμαήλ κλεισουριάρχην εἰς τὸ Συμπόσιον, ὃ καὶ γέγονεν, τὸν δὲ Μελλίαν εἰς Εὐφράτειαν εἰς τὰ¹⁴⁵ Τρυπία εἰς τὴν ἐρημίαν γενέσθαι τουρμάρχην, ὅπερ καὶ ἐγένετο. Ἐξελεθόντων δὲ τῶν Μελιτηνιατῶν καὶ τὸν Ἰσμαήλ ἐκείνον ἀνελόντων, ἔμμενεν τὸ

F 120 Ἐχει — 126 Μεσοποταμίαν: cf. De Them. p. 31, 1—5 (= ed. Pertusi p. 73, IX 3—6).

In past times the province of Chozanon was beneath the Saracens and in like manner the province of Asmosaton also was beneath the Saracens. Chanzit and Romanopolis were frontier passes of the Melitenians. And from the mountain of Phatilanon all beyond belonged to the Saracens; Tekis belonged to Manuel. Kamacha was the extreme county of Kolonia, and the county of Keltzini was under Chaldia. Mesopotamia was not a province at that time. But Leo, the Christ-loving and ever-memorable emperor, brought the late Manuel out of Tekis upon a promise of *immunity*, and brought him to Constantinople and made him protospatharius. This same Manuel has four sons, Pankratoukas, Iachnoukas, Moudaphar and John. Pankratoukas the emperor made commander of the Hicanati and thereafter military governor of the Boukellarioi, and Iachnoukas he made military governor of Nicopolis, and to Moudaphar and John he gave crown land at Trapezus, and he honoured them all with dignities and conferred on them many benefits. And he made Mesopotamia a province and appointed the late Orestes, the Charsianite, to be military governor of it, and then gave the county of Kamacha to be under the province of Mesopotamia, and thereafter put the county of Keltzini also beneath the province of Mesopotamia. All these being now beneath the dominion of the Romans, in the time of the sovereign Romanus Romanopolis and Chanzit were added to the province of Mesopotamia.

In the time of Leo, the Christ-loving sovereign, Larissa was a county of Sebasteia, and Kymbalaïos was a county of Charsianon, and Symposion was a desert adjacent to the region of Lykandos. And in the reign of Leo, the Christ-loving sovereign, Eustathius Argyrus was recalled from banishment and appointed military governor of Charsianon, while Melias was still a refugee at Melitene, as was Baasakios with his two brothers Krikorikios and Pazounis, and also the late Ismael the Armenian; these wrote to *the emperor* and to the aforesaid Argyrus, asking that they might receive a promise of *immunity* in form of a golden bull and might come out, and that Baasakios and his brothers might have their seat at Larissa and Baasakios be named frontier warden of Larissa, which was done; and that Ismael should be frontier warden of Symposion, which was done; and that Melias should be made lieutenant-general of Euphrateia, of the Trypia, and of the Desert, and that was done. But since the Melitenians came out and did away

V 113 κλησούραι P; κλεισούρα edd. || 114 Μελιτινιατῶν *litteras niat in ras. acr.* P¹ || 115 ὄπηρχεν edd. || 116 τούρμα P || Κελτζινῆς P || τούρμα P || 118 ἀείμνηστος; ἀοίδιμος edd. || 120 Ἔχει: εἶχε *coni.* Jenkins || 121 Ἰαχνοῦκαν P || 122 ἱκανάτον P || 123 Ἰαχνοῦκαν P || 128 τούρμαν P || 129 Κελτζινῆς P || τούρμαν P || *post αὐτὴν add.* τῆς edd. || 130/1 ἐξουσίαν τῶν Ῥωμαίων edd. || 134 Κυμβαλαῖος P Κυμβαλαυός edd. || 135 Λικανδοῦ P || 138 προεχειρίσθη *coni.* Moravesik; παρεχωρίσθη P ἐχωρίσθη edd. || 143 τὸν μὲν Be || 144 κλησουριάρχην P || 145 Εὐφράτιαν P || 147 Μελιτινιατῶν P ||

Συμπόσιον ἔρμουν. Τοῦ δὲ Βασσακίου, ὅτι προδοσίαν μελετᾷ, διαβλη-
 228Be θέν|τος καὶ ἐξορισθέντος, πάλιν ὑπὸ τῆς Σεβαστείας ἡ Λάρισσα τοῦρμα
 ἐγένετο, στρατηγοῦ προβληθέντος ἐκεῖσε τοῦ Ἀργυροῦ Λέοντος, τοῦ 150
 υἱοῦ Εὐσταθίου, τοῦ μετὰ ταῦτα μαγίστρου γεγονότος καὶ δομωστικού
 169P τῶν σχολῶν. Ὁ δὲ Μελλίας εἰς Εὐφράτειαν καθιζόμενος, ὁ|πότε καὶ
 προεβλήθη Κωνσταντῖνος ὁ Δοῦξ εἰς τὸ Χαρσιανόν, κατήλθεν οὗτος ὁ
 προρρηθεὶς Μελλίας, καὶ τὸ παλαιὸν κάστρον τὴν Λυκανδὸν ἐκράτησεν,
 καὶ ἐκτισεν αὐτὸ καὶ ὠχυροποίησεν, καὶ ἐκεῖσε ἐκαθέσθη, καὶ ὠνομάσθη 155
 παρὰ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου βασιλέως, κλεισοῦρα. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο
 διεπέρασεν ἀπὸ Λυκανδοῦ εἰς τὸ ὄρος τῆς Τζαμανδοῦ, κάκεισε τὸ νῦν
 ὄν κάστρον ἐκτισεν, καὶ ὡσαύτως κάκεινον κλεισοῦρα ἐκαλεῖτο. Ἐκράτη-
 σεν δὲ καὶ τὸ Συμπόσιον, ποιήσας αὐτὸ τουρμαρχᾶτον. Ἐπὶ δὲ Κων-
 σταντίνου, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, τοῦ τὸ πρῶτον, συνούσης αὐτῷ 160
 καὶ Ζωῆς τῆς μητρὸς αὐτοῦ, γέγονεν ἡ Λυκανδὸς στρατηγίς, καὶ πρῶτος
 Λυκανδοῦ στρατηγὸς ὠνομάσθη ὁ πατρίκιος Μελλίας, δηλονότι τῷ τότε
 169P καιρῷ αὐτοῦ κλεισουράρχου ἐν Λυ|κανδῷ τυγχάνοντος. Ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς
 Μελλίας — διὰ τε τὴν συνούσαν αὐτῷ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα τῶν Ῥωμαίων
 πίστιν καὶ τὰς πολλὰς καὶ ἀπείρους αὐτοῦ κατὰ Σαρακηνῶν ἀνδραγαθίας 165
 — μετέπειτα μάγιστρος ἐτιμήθη.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἡ Ἀβαρα τοῦρμα ἦν ὑπὸ τὸ θέμα Σεβαστείας, ἐπὶ δὲ
 Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότη γέγονεν κλεισοῦρα.

229Be Ἰστέον, ὅτι τύπος ἐκράτησεν παλαιὸς τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρ|δαῖτων
 Ἀτταλείας παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως δηλονότι προβάλλεσθαι, διὸ καὶ παρὰ 170
 Λέοντος, τοῦ μακαριωτάτου βασιλέως, κατεπάνω προεβλήθη Σταυράκιος
 ὁ Πλατὺς ἐπονομαζόμενος, ὃς χρόνους μὲν διέπρεψεν ἱκανούς, οὐχὶ
 καλῶς δὲ καὶ τὰ τέλη διέθηκεν. Τοῦ γὰρ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Εὐσταθίου
 170P καὶ ἀσκηρῆτις ἐν τῷ τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν θέματι | ἐκ προσώπου
 ἀποσταλέντος, φθόνοι τινὲς ἀναμεταξὺ τούτων καὶ μάχαι γεγόνασιν· ὃ τε 175
 γὰρ Σταυράκιος ὁ Πλατὺς εἰς τὸν πατρίκιον Ἡμέριον καὶ λογοθέτην
 τοῦ δρόμου θαρρῶν, ὡς ἄτε παρ' αὐτοῦ εἰς τὸν βασιλέα μεσιτευθεὶς,
 τῷ ἐκ προσώπου Εὐσταθίῳ ἀντέπιπτεν, καὶ μάλιστα ἐναντίως εἶχεν,
 ἐν οἷς αὐτὸν ἑώρα ἔξω τοῦ δέοντός τι διαπραττόμενον ἢ καὶ προστάττοντα,
 ὃ τε δὲ πάλιν ὁ ἐκ προσώπου Εὐστάθιος πρὸς τὸ Σταυράκιον δέκεται 180
 ἐχθρῶδῶς, καὶ πολλὰς κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐπιθέσεις καὶ μηχανὰς ἐπλάττετο.
 Ὅθεν αἰτίας ὁ προρρηθεὶς Εὐστάθιος κατὰ τοῦ Σταυρακίου ἀνήγαγεν,
 ὡς· «Τὸ τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν θέμα δύο στρατηγούς ἔχειν οὐ δύναται,
 δηλονότι ἐμὲ καὶ Σταυράκιον, τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρδαῖτων, ἄλλα γὰρ ἐμοῦ

with that Ismael, Symposion remained deserted. And when Baasakios was accused of plotting treachery and exiled, Larissa became once more a county under Sebasteia, and Leo Argyrus, son of Eustathius, was appointed military governor there, he who afterwards became magister and commander-in-chief. But Melias had his seat at Euphrateia, and when Constantine Dux had been appointed in Charsianon, this Melias aforesaid came down and took possession of the ancient city of Lykandos and built it up and fortified it and took his seat there, and it was named a frontier pass by Leo, the Christ-loving emperor. After this he crossed from Lykandos to the mountain of Tzamandos and there built the city which is there now, and similarly this too was designated a frontier pass. And he took possession of Symposion also and made it into a county. And in the first reign of Constantine the Christ-loving sovereign, when his mother Zoë was associated with him, Lykandos became a province, and the first military governor to be nominated was the patrician Melias, who was, of course, at that time frontier warden of Lykandos. And this same Melias, both for the loyalty that was in him toward the emperor of the Romans and for his many and infinite feats of daring against the Saracens, was afterwards honoured with the rank of magister.

Abara used to be a county under the province of Sebasteia, but in the time of the sovereign Romanus it became a frontier pass.

By old-established rule the captain-general of the Mardaïtes of Attalia was appointed of course by the emperor; and therefore by Leo, the emperor, of most blessed memory, Stauracius, surnamed Platys, was appointed captain-general, who gave splendid service for several years, but disposed things ill at his ending. For when the protospatharius Eustathius, of the imperial chancellery, was sent as deputy *military governor* to the province of the Kibyrhaiotai, certain jealousies and broils arose between them: and sometimes Stauracius Platys, who relied upon the patrician Himerius, the foreign minister, as one who had been his intermediary with the emperor, would fall foul of the deputy Eustathius and indeed flatly oppose him in matters where he saw him acting or giving orders beyond his competence; and sometimes, on the other hand, the deputy Eustathius would be at odds with Stauracius and would devise many assaults and artful accusations against him. For this reason the aforesaid Eustathius reported unfavourably on Stauracius, saying: «The province of the Kibyrhaiotai cannot have two military governors, me, that is, and Stauracius, captain-general of the

τοῦτο edd. τὸ coní. Bekker || 161 Λικανδὸς P || 162 Λικανδοῦ P || ὀνομάσθη P || Μελίας P V edd.: Μελείας (*littera e rubro atramento addita*) P^s mg. P^s || 163 κλεισουριάρχου Ba Be || Λικανδῶ P || 164 Μελίας P V edd.: Μελείας (*littera e rubro atramento addita*) P^s mg. P^s || 172 διέπρεψεν: διέτριψεν Be || Ικανούς V edd.: Ικανῶς P || 174 ἀσκηρίτης P || 178 ἐκ προσώπου Ba Be: ἐκπροσώπου P ἐκπροσώπω P^s V || 183 Κυβυρραιωτῶν edd.: Κυβυρροτῶν P || 184 *post καὶ add.* τὸν edd. ||

- 170^ΥΡ | πρὸ|στάττοντος καὶ διοικεῖν ἐθέλοντος, ἄλλα ποιεῖν ὁ κατεπάνω Μαρ-188
δαῖτῶν βούλεται, καὶ αὐτεξούσιος ὦν τὰ αὐτῷ δοκοῦντα μηχανικῶς δια-
πράττεται.» Ἀνήγαγεν δὲ καὶ ἄλλας ψευδολογίας τινάς, καὶ πολλὰς
μηχανὰς καὶ αὐτοῦ συνερράψατο, τὰς μὲν πιθανῶς συνθεῖς, τὰς δὲ
συκοφαντικῶς τε καὶ μηχανικῶς ἀναπλάσασμενος. Καὶ οὗτος δηλονότι τῷ
230^{Βε} πατρικίῳ Ἡμερίῳ καὶ λογοθέτῃ | τοῦ δρόμου θαρρῶν ταῦτα ἔγραψεν,190
ἐπειδὴ τῷ τότε καιρῷ φίλος Εὐσταθίου μᾶλλον ἢν ὁ πατρίκιος Ἡμέριος,
ἥπερ Σταυρακίου, καὶ ὕστερον ἐχθρανθέντες ἀμφοτέροι ἐχθρας ἀνέμεστοι
καὶ μανίας πλήρεις γεγονάσιν. Τὴν οὖν τοιαύτην ἀναφορὰν Εὐσταθίου
δεξάμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τῇ αἰτήσῃ τοῦ πατρικίου Ἡμερίου πεισθεῖς,
171^ΥΡ | δέδωκεν τὴν τοῦ τοιούτου κατεπάνω ἐξουσίαν τῷ πρωτοσπαθαρίῳ195
Εὐσταθίῳ καὶ ἐκ προσώπου. Τοῦ δὲ μακαρίου βασιλέως τὸν βίον ἀπὸ
τῶν κάτω πρὸς τὰ ἄνω μετηλλαχότος, Ἀλέξανδρος, ὁ ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ,
τῆς αὐτοκράτορος ἀρχῆς ἐγκρατὴς γεγονώς, ὡς πάντας τοὺς ὑπὸ τοῦ
μακαρίου βασιλέως καὶ ἀδελφοῦ αὐτοῦ προβληθέντας ἐν τισιν ἀρχαῖς
διεδέξατο, χαιρεκάκοις καὶ κακοβούλοις ἀνδράσιν πεισθεῖς, οὕτω δὴ καὶ200
τὸν προρρηθέντα Εὐστάθιον διεδέξατο, καὶ ἀντ' αὐτοῦ πεποίηκεν ἕτερον.
Ὁ γὰρ Χασὲ ἐκεῖνος, ὁ ἐκ Σαρακηνῶν τῷ γένει ὁρμώμενος, Σαρακηνὸς
δὲ τῷ ὄντι τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τῷ τρόπῳ καὶ τῇ λατρείᾳ διατελῶν, ὁ τοῦ
πατρικίου Δαμιανοῦ δοῦλος, ἐπεὶ πολλὴν παρρησίαν εἶχεν τῷ τότε καιρῷ
171^ΥΡ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος | οὗτος Χασὲ πρὸς τὸν κύριν Ἀλέξανδρον, τὸν βασιλέα,205
ὡσαύτως καὶ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Νικήτας, ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ Χασέ, ὁ καὶ
τῶν Κυβερραιωτῶν στρατηγὸς γεγονὼς παρὰ αὐτοῦ τοῦ κυροῦ Ἀλεξάν-
δρου βασιλέως, ὁ Νικήτας οὖν οὗτος, ὁ ἀδελφὸς τοῦ προρρηθέντος Χασέ,
τὸν βασιλέα ἤτήσατο, ὅτι· «Ὡς ἀρχαῖόν σου φίλον εὐεργετεῖν με πρέπον
231^{Βε} ἐστίν, ἐν δὲ πρὸς τὴν βασιλείαν σου αἶτημα ἔχω, | καὶ δίκαιόν ἐστιν210
εἰσκακοῦσαί μου». Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως διαπορουμένου καὶ ἀντερωτῶντος,
τί ἂν εἴη τοῦτο τὸ αἶτημα, καὶ ὅπερ ἑάν ἐστιν, ὑπακούσαι ὑποσχομένου,
ὁ προρρηθεὶς Νικήτας ἤτήσατο, ὅτι· «Τὸν υἱόν μου, αἰτοῦμαι, ἵνα ποιήσῃ
ἡ βασιλεία σου κατεπάνω τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλείας», οὕτινος ὁ βασι-
172^ΥΡ λεὺς τῇ αἰτήσῃ πεισθεῖς, ἐπὶ προεβλύσεως εἰσκαγαῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ Χρυσο-215
τρικλίνου τὸν υἱὸν τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Νικήτα, τὸν σπαθαροκανδιδάτον
Ἀβέρκιον, προεβάλετο αὐτὸν κατεπάνω τῶν Μαρδαϊτῶν Ἀτταλείας,
καθὼς καὶ ὁ μακάριος Λέων ὁ βασιλεὺς πρότερον Σταυράκιον τὸν Πλατὺν
ἐπονομαζόμενον. Καὶ ὁ ἐξ ἀρχῆθεν παλαιὸς ἔχων τύπος, καθὼς ἐν
ἀρχαῖς εἴρηται, ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως προβάλλεσθαι τὸν κατεπάνω Μαρ-220
δαῖτῶν.

V 188 συνθεῖς] *litteras in ras. scr.* P¹ || 189 οὗτος (*littera ω partim crasa accentuque correcto*) P^x V edd.: οὕτως P || 191 ἐπεὶ δὴ P: Ἐπὶ δὲ edd. ||

Mardaïtes; for while I give one set of orders and try to administer them, the captain-general of the Mardaïtes will do something different, and being his own master acts wildly as he sees fit.» He reported other false charges besides, and concocted many artful accusations against him, composing some that had an air of probability and inventing others that were calumnious and wild. These things he wrote down, relying of course upon the patrician Himerius, the foreign minister. And at that time the patrician Himerius was more friendly with Eustathius than with Stauracius, though afterwards the two fell out and became full of enmity and replete with fury. The emperor, then, received this report of Eustathius and, acceding to the request of the patrician Himerius, gave the authority of this captain-general to the protospatharius Eustathius, the deputy. But when the emperor, of blessed memory, exchanged the things below for the things above, Alexander his brother took the position of senior emperor, and as he superseded all who had been appointed to any commands by the emperor his brother, of blessed memory, being thereto persuaded by malicious and foolish men, so he superseded the aforesaid Eustathius also, and made another in his stead. For the late Chase, who sprang from the race of the Saracens and continued a true Saracen in thought and manners and religion, the slave of the patrician Damian, this protospatharius Chase had at that time great freedom of intercourse with the lord Alexander the emperor, as had also the protospatharius Niketas, the brother of Chase, who was made military governor of the Kibyrrhaiotai by this lord Alexander the emperor; this Niketas, then, brother of the aforesaid Chase, made a request to the emperor, saying: «As I am your old friend, it is fitting you should do me a favour; and I have a thing to request of your imperial majesty, and it is right that you should grant it to me.» The emperor being taken by surprise and asking in his turn what this request might be and promising to grant it whatever it was, the aforesaid Niketas made his request, saying: «I request that your imperial majesty should make my son captain-general of the Mardaïtes of Attalia»; and the emperor, acceding to his request, on the occasion of a procession introduced into the Chrysotriclinus the son of the protospatharius Niketas, the spatharocandidate Abercius, and appointed him captain-general of the Mardaïtes of Attalia, just as Leo the emperor, of blessed memory, had previously appointed Stauracius, surnamed Platys. It is the old rule, established from the beginning, as was said at the start, that the captain-general of the Mardaïtes is appointed by the emperor.

192 ἐχθρανθέντες Be: ἐχθραν θέντες P || 193 Εὐσταθίου] *litteras σταθ in ras. scr.* P¹ || 196 καὶ: τῷ edd. || ἐκ προσώπου Ba Be: ἐκπροσώπω P || Τοῦ δὲ μακαρίου βασιλέως Be: τῷ δὲ μακαρίῳ βασιλεῖ P || 198 ὡς Meursius Be: ὅς P || 205 κύριν P || 207 τοῦ αὐτοῦ V edd. || 208 ante βασιλέως add. τοῦ edd. || 213 ποιήσῃ Ba Be ποιήσῃ V Me: ποιήσει P || 216 σπαθαρκανδιδάτον P ||

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ τοῦ Θεοφίλου παρακοιμώμενος γέγονεν Σχολαστικός ὁστιάριος, ἐπὶ δὲ Μιχαήλ, υἱοῦ Θεοφίλου, παρακοιμώμενος Δαμιανὸς πατρίκιος, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ γέγονεν παρακοιμώμενος Βασίλειος, ὁ φιλόχριστος βασιλεὺς. Ἐπὶ δὲ Βασιλείῳ, τοῦ φιλο-
 172^vP χρίστου δεσπότη, παρακοιμώμενος | οὐ γέγονεν δι' ἄλλης τῆς αὐτοῦ βασιλείας. Ἐπὶ δὲ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, παρακοιμώμενος γέγονεν Σαμωνᾶς ὁ πατρίκιος, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ βασιλείᾳ γέγονεν Κωνσταντῖνος πατρίκιος. Ἐπὶ δὲ Ἀλεξάνδρου βασιλείᾳ γέγονεν
 232^{Be} παρακοιμώμενος πατρίκιος Βαρβάτος, ἐπὶ δὲ | Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ
 φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, γέγονεν πάλιν Κωνσταντῖνος πατρίκιος, ὁ προρρηθεις ἐπὶ Λέοντος δεσπότη, ἐπὶ δὲ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότη Θεοφάνης πατρίκιος, ἐπὶ δὲ Κωνσταντίνου πάλιν τὸ δεύτερον γέγονεν Βασίλειος πατρίκιος.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ ἀειμνήστου βασι-
 λέως, ἦν ὁ Κτενᾶς ἐκεῖνος γέρων, κληρικὸς πάνυ πλούσιος, ὅστις ἦν καὶ
 δομέστικος εἰς τὴν Νέαν Ἐκκλησίαν, ὑπῆρχεν δὲ τεχνίτης εἰς τὸ ἄσμα,
 173^vP οἷος τῷ τότε καιρῷ ἕτερος οὐκ ἦν. Ὁ δὲ αὐτὸς Κτενᾶς τὸν πατρίκιον
 Σαμωνᾶν ἐδυσώπησεν, τῷ τότε καιρῷ παρακοιμωμένου αὐτοῦ ὄντος,
 μεσιτεῦσαι αὐτὸν εἰς τὸν βασιλέα τοῦ γενέσθαι πρωτοσπαθάριον καὶ
 φορεῖν ἐπικουτζουλὸν καὶ προέρχεσθαι εἰς τὸν Λαυσιακὸν καὶ καθέζε-
 σθαι ὡς πρωτοσπαθάριον καὶ ῥογεύεσθαι αὐτὸν λίτραν μίαν καὶ ὑπὲρ
 τῆς τοιαύτης ἀντιλήψεως δοῦναι τῷ βασιλεῖ λίτρας τεσσαράκοντα. Ὁ δὲ
 βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἠνέσχετο τοῦτο ποιῆσαι, λέγων τῶν ἀδυνάτων τυγχάνειν,
 καί· «Εἰς μεγάλην ἀδοξίαν τῆς βασιλείας μου κληρικὸν γενέσθαι πρω-
 245 τοσπαθάριον.» Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς Κτενᾶς παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Σαμωνᾶ
 ταῦτα, προσέθηκεν εἰς τὰς τεσσαράκοντα λίτρας καὶ σχολαρίκια ζυγὴν
 μίαν, ἐκτιμηθεῖσαν λίτρας δέκα καὶ τραπεζίου ἀσήμεν ἔνζωπον διάχρυσον
 ἀνάγλυφον, ἐκτιμηθὲν καὶ αὐτὸ λίτρας δέκα. Καὶ δυσωπηθεὶς ὁ βασι-
 173^vP λεὺς τῇ παρακλήσει | τοῦ πατρικίου Σαμωνᾶ καὶ παρακοιμωμένου,
 233^{Be} ἀνέλαβετο τὰς τεσσαράκοντα τοῦ | χρυσοῦ λίτρας καὶ τὴν ζυγὴν τὰ
 σχολαρίκια καὶ τοῦ τραπεζίου τὸ ἀνάγλυφον καὶ διάχρυσον ἀσήμεν, ὡς
 γενέσθαι τὸ πᾶν δόμα τοῦ αὐτοῦ Κτενᾶ λίτρας ἐξήκοντα. Τότε ἐποίησεν
 αὐτὸν ὁ βασιλεὺς πρωτοσπαθάριον, καὶ ἐρογέυθη τῷ καιρῷ ἑκὲν λίτραν
 μίαν. Ἐξῆσεν δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς Κτενᾶς μετὰ τὸ τιμηθῆναι αὐτὸν πρωτοσπα-
 250 θάριον ἔτη δύο καὶ ἐτελεύτησεν· ἐρογέυθη δὲ τὰ δύο ἔτη ἀνά λίτραν μίαν.

V 224 τοῦτον edd.: τοῦτο P || 225 ante Βασιλείου add. τοῦ edd. || τοῦ om. edd. ||
 226 αὐτοῦ τῆς V edd. || 229 ante πατρίκιος add. ὁ V edd. || ante βασιλείας add.

In the time of the emperor Theophilus, Scholasticus the door-keeper was chamberlain, and in the time of Michael, son of Theophilus, the patrician Damian was chamberlain and after him, in the same reign, Basil, the Christ-loving emperor, was chamberlain. In the time of Basil, the Christ-loving sovereign, there was no chamberlain during all his reign. In the time of Leo, the Christ-loving sovereign, the patrician Samonas was chamberlain, and after him, in the time of the same emperor, the patrician Constantine. In the time of Alexander the emperor, the patrician Barbatas was chamberlain; and in the time of Constantine, the Christ-loving sovereign, the patrician Constantine, mentioned before in the time of the sovereign Leo, was *chamberlain* again; and in the time of the sovereign Romanus, the patrician Theophanes; and in the second reign of Constantine, the patrician Basil.

In the time of Leo, the Christ-loving and ever-memorable emperor, lived the late Ktenas, an aged cleric of great wealth, who was precentor of the New Church and was skilled in singing as was no other at that time. This same Ktenas besought the patrician Samonas, who was at that time chamberlain, to intercede for him with the emperor so that he might be made protospatharius and wear the shirt and go in procession to the Lausiaceus and take his seat as protospatharius and receive a stipend of one pound, and in respect of this remuneration might give the emperor forty pounds. But the emperor could not bring himself to do this, saying that it was out of his power, and «to the great disgrace of my imperial majesty if a cleric becomes protospatharius». On hearing this from the patrician Samonas, this same Ktenas added to the forty pounds a pair of ear-rings valued at ten pounds, and a silver table with animals on it in gold relief, also valued at ten pounds. And the emperor, besought by the request of the patrician Samonas, the chamberlain, took the forty pounds of gold and the pair of ear-rings and the table with its gold on silver relief work, so that the total gift of the same Ktenas amounted to sixty pounds. Then the emperor made him protospatharius, and he received a stipend on that occasion of one pound. After being honoured with the rank of protospatharius this same Ktenas lived two years and then died; and he received a stipend of one pound for each of the two years.

τοῦ edd. || 233 πάλιν om. edd. || δεύτερον edd.: β' P || 243 τεσσαράκοντα edd.: σαράκοντα P || 244 τοῦτο Meursius Ba Be: τοῦτον P || 247 τεσσαράκοντα edd.: μ' P || 248 δέκα edd.: ι' P || τραπέζιου P V Ba Be: τραπέζιον PY || ἀσίμην P || ἐνζῶδον Be: ἐνζοδον (*littera ζ in ras. scripta*) P¹ Ba ἐνδοξον V || 249 δέκα edd.: ι' P || 251 τεσσαράκοντα edd.: μ' P || 252 ἀσίμην P || 253 λίτρας V edd.: λίτραι P || ἐξήκοντα edd.: ξ' P || 256 δύο¹ edd.: β' P.

51. Περὶ τοῦ, τίνι τρόπῳ γέγονεν τὸ βασιλικὸν
δρομώνιον, καὶ περὶ τῶν πρωτοκαράβων τοῦ
αὐτοῦ δρομωνίου, καὶ ὅσα περὶ τοῦ πρωτο-
σπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλης.

- Ἰστέον, ὅτι μέχρι τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος, τοῦ αἰδίδμου καὶ σοφω- 5
174P τάτου βασιλέως, οὐκ ἦν βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον, | ἐν ᾧ εἰσῆρχετο ὁ βασιλεὺς,
ἀλλ' εἰς ῥούσιον ἀγράριον εἰσῆρχετο, πλὴν ἐπὶ Βασιλείου, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου
δεσπότη, ὅτε ἀπῆλθεν ὁ αὐτὸς βασιλεὺς εἰς τὰ θέρμα τῆς Προύσης,
καὶ πάλιν ὅτε ἀπῆλθεν θεάσασθαι τὸ γεφύριον τοῦ Ῥηγίου, δηλονότι τῇ
κελεύσει αὐτοῦ καὶ προνοίᾳ κτιζόμενον, εἰς δρομώνιον εἰσῆλθεν, καὶ 10
ἕτερον δρομώνιον ἠκολούθει ὀπισθεν. Οἱ δὲ ἐν αὐτῷ εἰσελθόντες ἐλάττει
ὑπῆρχον ἀπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ ἀγραρίου καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν Στενιτῶν πλωίμων.
234Be Τὸ γὰρ παλαιὸν εἶχεν καὶ τὸ Στε|νὸν χελάνδια βασιλικοπλώϊμα μέχρι
τῶν δέκα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ μακάριος βασιλεὺς ὅλα τὰ πλείονα αὐτοῦ μεταστασί-
ματα εἰς τὰς Πηγὰς ἐποίησε διὰ τὸ καὶ ὑπ' αὐτοῦ κτισθῆναι τὰ τοιαῦτα 15
174P παλάτια, ὁμοίως καὶ | εἰς τὸ Ἑβδομον καὶ εἰς τὴν Ἱερειάν καὶ εἰς τὸν
Βρύαν, εἰσῆρχετο εἰς ἀγράριον κατὰ τὸν παλαιὸν τύπον. Ὅτε δὲ εἰς
μακρότερον ἀπῆι πρόκενσον, ὅλον εἰς τὰ θέρμα τῆς Προύσης καὶ εἰς
ἐπιτήρησιν τοῦ Ῥηγίου τῆς γεφύρας, εἰσῆι, καθὼς προεῖρηται, εἰς
δρομώνιον, καὶ ἠκολούθει ἕτερον δρομώνιον διὰ τὸ καὶ πλείονας ἄρχοντας 20
εἰσέρχεσθαι μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ τοὺς ὑπολοίπους εἰς τὸ δεύτερον
δρομώνιον. Ὁ δὲ αἰδίδμος καὶ σοφώτατος Λέων ὁ βασιλεὺς φιλοτιμό-
τερόν πως πρὸς τοὺς μαγίστρους καὶ πατρικίους καὶ οἰκειούς συγκλητι-
κοὺς διακείμενος καὶ θέλων αἰετὺς τούτοις συγκαίρεσθαι, λογισάμενος μὴ
ἐπαρκεῖν εἰς ὑποδοχὴν πλείονων ἀρχόντων τὸ ἀγράριον, ἐποίησεν δρο- 25
175P μώνιον, καὶ δὴ ἀπαύστως εἰσῆρχετο ἐν αὐτῷ, ὅπου δ' ἂν | ἐβούλετο
ἀπελθεῖν. Συνήρχοντο δὲ μετ' αὐτοῦ, οἷους ἂν ἐβούλετο τῶν ἀρχόντων,
ἀπὸ τε μαγίστρων καὶ πατρικίων. Κατὰ τύπον γὰρ ἐν τῷ ἀγραρίῳ οὐδεὶς
ἕτερος εἰσῆρχετο μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, εἰ μὴ ὁ δρουγγάριος τῆς βίγλης
καὶ ὁ δρουγγάριος τοῦ πλωῖμου καὶ ὁ λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου καὶ ὁ 30
ἐταπεινάρχης καὶ ὁ μυστικὸς καὶ ὁ τῶν δεήσεων, καὶ ὅτε παρῆν ἐν τῇ
πόλει, καὶ ὁ δομέστικος τῶν σχολῶν καὶ ὁ παρακοιμώμενος καὶ ὁ πρωτο-
235Be βεστιάριος καὶ ἐκ τῶν κοιτωνιτῶν, οὓς ἂν ἐκέλευσεν ὁ | βασιλεὺς. Δι'
οὖν τὸν τρόπον τοῦτον ἐποίησεν Λέων, ὁ αἰδίδμος καὶ σοφώτατος βασι-
λεὺς, τὸ δρομώνιον, καὶ μετὰ τινα καιρὸν ἐποίησεν καὶ ἕτερον δρομώνιον, 35
ὃ καὶ δεύτερον προσηγορεύθη καὶ ἀκόλουθος ὠνομάσθη. Καὶ γὰρ εἰς

V 51. 3 δρομωνίου edd.: δρόμωνος P || 8 ἀπῆλθεν corr. Jenkins: ἐπῆλθεν
P edd. || 9 Ῥηγίου P || 10 κτιζόμενον edd.: κτιζομένου P || 12 Στενιτῶν P ||
13 καὶ om. edd. || βασιλικοπλώϊμα: βασιλικὰ πλώϊμα edd. || 14 δέκα edd.:

51. Why the imperial galley came to be made, and of the steersmen of this same galley, and all about the protospatharius of the basin.

Until the reign of Leo, the glorious and most wise emperor, there was no imperial galley for the emperor to embark in, but he used to embark in a scarlet barge; except that, in the time of the Christ-loving sovereign Basil, when this same emperor visited the hot baths of Prousa, and again when he went to inspect the bridge of Rhegion that was, of course, being built by his mandate and providence, he embarked in a galley, and another galley followed behind. And the rowers who embarked in it were taken from the imperial barge and from the sailors of the Stenon. For of old the Stenon too had up to ten ships of war of the imperial navy. But since the emperor, of blessed memory, on most of his progresses always went to Pegai because of the palace he had built there, and in like manner to Hebdomon and to Hiereia and to Bryas, he used to embark in a barge, according to the old rule. But when he was going on a longer progress, to the hot baths of Prousa, for example, and to inspect the bridge of Rhegion, he would embark, as was said above, in a galley, and another galley would follow, so that more nobles could embark with the emperor, and the rest in the second galley. But the glorious and most wise Leo, the emperor, who was rather more hospitably inclined towards magisters and patricians and familiars of senatorial rank, and who always wished them to share his pleasure in this, reckoned that the barge was inadequate for the reception of a larger number of nobles, and constructed a galley, and would invariably embark in it wherever he desired to go. And there would go with him whomsoever he might desire of the nobles, both of magisters and patricians. For in the barge it used to be the rule that none other embarked with the emperor except the colonel of the watch and the lord admiral and the foreign minister and the commander of the company and the private secretary and the secretary of the pleas and, when he was present in Constantinople, the commander-in-chief also, and the chamberlain and the master of the wardrobe and of the gentlemen of the bed-chamber whomsoever the emperor commanded. For this reason, then, Leo, the glorious and most wise emperor, constructed the galley, and, some while after, he constructed another galley as well, which was known as the 'second' and christened 'Attaché'. For this emperor, of blessed memory, would go on distant

ι' P || 14/5 μετασασήματα P || 16 Ἰερλαν Moravesik: Ἰερλαν Ba
 Be Εἰρλαν P Me Ἡρία Meursius || 16 τὸν: τὴν edd. || 17 Βροίαν P ||
 post εἰς¹ add. τὸ edd. || 19 γέφυρας P || 20 διὰ τὸ con. Bekker: διότι P
 edd. || 21 δεύτερον edd.: β' P || 24 τοῦτοις con. Jenkins: τοῦτο P edd. ||
 31 παρῆν] παρεῖν (littera ei in ras. scripta) P¹ || 33 κοιτωνῶντων P edd. ||
 36 δεύτερον edd.: β' P || ἀκολούθως V edd. || ὀνομάσθη P ||

175*P μακρόκενσα | ἀπῆει ὁ μακάριος οὗτος βασιλεύς, οἶον εἰς Νικομήδειαν, εἰς τὸν Ὀλυμπον, εἰς τὰ Πύθια, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐπετηδεύσατο τὰ δύο δρομῶνια εἰς ὑπηρεσίαν καὶ ἀνάπαυσιν αὐτοῦ τε καὶ τῶν ἀρχόντων αὐτοῦ. Πολλάκις γὰρ ἐξερχομένου αὐτοῦ εἰς τὰ πλησίον πρόκενσα, 40 τὴν μίαν οὐσίαν κατελίμπανεν εἰς τὸν ἱππόδρομον πρὸς φύλαξιν τοῦ παλατίου διὰ τὸ τὸ τάγμα τοῦ ἀριθμοῦ κατὰ τὸν ἐπικρατήσαντα παλαιὸν τύπον μετὰ τοῦ δομestίκου τῶν σχολῶν ταξιδεῦειν, καὶ ἐναπομένοντες εἰς τὸν ἱππόδρομον <οὐ> συνεξιῶσι κατὰ τύπον τοῖς βασιλεῦσιν εἰς τὰ πρόκενσα. 45

Ὅτι ἐξ ἀρχῆς καὶ ἄνωθεν βασιλικὸν ὀφείκιον ἦν τῷ πρωτοσπαθάρῳ τῆς φιάλης· οὗτος δὲ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης ἐπεκράτει

176*P καὶ εἶχεν ὑπ' αὐτὸν πάντας τοὺς ἐλάτας | τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀγραρίων, ρουσίων τε καὶ μαύρων, ἄνευ τῶν ἀγραρίων τῆς αὐγούστης· τὰ γὰρ ἀγράρια τῆς αὐγούστης, τὰ τε ρούσια καὶ μαῦρα, ἐπεκράτει καὶ ἐξου- 50 σίαζεν ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς αὐγούστης. Ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος, τοῦ αἰοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως, καινουργηθέντα τὰ δρομῶνια

236Be κελεύσει βασιλικῇ, εἶχεν ὁ αὐτὸς πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης | καὶ τῶν τοιούτων δρομωνίων τοὺς ἐλάτας ὑπὸ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἐξουσίαν. Ὁ οὖν προρ- ρηθεὶς πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης καθ' ἑκάστην ἡμέραν καὶ καθ' 55 ἑκάστην δεῖλιν ἀπὸ παλαιοῦ τύπου κατήρχετο καὶ ἐκαθέζετο ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ (διὰ τοῦτο γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρωτοσπαθάριος τῆς φιάλης), καὶ τὰς ἀναμεταξὺ δίκας τῶν ἐλατῶν τῶν τε ἀγραρίων καὶ τῶν δρομωνίων,

176*P τῶν παρ' αὐτοῦ ἐξουσιαζομένων, ἔκρινεν καὶ κατὰ τὸ δίκαιον ἐδίκάζεν τε καὶ ἐδιοικεῖ. Καὶ ἥνικα παρὰ τὸ δέον εὕρισκέν τινα ἢ ἐργαζόμενον 60 ἢ τινα ἀδικοῦντα ἢ εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν δουλείαν βαγεύοντα, τοῦτον διὰ μαγγλαβίων σφοδρῶν ἐπεζήρχετο. Καὶ καθ' ὃν εἴρηται τρόπον, πάντες οἱ τῶν δρομωνίων ἐλάται καὶ οἱ τῶν τοῦ βασιλέως ἀγραρίων, τῶν τε ρουσίων καὶ τῶν μαύρων, ὑπὸ τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν ἐφορείαν ὑπῆρχον τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλης. Τὰ δὲ τῆς αὐγούστης ἀγράρια, τὰ τε ρούσια καὶ 65 μαῦρα, ὑπὸ τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὴν ἐφορείαν ὑπῆρχον τοῦ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς αὐγούστης, δηλονότι τὸν λόγον τῶν ἀγραρίων τούτων ποιούντος τοῦ τῆς τραπέζης οὐχὶ πρὸς τὴν αὐγοῦσταν, ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα. Ἐπὶ δὲ Λέοντος, τοῦ αἰοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως, ἦν πρωτοσπαθάριος

177*P τῆς | φιάλης ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Ἰωάννης, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην ὁ Θαλάσσων, 70 καὶ μετ' αὐτὸν γέγονεν ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος ὁ Ποδάρων, καὶ μετ' ἐκεῖνον ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, ὁ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἀρσενίου

237Be καὶ μαγγλαβίτου πατήρ. Οὗτοι δέ, ὃ τε ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος ὁ Ποδάρων καὶ ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, πρωτελάται γεγόνασιν τοῦ πατρικίου Νάσαρ καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωῖμου, καὶ ἐπὶ Βασιλείου, 75

progresses, to Nicomedeia, for instance, to Olympus, to Pythia, and therefore he had the two galleys specially made for the service and recreation of himself and his nobles. For when he went out on a short progress, he used often to leave one of the complements behind in the hippodrome to guard the palace; because the brigade of the Arithmos, according to the old rule which has grown into force, goes out on active service under the commander-in-chief and they, *this complement*, stay behind in the hippodrome and do not go out on progress with the emperors in the ordinary way.

From time immemorial the protospatharius of the basin has been an imperial appointment; and this protospatharius of the basin used to control and have beneath him all the oarsmen of the imperial barges, both scarlet and black, except for the barges of the Augusta: for the barges of the Augusta, both scarlet and black, were controlled by and under the authority of the master of the Augusta's table. In the reign of Leo, the glorious and most wise emperor, when the new galleys were constructed by imperial mandate, this same protospatharius of the basin had beneath his authority the oarsmen of these galleys also. Now, the aforesaid protospatharius of the basin would by ancient rule go down every day in the afternoon and take his seat in the basin (for which reason he was called the protospatharius of the basin), and would judge cases arising between the oarsmen, both of the barges and of the galleys, over whom he had authority, and would give sentence and administer according to the law. And whenever he found anyone acting beyond his competence or wronging another or remiss in his own work, he would punish him with a sound cudgelling. And, as has been said, all the oarsmen of the galleys and of the emperor's barges, both scarlet and black, were beneath the hand and the supervision of the protospatharius of the basin. But the barges of the Augusta, both scarlet and black, were beneath the hand and the supervision of the master of the Augusta's table, though of course the master of the table accounted for these barges not to the Augusta, but to the emperor. In the time of Leo, the glorious and most wise emperor, the protospatharius John, surnamed Thalasson, was protospatharius of the basin, and after him the protospatharius Podaron, and after him the protospatharius Leo Armenius, father of the protospatharius Arsenius, the lictor. These, the protospatharius Podaron and the protospatharius Leo Armenius, had been chief oarsmen of the patrician Nasar, the lord admiral, and in the time of Basil, the Christ-loving sovereign, were

V 42 τὸ om. edd. || 42/3 κατὰ τὸν ἐπικρατήσαντα παλαιὸν τύπον: κατὰ τὸν παλαιὸν τύπον ἐπεκράτησαν V || 43 ἐναπομένοντες (etiam V¹): ἐναπομένοντος V Me || 44 οὐ add. Moravesik || 56 δελὸν V edd.: δῆλός P || 58 ἐλάτων P || 60 ἢ <μή> ἐργαζόμενον con. Kyriakides || 61/2 μαγλαβίων P || 62 ἐπεξήρχετο F Be: ὑπεξήρχετο P || καθ' ὃν edd.: καθά P || 63 τε om. edd. || 64 ἐφορίαν P: θεωρίαν edd. || 66 χεῖρα F edd.: χεῖραν P || ἐφορίαν P || 68 αὐγοῦσαν P || 70 πρωτοσπαθάριος om. edd. || 73 ὁ om. Ba Be || 74 πρωτοσπαθάριος om. Ba Be ||

- τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, ἀνῆξαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πλωΐμου, καὶ γεγόνασιν πρωτελάται τοῦ ἀγραρίου τοῦ βασιλέως, ἐπὶ δὲ τῆς βασιλείας Λέοντος, τοῦ ἀοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως, ἡνίκα καὶ τὰ δρομώνια ἐποίησεν, διὰ τὴν ἀνδρείαν αὐτῶν καὶ τὴν ἐμπειρίαν τῆς θαλάσσης ἐποίησεν αὐτοὺς πρωτοκαράβους. Καὶ περιστάσεως γενομένης, εἰσήγαγεν ὁ βασιλεὺς 80
- 177*P τῶν δύο δρομωνίων τοὺς ἐλάτας μετὰ τῶν δύο πρωτοκα|ράβων τοῦ πρώτου δρομωνίου εἰς χελάνδια πλώϊμα, δοὺς αὐτοῖς ἐξόπλισιν πολλὴν καὶ ἀναγκαίαν, οἷον σκουτάρια, δόρκας, κλιβάνια κάλλιστα καὶ ἄλλα, ὅσα ἐπιδέονται πλώϊμοι στρατιῶται ἐπιφέρεισθαι, καὶ ἀνελάβετο αὐτοὺς ὁ πατρικίος Εὐστάθιος καὶ δρουγγάριος τοῦ πλωΐμου μετὰ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ 85
- στόλου, καὶ ἀπῆει κατὰ τῶν ἐναντίων. Τοῦτο δὲ ὅλον ἐποίησεν ὁ βασιλεὺς διὰ τὸ ἀποβλέπειν τὸν πατρικίον Εὐστάθιον καὶ δρουγγάριον τοῦ πλωΐμου πρὸς πόλεμον τῶν ἐναντίων. Καὶ ἀντ' ἐκείνων ἐκυβέρνα τὸ βασιλικὸν δρομώνιον Μιχαὴλ ὁ γέρων καὶ <Μιχαὴλ> ὁ συνετὸς ἐκεῖνος, ὄντων αὐτῶν τῷ τότε καιρῷ πρωτελατῶν. Οἱ δὲ ἐλαύνοντες εἰς τὰ δρομώνια ἕως τῆς 90
- 178*P ἐλεύσεως τῶν βασιλικῶν ἐλατῶν ὑπῆρχον Στενῦται ἐκ τῶν | οὐσιῶν τοῦ Στενοῦ. "Οτε δὲ ὑπέστρεψαν ἐκ τοῦ ταξιδίου, πάλιν ἦσαν εἰς τὴν ἰδίαν δουλείαν, καθὼς καὶ προὔπῃρχον. Τότε οἶονεὶ φιλοτιμούμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν πρωτοσπαθάριον τὸν Ποδάρωνα διὰ τὸ ἀνδραγαθῆσαι
- 238Be αὐτὸν καὶ εὐδοκιμῆσαι | ὑπὲρ πάντας εἰς τὸν πόλεμον καὶ μαρτυρηθῆναι 95
- καὶ παρὰ τοῦ πατρικίου Εὐσταθίου καὶ δρουγγαρίου τοῦ πλωΐμου ἕτερον τοιοῦτον μὴ εἶναι εἰς τὸ πλώϊμον ἐπὶ τε ἀνδρεία καὶ διεγέρσει καὶ ταῖς λοιπαῖς ἀρεταῖς καὶ μάλιστα τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα εὐνοίᾳ καὶ ὀρθῇ πίστει, δέδωκεν αὐτῷ καὶ τὴν ἐξουσίαν τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου τῆς φιάλης. Διὰ δὲ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν ἀγράμματος προστάζει τοῦ βασιλέως 100
- κατήρχετο κριτῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵπποδρόμου, καὶ συνεκαθέζετο μετὰ αὐτοῦ
- 178*P ἐν τῇ φιάλῃ, καὶ ἔκρινεν τοὺς ἐλάτας. | Τὰ δὲ αὐγουστιτικὰ ἀγράρια, καθὼς προεῖρηται, ἐπεκράτει ὁ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς αὐγούστης. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ προεβάλετο ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν τε Ποδάρωνα καὶ τὸν Λέοντα τὸν Ἀρμένην τοποτηρητάς τοῦ βασιλικοῦ πλωΐμου, πρωτοκαράβους δὲ τοῦ 105
- δρομωνίου αὐτοῦ προεβάλετο τὸν Μιχαὴλ ἐκεῖνον τὸν γέροντα, πρωτελάτην τῷ τότε καιρῷ τοῦ δρομωνίου τυγχάνοντα, δευτεροελάτην δὲ γεγονότα τοῦ ἀγραρίου Βασιλείου, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη, καὶ τὸν ἕτερον Μιχαὴλ, οὗ τὸ ἐπίκλην ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς, ὅστις ἦν πρότερον εἰς τὸ πλώϊμον πρωτελάτης τοῦ δρουγγαρίου Εὐσταθίου καὶ πατρικίου, ὅτε 110
- ἐπέρασεν τοὺς Τούρκους, καὶ κατεπολέμησεν τὸν Συμεῶν, τὸν ἄρχοντα Βουλγαρίας. Οὗτος οὖν ὁ Συμεῶν, ὁ ἄρχων Βουλγαρίας, μαθὼν τὴν τοῦ
- 179*P πλωΐμου πρὸς τὸν ποταμὸν ἀφίξιν, καὶ ὅτι μέλλει τὸ πλώϊμον τοὺς Τούρκους κατ' αὐτοῦ περᾶσαι, ἐποίησεν λέσας, ἥτοι πλοκοὺς ἰσχυροὺς πάνυ καὶ στερεμνίους, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι τοὺς Τούρκους ἀντιπερνᾶν, 115

promoted from the navy and became chief oarsmen of the barge of the emperor; and in the reign of Leo, the glorious and most wise emperor, when he constructed the galleys, he made them steersmen for their bravery and seamanship. And when a crisis arose, the emperor seconded the oarsmen of the two galleys, together with the two steersmen of the first galley, to ships of war of the navy, giving them much needful equipment, such as shields, leather targes, very fine coats of mail and everything else that naval personnel require to take with them; and the patrician Eustathius, the lord admiral, took them with the imperial fleet and went off against the enemy. All this the emperor did because the patrician Eustathius, the lord admiral, was intending to engage the enemy. And in their stead the imperial galley was steered by Michael the elder and the late *Michael* the clever, who were at that time chief oarsmen. And pending the return of the imperial oarsmen, those who rowed the galleys were Stenites from the complements of the Stenon. But when they returned from the campaign, they resumed the same employment that they had been in before. Then the emperor, to reward, as it were, the protospatharius Podaron because of the bravery he had shown and because he had approved himself above all others in the battle and had received a personal testimonial from the patrician Eustathius, the lord admiral, that there was in the navy none other like him for bravery and energy and the other virtues, and particularly for affection and upright loyalty toward the emperor, gave to him the authority of the protospatharius of the basin. But because he was illiterate, by order of the emperor a judge from the hippodrome used to go down and take his seat with him in the basin and judge the oarsmen. But the barges of the Augusta, as has been said before, were in the control of the master of the Augusta's table. After this, the emperor appointed Podaron and Leo Armenius to be vice-admirals of the imperial navy, and as steersmen of his galley he appointed the late Michael the elder, who was at that time chief oarsmen of the galley, and had been second oarsman of the barge of Basil, the Christ-loving sovereign, and the other Michael, surnamed Barkalas, who had previously served in the navy as chief oarsmen of the lord admiral, the patrician Eustathius, when he carried the Turks across and defeated Symeon, prince of Bulgaria. Now this Symeon, prince of Bulgaria, on learning that the navy had arrived in the river, and that the navy was about to carry over the Turks against him, constructed mantlets or wicker fencing, very strong and tough, so that the Turks might not be able to cross over, and by this device the Turks were

V 88 τῶν P¹ V edd.: τὸν P || 89 *post καὶ alterum Μιχαὴλ addendum coniecit Moravcsik* || δ² *om.* V edd. || αὐτῶν: αὐτῷ V Me || 90 πρωτελάτων P || 91 ἐλάτων P || Στενεῖται P || 97 πλώϊμον] *litteras πλω in ras. scr.* P¹ || 98 *post τῇ add.* τὸν P *del.* P¹ || 100 δὲ: τε edd. || 101 ἀπὸ: ἐπὶ *coni.* Zachariä v. Lingenthal || 102 ἀόγουστικὰ V edd. || 106 δρομωνίου] *litteras μων in ras. scr.* P¹ || 107 τοῦ *om.* edd. || 109 ὁ *om.* edd. || 111 κατεπολέμισεν P || 114 πλοκάς V edd. || ἰσχυράς Ba Be || 115 ἀντιπερᾶν V edd. ||

239Be | δι' ἣν ἐπίνοιαν καὶ ἐκαλύφθησαν οἱ Τοῦρκοι τὸ πρῶτον περᾶσαι. Ὁ οὖν
 προρρηθεὶς Μιχαὴλ ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς μετὰ καὶ ἄλλων δύο πλωτῶν ἀναλαβό-
 μενοι τὰ σκουτάρια καὶ σπαθία αὐτῶν, ἀνδρείω καὶ ῥωμαλέω ὁρμήματι
 ἐκπηδήσαντες τοῦ χελανδίου, κατέκοψαν τὰς λέσας, ἦτοι τοὺς πλοκοῦς,
 καὶ ἤνοιξαν τὸν πόρον τοὺς Τούρκους. Τοῦτον οὖν τὸν Βαρκαλᾶν οἱ 120
 Τοῦρκοι ἰδόντες καὶ τὸ ἀνδρεῖον αὐτοῦ ὑπερθαυμάσαντες, ὅτι μόνος τῶν
 δύο προπορευόμενος πλωτῶν πρῶτος κατέκοψεν τὸν πλοκόν, θαυμά-
 179*P σαντες εἶπον, ὅτι | τοῦτον ἔπρεπεν ὀνομάζεσθαι πατρίκιον καὶ εἶναι
 κεφαλὴν τοῦ πλωτῆμου. Τὴν οὖν τοῦ Βαρκαλοῦ ἀνδρειότητα ἀκούσας ὁ
 βασιλεὺς, ἐποίησεν αὐτὸν δευτεροελάτην εἰς τὸ βασιλικὸν δρομῶνιον. 125
 Εἰδ' οὕτως τοῦ Ποδάρωνος καὶ τοῦ Λέοντος γενομένων τοποτηρητῶν,
 προεβλήθη ὁ Μιχαὴλ ὁ γέρων καὶ οὗτος ὁ Βαρκαλᾶς πρωτοκάραβοι τοῦ
 δρομωνίου.

Ὅτι ὁ προρρηθεὶς Λέων ὁ Ἀρμένης, ὁ πατήρ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου
 Ἀρσενίου καὶ μαγγλαβίτου, τοῦ τελευτήσαντος, τελευτᾷ τοποτηρητῆς 130
 ὢν εἰς τὸ πλωτῆμον, ὁ δὲ πρωτοσπαθᾶριος ὁ Ποδάρων μετὰ τινος χρόνου
 προεβλήθη στρατηγὸς ἐν τῷ θέματι τῶν Κιβυρραιωτῶν.

Ὅτι τοῦ Ποδάρωνος γεγονότος τοποτηρητοῦ, προεβλήθη πρωτο-
 σπαθᾶριος τῆς φιάλης ὁ πρωτοσπαθᾶριος Θεοφύλακτος ὁ Βιμβιλίδης,
 180*P ἀνεψιὸς τυγχάνων τοῦ | πρωτοσπαθαρίου Ἰωάννου, οὗ τὸ ἐπικλην 135
 240Be Θαλάσσω, καὶ διήρκεσεν ἐν ἔτεσί τισιν | τῆς πρώτης αὐτοκρατορίας
 Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ πορφυρογεννήτου καὶ φιλοχρίστου δεσπότη. Τούτου
 οὖν τελευτήσαντος, — διὰ τὸ ὑπεργηρᾶσαι τὸν προρρηθέντα Μιχαὴλ τὸν
 γέροντα καὶ ἐν πολλῶν ἐτῶν περιόδοις διατρίψαι ἐν τῇ τοῦ πρωτοκαρά-
 βου ὑπουργίᾳ — ἐτιμήθη τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου ἀξίᾳ καὶ προεβλήθη 140
 καὶ πρωτοσπαθᾶριος τῆς φιάλης. Καὶ εἰσερχομένου τοῦ βασιλέως ἐν
 τῇ φιάλῃ ἐν τῷ δρομῶνιῳ καὶ ἀπύοντος εἴτε ἐν προκένσῳ, εἴτε ἀλλαχοῦ,
 ἵστατο ὁ καλὸς ἐκεῖνος γέρων καὶ ἀείμνηστος κατὰ τὴν τῆς θαλάσσης
 ἐμπειρίαν μέσον τοῦ δρομωνίου, προθυμοποιῶν καὶ προτρεπόμενος τοὺς
 180*P τοῦ δρομωνίου ἐλάτας γενναϊότερον καὶ ἀνδρικώτερον ἐλαύνειν τε | καὶ 145
 κωπηλατεῖν, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τοῖς τότε πρωτοκαράβοις ὑποτιθέμενος κατὰ
 τὴν δυσκрасίαν καὶ πνεύσιν τῶν ἀνέμων τὴν βασιλείαν ναῦν πηδαλιουχεῖν
 τε καὶ κυβερνᾶν. Τούτου οὖν τελευτήσαντος, — διὰ τὸ νήπιον τυγχάνειν
 τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὸ ἀδιάκριτον τοῦ πατρικίου Κωνσταντίνου καὶ παρα-
 κοιμωμένου — γέγονεν ὁ Θεόδοτος ἐκεῖνος πρωτοκάραβος, τῷ τότε 150
 καιρῷ πρωτελάτης ὢν, τιμηθεὶς κατὰ διαφόρους καιροὺς κανδιδᾶτος,
 στρατῶρ, σπαθᾶριος, σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα πρωτο-
 σπαθᾶριος καὶ πρωτοσπαθᾶριος τῆς φιάλης, ὅς ἦν γαμβρὸς τοῦ προρρη-
 θέντος Μιχαὴλ, τοῦ γέροντος. Οὐδὲ γὰρ ἀπὸ παλαιοῦ τύπου ποτὲ ἐγεγό-
 νει ἢ ἐτιμήθη πρωτοκάραβος τοῦ βασιλέως πρωτοσπαθᾶριος, ἀλλ' οὐδέ 155

at first prevented from crossing. So the aforesaid Michael Barkalas and two other sailors took up their shields and swords, and leaping down from the warship with a brave and powerful rush, cut down the mantlets or wicker fences and opened the passage for the Turks. The Turks, who watched this Barkalas and exceedingly admired his bravery because he, by himself, advancing in front of the two sailors, was first to cut down the fencing, said in their admiration that this man ought to be named patrician and be head of the navy. So the emperor, on hearing of the bravery of Barkalas, made him second oarsman in the imperial galley. Thereafter, when Podaron and Leo became vice-admirals, Michael the elder and this Barkalas were appointed steersmen of the galley.

The aforesaid Leo Armenius, father of the late protospatharius Arsenius, the lictor, died a vice-admiral of the navy; but the protospatharius Podaron was after some years appointed military governor in the province of the Kibyrrhaiotai.

When Podaron became vice-admiral, the protospatharius Theophylact Bimbilidis was appointed protospatharius of the basin, who was nephew of the protospatharius John, surnamed Thalasson, and he lasted during a few years of the first reign of Constantine the Porphyrogenitus, the Christ-loving sovereign. On his death, since Michael the elder aforesaid was grown very old indeed and had given many long years of service as steersman, he was honoured with the rank of protospatharius and was also appointed protospatharius of the basin. And when the emperor embarked on the galley in the basin and set out either upon a progress or somewhere else, that good old man, ever memorable for his seamanship, would take his stand amidships of the galley, inspiring und urging the oarsmen of the galley to pull and row more bravely and manfully, and at the same time instructing the steersmen of the day how to manage the rudders and steer the imperial vessel when the winds were blowing distemperately. Well, he died; and, owing to the infancy of the emperor and the indiscretion of the patrician and chamberlain Constantine, the late Theodotus, at that time chief oarsmen, was made steersman, and was at sundry times honoured with the ranks of candidate, strator, spatharius, spatharo-candidate, and afterwards protospatharius and protospatharius of the basin; he was son-in-law of the aforesaid Michael the elder. For by ancient rule a steersman of the emperor had never been made, or honoured with the

V 116 Τούρκοι P || 120 τοὺς om. edd. || Τούρκοις V edd. || 121 Τούρκοι P || 123 καὶ εἶναι edd.: εἶναι . καὶ P || 125 δρομώνιον βασιλικὸν edd.: δρομώνιον <τὸ> βασιλικὸν com. Bekker || 139 ἐν: εἰς edd. || περιόδοις Moravcsik: περιόδους P edd. || 144 ἐμπειρίαν litteras ei in ras. scr. P¹ || 145 ἀνδρείωτερον (litteris ei in ras. scriptis) P¹: ἀνδρείωτερον edd. || 147 ναῦν V edd.: ναῦ P || 151 κανδιδάτος P || 152 σπαθαροκανδιδάτος P ||

- 241Be σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος, ἀλλ' | ἢ κανδιδᾶτος ἢ στράτωρ | ἢ τὸ πολὺ σπαθά-
 181P ριος. Ἐπὶ δὲ Λέοντος, τοῦ αἰοιδίμου καὶ σοφωτάτου βασιλέως, οὗτος
 μόνος ὁ Μιχαὴλ ἐτίμηθη σπαθάριος καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος.
 Διὰ δὲ τὸ νήπιον τυγχάνειν τὸν βασιλέα, καθὼς εἴρηται, καὶ τὸ ἀδιάκρι-
 τον τοῦ πατρικίου Κωνσταντίνου καὶ παρακοιμωμένου γεγόνασιν οἱ 100
 πρωτοκάραβι σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτοι, καὶ οὗτος ὁ Μιχαὴλ πρωτοσπαθά-
 ριος. Τοῦ δὲ βασιλέως τοῦ κυροῦ Ῥωμανοῦ ἀνελθόντος ἐν τῷ παλατίῳ
 καὶ τῆς βασιλείας, οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως εἰπεῖν, ἐγκρατοῦς γενομένου, τὸν μὲν
 Θεόδοτον διὰ τὴν πρὸς Κωνσταντῖνον, τὸν φιλόχριστον δεσπότην καὶ
 βασιλέα, εὖνοιαν οὐ μόνον διεδέξατο, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν διὰ δαρμουῦ καὶ κουρᾶς 165
 ἐπεξῆλθε τιμωρίαν, καὶ ἐν διηνεκεῖ παρέπεμψεν ἐξορίᾳ, ἐν ἣ καὶ τῷ
 181P τέλει τοῦ βίου ἐχρήσατο, | ἑάσας τὸν σὺν αὐτῷ πρωτοκάραβον Κωνσταντῖ-
 νον ἐκεῖνον τὸν Λωρικᾶτον διὰ τὸ διὰ φόβον εὐνοικῶς διακεῖσθαι πρὸς
 αὐτὸν καὶ ὅρκῳ ἰδιοχείρῳ ἐξαρνησάμενον τὴν πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα Κων-
 σταντῖνον εὖνοιαν καὶ ἀγάπην, ὃν πρῶτον μὲν σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτον 170
 ἐτίμησεν, καὶ πρῶτον πρωτοκάραβον ποιήσας καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον
 τῆς φιάλης προβαλόμενος, μετ' ὀλίγον καὶ πρωτοσπαθάριον ἐτίμησεν.
 Οὗτος οὖν δι' ὑπομνήσεως τοῦ κληρικοῦ Ἰωάννου καὶ κατὰ συγχώρησιν
 Θεοῦ ῥέκτωρος γεγονότος, ὑπέθετο τῷ μακαρίτῃ βασιλεῖ, τῷ κυρῷ
 Ῥωμανῷ, ὅτι· «Ὁ πρωτοσπαθάριος Θεοφύλακτος καὶ τῆς τραπέζης τῆς 175
 242Be αὐγούστης, ἐπεὶ προβολὴ καὶ ἀντίληψις τῆς | μητρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
 τυγχάνει καὶ αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως, ἀνάγκη καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἰδίους δεσπότας
 182P καὶ εὐεργέ|τας προσπαθεῖν. Καὶ τίς ἢ χρεῖα τὸν λαὸν τῶν ἀγραρίων
 τῆς φιάλης ἐν δυσὶν ἐξουσίαις διαιρεῖσθαι; Δύναται γὰρ ὁ τῆς τραπέζης
 τῆς αὐγούστης τῇ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα καὶ τὴν αὐγοῦσταν εὖνοια κρατοῦ- 180
 μενος, ἐξαπατῆσαι τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτοῦ κρατουμένους αὐγουστιατικοὺς ἀγρα-
 ριώτας, πολλάκις δὲ καὶ τοὺς τῶν δρομωνίων ἐλάτας, καὶ μελετήσουσιν
 τινα ἐπανάστασιν κατὰ τῆς βασιλείας σου.» Ταῦτα εἰπὼν πείθει τὸν
 κακὸν ἐκεῖνον καὶ σχολιὸν ῥέκτωρα καὶ δι' αὐτοῦ τὸν βασιλέα. Εὐκαλόν
 γὰρ ἢ κουφότης καὶ ἀδιάκριτος γνώμη πρὸς ἅπαν τὸ κακούργως λεγό- 185
 μενον καὶ ὑποτιθέμενον ἀποπλανᾶσθαι καὶ ἐκκυλλεσθαι. Καὶ εἰπὼν
 182P πείθει καὶ πείσας, δίδοται αὐτῷ καὶ ἡ τῶν αὐγοῦ|στιατικῶν ἀγραρίων
 ἐξουσία. Καὶ ἔκτοτε ἐπεκράτησεν τὸ τὸν πρωτοκάραβον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
 δρομωνίου ἐπέχειν καὶ ἐξουσιάζειν πάντας τοὺς ἐλάτας τῶν τε δρομωνίων

V 156 σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος P || κανδιδᾶτος P || 158 σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτος P || 159
 νήπιον — καὶ τὸ σπ. Be || 160 καὶ σπ. V edd. || 161 σπαθαροκανδιδᾶτοι P ||
 163 ἐγκρατοῦς edd.: ἐγκρατῶς P || 165 <οῦ> διεδέξατο conit. Meursius || 166
 ἐπεξῆλθε corr. Jenkins: ὑπεξῆλθε P edd. || παρέπεμψεν V edd. || 168 φόβου

rank of protospatharius, or even of spatharocandidate, but was either a candidate or a strator, or at the most, a spatharius. And in the time of Leo, the glorious and most wise emperor, this Michael alone was honoured with the rank of spatharius and subsequently of spatharocandidate. But owing, as has been said, to the infancy of the emperor and to the indiscretion of the patrician Constantine, the chamberlain, steersmen became spatharocandidates, and this Michael a protospatharius. But when the emperor lord Romanus ascended into the palace and, somehow or other, possessed himself of the throne, he superseded Theodotus because of his affection for Constantine, the Christ-loving sovereign and emperor, and not only that but he punished him with flogging and tonsuring and dismissed him to perpetual banishment, in which he came to the end of his life; but his colleague in the steersmanship, the late Constantine Loricatus, *the emperor lord Romanus* let be, because *Loricatus* was affectionately disposed towards him through fear and had renounced, by an oath written in his own hand, his affection and love toward the emperor Constantine; him *the emperor lord Romanus* first honoured with the rank of spatharocandidate, and, after making him first steersman and appointing him protospatharius of the basin, honoured him shortly afterwards with the rank of protospatharius. Now, this man, by means of a memorial to the cleric John, whom God had allowed to become rector, put before the emperor, of blessed memory, the lord Romanus, this suggestion: «The protospatharius Theophylact, master of the Augusta's table, since he is an appointment and a support of the mother of the emperor and of the emperor himself, must necessarily be in sympathy with his own masters and benefactors. Besides, what need is there for the men of the barges of the basin to be divided between two authorities? For the master of the Augusta's table, governed by his affection towards the emperor and the Augusta, may mislead the sailors of the barges of the Augusta, who are under his control, and perhaps even the oarsmen of the galleys, and they will plan a rising against your imperial majesty.» With these words he won over that evil and crooked rector, and through him the emperor. For it is easy for a light head and indiscreet heart to be seduced and fall towards every malicious word and hint. He spoke and won them over, and, having won them over, was given the authority over the barges of the Augusta also. And since then it has become the rule for the steersman of the imperial galley to have charge of and exercise authority

edd. || 169 ἐξαρηνησάμενον edd.: ἐξαρηνησαμένου P || 170 σπαθαροκανιδάτον P || 174 ῥέκτωρος scr. Moravcsik: ῥακτωρος (*litteris ai in ras. scriptis*) P¹ V edd. || βασιλεῖ, τῷ: τῷ βασιλεῖ Be || 180 τὴν αὐγούστην Moravcsik: τὴν αὐγούστην edd. τῇ αὐγούστη P || 182 μελετήσουσιν copl. Moravcsik: μελετήσωσιν P μελετήσωσι edd. || 184 ῥέκτωρα scr. Moravcsik: ῥακτωρα P edd. || 188 τὸν πρωτοκάραβον Meursius Ba Be: τῶν πρωτοκαράβων P ||

βασιλικῶν τε καὶ αὐγουστιaticῶν ἀγραφίων καὶ εἶναι καὶ πρωτο-190
σπαθάριον τῆς φιάλης.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐπὶ Λέοντος, τοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ ἀειμνήστου βασι-
λέως, ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς δύσεως θεμάτων λογαρίου ἀπαίτησις διὰ τοῦ
πρωτοσπαθαρίου Λέοντος καὶ γεγονότος στρατηγοῦ τοῦ Τζικάνη ἐκ
τῶν αἰρουμένων μὴ ταξιδεῦσιν. 195

Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ τοῦ αὐτοῦ φιλοχρίστου καὶ ἀειμνήστου
243Be Λέοντος ἐγένετο ἀπὸ τῶν τῆς δύσεως θεμάτων | λογαρίου ἀπαίτησις
διὰ τοῦ μαγίστρου Ἰωάννου τοῦ Ἑλλαδᾶ, τῷ τότε πατρικίου αὐτοῦ ὄντος.

183vP Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ πάλιν ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότη, βουλευθέντος
ταξιδεῦσαι τοὺς Πελοποννησαίους ἐν Λαγουβαρδία, τοῦ πρωτοσπαθαρίου 200
Ἰωάννου τοῦ Πρωτεύοντος ἐν Πελοποννήσῳ τότε στρατηγοῦντος,
ἤρετίσαντο οἱ αὐτοὶ Πελοποννησαῖοι μὴ ταξιδεῦσαι, ἀλλὰ δοῦναι ἱππάρια
χίλια ἐστρωμένα καὶ χαλινωμένα καὶ λογάριον κεντηνάριον ἓν, ἅπερ
καὶ μετὰ πολλῆς προθυμίας παρέσχον.

52. Ἡ γενομένη ἀπαίτησις τῶν ἱππαρίων ἐν τῷ
θέματι Πελοποννήσου ἐπὶ Ῥωμανοῦ δεσπότη, 5
καθ' ὧς προεῖρηται.

Ὁ μητροπολίτης Κορίνθου ἱππάρια τέσσαρα· ὁ μητροπολίτης
Πατρῶν ἱππάρια τέσσαρα· οἱ ἐπίσκοποι πάντες τοῦ θέματος ἀνὰ ἱππά- 5
ρια δύο· οἱ πρωτοσπαθάριοι ἀνὰ ἱππάρια τρία· οἱ σπαθαροκανιδιδᾶτοι
183vP ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο· | οἱ σπαθάριοι, οἱ στρατῶρες ἀνὰ ἱππαρίου ενός· τὰ
βασιλικά καὶ πατριαρχικά μοναστήρια ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο· τὰ τῶν ἀρχι-
επισκοπῶν, μητροπόλεων καὶ ἐπισκοπῶν μοναστήρια ἀνὰ ἱππάρια δύο·
244Be τὰ ἄπορα μοναστήρια σύνδυο ἱππάριον ἓν. Οἱ δὲ ἔχοντες βασιλικά 10
ἀξιώματα, πλώμοι, κογχυλευταί, χαρτοποιοὶ ἱππάρια οὐ δεδώκασιν.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ πᾶς ὁ στρατὸς Πελοποννήσου ἀπληθήθησαν ὑπὲρ
τοῦδε τοῦ ταξιδίου ἀνὰ νομίσματα πέντε, οἱ δὲ παντελῶς ἄποροι σύνδυο
νομίσματα πέντε, ἐξ ὧν συνέστη καὶ τὸ προρρηθὲν διὰ χαράγματος
κεντηνάριον ἓν. 15

V 192 ἀειμνήστου καὶ φιλοχρίστου edd. || 200 Πελοποννησέους P: Πελοποννησίους
P¹ edd. || Λογουβαρδία Ba Be || 102 Πελοποννησέοι P: Πελοποννήσιοι F
edd. || μὴ s. v. add. P¹ in *textum receperunt* V edd. || 204 καὶ om. V
edd. || προθυμίας *litteras* θυμ in *ras. scr.* P¹.

51, 52

over all the oarsmen, both of the imperial galleys and of the barges of the Augusta, and to be also protospatharius of the basin.

In the time of Leo, the Christ-loving and ever-memorable emperor, a demand was made from the provinces of the west, through the protospatharius Leo Tzikanes, the ex-military governor, for ready money from those who opted against military service.

And again, in the time of the same Christ-loving and ever-memorable Leo, ready money was demanded from the provinces of the west, through the magister John Eladas, who was then patrician.

And again in the time of the sovereign Romanus, who desired the Peloponnesians to do military service in Lombardy, the protospatharius John Proteuon being then military governor in Peloponnesus, these same Peloponnesians opted against military service, but to give *instead* a thousand horses, with saddles and bridles, and one hundred pounds in ready money, and these they supplied with great readiness.

52. Demand made for horses in the province of Peloponnesus in the time of the sovereign Romanus, as stated above.

The metropolitan of Corinth, four horses; the metropolitan of Patras, four horses; all the bishops of the province, two horses each; the protospatharii, three horses each; the spatharocandidates, two horses each; the spatharii, the strators, one horse each; the imperial and patriarchal monasteries, two horses each; the archiepiscopal, metropolitan and episcopal monasteries, two horses each; the monasteries without means, one horse between two. Holders of imperial dignities, sailors, purple-fishers, parchment-makers did not provide horses.

A demand was made for five nomismata per head from the whole military force of Peloponnesus in respect of this military service, and from those absolutely without means of five nomismata from every two, and from this was made up the aforesaid one hundred pounds in coined money.

52. 4 τέσσαρα edd.: δ' P || 5 τέσσαρα edd.: δ' P || 6 τρία edd.: γ' P || σπαθαροκανδιδάται P || 7 στρατορες P || 8/9 ἀρχιεπισκοπῶν *coni.* Moravcsik: ἀρχιεπισκόπων P edd. || 9 ἐπισκόπων edd. || 10 σὺν δύο P || 11 κοινῶς P || 13 πέντε *scr.* Moravcsik: ε' P edd. || σὺν δύο P || 14 πέντε *scr.* Moravcsik: ε' P edd.

53. Ἱστορία περὶ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος.

Βασιλεύοντος Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐν Ῥώμῃ, ἐν δὲ τῇ Χερσωνιτῶν
 184^rP στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος Θεμιστοῦ, τοῦ Θεμιστοῦ, | Σαυρό-
 ματος, ὁ ἐκ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν, Κρισκορόνου δὲ παῖς γενόμενος, συναθροί-
 σας Σαρμάτας τοὺς τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην οἰκοῦντας, ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο 5
 κατὰ Ῥωμαίων, καὶ καταλαβὼν (τὴν) τῶν Λαζῶν χώραν καὶ πολεμήσας
 τοὺς ἐκεῖσε, φθάσει καὶ ἕως τοῦ Ἄλως ποταμοῦ. Μαθὼν δὲ τοῦτο ὁ
 βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανός, πορθεῖσθαι τὴν τῶν Λαζῶν χώραν καὶ τὴν
 Ποντικὴν, ἀπέστειλεν ἐκεῖσε στρατὸν ἀντιπαρατάξασθαι Σαρμάταις
 βουλόμενος. Ἦν δὲ ἑξαρχος τοῦ στρατοῦ Κώνστας τριβούνος, καὶ καταλα- 10
 βὼν τὸν Ἄλυν ὁ Κώνστας σὺν τῷ στρατῷ, ἐκαθέσθη ἐκεῖσε, κωλύων
 Σαρμάτας ἀντιπερᾶσαι τὸν Ἄλυν. Καὶ μὴ δυναμένου αὐτοῦ ἀντιπαρατά-
 245Be ξασθαι αὐτούς, | ἐβουλεύετο καθ' ἑαυτὸν ὁ | Κώνστας μηδαμῶς ἄλλως
 184^vP δύνασθαι τοὺς Σαρμάτας ἐκδιώξαι, εἰ μήτι γε τῶν πλησιοχώρων τῆς
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης τινὰς κατ' αὐτῶν ἐκπεμφθῆναι 15
 εἰς πόλεμον καὶ τὰς τούτων φαμίλιας ἐκπορθῆσαι, ὅπως ταῦτα ἀκούσας
 ὁ Σαυρόματος ὑποστρέψῃ ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου, καὶ ταῦτα μηνῦσαι τῷ βασιλεῖ,
 ἐφ' ᾧ τε ἀποστείλῃ κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν καὶ τούτους διεγείρῃ κατὰ
 τῶν Σαρματῶν, ὡς πλησιοχώρων αὐτῶν ὄντων, καὶ πολεμῆσαι τὰς
 αὐτῶν φαμίλιας πρὸς τὸ τὸν Σαυρόματον ἀκούσαντα τὸ τάχος ὑποστρέψαι 20
 ἐκ τοῦ πολέμου. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Διοκλητιανὸς ταῦτα ἀκούσας, ἀπέστειλεν
 185^rP | εὐθέως κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, προτρεπόμενος συμμαχεῖσθαι αὐτῷ καὶ
 ἀπελθόντας τὴν Βοσποριανῶν καὶ Σαρματῶν χώραν ἐκπορθῆσαι καὶ
 τὰς τούτων φαμίλιας αἰχμαλωτίσαι. Στεφανηφοροῦντος δὲ τότε καὶ
 πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν Χρήστου, τοῦ Παπίου, οἱ Χερσωνῖται 25
 τοῖς τοῦ βασιλέως ῥήμασιν ἀσμένως ὑπακούσαντες, ἐμηχανῶντο λοιπόν,
 ποίῳ τρόπῳ δυνηθεῖεν τὴν τε τοῦ Σαυρομάτου πόλιν Βόσπορον καὶ τὰ
 τῆς Μαιώτιδος καστέλλια παραλαβεῖν. Καὶ συναθροίσαντες τοὺς τῶν
 πλησιοχώρων καστελλίων ἄνδρας καὶ κατασκευάσαντες ὄρματα πολεμικά
 καὶ ἐνθέντες ἐν αὐτοῖς τὰς λεγομένας χειροβολίστρας, παρεγένοντο κατὰ 30
 185^vP | τὴν Βοσποριανῶν πόλιν, καὶ ποιήσαντες ἐγκρύμματα διὰ τῆς νυκτὸς
 246Be ὀλιγοστοὶ προσῆψαν τὸν πόλεμον τῇ πόλει, | καὶ τειχομαχῆσαντες ἀπὸ
 ὁρῶν ἕως ὥρας τρίτης, ἐτεκμήρναντο τοῦ φυγεῖν, μὴ προδεῖξαντες

V 53. 4 Κρισκορόνου *coni.* Bekker: Κρίσων. Ὅρου P Κρισκωνόρου Be ||
 5 τοὺς *om.* edd. || ἐστρατ(οπεδ)εύσατο Migne || 6 τὴν *add.* Be || πολεμίας
 P || 8 *ante* πορθεῖσθαι *addendum* καὶ *coni.* Jenkins || 11 ἐκαθέσθη: κατέστη
 Be || 13 αὐτοῖς edd. || ἄλλως V edd.: ἄλλος P || 14 μήτοι P || 16 φαμηλίας
 P || ἐκπορθῆσαι F ἐκπορθεῖσαι P V: ἐκπορθεῖσθαι edd. || 17 Σαυρόματος *scr.*

53. Story of the city of Cherson.

When Diocletian was emperor in Rome, and Themistus, son of Themistus, was chief magistrate and primate in the country of the Chersonites, Sauromatus the Bosporian, son of Criscoronus, gathered together the Sarmatians who dwelt on the Maeotic lake and marched against the Romans, and, having occupied the country of the Lazi and defeated those who were there, arrived as far as the Halys river. The emperor Diocletian, learning this, that the country of the Lazi and the Pontic land were being laid waste, sent thither an army with intent to oppose the Sarmatians. The commander of the army was Constans the tribune, and Constans, having reached the Halys with the army, sat down there and prevented the Sarmatians from crossing the Halys. And being unable himself to oppose them, Constans resolved in his own mind that in no other way could he expel the Sarmatians except perhaps if some of the neighbours of the Bosporians and of the Maeotic lake were sent out to make war upon them and plunder their families, in order that Sauromatus might hear of it and retire from the war; and to communicate this in a message to the emperor, so that the emperor should send to the Chersonites and rouse them against the Sarmatians, their neighbours, and to attack their families, so that Sauromatus, when he heard of it, might speedily retire from the war. Hearing this, the emperor Diocletian at once sent to the Chersonites bidding them to join him in the war and to go and plunder the country of the Bosporians and Sarmatians and take their families captive. The chief magistrate and primate of the country of the Chersonites was at that time Chrestus, son of Papias, and the Chersonites willingly obeyed the words of the emperor and therefore set about devising in what manner they might be able to capture the city of Sauromatus, Bosporus, and the forts of the Maeotis. They gathered together the men of the neighbouring forts and constructed military waggons and placed in them the so-called arbalests, and they arrived at the city of the Bosporians and, after laying an ambush while it was night, a handful of them joined battle at the city; and having fought at the wall from dawn till the third hour, they made a show of flight, not

Moravesik: Σαυρομάτος P Σαυρομάτας edd. || υποστρέψη Ba Be: υποστρέψ(η?) *per comp.* P υποστρέψη V Me || μηνῦσαι coni. Jenkins: μηνύση edd. μηνύσει P ἐμήνυσε coni. Bekker || 18 ἀποστείλαι coni. Bekker: ἀπέστειλε P edd. || καὶ τοὺτους διήγειρεν bis P || διεγείραι coni. Bekker: διήγειρεν P διήγειρε edd. || 19 Σαρματῶν Migne: Σαρμάτων P edd. || 20 φαμηλιάς P || Σαυρομάταν edd. || 23 ἀπελθόντας Be: ἀπελθόντες P || Σαρματῶν Migne: Σαρμάτων P edd. || 24 φαμηλιάς P || αἰχμαλωτῖσαι] *litteras αἶχμα in ras. scr.* P¹ || 25 post Χερσωνιτῶν add. χώρας V edd. || Χρίστου P || 32 ὀλίγιστοι Be || 33 προδείξαντες *corr.* Moravesik: προδείξαντες P coni. Bekker: προσδείξαντες edd. ||

- τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄρμασι κατασκευασμένας χειροβολίστρας. Καὶ δὴ τῶν ἐν τῇ
 Βοσπόρῳ νομισάντων ὡς δι' ὀλιγότητα ἡττημένους φεύγειν τοὺς Χερσω- 35
 νίτας, καταδαρρήσαντες ἑαυτῶν ἐξήεσαν πρὸς διώξιν αὐτῶν. Οἱ δὲ
 Χερσωνῖται ἡρέμα, φησί, φεύγοντες ταῖς χειροβολίστραις τοὺς διώκον-
 τας ἀνήλυσαν Βοσποριανούς, ἀναστάντες δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐνεδρεύοντες Χερσω-
 186*P νῖται, καὶ περικυκλώσαντες τοὺς Βοσποριανούς, πάντας αὐτοὺς | κατέσφα-
 ξαν, καὶ ὑποστρέψαντες κατέλαβον τὴν Βόσπορον, ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὰ πρὸς 40
 τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην καστέλλια καὶ πάσας τὰς φαμίλιας <τῶν>
 Σαυρομάτων, καὶ ἐκαθέζοντο ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ, μηδένα τοῦ λοιποῦ κατα-
 σφάζοντες, πλὴν τῶν πολεμησάντων, καὶ ἐχόμενοι Βοσπόρου, ἐφύλαττον
 αὐτήν. Ἡμερῶν δὲ τινων διαγενομένων, λέγει Χρῆστος, ὁ τοῦ Παπίου
 ταῖς τῶν Σαυρομάτων γυναιξίν, ὅτι· «Ἡμεῖς οὐκ εἶχαμεν χρεῖαν ὑμᾶς 45
 πολεμεῖν, ἀλλ' ἐπειδὴ ὁ Σαυρόματος ἀπῆλθεν τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων χώραν
 πορθῆσαι, τούτου χάριν προτραπέντες ἡμεῖς παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥω-
 186*P μαίων, ὡς ὑπήκοοι αὐτοῦ ὄντες, ἐπολεμήσαμεν ὑμᾶς. Ἐὰν οὖν θέλετε
 ζῆσαι ἐν τῇ πόλει ὑμῶν, δεῦτε ἀποστείλωμεν πρέσβεις πρὸς τὸν κύριον
 ὑμῶν, Σαυρόματον, ἐφ' ᾧ τε αὐτὸν ποιῆσαι εἰρήνην μετὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων 50
 ἐπ' ὧσιν τῶν πρέσβων ἡμῶν καὶ ἀναχωρῆσαι τῶν ἐκεῖσε, καὶ ἡμεῖς
 247Be ἀφίομεν ὑμᾶς, | καὶ ἀπερχόμεθα ἐν τῇ πόλει ἡμῶν, οὕτω μέντοι, προτέμ-
 ποντος Σαυρομάτου ἐνταῦθα τοὺς πρέσβεις ἡμῶν καὶ μετὰ τῶν ἰδίων
 ἀνθρώπων μνησύνοντος ἡμῖν τὰ τῆς εἰρήνης, καὶ οὕτως ἀφίομεν ὑμᾶς
 καὶ ἀναχωροῦμεν· εἰ δὲ καὶ δοκιμάσῃ Σαυρόματος δόλω τινὶ ἔρχεσθαι, 55
 ὡς νομίζων ἡμᾶς ἐνταῦθα συγκλεῖσαι καὶ πολεμῆσαι, καὶ γινώμεν τοῦτο
 διὰ τῶν σκουλιατῶρων ἡμῶν, πάντας ὑμᾶς ἀπὸ μικροῦ ἕως μεγάλου
 187*P κατασφάζομεν, καὶ οὕτως | ἀναχωροῦμεν τῶν ἐντεῦθεν. Καὶ τί τὸ λοιπὸν
 Σαυρομάτῳ ὄφελος, τῆς φαμίλιας αὐτοῦ πάσης καὶ τῆς πόλεως ἀπολλυ-
 μένης;» Αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες Σαυρομάτου ταῦτα ἀκούσασαι, σπουδαίως τοῦτο 60
 γενέσθαι παρεσκεύασαν. Καὶ δὴ ἀποστέλλουσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται μετὰ
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ ἰδίου πέντε πρέσβεις πρὸς Σαυρόματον, μνησύνοντες
 αὐτῷ τὰ γενόμενα καὶ λεχθέντα. Καὶ δὴ τῶν πρέσβων καταλαβόντων
 τὸν Σαυρόματον κατὰ τοὺς τοῦ Ἄλυος ποταμοῦ τόπους, ἀνήγγειλαν
 αὐτῷ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα κατὰ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν παρὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν. 65
 Ὁ δὲ ἐν πολλῇ στενώσει γενόμενος, ὡς δῆθεν, φησί, βουλόμενος τοὺς
 187*P τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν | πρέσβεις ἐκ τῆς ὁδοπορίας ἀναπαῦσαι, λέγει αὐτοῖς·
 «Ἐπειδὴ κοπωμένοι ἐστέ, θέλω ὑμᾶς ὀλίγας ἡμέρας ἀναπαῆναι, καὶ
 εἴθ' οὕτως πάντα τὰ ὑφ' ὑμῶν λεχθέντα ποιήσω· *** ἐντεῦθεν ἀπέλθατε

V 34 κατασκευασμένας Ba Be || τῇ Ba Be: τῷ P || 41 φαμῆλιας P || τῶν
 add. edd. || 42 Σαυροματῶν V edd. || 43 Βοσπόρου: τὴν Βόσπορον edd. ||
 44 Χρῆστος P || 45 Σαυροματῶν edd. || εἶχαμεν: ἔχομεν edd. || 48 θέλητε

having exposed the arbalests they had made, that were in their waggons. Those in Bosphorus of course supposed that the Chersonites had been beaten owing to their small numbers and were in flight, and, with complete confidence in themselves, they sallied forth to pursue them. But the Chersonites, as it appears, retiring gradually, destroyed the pursuing Bosphorians with the arbalests, and the Chersonites besides who lay in ambush started up and surrounded the Bosphorians and put them all to the sword, and, returning, captured Bosphorus and in like manner also the forts on the Maeotic lake and all the families of the Sarmatians; and they took up their quarters in Bosphorus, putting none to the sword thereafter save those who had fought, and they held on to Bosphorus and guarded it. After some days interval, Chrestus, son of Papias, said to the women of the Sarmatians: «We ourselves had no need to make war upon you, but since Sauromatus has gone off to ravage the country of the Romans, we, being for this reason bidden by the emperor of the Romans, whose subjects we are, have made war on you. So now, if you would live in your city, come, let us send envoys to your lord Sauromatus, so that he may conclude peace with the Romans in sight of our envoys and withdraw from those parts, and we will leave you and go off to our city; but only when Sauromatus so escorts our envoys hither and sends us with his own men the news of the peace, then so will we leave you and withdraw; but if Sauromatus so much as tries to proceed by any trickery, believing he may cut us off here and attack us, and we get to know of it through our scouts, we will put all of you, both small and great, to the sword and so withdraw hence. And what good will Sauromatus get of it hereafter, if all his family and the city are destroyed?» Hearing this, the women of Sauromatus made preparations to carry it out with alacrity. And with the Bosphorians the Chersonites sent to Sauromatus five envoys of their own, to inform him of what had been done and said. Well, when the envoys reached Sauromatus, in the region of the Halys river, they reported to him all that had been done against the Bosphorians by the Chersonites. He was in great perturbation, and, pretending to desire, as it appears, that the envoys of the Chersonites should take rest after their journey, said to them: «Since you are fatigued, I desire you to rest yourselves a few days and then I will do all that you have said; *** go

edd. || 49 ἀποστελλωμεν Moravcsik ἀποστελομεν P: ἀποστέλλωμεν edd. || 51 ἐπ' ὅψεσιν edd.: ἐφ' ὅψεσι P || 52 ἀφίωμεν scr. Moravcsik: ἀφίωμεν P ἀφίωμεν Be ἀφίημεν Me Ba || 53 Σαυρομάτου conī. Bekker: Σαυρόματος P edd. || 54 μηνύοντος conī. Moravcsik: μηνίων P edd. || ἀφίωμεν scr. Moravcsik: ἀφίωμεν P edd. || 57 σκουλατόρων edd. || 59 φαμηλίας P || 60 Σαυρομάτου P || 62 πέντε edd.: ε' P || Σαυρόμακτον P || 64 Σαυρόμακτον P || 65 Χερσωνίτων P || 67 Χερσωνίτων P || 68 κοπομένοι P: κοπόμενοι edd. || 69 ὕμῶν V edd.: ἡμῶν P || post ποιήσω lac. conī. Jenkins || ἀπέλθετε edd. ||

- πρὸς τοὺς Ῥώμης, καὶ μάθετε παρ' αὐτῶν καὶ πείθεσθε, ὅτι ἀληθεύω 70
 ὑμῖν καὶ οὐ ψεύδομαι.» Τῶν δὲ Χερσωνιτῶν ἀπελθόντων πρὸς Κώνσταν
 248Be | μετὰ καὶ πρέσβειων τοῦ Σαυρομάτου, ἐπύθοντο τὰ μεταξὺ αὐτῶν γενό-
 μενα, ἀνήγγειλαν δὲ τῷ Κώνστᾳ καὶ πάντα τὰ ὑπ' αὐτῶν κατὰ τὴν
 Βοσποριανῶν καὶ τὴν Μαιώτιδα λίμνην γενόμενα, καὶ τό, πῶς τὰς
 φαμιλίας Σαυρομάτου παρέλαβον, καὶ ὅτι τῇ ἀνάγκῃ ταύτῃ εἰς εἰρήνην 75
 188P ἦλθεν ὁ Σαυρόματος. | Ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ὁ Κώνστας πάννυ ἐλυπήθη, καὶ
 λέγει τοῖς Χερσωνίταις· «Καὶ τί μοι τὸ ὄφελος λοιπὸν τῆς ὑμετέρας
 συμμαχίας, ἀφ' ἧς ἐγὼ ἐποίησα πάκτα δοῦναι αὐτοῖς χρυσίον τοσοῦτον;»
 Λέγουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ Χερσωνῖται· «Μὴ λυπηθῆς, δέσποτα, καὶ ἐὰν θέλῃς,
 ἡμεῖς ἀναλύομεν τὸ περὶ τῆς δόσεως πάκτον». Λέγει αὐτοῖς ὁ Κώνστας· 80
 «Καὶ πῶς δυνατόν;» Λέγουσιν αὐτῷ οἱ Χερσωνῖται· «Δήλωσον καὶ
 αὐτὸς τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ, ὅτι· Ὅτι μὲν ἤδη μεταξὺ ἡμῶν γενόμενα πάκτα
 κεκράτηνται· ἐπεὶ οὖν τῇ αἰτίᾳ τῇ σῇ καὶ γὰρ ἀναλώματα καὶ ζημίας
 πολλὰς ἐποίησα σὺν τῷ στρατῷ ἀπὸ Ῥώμης ἕως τῶν ὧδε, δός μοι καὶ
 188P σὺ ταῦτα, καὶ γὰρ σοὶ ἀποδίδωμι τὰς φαμιλίας σου | πάσας καὶ τὴν πόλιν 85
 σου.» Περιχαρὴς δὲ γενόμενος ὁ Κώνστας ἐμήνυσεν ταῦτα τῷ Σαυρο-
 μάτῳ, ὅς δὲ Σαυρόματος ἀκούσας καὶ λυπηθεὶς σφόδρα, μηνύει τῷ
 Κώνστᾳ λέγων, ὅτι· «Οὐ θέλω δοῦναι τίποτ' οὖν, οὐδὲ λαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ
 μόνον ἀπόστειλόν μοι τοὺς Χερσωνίτας, ἵνα τῶν ἐντεῦθεν ἀναχωρήσω.»
 Λέγουσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται τῷ Κώνστᾳ· «Μὴ ἀπολύσης ἡμᾶς, ἕως ἂν πάντας 90
 249Be τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους ἀπολάβῃς.» Τότε μηνύει ὁ | Κώνστας τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ
 λέγων, ὅτι· «Ἀπόστειλόν μοι πάντας, οὓς ἔχεις, αἰχμαλώτους, καὶ ἀπολύω
 τοὺς Χερσωνίτας.» Ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος ταῦτα ἀκούσας, ἄκων καὶ μὴ
 βουλόμενος ἀπέλυσεν ἅπαντας, οὓς εἶχεν, αἰχμαλώτους ἕως ἐνός. Ἀπολα-
 189P βῶν οὖν ὁ Κώνστας ἅπαντας τοὺς πραιευθέντας, δύο τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν 95
 πρέσβεις κατασχὼν παρ' ἑαυτῷ, τοὺς ἄλλους ἀπέστειλεν πρὸς τὸν Σαυρό-
 ματον, ὅστις Σαυρόματος παραλαβὼν αὐτοὺς προαπέστειλεν ἐκ τῆς
 τῶν Λαζῶν χώρας μετὰ καὶ τῶν ἰδίων ἀνθρώπων πρὸς τὸ παραδοῦναι
 αὐτοὺς τὴν τε Βόσπορον καὶ τὰς φαμιλίας αὐτῶν. Αὐτὸς δὲ (ὁ) Σαυρό-
 ματος τὴν πορείαν μετὰ τοῦ ἔθνους αὐτοῦ ἐν καταστάσει ἐποιεῖτο πρὸς 100
 τὸ ἰσθμὸν τοῦ Χερσωνίτου παραδοῦναι τὰς φαμιλίας καὶ ἀναχωρή-
 σαι. Οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται τοὺς οἰκείους πρέσβεις ὑποδεξάμενοι ἐν τῇ Βο-
 σπόρῳ, καὶ μεμαθηκότες τὰ γενόμενα ἅπαντα ὑπὸ Κώνσταντος καὶ τοῦ
 Σαυρομάτου, παρέδωκαν τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἄνθρωπον τὴν τε Βόσπορον
 189P καὶ | τὰ τῆς Μαιώτιδος καστέλλια καὶ τὰς φαμιλίας πάσας ἀβλαβεῖς, 106

V 70 Ῥώμης; Ῥωμαίους F || 71 οὐ; μὴ edd. || Κώνσταντα edd. || 72 Σαυρομάτου
 P || ἐπύθοντο P || 73 τὴν (*etiam* Bandurius): τῶν V edd. <τὴν> τῶν conl.
 Bekker || 75 φαμιλίας P || Σαυρομάτου P || 76 Σαυρόματος P || 82 Σαυρομάτω

hence to the men of Rome and learn of them and be persuaded that my words to you are truth and that I do not lie.» The Chersonites went off to Constans together with envoys of Sauromatus, and learnt what had gone on between them, and reported to Constans all that had been done by them in the country of the Bosphorians and at the Maeotic lake, and how they had captured the families of Sauromatus, and that Sauromatus had through this necessity been brought to make peace. On hearing this, Constans was quite cast down, and said to the Chersonites: «And what good, then, is your alliance to me, now that I have made agreements to give them so much gold?» The Chersonites said to him: «Be not cast down, my lord: if you wish, we will dissolve the agreement for your payment.» Constans said to them: «How is it possible?» The Chersonites said to him: «Do you, for your part, thus declare to Sauromatus: 'The agreements already made between us hold good; and now, since on your account I too have incurred expenses and great losses on my way hither from Rome with the army, do you, for your part, pay me these, and I will give you back all your families and your city'.» Constans was overjoyed and sent this message to Sauromatus. Sauromatus, when he heard it, was exceedingly downcast, and sent to Constans a message saying: «I will neither pay nor take anything at all; do you but send me the Chersonites, that I may withdraw hence.» The Chersonites said to Constans: «Do not dismiss us until you get back all the prisoners.» Then Constans sent a message to Sauromatus saying: «Send me all whom you hold prisoners, and I will dismiss the Chersonites.» Sauromatus, when he heard it, unwillingly and against his desire dismissed all the prisoners whom he held, to the last one of them. So then Constans, having got back all those who had been taken in the forays, kept with him two envoys of the Chersonites and sent the others to Sauromatus, and Sauromatus received them and sent them on ahead out of the country of the Lazi, together with some of his own men, to whom might be handed over Bosphorus and their families. Sauromatus himself put his march with his nation in train, so that the Chersonites might *honestly* hand over the families and withdraw. The Chersonites, having received their own envoys in Bosphorus and having learnt all that had been done by Constans and Sauromatus, handed over to Sauromatus' agent both Bosphorus and the forts of the Maeotis and all the families, unharmed, and came in peace to the country

P || 84 τῶν om. edd. || 85 φαμηλιάς P || 86/7 Σαυρωμάτω P || 87 Σαυρώματος P || 91 Σαυρωμάτω P || 92 post οὗς add. ἂν V edd. || 93 Χερσωνίτας] *litteras χερσωνίτας in ras. scr.* P¹ || Σαυρωμάτος P || 94 post οὗς add. ἂν edd. || 95 Χερσωνίτων P || 96/7 Σαυρώματος P || 97 Σαυρώματος P || 99 αὐτοῖς edd. || φαμηλιάς P || δ add. Moravcsik || 99/100 Σαυρώματος P 101 ἀθρόλους *intra cruces posuit inter ἀθροὶ et λους aliquid excidisse coniciens* Moravcsik: ἀδόλως conī. Jenkins ἀθρόους ὅλους *vel* ἀθρόως ὅλας conī. Kyriakides ἀθρόως ὅλας conī. Dujčev ἀθροῦβους conī. Trypanis || φαμηλιάς P || 103 γενόμενα edd.: γινόμενα P || 104 Σαυρωμάτου P || Σαυρωμάτου P || ἀνθρώπων *per comp.* P: ἀνθρώπων Ba Be || 105 φαμηλιάς P ||

καὶ κατέλαβον ἐν εἰρήνῃ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν. Ὁ δὲ Κώνστας, ἀναχωρήσαν-
 τος τοῦ Σαυρομάτου ἐκ τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν τόπων, καὶ αὐτὸς ἀνέβηεν
 ἐπὶ τὴν Ῥώμην, καὶ ἀνήγγειλεν πάντα τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ ὑπὸ τῶν Χερσωνι-
 τῶν γενόμενα, προσπαγῶν καὶ τοὺς δύο αὐτῶν πρέσβεις, οὓσιν
 ἰδὼν ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ φιλοφρόνως ἀποδεξάμενος καὶ τὰ μέγιστα εὐχαριστή-
 110 σας, εἶπεν αὐτοῖς· «Τί θέλετε παράσχω ὑμῖν τε καὶ τῇ πόλει ὑμῶν
 250β ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης εὐνοίας τε καὶ | συμμαχίας;» Οἱ δὲ εἶπον τῷ βασιλεῖ,
 ὅτι· «Ἡμεῖς, δέσποτα, οὐδὲν ἕτερον θέλομεν, εἰ μῆτι γε τοῦτο μόνον
 αἰτοῦμεν, ἐφ' ᾧ τε δεξιὰς ἐλευθερίας καὶ ἀτελείας παρασχέσθαι ἡμῖν
 190ρ ὑπὸ | τοῦ κράτους ὑμῶν.» Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως ὑποκύψας τῇ αἰτήσει 115
 αὐτῶν, ἀφθόνως παρέσχεν αὐτοῖς τὰς τοιαύτας τῆς ἐλευθερίας τε καὶ
 ἀτελείας δεξιὰς, ἀποστείλας αὐτοὺς μετὰ καὶ δώρων πλείετων κατὰ
 τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν, ὡς γνησίους ὄντας αὐτοὺς ὑπηκόους τῆς Ῥωμαίων
 βασιλείας. Ὁ δὲ Κώνστας μεγάλως καὶ αὐτὸς ὑποδεχθεὶς παρὰ τοῦ
 βασιλέως Διοκλητιανοῦ, ὡς ἀνδρείως παραταξάμενος κατὰ τὸν τῶν 120
 Σαυρομάτων πόλεμον καὶ περιφανῆς καὶ ἐνδοξος γενόμενος, μετ' ὀλίγον
 τινὰ χρόνον τῆς Ῥωμαίων ἀνεδείχθη βασιλείας, Διοκλητιανοῦ ἐπὶ τὴν
 Νικομήδειαν ἐπαναγαγόντος.

Κώνστα δὲ τελευτήσαντος, ἐν Ῥώμῃ ἐβασίλευσεν Κωνσταντῖνος,
 190ρ | ὁ υἱὸς αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἐρχομένου αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ Βυζάντιον, ἀντιστάσεως αὐτῷ 125
 ὑπὸ τινων ἐν τῇ Σκυθίᾳ γενομένης, ὑπεμνήσθη τὸ ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
 αὐτοῦ, Κώνστα λεχθὲν περὶ τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν εὐνοίας τε καὶ συμμα-
 χίας, καὶ ἀπέστειλεν κατὰ τὴν τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν πρέσβεις, ἐφ' ᾧ τε
 ἐλθεῖν αὐτοὺς κατὰ τὴν τῶν Σκυθῶν χώραν καὶ μαχήσασθαι τοῖς ἀνθε-
 στηκόσιν αὐτῷ. Στεφανηφοροῦντος δὲ τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσωνι-
 130 τῶν Διογένους, τοῦ Διογένους, οἱ Χερσωνῖται τὴν κέλευσιν ἀσμένως
 πειθαρχήσαντες, πάσῃ σπουδῇ κατασκευάσαντες τὰ τε πολεμικὰ ἄρ-
 251β ματα καὶ τὰς χειροβολίστρας, καταλαμβάνουσι | τὸν Ἰστρον ποταμὸν
 191ρ καὶ τοῦτον περάσαντες, ἀντεπαρατάξαντο τοῖς ἀνθεστηκόσιν, καὶ ἐ|τρο-
 πώσαντο αὐτοὺς. Μαθὼν δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν ὑπ' αὐτῶν γενομένην τροπὴν, 135
 ἐκέλευσεν αὐτοὺς κατὰ τὴν ἐνεργαμένην ἀπιέναι, τοὺς δὲ τούτων πρω-
 τεύοντας προσκαλεσάμενος κατὰ τοῦ Βυζαντίου καὶ εὐχαριστήσας τὰ
 μέγιστα, ἔφη αὐτοῖς· «Ἐπειδὴ καὶ νῦν εὐνοϊκῶς ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν ἐκάμετε,
 καθὼς καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν εὐσεβῶν προγόνων τῆς ἡμετέρας θειότητος, ἰδοὺ καὶ
 ἡμεῖς ἐπικυροῦντες τὰς ἤδη ἐπ' ἐλευθερίᾳ καὶ ἀτελείᾳ δοθείσας ὑμῖν ἐν 140
 τῇ Ῥωμαίων ἐκ τῆς ἡμετέρας βασιλείας δεξιὰς, παρέχομεν ὑμῖν καὶ
 ἡμεῖς ἀνδριάντα χρυσοῦν μετὰ καὶ χλαμύδος βασιλικῆς καὶ φιβλατούρας
 καὶ στέφανον χρυσοῦν πρὸς εὐπρέπειαν τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως μετὰ καὶ
 191ρ ἐγγράφου ἡ|μῶν ἐλευθερίας καὶ ἀτελείας ὑμῶν τε καὶ τῶν πλαισίων
 ὑμῶν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν γνησιότητα τῆς ὑμῶν εὐνοίας δίδομεν ὑμῖν καὶ 145

of the Chersonites, Constans, too, on the withdrawel of Sauromatus from the Roman territories, himself set out for Rome, and reported to the emperor all that had been done by the Chersonites; and he brought their two envoys also, whom the emperor saw and bounteously entertained and thanked most gratefully, and then said to them: «What will you that I should grant to you and your city in return for this affection and alliance?» They said to the emperor: «We, my lord, wish for nothing else, but request this one thing only, that your majesty should grant us pledges of freedom and immunity from tribute.» The emperor gladly acceded to their request and ungrudgingly granted them these pledges of freedom and of immunity from tribute, and sent them to the country of the Chersonites with very many gifts besides, as true subjects of the empire of the Romans. Constans too was grandly entertained by the emperor Diocletian for his brave support in the war of the Sarmatians, and became noble and illustrious and after a short while was proclaimed emperor of the Romans, when Diocletian had retired to Nicomedeia.

On the death of Constans, his son Constantine became emperor at Rome, and when he came to Byzantium, and certain of those in Scythia revolted against him, he called to mind what had been said by his father Constans concerning the affection of the Chersonites and their alliance, and he sent envoys to the country of the Chersonites, with instructions that they should go to the country of the Scythians and fight those who had revolted against him. The chief magistrate and primate of the Chersonites was at that time Diogenes, son of Diogenes, and the Chersonites gladly obeyed the imperial mandate and with all zeal constructed the military waggons and the arbalests and arrived at the Ister river and, having crossed it, arrayed themselves against the rebels and routed them. The emperor, learning of the victory won by them, bade them go back to their country, but their primates he invited to the city of Byzantium and, after thanking them most gratefully, he said to them: «Since now too you have laboured loyally on our behalf, as in the time of the pious forbears of our divine majesty, see, we too do ratify the pledges of freedom and immunity from tribute already granted to you in the city of the Romans by our imperial government; and for our part we give you besides a golden statue with imperial cloak and clasp and a golden crown, for the beautifying of your city, and thereto our charter of freedom and immunity from tribute for you and for your sailors; and, for the purity of your affection, we give you also golden

V 107 Σαυρωμάτου P || 116 τε om. edd. || 121 Σαυρωμάτων P Σαυροματῶν Migne || 122 ἀνεδέχθη (coni. etiam Bekker): ἀνεδέχθη edd. || 127 λεχθέν V edd.: λεχθήσιν (littera θ in ras. scripta) P¹ || 129 αὐτοὺς om. edd. || 130 τῆς edd.: τῇ P || 134 ἀντιπαρετάξαντο Migne || 142 ἀνδριάντα P ||

δακτυλίους χρυσούς, ἐκτυποῦντας τὰς ἡμετέρας εὐσεβεῖς εἰκόνας, δι' ὧν τὰς κατὰ καιρὸν μελλούσας ἀποστέλλεσθαι ἡμῖν παρ' ὑμῶν ἀναφοράς τε καὶ δεήσεις σφραγίζοντες ταύτας, γνωρίμους ἡμῖν ἀποδείκνυτε τοὺς ἑαυτῶν πρέσβεις, πρὸς ἐπὶ τούτοις δὲ παρέχομεν ὑμῖν καθ' ἕκαστον ἔτος νεῦρόν τε καὶ κάρναβον, σίδηρόν τε καὶ ἔλαιον ὑπὲρ κατασκευῆς τῶν βαλλιστρῶν ὑμῶν, καὶ δίδομεν ὑμῖν πρὸς ἀποτροφὴν ὑμῶν χιλίας ἀνώννας, ἐφ' ᾗ τε εἶναι ὑμᾶς βαλλισταρίους, λεγόμενον, ὡς τὰς τοιαύτας σιτήσεις τε καὶ συνθηθείας πάσας καθ' ἕκαστον ἔτος τῶν ἐντεῦθεν μέλλομεν ὑμῖν ἀποστέλλειν κατὰ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν. Οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται τὰς τοιαύτας εὐχόμενοι ἀνώννας, εἰς ἑαυτοὺς τε καὶ τὰ τούτων τέκνα διαμερίσαντες, τὸν ἀριθμὸν συνεστήσαντο· διὰ τὸ καὶ ἕως τοῦ νῦν τὰ τούτων τέκνα κατὰ τῶν γονέων τῆς στρατείας συμπλήρῳσιν ἐν τῷ ἀριθμῷ κατατάσσονται. Ἐφοδίους δὲ καὶ δώροις πλείστοις τότε τιμηθέντων ὑπὸ τοῦ θεοφιλοῦς βασιλέως Κωνσταντίνου, τοῦ τε Διογένοους καὶ τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ, κατέλαβον τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν ἀποκομίζοντες καὶ τὰς θείας φιλοτιμίας.

Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινὰς τοῦ ταῦτα γεγονέναι Σαυρόματος, ὁ ἔγγονος Σαυρομάτου, τοῦ Κρισχορόνου, τοῦ πολεμήσαντος τὴν Λαζικήν, συν-
 192*P ἀθροί|σας πόλεμον ἐκ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης, ἐπανεστή τοῖς Χερσωνίταις, βουλόμενος, φησί, τὴν τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας ὕβριν τοῦ οἰκείου πάππου ἐκδικῆσαι, τὴν παρ' αὐτῶν ἐπὶ Διοκλητιανοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως γενομένην. Μεμαθγκότες δὲ τοῦτο οἱ Χερσωνῖται, στεφανηφοροῦντος τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος τῆς Χερσῶνος Βύσκου, τοῦ Σουπολίχου, ἀντιπαραταξάμενοι καὶ αὐτοὶ ὑπήντησαν τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ ἔξω ἐν τοῖς τοῦ λεγομένου Καφᾶ τόποις, καὶ πολεμήσαντες μετὰ αὐτοῦ, τοῦ Θεοῦ τοῖς Χερσωνίταις βοηθοῦντος, ἐνίκησαν τὸν Σαυρόματον καὶ ἐδίωξαν, θήσαντες καὶ ὁροθεσίας ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ λεγομένῳ Καφᾶ, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ πολεμήσαντες τὸν Σαυρόματον ἐνίκησαν, ἐν ᾧ καὶ ὄρκους ἐπετέλεσεν ὁ αὐτὸς Σαυ|ρόματος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ὑπαλειφθέντες τοῦ μηκέτι αὐτοὺς χάριν πολέμου υπερβαίνειν τὰς μεταξὺ αὐτῶν τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας, ἀλλ' ἕκαστον αὐτῶν τοὺς ἰδίους ἔχειν τόπους πρὸς τὰς τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας. Καὶ οὕτως ἀνεχώρησεν ἐπὶ τὴν Βόσπορον <ὁ> Σαυρόματος, καὶ οἱ Χερσωνῖται εἰς τὰ ἴδια.

Καὶ δὴ τούτων οὕτως γενομένων, πάλιν μετὰ χρόνους τινὰς ἕτερος Σαυρόματος ἀναστὰς καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ πλῆθος ἀνδρῶν ἐκ τῆς Μαιώτιδος λίμνης, παρετάξαντο πόλεμον κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, καὶ παρελθὼν τὰς μεθ' ὄρκου τεθείσας ὁροθεσίας ἐν τῷ Καφᾶ ὑπὸ τοῦ πρώτου γενο-

V 146 χρυσούς P || 147 ἡμῖν] *litteram η in ras. scr.* P² || 150 κάρναβον P || 151 βαλλιστρῶν P || 152 βαλλισταρίους P || <τὸ> λεγόμενον *coni.* Kyriakides || 156 διὰ τὸ: δι' αὐτὸ *coni.* Bekker ||

rings expressing the likenesses of our pious selves, wherewith you are to seal reports and petitions which shall from time to time be sent from you to us, and thus make your envoys known to us; and besides, in addition to these, we grant you annually cord and hemp, iron and oil, for the manufacture of your bows, and we give you for your sustenance a thousand military rations, so that you may be bowmen (*as they are called*): so that all these provisions and regular grants we shall send you every year from here to the country of the Chersonites.» The Chersonites, receiving these rations, divided them out among themselves and their sons and so made up the brigade, and that is why, even to this day, their sons are «enrolled in the brigade», to fill up the number of their parents' levy. Diogenes and those with him were then honoured with a multitude of supplies and gifts by Constantine, the emperor beloved of God, and came to the country of the Chersonites, bringing back the gifts conferred by his divine majesty.

Some years after these events had taken place, Sauromatus, grandson of Sauromatus the son of Criscoronius who had attacked Lazike, gathered together a warlike power from the Maeotic lake and rose against the Chersonites, desiring, it appears, to avenge the insult of the captivity done to his grandfather by them in the time of Diocletian the emperor. The Chersonites, Byseus, son of Supolichus, being at that time chief magistrate and primate of Cherson, learnt of this and on their side arrayed themselves in opposition and met Sauromatus outside, in the region of Kapha, so-called, and they fought with him, and, God aiding the Chersonites, defeated Sauromatus and drove him off; and they set up boundary-stones in that same Kapha by name, in the place where they had fought and defeated Sauromatus, and there this same Sauromatus and those that were left with him swore oaths in due form that they would never more pass for purposes of war beyond the boundary-stones set up between them, but that each of them should keep to his own places on his side of the boundary-stones set up. And so they withdrew, Sauromates to Bosporus, and the Chersonites to their own homes.

When this had been done, once more after some years another Sauromatus rose up and with him a multitude of men from the Maeotic lake, and they drew up their force against the Chersonites, and, crossing over the boundary-stones set up in Kapha by the first Sauromatus with an oath that

167 συμπληρῶσιν P || 159 τε edd.: τότε P || 169 ἀποκομίσαντες edd. || 162 Σαυρώματος P || 163 Σαυρωμάτου P || πολεμισαντος P || 167 Μεμαθηκότες: μαθόντες V edd. || Χερσωνίται P || 169 Σαυρωμάτω P || 170 Καφά P || πολεμίσαντες P || 171 Σαυρώματων P || 172 πολεμήσαντες} *litteras* λεμη in ras. scr. P¹ || 173 Σαυρώματων P || *φ* edd.: οίς P || Σαυρώματος P || 174 αὐτούς Meursius Ba Be: αὐτοῖς P || 177 ὁ add. edd. || Σαυρώματος P || Χερσωνίται P || 180 Σαυρώματος P || 181 παρετάξατο edd. || Χερσωνίων P || 182 τῷ V edd.: τῇ P || Καφά P ||

- μένου Σαυρομάτου τοῦ μηδένα ποτὲ ἐπιχειρῆσαι τῶν Βοσποριανῶν
 193^{vP} πολέμου χάριν ταύτας ὑπερβῆναι, οὗτος ὁ Σαυρόματος | ὑπερέβη, ὡς οἱ α-
 βουλόμενος τὴν μετὰ βίας αὐτῷ ἀφαιρεθεῖσαν γῆν ἐκδικῆσαι καὶ ἀπολα-185
 βεῖν. Καὶ δὴ ἐν τοῖς τότε καιροῖς στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος
 τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν Φαρνάκου, τοῦ Φαρνάκου, ἀντεπαρτάξαντο καὶ οἱ
 Χερσωνῖται τῷ Σαυρομάτῳ, καὶ ἀπαντήσαντες ἀλλήλους ἐν τοῖς τοῦ
 προειρημένου Καφᾶ τόποις, ἔστησαν ἑκάτερα τὰ μέρη ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν.
 Ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος ὢν μέγας τὴν ἡλικίαν ἐθάρρησεν ἑαυτῷ, καὶ ἔμε-190
 γαλαύχει κατὰ τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν φρουαττόμενος, θαρρῶν ἅμα καὶ ἐπὶ τῷ
 ἀπειρῷ πλήθει, τῷ μετ' αὐτοῦ ὄντι. Ὁ δὲ Φαρνάκος μικρὸς ἦν τῇ ἡλικίᾳ
 κατὰ τὸν Σαυρόματον, καὶ ἰδὼν τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ Σαυρομάτου, ἐσκέψατο
 194^{vP} μετὰ τοῦ ἰδίου | στρατοῦ, ἐφ' ᾧ τε μονομαχῆσαι αὐτὸν μετὰ τοῦ Σαυρο-
 254^{Be} μάτου καὶ μὴ ἀπειρον πλῆθος ἀπολέσθαι. Καὶ δὴ σκέψεως τοιαύτης195
 γενομένης, δηλοῖ ὁ Φαρνάκος τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ Σαυρομάτου λέγων, ὅτι
 «Τίς χρεῖα ἐστὶν τοσούτου ὄχλου γενέσθαι ἀπώλειαν; Οὐ γὰρ ὑμεῖς
 οἰκείᾳ προαιρέσει πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον ἐτράπητε, ἀλλὰ Σαυρόματος ὑμᾶς
 προετρέψατο. Θελήσατε οὖν τοῦτον ἀναγκάσαι τοῦ μονομαχῆσαι μετ'
 ἐμοῦ, καὶ ἐὰν διὰ τοῦ Θεοῦ δυνηθῶ αὐτόν, ὑμεῖς ἀναχωρεῖτε εἰς τὰ ἴδια200
 ἀβλαβῶς, καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ ἡ πόλις αὐτοῦ ὑπέπεσαν μοι, εἰ δὲ καὶ δυνηθῇ με
 αὐτός, καὶ οὕτως ὑμεῖς ἀναχωρεῖτε εἰς τὰ ἴδια, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπέβη ἐν τοῖς
 194^{vP} ἐμοῖς.» Ὁ δὲ ὄχλος τῶν Σαυρομάτων | ἠδέως τοῦτο ἀποδεξάμενος
 προετρέψατο τὸν Σαυρόματον μονομαχῆσαι μετὰ τοῦ Φαρνάκου. Ὁ οὖν
 Σαυρόματος μαθὼν μικρὸν πάνυ ὄντα τῇ ἡλικίᾳ τὸν Φαρνάκον, ἑαυτὸν205
 δὲ ὑπερμεγέθη, ἐχάρη ἐπὶ τούτῳ, πεποιθὼς τῇ οἰκείᾳ δυνάμει καὶ οἷς
 ἐκέκρητο ὅπλοις κατατεθωρακισμένος. Καὶ τούτων οὕτως δοξάντων,
 λέγει ὁ Φαρνάκος τῷ ἰδίῳ στρατῷ, ὅτι «Ὅταν κατέλθω διὰ τοῦ Θεοῦ
 εἰς τὸ μονομαχῆσαι, καὶ ἴδητε, ὅτι ὁ Σαυρόματος τὰ νῶτα αὐτοῦ ἔχει
 πρὸς ὑμᾶς καὶ τὴν ὄψιν πρὸς τοὺς ἰδίους, ἐγὼ δὲ τὴν ὄψιν μου πρὸς210
 ὑμᾶς καὶ τὰ νῶτά μου πρὸς τοὺς ἐναντίους, ἅπαντες ὑμεῖς βάλετε μίαν
 κραυγὴν καὶ μόνον λέγοντες τὸ ἄ, ἄ, καὶ μὴ δευτερώσητε ἐπὶ τῇ κραυγῇ.»
 195^{vP} Καὶ δὴ | κατελθόντων αὐτῶν ἀμφοτέρων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ πρὸς τὴν μονομα-
 χίαν καὶ τρακτεούντων ἑαυτοὺς, καὶ τοῦ Φαρνάκου γενομένου εἰς τὸ τοῦ
 255^{Be} Σαυρομάτου μέρος καὶ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου εἰς | τὸ τοῦ Φαρνάκου, ἔδωκεν215
 ὁ τοῦ Φαρνάκου στρατὸς μίαν φωνήν, τὸ ἄ, ἄ. Ὁ δὲ Σαυρόματος τῆς τοιαύτης
 φωνῆς ἀκούσας περιστράφη ἰδεῖν ἐναγώνιος, τίς ἡ γενομένη κραυγὴ

V 183 Σαυρωμάτου P || 184 Σαυρόματος P || 187 ἀντεπαρτάξαντο V ἀντιπαρε-
 τάξαντο Ba Be || 188 Σαυρωμάτω P || ἀλλήλους edd. || 189 Καφᾶ P || 190
 Σαυρωμάτος P || 191 Χερσωνιτῶν P || 192 Φάρνακος edd. || 193 Σαυρόματον
 P || ἰδὼν edd.: ἰδῶς P || Σαυρωμάτου P || 194 Σαυρωμάτου P || 196 Φάρνακος

none of the Bosporian should ever attempt to pass beyond them for purposes of war, this Sauromatus passed beyond them, as desiring to avenge and recover the land forcibly taken from him. In those times the chief magistrate and primate of the country of the Chersonites was Pharnacus, son of Pharnacus, and the Chersonites on their side arrayed themselves against Sauromatus, and they met one another in the region of the aforesaid Kapha, and each side took up position on the mountains. Sauromatus, being of huge stature, had confidence in himself and boasted insolently over the Chersonites, confiding also at the same time in the infinite multitude that was with him. But Pharnacus was of small stature compared to Sauromatus, and, seeing the multitude of Sauromatus, resolved with his own army that he should fight in single combat with Sauromatus, to avoid the destruction of an infinite multitude. This resolution having been made, Pharnacus made a declaration to the multitude of Sauromatus, saying: «What need is there of the destruction of so great a throng? For you have not resorted to war of your own choice, but Sauromatus has bidden you to it. Do you, then, urge him to fight in single combat with me, and if by God's aid I overpower him, do you withdraw unharmed to your own homes, and he and his city shall have fallen beneath me; but if he overpowers me, in this case also you withdraw to your own homes, and he shall have become master over mine.» The throng of the Sarmatians accepted this with joy, and told Sauromatus to fight in single combat with Pharnacus. So Sauromatus, learning that Pharnacus was quite small in stature, while he himself was gigantic, was delighted at this, for he trusted in his own strength and in his armour, by which he was completely protected. This being so resolved upon, Pharnacus said to his army: «When I go down with God's aid to the single combat, and you see that Sauromatus has his back towards you and his face towards his own men, while I have my face towards you and my back towards the enemy, do you all raise one shout, saying simply 'Ah! Ah!', and after the shout, do not repeat it.» And so, when both had gone down to the plain for the single combat, and were manœuvring about one another, and Pharnacus had taken the ground of Sauromatus and Sauromatus that of Pharnacus, the army of Pharnacus gave one shout, 'Ah! Ah!'. Sauromatus, hearing this shout, turned about in the action to see what cry was raised in the army of

edd. || τὸ πλῆθος: τῷ πλῆθει V edd. || τοῦ om. edd. || Σαυρωμάτου P || 198 Σαυρώματος P || 199 ἀναγκάσαι: παρακαλέσαι V edd. || 201 με V edd.: μοι P || 203 Σαυρωμάτων P Σαυροματῶν edd. || 204 Σαυρώματος P || 205 Σαυρώματος P || Φάρνακον edd. || 208 Φάρνακος edd. || 209 ἴδτε Be: ἴδεται P || Σαυρώματος P || ἔχει (etiam Migne) εἶχε edd. || 211 βάλλετε F edd. || 212 δευτερώσητε V edd.: δευτερώσεται P || 215 Σαυρωμάτου P Σαυρωμάτου V || τοῦ om. edd. || Σαυρωμάτου P || Φαρνάκου] *litteram u s. v. add.* P¹ || 216 Σαυρώματος P ||

ἐν τῷ τοῦ Φαρνάκου στρατῷ. Ἐν δὲ τῷ περιστρέψαι τὸν Σαυρόματον
τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ὕψιν εἰς τὰ ὀπίσω διηνοίχθη μικρὸν τὸ τοῦ κασσιδίου αὐτοῦ
πέταλον, καὶ εὐθέως ἐπιδραμὼν ὁ Φαρνάκος ἔδωκεν τῷ κοντῷ τὸν²²⁰
Σαυρόματον καὶ ἀνείλεν αὐτόν. Πесόντος δὲ τοῦ Σαυρομάτου, κατελθὼν ὁ
195*P Φαρνάκος | τοῦ ἵππου, ἀπεκεφάλισεν αὐτόν, καὶ γενόμενος ἐγκρατὴς τοῦ
πολέμου, τὸ μὲν πλῆθος τῆς Μαιώτιδος ἀπέλυσεν, τοὺς δὲ τῆς Βοσπόρου
αἰχμαλώτους λαβὼν καὶ τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν ἀφελόμενος, ἐν Κυβερνικῷ ἄνω
τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν ὁροθεσίας ἔστησεν, ἄχρι τεσσαράκοντα καὶ μόνον²²⁵
μιλίων γῆν αὐτοῖς ἑάσας, αἵτινες ὁροθεσίαι ἕως τοῦ νῦν διαμένουσιν,
αἱ δὲ εἰρημέναι πρῶται ὁροθεσίαι ἐν Καφᾷ εἰσιν ἀποκείμεναι. Ὀλίγους
δὲ τινὰς κατασχὼν παρ' ἑαυτῷ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν ὁ Φαρνάκος γεωργῶν
ἐνεκα, τοὺς ἄλλους ἅπαντας οἴκτου ἀξιώσας ἀπέλυσεν κατὰ τῶν Βοσπορια-
νῶν ἀπελθεῖν, οἵτινες ἀπολυθέντες ὑπὸ τοῦ Φαρνάκου, ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης²³⁰
196*P εὐεργεσίας καὶ φιαν|θρωπίας αὐτοῦ τῆς εἰς αὐτοὺς γενομένης στήλην
αὐτῷ ἤγειραν ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ. Ἐκτοτε οὖν λοιπὸν ἡ τῶν Σαυρομάτων
ἐν τῇ Βοσπόρῳ βασιλεία κατελύθη.

Τούτων δὲ οὕτως γενομένων, Λαμάχου στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ
256*Bo πρωτεύοντος τῆς τῶν Χερσωνιτῶν, Ἀσάνδρου δὲ τῆς Βο|σποριανῶν²³⁵
βασилεύοντος, κακίᾳ πολλῇ μεμεστῶμένοι οἱ Βοσποριανοὶ κατὰ τῶν
Χερσωνιτῶν καὶ μηδαμῶς δυνάμενοι τῇ πονηρίᾳ ἡρεμεῖν, ἔσπευδον ἀεὶ
τρόπῳ τινὶ τὴν ἀνταμοιβὴν τῶν αἰχμαλωσιῶν ταῖς Χερσωνίταις ἀποδοῦ-
ναι. Καὶ δὴ μεμαθηκότες ἔχειν θυγατέρα μονογενῆ τὴν Γυκίαν, ἔχοντος
δὲ καὶ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱούς, ἐμηχανῶντο ἐπιγαμβρείαν ποιήσασθαι,²⁴⁰
196*P ὥπως διὰ τούτου ἀδεῶς ἐπιβαί|νοντες τῇ Χερσωνιτῶν ἀμύνασθαι.
Καὶ δὴ ἀποστέλλουσιν πρέσβεις κατὰ τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν παρακαλοῦντες·
«Ἐάν οἶδαμεν, ὅτι ἀγάπη ἀληθὴς μεταξὺ ἡμῶν ἐστίν, καὶ ἀδόλως πρὸς
ἀλλήλους ἔχομεν, ἐπιγαμβρεύσωμεν ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ δότε ἡμῖν εἰς νύμφην
τὴν θυγατέρα Λαμάχου, τοῦ πρώτου ὑμῶν, ἐνεκεν τοῦ υἱοῦ Ἀσάνδρου,²⁴⁵
τοῦ κυρίου ἡμῶν, ἡ λάβετε αὐτὸν αὐτόθι εἰς γαμβρόν, καὶ οἶδαμεν, ὅτι
πιστὰ ἔχομεν εἰς ἀλλήλους, τοῦ υἱοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ὄντος μεθ' ὑμῶν.»
Λέγουσιν αὐτοῖς οἱ Χερσωνῖται, ὅτι· «Ἡμεῖς πρὸς ὑμᾶς θυγατέρα
ἡμῶν δοῦναι οὐκ ἀνεχόμεθα, εἰ δὲ ἐκ τῶν υἱῶν Ἀσάνδρου, τοῦ βασιλέως
ὑμῶν, θέλετε δοῦναι ἡμῖν εἰς γαμβρόν, δεχόμεθα, οὕτω μέντοι, μὴ²⁵⁰
197*P δυνάμενοι ἔτι τοῦ υἱοῦ Ἀσάνδρου, | τοῦ ἐρχομένου πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐπιγαμβρεῦ-
σασθαι, καιρῷ ποτε ἡ χρόνῳ πειραθῆναι τοῦ ὑποστρέψαι κατὰ τὴν
τῶν Βοσποριανῶν χάριν ἐπισκέψεως ἢ προσηγορίας τοῦ οἰκείου πατρός,

V 218 ἐν τῷ τοῦ Φαρνάκου στρατῷ om. Ba Be || Σαυρόματον P || 220 Φάρνακος
edd. || 221 Σαυρόματον P || Σαυρομάτου P || 222 Φάρνακος edd. || 224
Κυβερνικῷ: Κυμμερικῷ codd. Laskin || 225 τῆς V edd.: τοῦ P || μόνον V edd.

Pharnacus. And as Sauromatus turned his face to the rear, the plating of his helmet opened a crack, and at once Pharnacus charged upon him and smote Sauromatus with his lance and slew him. When Sauromatus had fallen, Pharnacus got down from his horse and cut off his head, and, having won the battle, dismissed the multitude of the Maeotis, but took prisoner them of Bosporus and took away their land and set up boundary-stones in Kybernikon, beyond the country of the Chersonites, leaving to the Bosporians land up to forty miles only, and these boundary-stones remain to this day, and the said first boundary-stones in Kapha are laid aside. Pharnacus, keeping by him some few of the Bosporians to do agricultural work, in pity dismissed all the rest, to go to *the country* of the Bosporians, and they, dismissed by Pharnacus, erected a column to him in Bosporus for the beneficence and mercy which he had shown towards them. From that time, then, the rule of the Sauromati in Bosporus was ended.

These events, then, fell out so; but when Lamachus was chief magistrate and primate of the country of the Chersonites and Asander was king of the country of the Bosporians, the Bosporians, being replete with much malice against the Chersonites and wholly unable to rest from wickedness, were still eager how they might pay back the recompense of the captivities upon the Chersonites. And so, learning that *Lamachus* had an only daughter, Gykia, while Asander had sons, they set about contriving the conclusion of a marriage alliance, in order that thereby they might safely gain a footing in the country of the Chersonites and take vengeance on it. And so they sent envoys to the country of the Chersonites, with this request: «If we know that sincere love exists between us, and if our relations one toward another are without guile, let us make for ourselves a marriage alliance, and do you give us the daughter of Lamachus, your first man, to be bride of the son of Asander our lord, or else receive him on your side as son-in-law, and we shall know that we have faith one toward another when the king's son is among you.» The Chersonites said to them: «We cannot consent to giving our daughter to you; but if from among the sons of Asander your king you would like to give us a son-in-law, we accept, but on such terms that the son of Asander who comes to us to be allied in marriage shall no longer have in his power ever at any time or season to attempt to return to the country of the Bosporians for the purpose of visiting or greeting his

μόνων P || 226 ἕως: μέχρι V edd. || 227 ὁδοθεῖσθαι] *litteras* οὐδ' in *ras. scr.*
P¹ || Καφά P || 228 Φάρνακος edd. || γεωργῶν: γεωργῶν *coni.* Bekker ||
232 Σαυρωμάτων P Σαυροματῶν Migne || 234 Τούτων] *litteram T rubro atramento scriptam eras. et novam litteram T in ras. scr.* P¹ || 235 Χερσωνίτων
P || 244 ἐπιγαμβρεύσωμεν V: ἐπιγαμβρεύσσομεν P edd. || 247 βασιλέως ὄντος
(*coni. etiam* Bekker): βασιλεύοντος edd. || 251 ἐρχομένου: ἀρχομένου Ba Be ||

- εἰ δὲ τοῦτο βούλεται, πάντως, ὅτι τῇ ὥρᾳ ἀποθνήσκει.» Τῶν δὲ πρέ-
σβεων ἀπολυθέντων καὶ καταλαβόντων τὴν Βοσποριανῶν καὶ ταῦτα²⁵⁵
- 257^{Be} ἀναγγελλόντων, ἀπέστειλεν πάλιν | ὁ Ἄσανδρος πρέσβεις, λέγων τοῖς
Χερσωνίταις, ὅτι· «Ἐὰν ἀληθῶς λέγετε καὶ πιστοποιεῖτέ με, ὅτι Λάμα-
χος ἀνέχεται ζεῦξαι τὴν θυγατέρα αὐτοῦ τῷ μειζοτέρῳ μου υἱῷ, ἀποστελῶ
ὑμῖν αὐτὸν ἐκεῖνον αὐτόθι ἐπιγαμβρεύσασθαι.» Ἦν δὲ Λάμαχος τοῖς
τότε καιροῖς, ὡς λόγος, πλούτῳ πολλῷ κομῶν ἐν τε χρυσίῳ καὶ ἀργυρίῳ,²⁶⁰
- 197^{vP} παῖσὶ <τε> καὶ παιδίσκαις καὶ | ἀλόγοις διαφόροις καὶ κτήμασι πολλοῖς,
καὶ τέσσαρσι δὲ ῥεγεῶσι τὸν οἶκον αὐτοῦ ἐπικρατεῖν ἐν πλάτει καὶ μήκει
ἕως κάτω τῶν λεγομένων Σωσῶν, ἐν οἷς καὶ ἰδίαν πύλην εἶχεν ἐν τῷ
τείχει καὶ τέσσαρας πυλεῶνας μεγάλους εἰς τὴν εἴσοδον καὶ τὴν ἐξοδον
σὺν ἑτέροις δὲ παραπυλίοις σεμνοῖς, ὥστε εἰσερχομένων τῶν ἀλόγων²⁶⁵
αὐτοῦ ἐν τῇ πόλει, ἐκαστὴν ἀγέλην ζῶων, ἔππων τε καὶ φορβάδων,
βοῶν τε καὶ δαμάλεων, προβάτων τε καὶ ὄνων καὶ δι' ἰδίας πύλης εἰσέναι
καὶ εἰς ἰδίαν στάσιν ἀπιέναι. Παρεκάλεσαν οὖν οἱ Χερσωνῖται τὸν Λάμα-
χον, ἐφ' ᾧ τε ἐπιγαμβρεύσασθαι αὐτὸν τὸν τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱόν. Τοῦ
δὲ Λαμάχου ἐπινεύσαντος τῇ παρακλήσει αὐτῶν, ἤλθεν ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου²⁷⁰
- 198^{vP} υἱὸς | ἐν τῇ Χερσῶνι, καὶ ἐγῆμεν τὴν Γυκίαν. Καὶ διετοῦς μικροῦ χρόνου
διαγενομένου, ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ Λάμαχος· ἡ γὰρ μήτηρ τῆς Γυκίας προ-
τελευτήσασα ἦν. Ἡ οὖν Γυκία μετὰ τὴν τοῦ ἐνιαιυτοῦ περὰ τῶν τῆς
τοῦ πατρὸς ταφῆς, τῆς ἐνιαυσιαίας ἡμέρας ἐνστάσης, τὴν μνήμην θέλουσα
φαιδρῦναι τοῦ ἰδίου πατρὸς, στεφανηφοροῦντος τότε καὶ πρωτεύοντος²⁷⁵
- 258^{Be} τῆς Χερσῶνος Ζή|θου, τοῦ Ζήθονος, παρεκάλεσεν τοῖς προύχουσι τῆς
πόλεως, ἐφ' ᾧ τε ἄνευ ὕβρεως ἀνεχθῆναι αὐτοὺς τοῦ λαβεῖν παρ' αὐτῆς
σὺν παντὶ τῷ δήμῳ οἶνόν τε καὶ ἄρτους καὶ ἔλαιον, κρέα τε καὶ ὄρνεα
καὶ ὄψα, καὶ εἴ τι ἕτερον πρὸς τὴν τῆς εὐφρασίας χρείαν, πρὸς τὸ τὴν
- 198^{vP} ἡμέραν τῆς μνήμης τοῦ Λαμάχου ἀπαντας τοὺς | πολίτας σὺν γυναῖξιν²⁸⁰
καὶ τέκνοις καὶ πάσῃ τῇ φαιμλίᾳ αὐτῶν εὐφρανθῆναι καὶ ἀγάλλεσθαι,
ἕκαστον ἐν τῷ ἰδίῳ ῥεγεῶνι καὶ δημοσίᾳ χορεύειν καὶ ἔργου τινὸς τὸ
σύνολον μὴ ἀψασθαι, συνταξαμένη τοῖς πολίταις ἐν ὄρκῳ, ἐφ' ᾧ τε
ἀπαντα τὸν χρόνον τῆς ζωῆς αὐτῆς οὕτω τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας καθ' ἕκαστον
χρόνον διδόναι αὐτοῖς ἐν τῇ αὐτῇ τοῦ Λαμάχου μνήμῃ. Τούτων δὲ οὕτως²⁸⁵
γενομένων <καὶ> ἐν ὄρκῳ ὑπ' αὐτῆς παγιωθέντων, ὁ ταύτης ἀνὴρ, ὁ
τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱός, ἔχων ἐν κρυπτῷ τὸν δόλον καὶ ἐπιζητῶν καιρὸν
προδοσίας, ἀκούσας ταῦτα <τὰ> παρὰ τῆς Γυκίας λεχθέντα καὶ ἐν ὄρκῳ
παγιωθέντα, ἐθαύμασε μὲν καὶ ἐπῆνεσεν τὴν Γυκίαν ἐπὶ τῇ ἐνόρκῳ
συντάξει, ὡς γνησίως περὶ τοὺς γονεῖς ἔχουσιν, συνθέμενος δὲ καὶ²⁹⁰

V 254 βούλεται conit. Bekker: βούλει P edd. || 260 ἀργυρίῳ V edd.: ἀργύρο
P || 261 παῖσὶ edd.: παῖδες P || τε add. V edd. || 263 Σωσῶν Moravcsik:
Σουσῶν P edd. || 264 τέσσαρας Ba Be τεσσάρας P^v: τέσσαρσι P V Me ||

father, and if he shall resolve to do this, surely he dies that hour.» The envoys were dismissed and reached the country of the Bosporians and reported this, and Asander once more sent envoys, saying to the Chersonites: «If you speak truly, and assure me that Lamachus consents to yoke his daughter with my eldest son, that same son will I send there to you, to be joined in marriage.» Lamachus in these days, as it appears, prided himself upon much wealth, in gold and silver, male and female slaves, and cattle of various kinds and many estates, and his mansion occupied ground far and wide in four wards, as far as to below the so-called Sosae, in which it had its own gate in the wall and four main gate-ways for ingress and egress, together with other small side-entrances, so that when his cattle entered the city, each herd of beasts, stallions and mares, cows and heifers, sheep and asses, came in through its own gate, and went to its own stabling. The Chersonites, therefore, begged Lamachus that this son of Asander might be his son-in-law. Lamachus granted their request, and the son of Asander came to Cherson and married Gykia. And after the space of about two years, Lamachus died; the mother of Gykia had died before him. So, after the lapse of a year, when the anniversary of her father's burial was near, Gykia, wishing to keep bright the memory of her father, begged the leading men of the city, the chief magistrate and primate of Cherson being Zethus, son of Zethon, that they would kindly consent, together with all the populace, to receive from her wine and loaves of bread and oil, flesh and game and fish, and anything else needed to make merry, to the end that upon this day of the commemoration of Lamachus all the citizens, with their wives and children and all their families, should feast and rejoice, each in his own ward, and dance in the streets and completely abstain from any work; and she promised the citizens upon oath that each year of her life she would in the same way give them the means of merry-making at this same commemoration of Lamachus. This being so arranged *and* confirmed by her upon oath, her husband, the son of Asander, who was plotting in secret and looking for an occasion of treachery, when he heard what Gykia had said and confirmed on oath, admired and congratulated Gykia upon the sworn covenant, as one showing a truly filial spirit towards her parents, and consented himself also, as it appears, to rejoice and pour

πυλεῶνας: πυλαιῶσι V || μεγάλους: μεγάλους V Me || 265 σύν P^y Ba Be: καὶ P V Me || 267 τε¹ om. Be || πύλας edd. || 269 ἐπιγαμβρεύσεσθαι edd. || 271 Γυκίαν: γυναικα V edd. || 276 τῆς Χερσῶνος edd.: τὴν Χερσῶνα P || 277 ἀνευ ὕβρεως: ἐνιαυσιαίας com. Jenkins || ἀνεχθῆναι com. Kukules: ἀναχθῆναι P edd. συναχθῆναι com. Bekker || 281 φαιηλία PV || 283 συνταξαμένη edd.: συνταξαμένης P || 286 καὶ add. Be || 288 τὰ add. edd. || 289 μὲν om. edd. ||

- 199^P αὐτός, | φησί, χαίρειν καὶ σπένδειν ἐπὶ τῇ τοιαύτῃ συντάξει. Καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο παρελθούσης τῆς μνήμης καὶ τῆς εὐφρασίας, δημοῖ τοῖς ἐν Βοσπόρῳ δι' οἰκείου παιδὸς λέγων αὐτοῖς, ὅτι· «Εὐρον μέθοδον, δι' ἧς ἀκόπως τὴν Χερσῶνα μέλλομεν παραλαβεῖν· ὑμεῖς οὖν ἐκ διαλειμμάτων ἀποστέλλετέ μοι δέκα ἢ δώδεκα νεωτέρους χρησίμους ἐκτὸς τῶν ἐν²⁹⁵
- 259^{Be} τῷ καράβῳ ἔλαυ|νόντων ὡς δῆθεν ξενία μοι πέμποντες, ἐν Συμβόλῳ δὲ παραβαλλόντων τῶν ἐρχομένων καράβιων ὑμῶν καὶ ἐκεῖ μενόντων, ἐμοῦ δὲ πέμποντος καὶ δι' ἑπταίων φέροντος τοὺς ἐρχομένους νεωτέρους ἐν τῇ πόλει καὶ τὰ πεμπόμενα.» Καὶ δὴ τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ἐπὶ διετῇ χρό-
 199^P νον ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ μέρος ἐρχομένων τῶν Βοσποριανῶν μετὰ τῶν ξε|νίων³⁰⁰ πρὸς τὸ μὴ γνωσθῆναι τῇ πόλει τὸν δόλον ἔφερε μὲν αὐτοὺς πεζικῶς ἐκ τοῦ Συμβόλου ὁ τοῦ Ἀσάνδρου υἱός, καὶ μετὰ ἡμέρας τινὰς πάλιν ἐπὶ πάντων πρὸς ἐσπέραν ἐπέλυεν αὐτοὺς, φησὶν, ἐπὶ τὰ ἔξω ὡς δῆθεν βραδέστερον διὰ τὴν ὥραν. Οἱ δὲ ἐξερχόμενοι ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἄχρι τριῶν μιλίων, σκοτίας βαθείας γενομένης, ὑπέστρεφον καὶ ἤρχοντο ἐν τῷ³⁰⁵ λεγομένῳ Λιμῶνι, καὶ ἐκεῖθεν διὰ καράβου ἔφερον αὐτοὺς ἐν ταῖς Σώσαις, καὶ διὰ τοῦ παραπυλίου, οὗ εἶχεν ἐν τῷ τείχει, εἰσέφερον αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτοῦ, μηδενὸς εἰδότος, εἰ μήτι γε τριῶν παιδῶν αὐτοῦ Βοσποριανῶν καὶ μόνων πιστικῶν αὐτοῦ ὄντων, ἐνὸς μὲν τοῦ ἐν Συμβόλῳ
 200^P ἀπερχομένου καὶ μηνύοντος ἀναχωρεῖν τοὺς | καράβους, ἄλλου δὲ τοῦ³¹⁰ ὑποστρέφοντος τοὺς Βοσποριανούς καὶ φέροντος ἐν Λιμῶνι, ἐτέρου δὲ τοῦ ἐκ Λιμῶνος μετὰ καράβου ἀποκομίζοντος ἐν ταῖς Σώσαις καὶ ἀποκαθιστῶντος ἐν τῷ τοῦ Λαμάχου οἴκῳ, καὶ δι' ὧν ἐπέτρεφεν αὐτοὺς ἐν ταῖς ἀποθήκαις αὐτοῦ, μήτε τῆς Γυκίας εἰδούσης τὸν δόλον, προσδοκῶν, καθὰ εἴρηται, κατὰ τὴν ἐνιαυσιαίαν ἡμέραν τῆς τοῦ Λαμάχου³¹⁵
 260^{Be} μνή|μης, τῆς πόλεως πάσης εὐφραινομένης τε καὶ ἀποκοιμωμένης, αὐτὸν τὴν νύκτα ἐπαναστῆναι μετὰ τῶν Βοσποριανῶν τε καὶ οἰκείων καὶ ἐμπρῆσαι τὴν πόλιν καὶ πάντας κατασφάζει. Συναχθέντων δὲ ἐν τῷ διετεῖ χρόνῳ ἐν τῷ τῆς Γυκίας οἴκῳ ἄχρις διακοσίων Βοσποριανῶν, καὶ
 200^P τῆς μνήμης τοῦ Λαμάχου ἤδη λοιπὸν | ἐγγιζούσης, ἐγένετο παιδίσκη³²⁰ τῆς Γυκίας κουβικουλαρέαν, πάνυ αὐτῇ οὖσαν πρωςφιλεστάτην, πταίσασαν ἀπὸ ὕψεως αὐτῆς γενέσθαι καὶ ἀποκλεισθῆναι αὐτήν. Ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἴκῳ ἀπεκλείσθη ἡ παιδίσκη, ὑποκάτωθεν αὐτοῦ ἦσαν οἱ Βοσποριανοὶ ἐπιτρεφόμενοι. Τῆς δὲ παιδίσκης καθεζομένης καὶ νηθούσης τὸ λίνον, ἐγένετο τὸ σφοντύλιν τῆς ἀτράκτου αὐτῆς ἐκπεσεῖν καὶ κυλισθὲν εἰσελ-³²⁵

V 291 σπενδειν P || 295 δέκα edd.: ε' P || δώδεκα edd.: ιβ' P || 296 Συμβόλῳ scr. Moravesik: συμβόλῳ edd. || 302 Συμβόλου scr. Moravesik: συμβόλου edd. || 304 τριῶν edd.: γ' P || 305 σκοτίας P: σκοτίας edd. || γενομένης V edd.: γινομένης P || 306 Λιμῶνι conit. Membrinus: λιμῶν P λιμῶν V edd. || 306/7 Σώσαις P || 307 οὐ: δ edd. || 308 τριῶν scr. Moravesik γ' P: τρεῖς

a libation on this covenanted occasion. Afterwards, when the commemoration and merry-making had gone by, he made a declaration to those in Bosphorus, through his confidential slave, and said to them: «I have found a means whereby we shall take Cherson without trouble; do you, therefore, send to me at intervals ten or twelve serviceable young fellows, in addition to the rowers of the ship, on the pretext that you are sending me presents, and let your ships that come hither put in at Symbolon and wait there, and I will escort and convey on horseback to the city the youths who come and the *presents* that are sent.» And so, in this manner, over a period of two years the Bosphorians came, a few at a time, bringing the presents in order that the plot might not become known to the city, and the son of Asander conveyed them on foot from Symbolon, and then again a few days later, in sight of all, towards evening he would, as it appears, send them off outside the city, of course at as late an hour as he could. They would go out of the city a distance of three miles, and then, when it was pitch dark, would turn about and come to the so-called Limon, and thence he would convey them by boat to Sosae, and, through the side-gate which he had in the wall, would introduce them into his mansion; none being privy save three Bosphorian slaves of his, who were his only confidants, one of whom used to go to Symbolon and give the word for the ships to depart, another would turn the Bosphorians about and convey them to Limon, and the other would carry them by boat from Limon to Sosae and return them to the mansion of Lamachus; and by the agency of these *three slaves* he maintained them in his magazines, without even Gykia's being aware of the plot; and he expected, as has been said, on the anniversary of the commemoration of Lamachus, while all the city was making merry or had gone to sleep, to start up in the night with the Bosphorians and his own slaves, and burn the city and put everyone to the sword. Now when, during the space of two years, as many as two hundred Bosphorians had been collected in Gykia's mansion, and the commemoration of Lamachus was then already approaching, it fell out that a girl slave of Gykia, a chamber-maid, of whom she was exceedingly fond, committed some fault and was banished from her company and shut up. The room in which the girl slave was shut up had beneath it the Bosphorians who were being kept there. It happened that, while the girl slave was sitting and spinning flax, the weight fell off her

V edd. || ante παίδων add. τῶν V edd. || 309 ante Βοσποριανῶν add. τῶν edd. || μόνον V edd. || πιστικῶν: πιστῶν V edd. || 311 Λειμῶνι Migne || 312 Λειμῶνος Migne || Σῶσαις P || 313 ἀπέτρεπεν edd. || 315 ἐναυσίαν edd. || 317 νύκτα V edd.: νύκταν P || 319 διακοσίων Be: σ' P || 321 κουβικουλαρέαν Moravcsik: κουβικουλαρίαν com. Bekker κουβουκλαρέαν P edd. κουβουκλαρίαν Migne || οὔσαν V edd.: οὐση P || προσφιλέστατην corr. Moravcsik: προσφιλέστατον P edd. || 324 ἐπιτρεφόμενοι corr. Moravcsik: ἀποτρεφόμενοι P edd. || 325 αὐτῆς om. V edd. || ἐκπεσεῖν: πεσεῖν V edd. || κυλισθέντα P ||

- θεῖν εἰς βαθυτάτην ὁπὴν πρὸς τὸν τοῖχον. Ἡ δὲ ἀναστᾶσα πρὸς τὸ ἐπᾶραι αὐτό, ὁρᾷ αὐτὸ ἐν βαθυτάτῃ ὁπῇ ὄν, καὶ μὴ δυναμένης αὐτῆς ἐκσπάσαι αὐτὸ διὰ τὸ βάθος, ἠναγκάσθη ἐκ τοῦ πάτου τοῦ πρὸς τὸν τοῖχον ἀνασπάσαι ἓνα βήσσαλον πρὸς τὸ τοῦτο ἐπᾶραι, καὶ ὁρᾷ διὰ τῆς
- 201*P ὁπῆς κάτω ἐν τῇ ὑπο|γέῳ οἰκῇ τὸ πληθὺς τῶν ὄντων ἀνδρῶν. Καὶ ἰδοῦσα εὐφυῶς πάλιν ἀπέθετο ἐν τῇ τόπῃ τὸ βήσσαλον πρὸς τὸ μὴ γνω-
σθῆναι τοῖς κάτω, καὶ λαθραίως ἀποστείλασα μίαν τῶν παιδῶν, προσ-
εκαλεῖτο τὴν κυρίαν αὐτῆς τοῦ ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτήν, ὀφείλουσάν τι ἀναγ-
καῖον ἀκοῦσαι καὶ ἰδεῖν. Ἡ δὲ Γυκία ὑπὲρ τοῦ Θεοῦ καταнуγεῖσα ἀπῆλθεν
- 261Be πρὸς τὴν παι|δίσκην, καὶ εἰσελθούσης αὐτῆς κατὰ μόνας ἐν τῇ οἰκῇ ματι³³⁵
καὶ κλεισάσης τὴν θύραν, πεσοῦσα ἡ παιδίσκη πρὸς τοὺς πόδας αὐτῆς,
εἶπεν· «Δέσποινα, ἐξουσίαν ἔχεις <εἰς> τὴν ἀχρείαν σου δούλην· πλήν
βούλομαι τῇ κυρίᾳ μου ξένον τι καὶ παράδοξον πρᾶγμα δεῖξαι.» Ἡ δὲ
Γυκία εἶπεν αὐτῇ· «Ἀφόβως εἰπέ καὶ δεῖξον, τί τὸ τοιοῦτον;» Ἡ δὲ παι-
- 201*P δίσκη | ἀπαγαγοῦσα αὐτὴν πρὸς τὸν τοῖχον καὶ εὐφυῶς ἐπάρασα τὸ βήσσα-³⁴⁰
λον λέγει αὐτῇ· «Ὅρᾳς διὰ τῆς ὁπῆς, δέσποινα, τὸν κάτω κρυπτόμενον
ὄχλον τῶν Βοσποριανῶν;» Ἡ δὲ Γυκία ἰδοῦσα καὶ ἐκπλαγεῖσα ἐπὶ τῷ
πράγματι ἔφη· «Οὐκ ἄργον τὸ σκέμμα τοῦτο.» Καὶ λέγει τῇ παιδίσκῃ·
«Πῶς εὗρες τὸ πρᾶγμα τοῦτο;» Ἡ δὲ παιδίσκη λέγει· «Πάντως, δέ-
σποινα, ὅτι ἐκ θελήματος Θεοῦ ἔπεσεν τὸ σφοντύλιν ἐκ τῆς ἀτράκτου³⁴⁵
μου, καὶ κυλισθὲν εἰσῆλθεν ἐν τῇ ὁπῇ ταύτῃ καὶ, μὴ δυναμένης μου αὐτὸ
ἐπᾶραι, ἠναγκάσθη τὸ βήσσαλον ἀνασπάσαι, καὶ τότε εἶδον αὐτούς.»
Ἡ δὲ ἐκέλευσεν τῇ παιδίσκῃ ἀποθέσθαι τὸ βήσσαλον εὐφυῶς ἐν τῇ τόπῃ
- 202*P αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἐπιλαβομένη αὐτῆς καὶ περιπλακεῖσα κατεφί|λησε γνησίως,
καὶ εἶπεν αὐτῇ· «Μηδὲν πτοηθῆς, τέκνον, συγκεχώρηται σοι τὸ πταῖσμα,³⁵⁰
ὁ γὰρ Θεὸς ἡθέλησέ σε πταῖσαι, ἵνα τὸν δόλον ἡμῖν φανερώσῃ· βλέπε
οὖν, ὅση δυνάμει φυλάξαι τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ μὴ τολμήσῃς τινὲς τὸ σύνολον
τοῦτο θαρρῆσαι.» Καὶ λοιπὸν εἶχεν αὐτὴν διόλου μεθ' ἑαυτῆς πλέον τοῦ
- 226Be πρώτου ὡς πιστικὴν αὐτὴν οὔσαν. Καὶ προσκαλεσα|μένη ἡ Γυκία δύο
τινὰς τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτῆς, πιστικούς αὐτῇ ὄντας πάνυ, λέγει αὐτοῖς³⁵⁵
ἐν τοῖς ἰδιάζουσιν· «Ἀπελθόντες συναγάγετε καθ' ἑαυτοὺς ἐν μυστηρίῳ
τοὺς πρωτεύοντας καὶ εὐγενεῖς τῆς πόλεως, καὶ ἐκλεξάσθωσαν τρεῖς
ἄνδρας πιστικούς, δυναμένους φυλάξαι μυστήριον καὶ πρᾶγμα ποιῆσαι,
- 202*P καὶ πιστοποιήσουσιν | αὐτοὺς οἱ πάντες ἐνόρκως πρὸς τὸ καὶ αὐτοὺς ἐμὲ
πληροφορῆσαι, ἐν οἷς μέλλω ἐπερωτᾶν αὐτούς, καὶ ἀποστειλάτωσαν³⁶⁰
αὐτοὺς πρὸς με ἐν μυστηρίῳ, καὶ ἔχω αὐτοῖς ἀναγκαῖόν τι καὶ ὠφέλιμον
τῇ πόλει θαρρῆσαι, μόνον διὰ τάχους ποιήσατε, ὃ λέγω ὑμῖν.» Ἀπελθόν-
των δὲ τῶν συγγενῶν αὐτῆς καὶ ἐν μυστηρίῳ ταῦτα τοῖς πρωτεύουσιν

spindle and rolled and dropped into a very deep crevice by the wall. Getting up to recover it, she saw it lying in a very deep crevice, and, being unable owing to the depth to pluck it out, she was forced to pluck up a brick from the floor by the wall in order to recover it, and she saw through the crevice down below in the basement room the multitude of men who were there. When she had seen, she deftly put the brick back again in its place in order not to reveal herself to those below, and sent in secret one of the servants and invited her mistress to come to her, for there was something needful for her to hear and see. Gykia, pricked on by God, went to the slave girl, and when she entered the room alone and closed the door, the girl slave fell at her feet and said: «Lady, yours is the power *over* your unworthy slave: but I would show to my mistress a matter strange and unlooked-for.» Gykia said to her: «Fear not: speak and show what this is.» The girl slave led her to the wall and, deftly raising the brick, said to her: «Do you see, lady, through the crevice the throng of Bosporians in hiding below?» Gykia looked and was astonished at the affair, and said: «This is a serious plot!» And she said to the girl slave: «How did you find out this matter?» The girl slave said: «Surely, lady, by the will of God, the weight fell off my spindle and rolled and dropped into this crevice, and as I was unable to recover it I was forced to pluck up the brick, and then I saw them.» She bade the girl slave put the brick back deftly in its place, and then she caught her in her arms and embraced her and kissed her in earnest, and said to her: «Fear nothing, child; your fault is forgiven you, for God willed you to err, so that He might reveal the plot to us; see, now, that you do all you can to keep the matter close, and do not venture to entrust it to anybody at all.» And for the future she kept her wholly with herself as her confidante, even more than at first. Then Gykia summoned two of her relations, who were very much in her confidence, and said to them in private: «Go and collect together on their own in secret the primates and nobles of the city, and let them choose out three men in whom they confide, men who can keep a secret and do a deed, and let them all upon oath assure these men that they will satisfy me in what I am about to ask of them, and let them send them to me in secret, and I will confide to them a thing necessary and advantageous for the city; only do with speed what I tell you.» Her relations went off and told this in secret to the

V 328 τοῦτ' om. edd. || 329 βίσαλον P || 331 βίσαλον P || 333 ὀφείλουσάν edd.: ὀφείλουσά P || 337 εἰς *addendum* coni. Bekker || 339 καὶ δεῖξον: δεῖξον καὶ edd. || 340/1 βίσαλον P || 345 σφοντύλην P || 346/7 αὐτὸ ἐπᾶραι: ἐπᾶραι αὐτὸ Be || 347 ἡναγκάσθην F edd.: ἡναγκάσθη P || βίσαλον P || 348 βίσαλον P || 352 τολμήσης Ba Be: τολμήσεις P || 353 πλέον edd.: πλὴν P || 354 πιστικὴν: πιστὴν V edd. || αὐτὴν: αὐτῇ coni. Bekker || 355 πιστικούς: πιστοὺς V edd. || 356 συναγάγετε: συνάγετε edd. || 357 ἐκλεξάτωσαν edd. || 358 πιστικούς: πιστοὺς V edd. ||

- εἰρηκότων, εὐθέως ἐξελέξαντο τρεῖς ἄνδρας, οὓς ᾗδεσαν αὐτοὶ πιστοὺς εἶναι, καὶ πιστοποιήσαντες αὐτοὺς πάντες ἐν ὄρκῳ, ὅτι εἴ τι συνθῶνται³⁶⁵ τῇ Γυκία εἴτε ποιῆσαι, εἴτε δοῦναι, μὴ ἀκυρῶσαι τοὺς λόγους αὐτῶν, ἀλλ' εἰς πέρας ἀγαγεῖν τὰ ὑπ' αὐτῶν συνταττόμενα αὐτῇ. Τούτων δὲ πρὸς τὴν Γυκίαν ἐν μυστηρίῳ ἀπελθόντων, ἐδέξατο αὐτούς, καὶ λέγει
- 203^ΓP αὐτοῖς· «Δύνα|σθέ με πληροφορηῆσαι ἐν ὄρκῳ, περὶ ὧν μέλλω ἐπερωτᾶν ὑμᾶς, ὅτι ποιεῖτε ταῦτα;» Οἱ δὲ εἶπον αὐτῇ· «Ναί, κυρία, ἐτοιμῶς ἔχο-³⁷⁰μεν, περὶ ὧν μέλλεις ἡμῖν ἐπιζητεῖν, πληροφορηῆσαι σε, ὅτι εἰς πέρας ἄγονται οἱ λόγοι σου». Τότε λέγει αὐτοῖς ἡ Γυκία· «Πληροφορήσατέ με, ὅτι ἂν ἀποθάνω, ἐν μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως με θάπτετε, καὶ λέγω ὑμῖν τὸ
- 263^{Be} μυστήριόν μου· | ἰδοὺ βαρὺ ὑμῖν τίποτε οὐκ ἐπιζητῶ.» Οἱ δὲ ἄνδρες ἀκούσαντες τοῦτο, μετὰ πάσης προθυμίας ἐπληροφόρησαν αὐτὴν ἐν³⁷⁵ ὄρκῳ, λέγοντες, ὅτι· «Ἐὰν τελευτήσης, ἐν μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως σε θάψομεν καὶ οὐκ ἐξάξομέν σε ἔξω τῶν τειχῶν.» Ἡ δὲ Γυκία πεισθεῖσα τοῖς ὅρκοις αὐτῶν λέγει αὐτοῖς· «Ἐφ' οἷς ἐπληροφορήσατέ με, κἀγὼ λοιπὸν
- 203^γP ἐμφαίνω ὑμῖν τὸ μυστήριόν μου· ἰδοὺ | εἰδέναι ὑμᾶς θέλω, ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ μου τὸ ἔμφυτον κακὸν τῆς πόλεως αὐτοῦ ἔχων, τὸ τοῦ δόλου καὶ φθόνου³⁸⁰ καθ' ἡμῶν, ὅχλον ἐκ τοῦ κατὰ μέρος Βοσποριανῶν ἐν κρυφῇ εἰσαγαγὼν ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ μου, ἄχρις διακροσίων ψυχῶν ἐνόπλων διατρέφει, ἐμοῦ μὴ εἰδυίας τὸ πρᾶγμα· ἀλλ' ὁ Θεὸς νῦν διὰ προφάσεως ἐφανέρωσέν μοι αὐτό. Αὐτὸς οὖν ταύτην ἔχει τὴν σκέψιν, ἐφ' ᾧ τε, φησίν, εἰς τὴν μνήμην τοῦ πατρὸς μου διδούσης μου τὴν εὐφρασίαν τῇ πόλει, καὶ εὐφρανθέντων³⁸⁵ ὑμῶν καὶ ἀποκοιμωμένων, αὐτὸν τὴν νύκτα ἐπαναστῆναι μετὰ τῶν συνόντων αὐτῷ Βοσποριανῶν τε καὶ οἰκείων, καὶ βαλεῖν ἐμπρησμὸν ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις ὑμῶν καὶ κατασφάξει πάντας ὑμᾶς. Ἰδοὺ λοιπὸν φθάζει καὶ ἡ
- 204^ΓP μνήμη τοῦ πατρὸς μου, καὶ δέον μὲν ἐστὶ πρὸς τὸν | ὄρκον μου δοῦναι ὑμῖν κατὰ τὸ ἔθος τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας, πάντα γὰρ ἐτοιμῶς ἔχω. Θελήσατε³⁹⁰ οὖν πάντες προσδραμεῖν χαίροντες καὶ ζητῆσαι καὶ λαβεῖν πάντα προθύμως πρὸς τὸ μήπω νοῆσαι αὐτόν, ὅτι ἐγνωμεν τὸ πρᾶγμα, καὶ ἄφνω ἐμφύλιος πόλεμος γένηται. Θελήσατε οὖν καὶ δημοσίως κατὰ τὸ ἔθος
- 264^{Be} εὐφραίνεσθαι, συμμέτρως δέ, καὶ χορεῦναι ἐν ταῖς πλα|τείαις, ἐτοιμάσατε δὲ ἕκαστος ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις ὑμῶν ξύλα τε καὶ φορτία καὶ δᾶδας στεγνάς³⁹⁵ πρὸς τό, μισοποιούντων ὑμῶν τὰς εὐφρασίας καὶ τοὺς χορούς, δόξασθαι πρὸς ἀνάπαυσιν ὑμῶν ἀπιέναι, καὶ ἐμοῦ δὲ ταχέστερον μισοποιησάσης καὶ κελευούσης ἀσφαλισθῆναι τοὺς πυλεῶνάς μου, ὑμεῖς εὐθέως ἐν
- 204^γP ἡσυχίᾳ πολλῇ σὺν παι|σὶ καὶ παιδίσκαις ὑμῶν πανοικί παρενέγκαντες τὰ ξύλα καὶ φορτία καὶ δᾶδας, παρὰθετε αὐτὰ ἐν τοῖς πυλεῶσί μου καὶ⁴⁰⁰

V 364 αὐτοὶ V edd.: αὐτοὺς P || 367 ἀγαγεῖν Ba Be: ἀγάγει P || 369 ἐν ὄρκῳ πληροφορηῆσαι edd. || 371 μέλλεις V edd.: μέλλης P || 372 ἄγονται V edd. ||

primates, and they immediately chose out three men, in whom they knew they could confide, and all on their oaths assured them that, if they should covenant with Gykia to do or to give anything, they would not go back on their words, but would carry out to the end what they promised to her. These men went in secret to Gykia, who received them and said to them: «Are you able to satisfy me on oath concerning these things that I am about to ask of you, that you will do them?» They said to her: «Yes, lady, we will readily satisfy you concerning what you are about to require of us, that your words shall be carried out to the end.» Then Gykia said to them: «Satisfy me that if I die, you will bury me in the middle of the city, and I will tell you my secret; see, I do not require anything at all burdensome of you.» The men, on hearing this, with all readiness satisfied her upon oath, saying: «If you die, we will bury you in the middle of the city and will not carry you outside the walls.» Gykia believed their oaths, and said to them: «In view of the satisfaction you have given me, I on my part will now discover my secret to you; see now, I would have you know that my husband, who has the congenital vice of his city, that of plotting and envy against us, has introduced secretly into my mansion a throng of Bosporians, a few at a time, as many as two hundred souls, armed, and maintains them, I being in ignorance of the affair; but now God has found an occasion to reveal it to me. This, then, is his plan, that, so it appears, when at the commemoration of my father I provide the merry-making to the city and you have made merry and are gone to sleep, he will start up in the night with the Bosporians that are with him, and with his own slaves, and will set fire to your houses and put you all to the sword. See, now, my father's commemoration approaches, and I must, in accordance with my oath, give you as usual the means of merry-making, for I have all ready therefor. Do you, then, all run up joyfully and ask for and take everything eagerly, so that he may not yet realise that we have got to know of the affair, and a civil war suddenly break out. Resolve, therefore, to make merry publicly as usual, though moderately, and to dance in the squares, but let each of you make ready in his house timber and faggots and dry torches, so that when you break off the merry-makings and dances you may appear to go off to take your rest, and I for my part will break them off rather early and order my doors to be made fast, and then you, very quietly, with your male and female slaves and all your households, must at once bring along the timber and faggots and torches and pile them

382 διακοσίων Be: σ' P || 384 ἔχει edd.: ἔχειν P || 385 πόλει V edd.: πόλει P || 386 καὶ om. V edd. || 390 post ἔδος add. μου V edd. || 392 μήπω V edd.; μήπως P || 396 μισοποιούντων: hic et infra cum σ duplicato scribendum censuit Kukulcs || ὁμῶν Be: ἡμῶν P || τὰς edd.: τῆς P V || τοὺς χοροὺς edd.: τῶν χωρῶν P || δόξασθαι edd.: δόξεσθαι P || 397 δὲ: δὴ Migne || 399 παῖσι Ba Be: παῖδες P || παρενεγκόντες Be || 400 αὐτὰ: ταῦτα edd. ||

παραπυλίοις καὶ κύκλῳ τῆς οἰκίας πάσης, ἐπιχέοντες καὶ ἔλαιον τοῖς
 ξύλοις πρὸς τὸ τάχιον ἀφθῆναι, καὶ ἡνίκα ἐξέλθω ἐγὼ καὶ εἶπω ὑμῖν,
 εὐθέως βάλετε τὴν πυράν, καὶ ὑμεῖς δὲ ἐν ὅπλοις παραστήκετε κύκλῳ
 τῆς οἰκίας, ἵνα ὅπου τινὰς θεωρήσετε ἐκπηδῶντας ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου διὰ
 θυρίδος, τούτους κατασφάζετε. Ἀπελθόντες οὖν τὸ μυστήριον τοῦτο
 405 λαλήσατε καὶ ἐτοιμάσατε πάντα, ἃ εἶπον ὑμῖν.» Οἱ δὲ πολῖται ταῦτα
 ἀκούσαντες ἀπὸ τῶν τριῶν ἀνδρῶν, ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐν συντομίᾳ κατὰ
 205*P τὸν λόγον τῆς Γυκίας. Ἐνστάσης δὲ τῆς μνημοσύνου ἡμέρας, | ὡς δῆθεν
 χαίρομένη ἡ Γυκία μετεπέμψατο τοὺς τῆς πόλεως ἄνδρας, προτρεπομένη
 τοῦ λαβεῖν αὐτοὺς τὰ τῆς εὐφρασίας. Συνέτρεχε δὲ καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἐπὶ
 410 τοῦτο, καὶ παρεκάλει πλεῖον οἶνον δοθῆναι αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῇ εὐφρασίᾳ. Οἱ
 δὲ πολῖται ἀσμένως πάντα δεξάμενοι εὐφραίνοντο, καθὼς παρηγγέλθη-
 σαν, καὶ ἐχόρευον τὴν πᾶσαν ἡμέραν, φθασάσης δὲ τῆς ἐσπέρας, ἤρξαντο
 265Be μισοποιεῖν οἱ | πολῖται καὶ ἀπιέναι ἐν τοῖς οἴκοις αὐτῶν τοῦ ἀναπαῆναι,
 εὐφραίνοντο δὲ πανοικί. Καὶ ἡ Γυκία ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ αὐτῆς προτρεπομένη
 415 πάντας τοὺς αὐτῆς ἀδεῶς πίνειν πρὸς τὸ μεθυσθέντας αὐτοὺς τάχιον
 κοιμηθῆναι, μόνον ταῖς κουβικουλαρίαις αὐτῆς παρήγγειλεν τοῦ νῆφειν,
 205*P καὶ ἑαυτὴν τοῦ οἴνου | ἐφύλαττεν. Εὐρηκυῖα γὰρ ποτήριον πορφυροῦν
 δέδωκεν τῇ κουβικουλαρέᾳ αὐτῆς, τῇ τὸ πρᾶγμα εἰδούσῃ, καὶ παρήγγει-
 λεν αὐτῇ ἐν αὐτῷ αὐτὴν κιρνᾶν σὺν ὕδατι. Ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς θεωρῶν
 420 τὸ πορφυροῦν ποτήριον, οὐχ ὑπενόει σὺν ὕδατι αὐτὴν πίνειν. Τῆς δὲ
 ἐσπέρας φθασάσης, καὶ τῶν πολιτῶν, ὡς ἦδη εἶπον, μισοποιησάντων,
 λέγει τῷ ἀνδρὶ αὐτῆς ἡ Γυκία· «Εὐφρανθέντων ἡμῶν, δεῦρο λοιπὸν
 ἀναπαυθώμεν καὶ ἡμεῖς.» Ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἀκούσας μᾶλλον ἐχάρη, καὶ
 ἔσπευσεν τοῦ κοιμηθῆναι· οὐ γὰρ ἡδύνατο ἀφ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰπεῖν τοῦτο,
 425 μῆπως ὑπόνοιαν δῶ τῇ γυναικί, περὶ οὗ ἐβουλεύετο δόλου. Κελεύει οὖν
 ἡ Γυκία ἀσφαλισθῆναι τοὺς πυλεῶνας καὶ πάντα τὰ παραθύρια καὶ
 206*P ἐνεχθῆναι αὐτῇ τὰς κλεῖς κατὰ τὸ ἔθος. | Καὶ τούτου γενομένου, λέγει
 ἐν τῷ λεληθότι τῇ πιστῇ αὐτῆς κουβικουλαρέᾳ, τῇ τὸν δόλον εἰδούσῃ,
 430 ὅτι· «Θέλησον σὺν ταῖς λοιπαῖς κουβικουλαραίς εὐφυῶς ἐπᾶραι πάντα
 τὰ κόσμιά μου καὶ τὸ χρυσίον, καὶ εἴ τι χρήσιμον δύνασθε ἐγκολπίσασθαι,
 καὶ ἐτοιμάσατε ἑαυτάς, ἵνα, ὅταν εἶπω ὑμῖν, ἀκολουθήσητέ μοι.» Αἱ δὲ
 266Be ποιήσασαι κατὰ τὴν κέλευσιν αὐτῆς ἤσαν ἔτοιμα. Τοῦ δὲ ἀνδρὸς αὐτῆς
 δῆθεν ἀνακλιθέντος τοῦ ἐκ συντόμου κοιμηθῆναι <καὶ> διὰ τάχους
 αὐτὸν πάλιν ἀναστῆναι πρὸς ἐπιβουλήν τῆς πόλεως, ἡ δὲ Γυκία παρῆσεν
 435

V 401 ἐπιχέοντες edd. || 402 ἀφθῆναι edd.: αὐθῆναι P || 403 βάλετε: λάβετε
 V edd. || παρεστήκετε edd. || 404 θεωρήσητε V edd. || 406 λαλήσασθαι] *secundum
 litteram a in ras. scr.* P¹ || 407 τριῶν edd.: γ' P || συντομίᾳ edd.: συντόμως P || 412
 ἡφραίνοντο Ba Be || 414 τοῦ: εἰς τὸ edd. || 415 εὐφραίνοντο V Me: ἡφραίνοντο Ba

up in my doorways and side-gates and all round the house, pouring oil also upon the timbers so that they may catch the sooner, and when I come out and give you the word, set fire to them at once, and yourselves stand by armed around the house, so that where you see any jumping out of the house through a window, you may put them to the sword. Go now, and tell this secret, and make ready all that I have told you.» When they heard these things from the three men, the citizens hastily did all in accordance with the word of Gykia. When the commemoration day was upon them, Gykia, with an appearance of enjoyment, sent for the men of the city and told them to take the means of merry-making. And her husband, too, helped in this and begged that more wine should be given them for the merry-making. The citizens gladly took everything and began to make merry, as they had been ordered, and danced all the day; but when evening had come the citizens began to break off, and to go off to their houses to take their rest. And they made merry with all their households. Gykia in her house urged all her people to drink freely in order that they might get drunk and sleep the sooner, only enjoining upon her chamber-maids to be sober, and she herself abstained from wine. For she had found a purple goblet and gave it to her chamber-maid, who was in the secret, and instructed her to pour water into it for her. Her husband, seeing the purple goblet, did not suspect that she was drinking water out of it. When evening had come, and the citizens, as I have already said, had broken off the merry-making, Gykia said to her husband: «We have made merry; come, now let us too take our rest.» Hearing this, her husband was only too glad, and hastened to go to sleep; for he could not have said this himself, in case he might give his wife a hint of the plot he was hatching. So Gykia ordered the gates to be made fast and all the windows, and the keys to be brought to her as usual. When this was done, she said aside to her confidential chamber-maid, the one who knew of the plot: «You, with the rest of the chamber-maids, are deftly to remove all my jewelry and gold, and anything else of use that you can carry in your bosoms, and make yourselves ready, so that when I give you the word, you may follow me.» They did as she bade them, and were ready. Her husband was of course lying down in order to take a hasty nap and to get up again in a short while for his treachery against the city; but Gykia avoided going to sleep until all their house-

Be εὐφραίνετο P || 416 αὐτῆς Migne || 417 κουβικουλαρέαις coní. Jenkins || αὐτῆς edd. || 418 ἐαυτὴν coní. Bekker: ἐαυτῇ P ἐαυτῇ edd. || Εὐρηκυῖα: εὐροῦσα V edd. || 419 κουβικουλαρίᾳ Migne || 421 ὑπενόει V edd.: ὑπενόειν P || 424 Ὁ δὲ: ὁ δὴ ὁ edd. || 425 ἔσπευσεν: ἔπεσε edd. || 429 κουβικουλαρίᾳ Migne || 430 κουβικουλαρέαις (litteris βι in ras. scriptis) P V Ba Be: κουβικουλαρίας Migne || 431 ἐγκαλιπσασθαι Meursius Ba Be: ἐγκαλωπήσασθαι P || 432 ἀκολουθήσητέ coní. Bekker: ἀκολουθήσατε P edd. || 434 συντόμου edd.: σύντομον P || 434 καὶ add. Jenkins Kukules ||

τοῦ καθευδῆσαι, ἕως ἂν πᾶσα ἡ φαμίλια αὐτῶν ἐκοιμήθῃ. Ὁ δὲ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ἐκ τοῦ πολλοῦ πότου ἀφύπνωσεν. Ἡ δὲ Γυκία ἰδοῦσα τοῦτον
 206*P κοιμηθέντα, εὐφυῶς τὸν κοιτῶνα | τῷ κλειδίῳ ἡσφαλίσατο, ἀποκλείσασα
 τὸν ἄνδρα καὶ κατελθοῦσα ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου σὺν ταῖς κουβικουλαραῖς αὐτῆς,
 ἐξελθοῦσα τῶν παραπυλίων ἡσυχῶς καὶ κλείσασα, εὐθέως ἐπέτρεψεν⁴⁴⁰
 τοὺς τῆς πόλεως διὰ τάχους βληθῆναι τὸ πῦρ κύκλῳ τοῦ οἴκου. Βληθέν-
 τος δὲ τοῦ πυρός, καὶ τοῦ οἴκου ἀναφθέντος, εἴ ποὺ τις τῶν ἔσωθεν ὄντων
 ἠδυνήθη ἐκπηδῆσαι ἢ ἑαυτὸν ρίψαι, ὑπὸ τῶν πολιτῶν κατεσφάγγη. Τοῦ
 δὲ οἴκου παντὸς καὶ τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ ἕως ἐδάφους καταφλεχθέντων, διέσωσεν
 ὁ Θεὸς τὴν Χερσωνιτῶν πόλιν ἐκ τῶν ἐπιβούλων Βοσποριανῶν. Ἡ δὲ⁴⁴⁵
 Γυκία, βουλομένων τῶν πολιτῶν τὴν καταφλεχθεῖσαν αὐτῆς οἰκίαν
 207*P ὀρύξαι καὶ καθᾶραι τὸν τόπον πρὸς οἰκοδομήν, οὐκ εἴασεν, ἀλλὰ μάλῃσιν
 ἐπέτρεψεν πᾶσῃ τῇ πόλει φέρειν ἕκαστον αὐτῶν καὶ ἐκχύνειν αὐτόθι τὴν
 πᾶσαν αὐτῶν κοπρίαν πρὸς τὸ ἐν αὐτοῖς καταχωσθῆναι τὴν πᾶσαν
 αὐτῆς οἰκησιν, ὥς πρὸς ἐπιβουλὴν τῆς πόλεως γενομένην· διὸ καὶ ἐκλήθη⁴⁵⁰
 ὁ τόπος Λαμάχου Σκοπὴ ἕως τῆς σήμερον.

Τούτων οὖν ἀπάντων οὕτως γενομένων, ἰδόντες οἱ Χερσωνῖται τὴν
 267Be τοιαύτην ἄπειρον ὑπὸ τῆς Γυκίας εἰς αὐτοὺς μετὰ Θεὸν | γενομένην
 εὐεργεσίαν, καὶ ὅτι οὐδενὸς τῶν αὐτῆς τὸ σύνολον ἐφείσατο, ἀλλὰ τὴν
 σωτηρίαν τῆς πόλεως προετιμήσατο, ὑπὲρ τῆς τοιαύτης μισθαποδοσίας⁴⁵⁵
 δύο χαλκοὺς ἀνδριάντας πρὸς τιμὴν αὐτῆς ἐν τῇ πλατεῖᾳ τῆς πόλεως
 207*P ἀνήγειραν, νεάζουσιν αὐτὴν τῇ ἡλικίᾳ | δεικνύοντες, καθ' ὃν καιρὸν
 ἦν τότε συμβαίνουσα, ἐν τούτοις δεικνύοντες καὶ τὴν αὐτῆς ἄφατον
 εὐεργεσίαν καὶ στοργὴν περὶ τοὺς πολίτας, ὅτι καὶ ἐν ἡλικίᾳ νέᾳ οὖσα
 οὕτως ἐφρόνησεν τὴν ἰδίαν πατρίδα μετὰ Θεὸν περισῶσαι. Ἐν μὲν γὰρ⁴⁶⁰
 τῇ μᾶζ στήλῃ σωφρόνως αὐτὴν κεκαλλωπισμένην στήσαντες καὶ τὰ τῆς
 ἐπιβουλῆς τοῦ οἰκείου ἀνδρός τοῖς πολίταις ἐμφαίνουσιν, ἐν δὲ τῇ ἑτέρᾳ
 ἐναγώνιον αὐτὴν καὶ ἐπαμυνομένην κατὰ τῶν τῆς πόλεως ἐπιβούλων
 ἀποδεικνύοντες, ἐν οἷς καὶ ἐπέγραψαν ἐν τῇ τοῦ ἀνδριάντος αὐτῆς βάσει
 ἅπασαν τὴν ὑπ' αὐτῆς μετὰ Θεὸν γενομένην τοῖς πολίταις εὐεργεσίαν.⁴⁶⁵
 208*P Εἴπερ μέλλει τις εἶναι φιλόκαλος, τῆς αὐτῆς συλνεῶς κατὰ καιρὸν τὴν
 βάσιν ἀποσμήχει πρὸς τὴν τῶν ἐν αὐτῇ γενομένων ἀνάγνωσίν τε καὶ
 ὑπόμνησιν τῶν ὑπ' αὐτῆς γενομένων, ἔλεγχον δὲ τῶν ἐπιβούλων Βοσπο-
 ριανῶν.

Μετὰ δὲ χρόνους τινάς, στεφανηφοροῦντος καὶ πρωτεύοντος⁴⁷⁰
 τῆς Χερσωνιτῶν Στρατοφίλου, τοῦ Φιλομούσου, πάνυ σοφωτάτῃ οὖσα ἡ
 Γυκία καὶ θέλουσα δοκιμάσαι τοὺς Χερσωνίτας καὶ γυνῶναι, εἰ ἄρα

hold was sleeping, and her husband was soundly off after his deep potations. Gykia, seeing him asleep, deftly made fast the bed-chamber with the key, shutting her husband in, came down from the house with her chambermaids, went quietly out of the side-gates and locked them, and at once gave the word to them of the city to light the fire quickly all round the house. The fire was lit and the house caught, and if any of those within managed to jump or throw himself out, he was slain by the citizens. The whole house, with those in it, was gutted to the foundation, and God preserved the city of the Chersonites from the treacherous Bosporians. When the citizens wished to dig into her gutted house and to clear the site for building, Gykia would not allow it, but rather bade all the city bring, each one of them, and empty out on that spot all their ordures, so that her whole dwelling might be buried deep in them, inasmuch as it had served for treachery against the city; and so unto this day the place has been called the Spy-tower of Lamachus.

All these things having so fallen out, the Chersonites, seeing the infinite benefits that Gykia had, under God, conferred upon them, and that she had not spared anything of her own at all, but had put first the salvation of the city, erected in payment for this service she had done them two bronze statues to her honour in the city square, representing her as young in years, as then, at that time, she was, and therein showing her ineffable benefits and affection toward the citizens, in that at her tender age she had shown such wisdom for the preservation, under God, of her own fatherland. For upon one column they set her soberly adorned and discovering to the citizens the tale of her husband's treachery, and upon the other they represented her in action and fighting against the betrayers of the city; and thereto, upon the base of her statue, they also inscribed all the benefits which she had, under God, conferred upon the citizens. And if any would be a lover of virtue, he regularly scours from time to time the base of the same, so that what is there written may be read and there may be a reminder of what she did, and a refutation of the treacherous Bosporians.

And after some years, when the chief magistrate and primate of the country of the Chersonites was Stratophilus, son of Philomusus, Gykia, who had most excellent wit, desired to put the Chersonites to the proof

V 436 φαμηλια P || 439 κουβοσυλαρίας Migne || 441 τοὺς: τοῖς edd. || βληθῆναι: ἐμβληθῆναι V edd. || 442 ἔσεωθεν P || 443 ἡδυνήθη ἐπηδῆσαι: ἐκηδῆσαι ἐδυνήθη edd. || 448 πάση V edd.: πᾶσιν P || τῇ om. edd. || πόλει V edd.: πύλῃ P || ἐκχύνειν scr. Moravesik ἐκχύνῃ P: ἐκχέειν edd. || 452 οὕτως om. V edd. || 454 αὐτῆς Migne || 455 τῆς: τὴν Ba Be || 456 χαλκοὺς P || 459 οὖσα] *litteram α in ras. scr.* P¹ || 461 κεκαλλωπισμένην F Be: καὶ καλωπισμένην P || 464 ἀνδριάντος P || 467 ἀποσμήχει edd.: ἀποσμίχην P || γενομένων: γεγραμμένων *coni.* Bekker || 471 τῆς: τῶν V edd. ||

- ἀληθῶς μέλλουσιν τὴν τοῦ ὅρκου ὑπόσχεσιν ἐκπληροῦν καὶ θάπτειν αὐτὴν
 ἐν μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως, συλλογισαμένη μετὰ τῶν παιδισκῶν αὐτῆς, ἐποίη-
 268Be σεν ἑαυτὴν | τινὰ ἀηδιζομένην καὶ ἀποθανοῦσαν. Καὶ κηδεύσασα αὐτὴν 475
 αἱ παιδίσκαι, ἐμήνυσαν τοῖς πολίταις λέγουσαι, ὅτι· «Ἡ κυρία ἡμῶν
 208P ἔτελεύτησεν, καὶ ἐν ποίῳ τόπῳ μέλλει θά[π]τεσθαι, ὑποδείξατε ἡμῖν.»
 Οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται ἀκούσαντες, ὅτι τέθνηκεν ἡ Γυκία, σκεψάμενοι καθ'
 ἑαυτοὺς, οὐκέτι τὸ ἱκανὸν τοῦ ὅρκου ἔσπευσαν ποιῆσαι, ὥστε ἐν μέσῳ τῆς
 πόλεως αὐτὴν ταφῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἄραντες αὐτὴν ἐξήνεγκαν ἔξω τῆς πόλεως 480
 θάψαι. Ἀποτεθέντος δὲ τοῦ κραββάτου πρὸς τὸ μνήμα, ἀνακαθίσασα ἡ
 Γυκία καὶ περιβλεψαμένη πάντας τοὺς πολίτας, λέγει· «Αὕτη ὑμῶν ἐστὶν
 ἡ μεθ' ὅρκου ὑπόσχεσις; Οὕτως ἀληθεύετε περὶ πάντων; Ἄβαλε λοιπὸν
 τῷ πιστεύοντι Χερσωνίτῃ πολίτῃ.» Οἱ δὲ Χερσωνῖται ἰδόντες τὴν ὑπ'
 αὐτῆς γενομένην αὐτῶν χλεύην, αἰσχυθέντες μεγάλως ἐπὶ τῷ γεγονότι 485
 τῆς παραβασίας πράγματι, παρεκάλουν αὐτὴν πολλὰ τοῦ ἡσυχάσαι καὶ
 209P παραχωρῆσαι αὐτοῖς | τὸ πταῖσμα καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ πλεῖον ὀνειδίζειν αὐτοῖς.
 Λοιπὸν δευτέροις ὅρκοις αὐτὴν ἐπιστώσαντο, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔξω τῆς
 πόλεως θάψαι αὐτὴν, ἀλλ' ἐν μέσῳ τῆς πόλεως, ὃ δὴ καὶ ἐποίησαν. Καὶ
 γὰρ αὐτῆς ζώσης ἔτι, ἐν ᾧ τόπῳ ἡρετίσατο, τὴν σορὸν αὐτῆς ἐστήσαντο, 490
 καὶ ἀνδριάντα χαλκοῦν καὶ ἕτερον ἡγεῖραν, καὶ τοῦτον χρυσώσαντες
 ἔστησαν πρὸς τῇ ταφῇ αὐτῆς πρὸς περισσοτέραν πίστωσιν.
- 269Be Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἔξω τοῦ κάστρου Ταμάταρχα πολλὰι πηγαὶ ὑπάρ-
 χουσιν ἄφθαν ἀναδιδούσαι.
- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐν Ζιχία πρὸς τὸν τόπον τῆς Πάγης, τῆς οὔσης εἰς 495
 τὸ μέρος τῆς Παπαγίας, ἐν ᾧ κατοικοῦσι Ζιχοί, ἐννέα πηγαὶ εἰσὶν ἄφθαν
 ἀναδιδούσαι, πλην οὐχ ὁμοχροοῦσιν τῶν ἐννέα πηγῶν τὰ ἔλαια, ἀλλὰ τὰ
 209P μὲν ἐξ αὐτῶν | εἰσὶν ἐρυθρά, τὰ δὲ ξανθὰ, τὰ δὲ μελανώτερά.
- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐν Ζιχία ἐν τῷ τόπῳ τῷ καλουμένῳ Πάπαγι, ἐν ᾧ
 καὶ πλησίον ἔστι χωρίον ἐπονομαζόμενον Σαπαξί, ὃ ἐρμηνεύεται 'κονιορ- 500
 τός', ἐστὶν ἐκεῖσε βρύσις ἄφθαν ἀναδιδούσα.
- Ἰστέον, ὅτι καὶ ἑτέρα βρύσις ἐστὶν ἐκεῖσε ἄφθαν ἀναδιδούσα ἐν
 τῷ χωρίῳ τῷ καλουμένῳ Χαμούχ. Τὸ δὲ Χαμούχ ἐστὶν ὄνομα τοῦ
 συστησαμένου ἀρχαίου ἀνδρὸς τὸ χωρίον· τὸ οὖν χωρίον ἐκεῖνο διὰ τοῦτο
 ἐκλήθη Χαμούχ. Ἀπέχουσι δὲ οἱ τοιοῦτοι τόποι ἀπὸ τῆς θαλάσσης 505
 ὁδὸν ἰδιοκαβάλλου ἡμέρας μιᾶς.
- Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐν τῷ θέματι Δερζηνῆς πλησίον τοῦ χωρίου τοῦ Σαπι-
 κίου καὶ τοῦ χωρίου τοῦ ὀνομαζομένου Ἐπισκοπείου, ἐστὶν πηγὴ ἄφθαν
 ἀναδιδούσα.

and to know whether in fact they would fulfil the sworn promise and bury her in the middle of the city; and having concerted with her girl slaves, she made herself as one who was weary of life and had died. Her girl slaves laid her out on the bier and sent a message to the citizens, saying: «Our lady has died, and do you point out to us in what place she is to be buried.» The Chersonites, when they heard that Gykia was dead, turned the matter over in their minds and were no longer eager to fulfil the oath that she should be buried in the middle of the city, and they took her up and bore her outside the city to bury her. But when the bier was set down at the tomb, Gykia sat up and looked about on all the citizens and said: «Is this your sworn promise? Is this your truth in all your dealings? Woe to him, then, who puts faith in a Chersonite citizen!» The Chersonites, seeing the mock she had made of them, were greatly ashamed of their conduct in breaking their word, and earnestly besought her to be appeased and to pardon their transgression and to rail upon them no more. And so they gave their word to her with a renewal of their oaths that thereafter they would not bury her outside the city, but in the middle of the city, and so they did. And while she was still alive, they set up her coffin in the spot that she chose, and erected yet another bronze statue and gilded it and set it upon her tomb for greater assurance.

Outside the city of Tamatarcha are many wells yielding naphtha.

In Zichia, near the place called Pagi, which is in the region of Papagia and is inhabited by Zichians, are nine wells yielding naphtha, but the oils of the nine wells are not of the same colour, some of them being red, some yellow, and some blackish.

In Zichia, in the place called Papagi, near which is a village called Sapaxi, which means 'dust', there is a spring yielding naphtha.

There is there yet another spring yielding naphtha, in the village called Chamouch. Chamouch is the name of the man of olden times who founded the village: for this reason that village was called Chamouch. These places are distant from the sea a journey of one day without changing horses.

In the province of Derzene, near the village of Sapikion and the village called Episkopion, is a well yielding naphtha.

edd.: αὐτὴν P || 478 Χερσωνίται P || 480 *post* πόλεως^a add. αὐτὴν V edd. || 481 θάψαι: ταψῆναι V edd. || κραβάτου P || 483 ἄβαλαι PY: ἄβαλα P ἄβάλα V edd. || 486 παραβάσεως V edd. || 491 ἀνδρίαντα P || χαλκοῦν (*coni. etiam* Bekker): χαλκὸν edd. || 494 ἀφθαν: νίφθαν *coni.* Latyšev || 495 Ζηχία P || εἰς: πρὸς edd. || 496 Ζηχοῖ P || 497 ὁμοχροοῦσι Meursius Ba Be: ὁμοχρουοῦσιν P || ἐντέα edd.: θ' P || 499 Ζηχία P || 500/1 κονιορτός V edd.: κορμιотός P || 507 τοῦ *coni.* Jenkins: τὰ P edd. || 508 Ἐπισκοπίων P edd. ||

210^P Ἰστέον, ὅτι ἐν τῷ θέματι τοῦ Τζιλιάπερτ ὑπὸ | τὸ χωρίον τὸ 510
Σρεχιαβαράξ ἔστιν ἐκεῖσε πηγὴ ἀφθαν ἀναδιδούσα.

Ἰστέον, ὅτι εἰ ἀντάρωσι ποτε οἱ τοῦ κάστρου Χερσῶνος, ἢ ἐναντία
τῶν βασιλικῶν κελεύσεων βουληθῶσι διαπράξασθαι, ὀφείλουσιν την-
καῦτα, ὅσα εὑρεθῶσιν ἐν τῇ πόλει Χερσωνίτικα καράβια, μετὰ τοῦ γόμου
270^{Be} αὐτῶν εἰσκομίζεσθαι, οἱ | δὲ ναῦται καὶ ἐπιβάται Χερσωνῖται ἵνα δε- 515
σμεύωνται καὶ ἐναποκλείωνται εἰς τὰ ἐργαλεῖα, εἰθ' οὕτως ὀφείλουσιν
ἀποσταλῆναι τρεῖς βασιλικοί· εἷς μὲν ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος τῶν
Ἀρμενιάκων, ἕτερος δὲ ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος Παφλαγονίας καὶ
ἄλλος ἐν τῇ παραλίᾳ τοῦ θέματος τῶν Βουκελλαρίων, ἵνα πάντα τὰ
Χερσωνίτικα καράβια κρατῶσιν, καὶ τὸν μὲν γόμον καὶ τὰ καράβια 520
210^{vP} εἰσκομίζωσιν, | τοὺς δὲ ἀνθρώπους δεσμεύωσι καὶ ἐναποκλείωσιν εἰς
δημοσίους φυλακὰς, καὶ ἀναγάγωσι περὶ τούτων, καὶ ὥς ἂν δέξωνται.
Πρὸς τούτοις ἵνα οἱ τοιοῦτοι βασιλικοὶ κωλύωσι καὶ τὰ Παφλαγονικὰ
καὶ Βουκελλαρικὰ πλοῖα καὶ πλαγίτικα τοῦ Πόντου τοῦ μὴ διαπερᾶν
ἐν Χερσῶνι μετὰ σίτου ἢ οἴνου ἢ οἰασθῆποτε χρεῖας ἢ πραγματείας. 525
Εἰθ' οὕτως ὀφείλει δέξασθαι καὶ ὁ στρατηγὸς τοῦ κόψαι καὶ τὰς δέκα
λίτρας, τὰς διδομένας ἀπὸ τοῦ δημοσίου εἰς τὸ κάστρον Χερσῶνος, καὶ τὰς
δύο τοῦ πάκτου, καὶ τηνικαῦτα ἀναχωρῆσαι ἀπὸ Χερσῶνος τὸν στρατη-
γὸν καὶ ἀπελθεῖν ἐν ἑτέρῳ κάστρῳ καὶ καθεσθῆναι ἐκεῖσε.

Ὅτι ἐὰν οὐ ταξιδεύσωσιν οἱ Χερσωνῖται εἰς Ῥωμανίαν, καὶ 530
211^{rP} πιπράσκωσι τὰ | βυρσάρια καὶ τὰ κηρία, ἅπερ ἀπὸ τῶν Πατζινακιτῶν
πραγματεύονται, οὐ δύνανται ζῆσαι.

Ὅτι ἐὰν μὴ ἀπὸ Ἀμινσοῦ καὶ ἀπὸ Παφλαγονίας καὶ τῶν Βουκελ-
λαρίων καὶ ἀπὸ τῶν πλαγίων τῶν Ἀρμενιάκων περάσωσι γεννήματα,
οὐ δύνανται ζῆσαι οἱ Χερσωνῖται.

535

V 510 τὸ χωρίον om. Be || 512 ei] in ras. scr. P¹ || 514 Χερσωνίτικα edd. ||
516 ἐναποκλείωνται edd.: ἐναποκλείονται P || 518 Ἀρμενιανῶν V edd. || 520
Χερσωνίτικα scr. Moravesik: Χερσωνίτικα P edd. || 524 πλαγίτικα edd. || 525
πραγματείας: πράγματος V edd. || 534 Ἀρμενιανῶν V edd. || 535 Χερσω-
νῖται P.

In the province of Tziliapert, below the village of Srechiabarax, there is a well yielding naphtha.

If ever the men of the city of Cherson revolt or decide to act contrary to the imperial mandates, then all Chersonite ships at Constantinople must be impounded with their cargoes, and Chersonite sailors and passengers must be arrested and confined in the gaols; and then three imperial agents must be sent: one to the coast of the province of the Armeniakoi, another to the coast of the province of Paphlagonia, and another to the coast of the province of the Boukellarioi, in order to take possession of all Chersonite ships, and to impound the cargo and the ships, and to arrest the men and confine them in public prisons, and to report upon these matters and as they may be instructed. Moreover, these imperial agents must forbid the Paphlagonian and Boukellarian merchant-ships and coastal vessels of Pontus to cross to Cherson with grain or wine or any other needful commodity or merchandise. Then, the military governor too must be instructed to sequester the ten pounds granted by the treasury to the city of Cherson and also the two pounds of tribute, and then the military governor must withdraw from Cherson and go to another city and take up residence there.

If the Chersonites do not journey to Romania and sell the hides and wax that they get by trade from the Pechenegs, they cannot live.

If grain does not pass across from Aminos and from Paphlagonia and the Boukellarioi and the flanks of the Armeniakoi, the Chersonites cannot live.